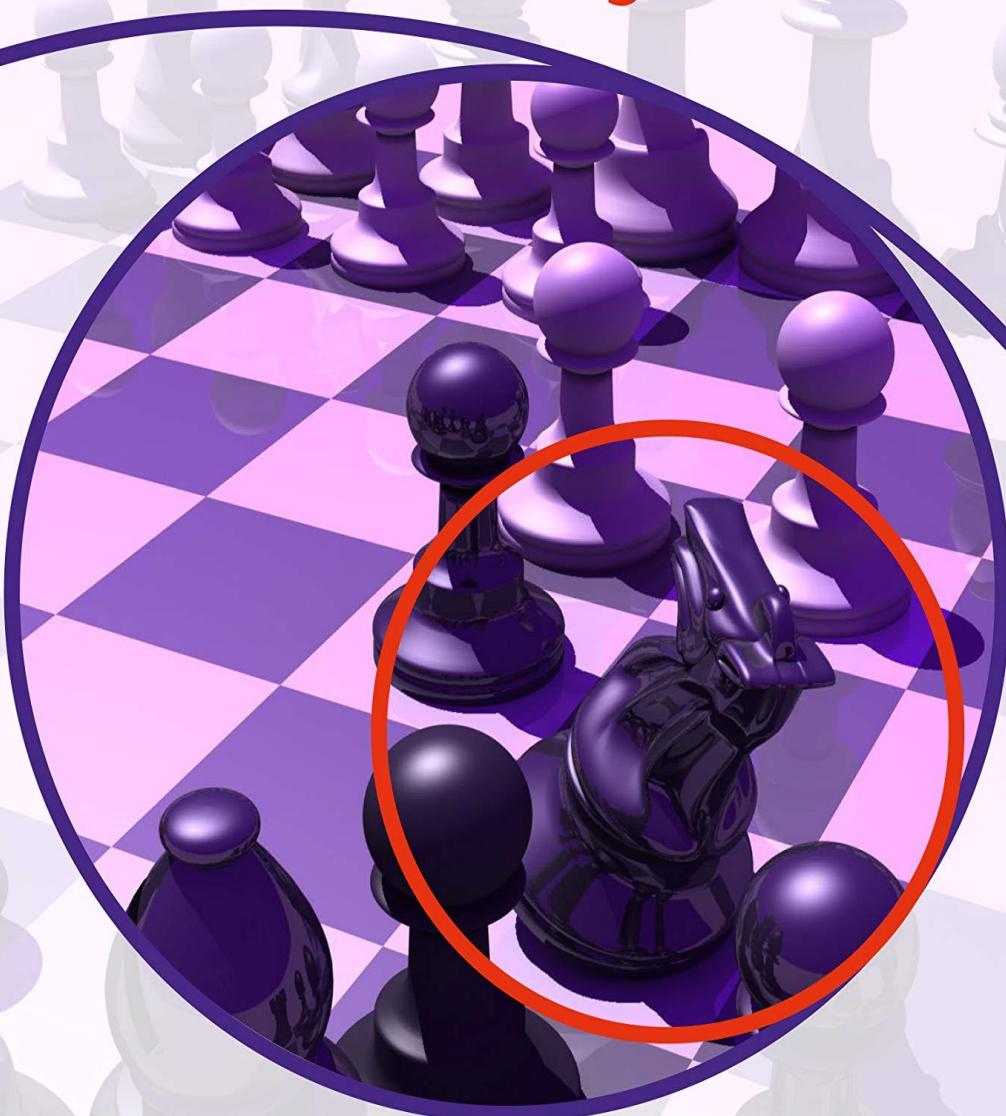


Jimmy Liew

# The Chigorin Defence

**move by move**



EVERYMAN CHESS

# The Chigorin Defence: Move by Move

by Jimmy Liew



## Contents

[About this Publication](#)

[Bibliography](#)

[Introduction](#)

[1. The Open 3 cxd5](#)

[2. The Provocative 3 Nc3](#)

[3. The Solid 3 Nf3](#)

[4. White Allows the Albin](#)

## 5. White Avoids or Delays c2-c4

# The Chigorin Defence: Move by Move

The Chigorin Defence (1 d4 d5 2 c4 Nc6) is a dynamic and provocative response to White's 1 d4. Rather than set out a defensive stall with systems based on moves such as ...e6 and ...c6, Black prefers to initiative immediate piece play in the centre. The benefits of this strategy are that Black's queenside pieces, which are often difficult to develop in the Queen's Gambit, participate in the struggle at once. The queen's knight emerges immediately onto an active square and the path is left free for the c8-bishop to develop freely. Naturally there are also drawbacks as Black will not find it easy to establish a foothold in the centre in the early play.

The Chigorin is a perfect counterattacking weapon and will appeal to players who like to throw opponents onto their own resources at an early stage. Jimmy Liew identifies and analyses the precise moments when specific theoretical knowledge is required and also discussed plans and strategies in the quieter variations.

- Everything you need to know to play the Chigorin with confidence
- Emphasis on plans and strategies
- Written by an expert in the opening

**Jimmy Liew** is an International Master and a two-time Malaysian champion. He has represented Malaysia in eight

Malaysian champion. He has represented Malaysia in eight Chess Olympiads and is a certified FIDE trainer.

---

## Publisher Information

### The Chigorin Defence: Move by Move

by Jimmy Liew

First published in 2018 by Gloucester Publishers Limited,  
Northburgh House, 10 Northburgh Street, London EC1V  
0AT.

Copyright © 2018 Jimmy Liew

The right of Jimmy Liew to be identified as the author of this work has been asserted in accordance with the Copyrights, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved. No part of this work may be reproduced, or transmitted in any form or by any means, without prior permission of the publisher.

#### **British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data**

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

All other sales enquiries should be directed to Everyman Chess, Northburgh House, 10 Northburgh Street, London EC1V 0AT

email: [info@everymanchess.com](mailto:info@everymanchess.com)

website: [www.everymanchess.com](http://www.everymanchess.com)

Everyman is the registered trade mark of Random House Inc. and is used in this work under licence from Random House Inc.

**Everyman Chess Series**

Chief Advisor & Commissioning Editor: Byron Jacobs

# Bibliography

## Books

*The Chigorin Defence* , Valery Bronznik (Schachverlag Kania 2005)

*The Chigorin Defence According to Morozevich* , Alexander Morozevich & Vladimir Barsky (New in Chess 2007)

*The Chigorin Queen's Gambit* , Angus Dunnington (Batsford 1996)

*Dangerous Weapons: The Queen's Gambit* , Richard Palliser, Glenn Flear & Chris Ward (Everyman 2015)

*Grandmaster Repertoire: 1 d4 Volume One* , Boris Avrukh (Quality Chess 2008)

*Play 1...Nc6!* , Christoph Scheerer (née Wisnewski) (Everyman 2009)

*Playing 1 d4: The Queen's Gambit* , Lars Schandorff (Quality Chess 2012)

*Queen's Gambit: Chigorin Defence* , John Watson (Batsford 1982)

*Starting Out: 1 d4!* , John Cox (Everyman 2000)

## Periodicals

*Chess Informant* (Sahovski Informator)

## Electronic Resources

# **Electronic Resources**

Mega Database 2018

ChessPublishing.com

# Introduction

History records that the Russian master, Mikhail Chigorin, was the first player to formulate the opening system with ...Nc6 that bears his name. Chigorin was born in 1850 near St. Petersburg and was one of the best chess players of his time. He was never world champion but was one of the main challengers, contesting (and losing) two matches against Wilhelm Steinitz.

Chigorin first tried 2...Nc6 ([view in Game format](#)) against another great player, Harry Pillsbury, in the St. Petersburg “Four Masters” tournament in 1895/96. In their first game, Pillsbury quickly built up a strong position, won material, and converted it precisely. This was certainly not the most auspicious start for a new opening – but Chigorin persevered with it, scored a win and a draw in their next two games, and won again in London three years later. He continued to employ 2 c4 Nc6 (and his companion line 2 Nf3 Bg4!?) in the top tournaments of his day, albeit with mixed results.



Notably, Black refuses for the moment to support the d5-pawn with either ...e7-e6 or ...c7-c6, relying instead on piece play to put pressure on the white centre. He also blocks the c-pawn from advancing to c5, which is Black's typical break in the Queen's Gambit.

One of the key themes of the opening is allowing the exchange of White's c-pawn for Black's d-pawn, establishing a white majority in the centre – in return Black obtains quick and easy development. This theme is seen in several of the main lines, such as 3 cxd5 Qxd5 4 e3 e5 5 Nc3 Bb4 ([Chapter One](#), Games [3-16](#)), 3 Nc3 Nf6 4 Nf3 dxc4 5 e4 Bg4 ([Chapter Two](#), Games [32-37](#)), and 3 Nf3 Bg4 4 cxd5 Bxf3 5 gxf3 Qxd5 6 e3 e5 7 Nc3 Bb4 ([Chapter Three](#), Games [48-54](#)). In all of these, Black must be prepared to give up a bishop for a knight, sometimes both bishops, in order to maintain the activity of his other pieces.

The Chigorin is therefore often regarded as a dynamic

The Chigorin is therefore often regarded as a dynamic opening but somewhat anti-positional, and to be more of an occasional/surprise weapon than a mainstream one.

Nonetheless, numerous grandmasters have used it regularly and successfully – including (by database games total) Igor Miladinovic, Nenad Fercec, Ilja Zaragatski, Alexander Morozevich, Aleksandr Karpatchev, Alexander Raetsky, Robert Rabiega and Petr Tishin.

At the very least, Black's non-conformist knight move takes the fight to the opponent from the beginning of the game, which can lead to very interesting play at all levels of chess.

Jimmy Liew  
Puchong, Malaysia,  
October 2018

## Introduction

[Jimmy Liew]

History records that the Russian master, Mikhail Chigorin, was the first player to formulate the opening system with ...Nc6 that bears his name. Chigorin was born in 1850 near St. Petersburg and was one of the best chess players of his time. He was never world champion but was one of the main challengers, contesting (and losing) two matches against Wilhelm Steinitz.

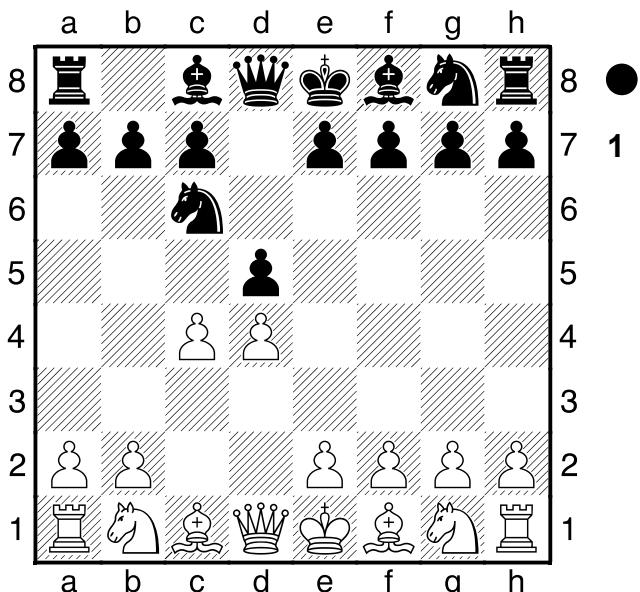
Chigorin first tried 2...Nc6 against another great player, Harry Pillsbury, in the St. Petersburg “Four Masters” tournament in 1895/96. In their first game, Pillsbury quickly built up a strong position, won material, and converted it precisely. This was certainly not the most auspicious start for a new opening – but Chigorin persevered with it, scored a win and a draw in their next two games, and won again in London three years later. He continued to employ **1.d4 d5 2.c4**

[and his companion line 2.Nf3 Bg4!?] **2...Nc6** in the top tournaments of his day, albeit with mixed results.

Notably, Black refuses for the moment to support the d5-pawn with either ...e7-e6 or ...c7-c6, relying instead on piece play to put pressure on the white centre. He also blocks the c-pawn from advancing to c5, which is Black’s typical break in the Queen’s Gambit. **3.--**

[One of the key themes of the opening is allowing the exchange of White’s c-pawn for Black’s d-pawn, establishing a white majority in the centre – in return Black obtains quick and easy development. This theme is seen in several of the main lines, such as

3.cxd5 Qxd5 4.e3 e5 5.Nc3 Bb4 (Chapter One, Games 3-16); ] [ 3.Nc3 Nf6 4.Nf3 dxc4 5.e4 Bg4 (Chapter Two, Games 32-37); ] [ and 3.Nf3 Bg4 4.cxd5 Bxf3 5.gxf3 Qxd5 6.e3 e5 7.Nc3 Bb4 (Chapter Three, Games 48-54). In all of these, Black must be prepared to give up a bishop for a knight, sometimes both bishops, in order to maintain the activity of his other pieces. ]



# Chapter One

## The Open 3 cxd5

The earliest games Chigorin played using his opening system were against Steinitz. In their 1889 World Championship match, this had arisen via 1 Nf3 d5 2 d4 Bg4 3 c4 Nc6, transposing to [Chapter Three](#). The first time 1 d4 d5 2 c4 Nc6 appeared on the board ([view in Game format](#)), in Vienna 1898, Steinitz opted for 3 cxd5 Qxd5, which is a direct attempt at refuting the Chigorin. White is asking Black to prove that his piece versus centre strategy is valid. In other words, White does not believe in the correctness of Black's opening.



From the other side, the fact that White is now obliged to defend the d4-pawn gives Black time to push ...e7-e5, then

defend the d4-pawn gives Black time to push ...e7-e5, then which enables him to answer Nc3 with ...Bb4, pinning the knight, rather than retreat the queen from its central post. This is the correct course even against 4 Nf3 and is a standard motif of the Chigorin, Black offering a pawn in order to bring his pieces to very active positions. If White opts to take on e5 he probably does best to give the pawn back in exchange for the bishop pair, but in that case there is little point in taking it at all. Hence the main lines begin 4 e3 e5 5 Nc3 Bb4 6 Bd2 Bxc3, when White hopes to show that his bishop pair and central pawn majority outweigh Black's activity and lead in development.

1: W.Steinitz-M.Chigorin, Vienna 1898

2: D.Drzemicki-G.Masternak, Slupsk 1992

3: R.Wojtaszek-R.Rapport, Biel 2015

4: P.Glavina-A.Romero Holmes, Spanish League 2004

5: B.Avrukh-I.Miladinovic, Istanbul Olympiad 2000

6: I.Smirin-F.Vallejo Pons, European Team Championship, Leon 2001

7: A.Beliavsky-A.Yermolinsky, Madrid 1998

8: J.Piket-A.Morozevich, Wijk aan Zee 2001

9: T.T.Hoang-G.Antal, Budapest 2002

10: T.Georgescu-K.Kulaots, Iasi 2014

11: G.Jamrich-G.Antal, Budapest 1998

12: P.Hardicsay-G.Antal, Budapest 1999

13: S.Kishnev-R.Rabiega, German League 2001

14: S.Husari-M.Lyell, Budapest 2011

15: G.Flear-I.Miladinovic, Athens 1999

## 16: L.Van Wely-S.Brynell, German League 2015

### **Summary**

The 3 cxd5 variation is a common choice for White. This allows the black queen to come to the central d5-square very early, much like the Scandinavian Defence (1 e4 d5 2 exd5 Qxd5), except that here Black will aim to maintain his queen in the centre for as long as possible. To this end Black must always be ready to play ...e7-e5, whether White defends the d-pawn with e2-e3 or Ng1-f3. This is to enable the f8-bishop to pin on b4 after White plays Nc3, attacking the queen.

One of the sharpest lines for White is to retake on c3 with the bishop, foregoing the possible pawn centre. After 4 e3 e5 5 Nc3 Bb4 6 Bd2 Bxc3 7 Bxc3 exd4 8 Ne2, the most reliable move is 8...Nf6. The lines where White captures on c7 need to be studied thoroughly, as otherwise Black may just end up a pawn down. Check out Games [14-16](#) to see the best attacking ideas for Black.

## Chapter One: Intro

The earliest games Chigorin played using his opening system were against Steinitz. In their 1889 World Championship match, this had arisen via 1 Nf3 d5 2 d4 Bg4 3 c4 Nc6, transposing to Chapter Three.

The first time **1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6** appeared on the board, in Vienna 1898, Steinitz opted for **3.cxd5 Qxd5**, which is a direct attempt at refuting the Chigorin. White is asking Black to prove that his piece versus centre strategy is valid. In other words, White does not believe in the correctness of Black's opening.

From the other side, the fact that White is now obliged to defend the d4-pawn gives Black time to push ...e7-e5, then which enables him to answer Nc3 with ...Bb4, pinning the knight, rather than retreat the queen from its central post. This is the correct course even against **4.Nf3** and is a standard motif of the Chigorin, Black offering a pawn in order to bring his pieces to very active positions. If White opts to take on e5 he probably does best to give the pawn back in exchange for the bishop pair, but in that case there is little point in taking it at all.

[Hence the main lines begin 4.e3 e5 5.Nc3 Bb4 6.Bd2 Bxc3, when White hopes to show that his bishop pair and central pawn majority outweigh Black's activity and lead in development.]

□ **Steinitz,W**  
 ■ **Chigorin,M**  
 1: Vienna  
 [Jimmy Liew]

D07

1898

### 1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.cxd5 Qxd5 4.Nf3

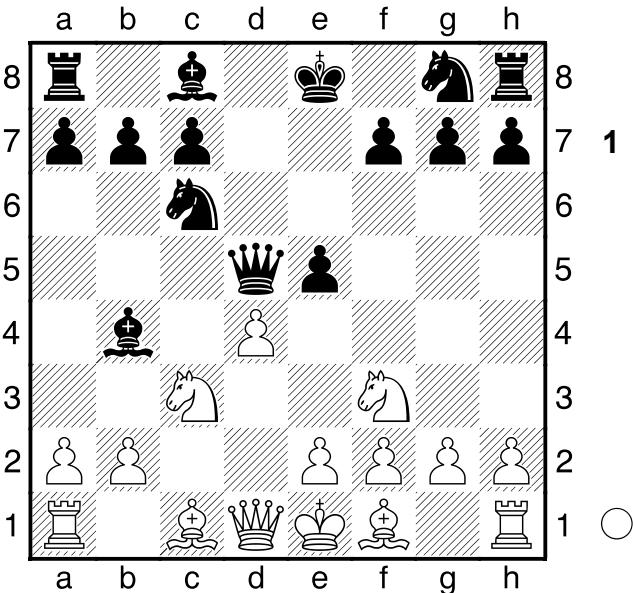
White develops his king's knight, defending the d-pawn, and threatens to attack the queen with the other knight. Black must react positively.

**4...e5!** QUESTION: Doesn't this lose a pawn? Is it a gambit?

ANSWER: Yes, it is a gambit of sorts. White can win a pawn but it's a doubled one and he will lose time and castling rights if he goes for it.

**5.Nc3** This is usually played; [since it's risky to accept the gambit with 5.dxe5 (see the next game). ]

**5...Bb4**



**6.dxe5** Steinitz decides to take the pawn after all.

[ Note that breaking the pin with Bd2 is less testing than in the 4 e3 lines, since 6.Bd2 Bxc3 7.Bxc3 e4 hits the f3-knight, after which 8.Nd2 (or 8.Ne5 Nge7) 8...Nf6 9.e3 0-0

gives Black a safe enough position.] [White can also defend the d-pawn with 6.e3, when exd4 7.exd4 unexpectedly switches openings to a Göring Gambit Declined (1 e4 e5 2 Nf3 Nc6 3 d4 exd4 4 c3 d5 5 exd5 Qxd5 6 cxd4 Bb4+ 7 Nc3). Without going into a lot of detail, Capablanca's Bg4 (7...Nf6 leads to a more complicated game) 8.Be2 Bxf3 9.Bxf3 Qc4! is regarded as a safe equalizer. For example, 10.Bxc6+ (10.Be3 Bxc3+ 11.bxc3 Qxc3+ 12.Kf1 Qc4+ 13.Kg1 Nge7 14.Rc1 Qxa2 15.Ra1 Qc4 16.Rc1 ½-½ was F.Marshall-J.R.Capablanca, Lake Hopatcong 1926; and 10.Qb3 Qxb3 11.axb3 Nge7 12.Be3 0-0-0 13.0-0 a6 is also fine for Black) 10...bxc6! 11.Qe2+ (or 11.Qb3?! Qxb3 12.axb3 a5) 11...Qxe2+ 12.Kxe2 0-0-0 13.Be3 Ne7 and it is White who has to be careful, in view of the weak d-pawn. Note that a2-a3 is a typical mistake, as it drives the black bishop towards the b6-square, increasing the pressure against d4.]

**6...Qxd1+ 7.Kxd1** Now Black has two moves. **7...Bg4**

[Morozhevich recommended 7...Nge7

**A)** Black aims to regain the e5-pawn with ...Ng6 and does indeed equalize easily: 8.Bf4 attempts to hold the pawn with Bf4 always fail, since Black has sufficient attacking resources; Bg4 9.e3 Ng6 10.Be2 0-0-0+ 11.Kc1 Bxf3 12.Bxf3 Ncxe5 13.Bxe5 Nxe5 14.Be2 Bxc3 15.bxc3 Nd3+ 16.Bxd3 Rxd3 17.Kc2 Rd6 18.Rad1 Rhd8 19.Rxd6 Rxd6 20.Rd1 Ra6 21.Kb3 with an unwinnable rook ending which was eventually drawn after 48 moves, A.Canoval Pardo-

C.Ferron Garcia, Catalan League 1999. ( 21.-- );

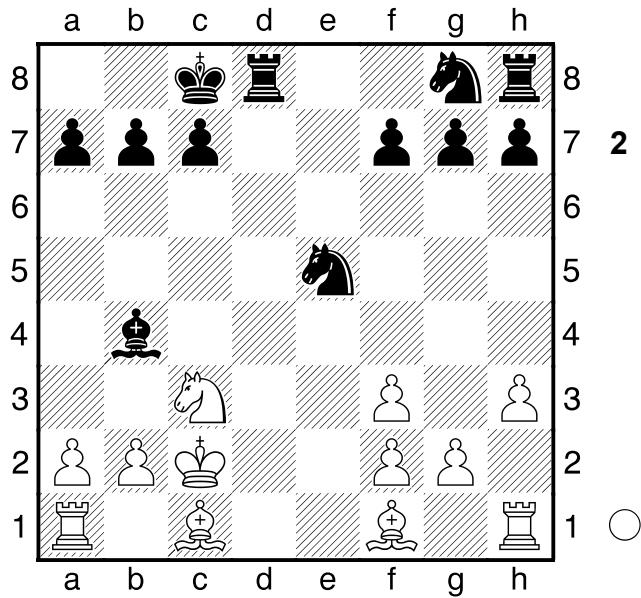
**B)** On the other hand 8.e4 Bg4 9.Be3 Nxe5 10.Be2 N5c6 11.Kc2 f5 12.h3 Bxf3 13.Bxf3 f4! 14.Bxf4 Nd4+ 15.Kd1 Nxf3 (Black might also throw in 15...Rd8 first ) 16.gxf3 0-0 is just equal, M.Lohse-D.Eilmes, correspondence 2007. ]

**8.h3** It is for this reason that Morozevich considered 7...Nge7 to be more accurate. White gives the pawn back immediately to gain the bishop pair.

[Instead, 8.Bf4 Nge7 transposes to the previous note; ]

[and 8.Bg5 h6 9.Bh4 Nge7 10.Bxe7 Bxc3 11.bxc3 Kxe7 is no improvement for White. ]

**8...Bxf3 9.exf3 0-0-0+ 10.Kc2 Nxe5**



**11.Be3 a6**

[Rather than secure the a7-pawn from capture Black might do better to accelerate his development with 11...Ne7 and then:

**A)** 12.f4 N5c6 13.Bc4 (following the main game is worse here because Black has not wasted a move on ...a7-a6) Nd4+ 14.Kb1 Ndf5 15.Kc2 Nxe3+ 16.fxe3 Nf5

17.Rhe1 Rhe8 18.e4 Nd4+ 19.Kb1 b5 20.Bf1 c6 and Black has a fine position, V.Lozhnikov-A. Gurkin, Kazakh Championship, Kostanay 2013.;

**B)** 12.Be2 Nf5 (this shows how useful the saved tempo is, as exchanging on e3 equalizes the game immediately) 13.Rad1 (not 13.Bxa7? Nc6 14.Be3 Ncd4+ with threats of ...Bxc3 and ...Nxe2 winning ) 13...Nxe3+ 14.fxe3 Bc5 15.e4 Ng6 and the weak dark squares e3, f4 and g3 give Black a very comfortable game.;

**C)** 12.Bxa7 N7c6 (even 12...b6!? 13.Ba6+ Kd7 14.Rad1+ Ke6 15.Nb5 Bc5! 16.Nxc7+ Kf6 is not entirely clear, as White has difficulties extricating his minor pieces ) 13.Be3 Nd4+ 14.Bxd4 (after 14.Kc1 Nf5 15.Bf4 Rhe8 Black clearly has more than enough compensation ) 14...Rxd4 and White is a safe pawn up but it is a doubled pawn, and the position is sufficiently simplified that Black can hold the ending. Whether this is to your liking or not is another point entirely, since Black can only expect one result with reasonable play. ]

**12.f4** White wants to bring his king's bishop to the active c4-square.

[Morozevich suggests 12.Be2 , followed by Rad1, developing the queen's rook in a harmonious manner, but in this case Black has time for Ne7 13.Rad1 Nf5 and seems safe enough.]

**12...Nc6 13.Bc4**

[It looks better to bring the rook out first with 13.Rd1 . ]

**13...Nd4+ 14.Kc1** QUESTION: Why is White locking in his queen's rook? Isn't

it better to capture on d4?

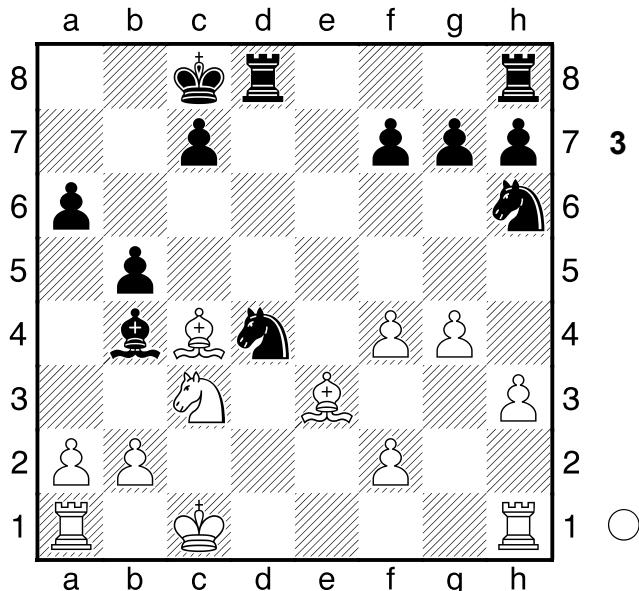
ANSWER: White wants to keep the two bishops even if it means a little inconvenience. If he subsequently unravels his queenside, the bishop pair will be a clear advantage.

[Whereas 14.Bxd4 Rxd4 simplifies the position and solves all Black's problems; e.g. 15.Bxf7 Rxf4 16.Be6+ Kb8 17.f3 Ne7 18.Rhe1 Nc6 19.Rad1 Nd4+ 20.Kb1 Rd8 with equality.]

**14...Nh6?!** Again Chigorin plays too cautiously. This develops and defends the f7-pawn but allows White to shut the knight out with his next move.

[ 14...Ne7 was better, intending 15.Bxf7 (or 15.g4 f5) 15...Nef5 with decent counterplay.]

### 15.g4 b5



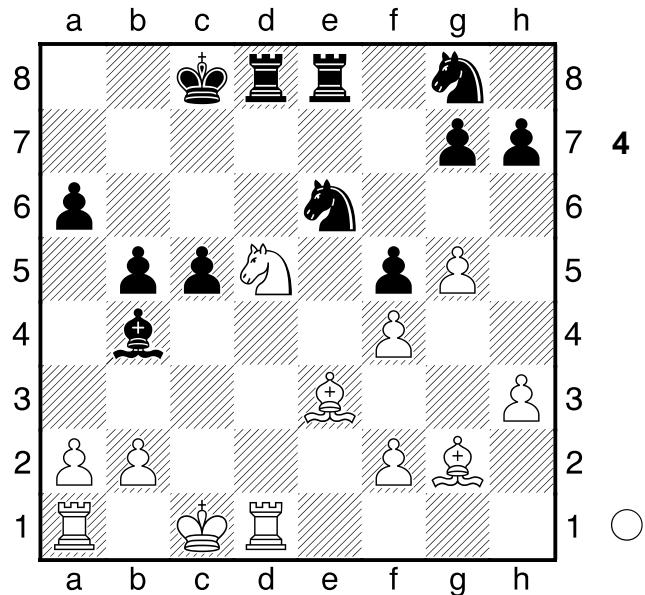
### 16.Rd1 c5 17.Bf1 Rhe8?

[Chigorin misses his last chance to get a playable game: 17...Rd7! 18.Bg2 Rhd8 (taking control of d5 and threatening 19...Bxc3 20.bxc3 Nb3+, winning the exchange) 19.Kb1 Ba5 (or if 19...f5 20.g5 Nf7 then 21.a4 with the initiative – Morozevich) 20.Ne4 (now 20.a4?! b4 21.Ne4

Nb3 is better for Black) 20...Bb6 21.f5 (after 21.b3 f5 the position is nicely closed for Black's knights) 21...Ng8 22.b3 (White is slowly unravelling his queenside) Nf6 (or 22...Ne7 23.Rc1) 23.Nxf6 gxf6 24.Kb2 h5 25.a4 hxg4 26.hxg4 bxa4 27.Rxa4 a5, when Black's powerfully placed knight on d4 compensates somewhat for the activity of the white bishops.]

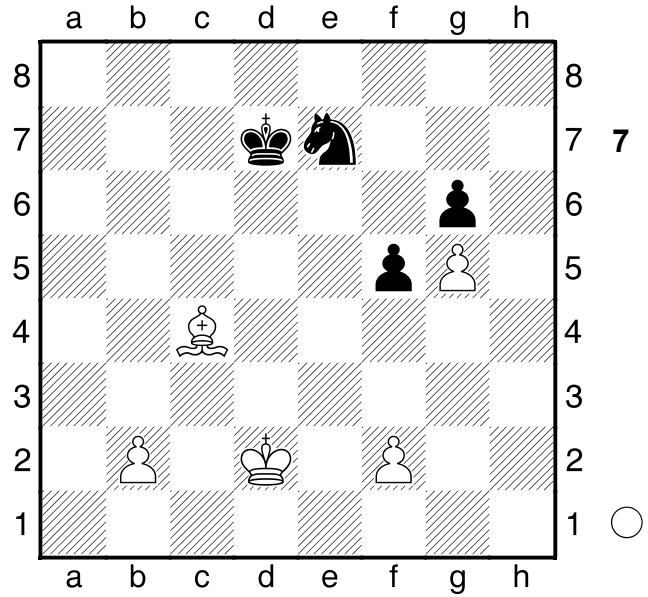
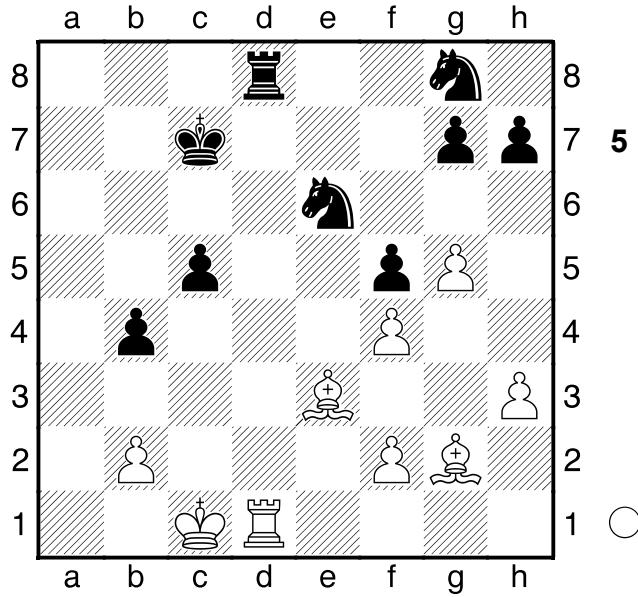
### 18.Bg2 f5 19.g5 Ng8 20.Nd5 Ne6

[If 20...Ba5 then 21.b4! Bxb4 22.Nxb4 Ne2+ 23.Kc2 cxb4 24.Re1! Nc3 (or 24...Nd4+ 25.Kb2 Ne7 26.a4) 25.Bb6 Rxe1 26.Rxe1 Rf8 27.Bc5 Rd8 28.Bxb4 and Black is losing as the knights are no match for the two monster bishops.]

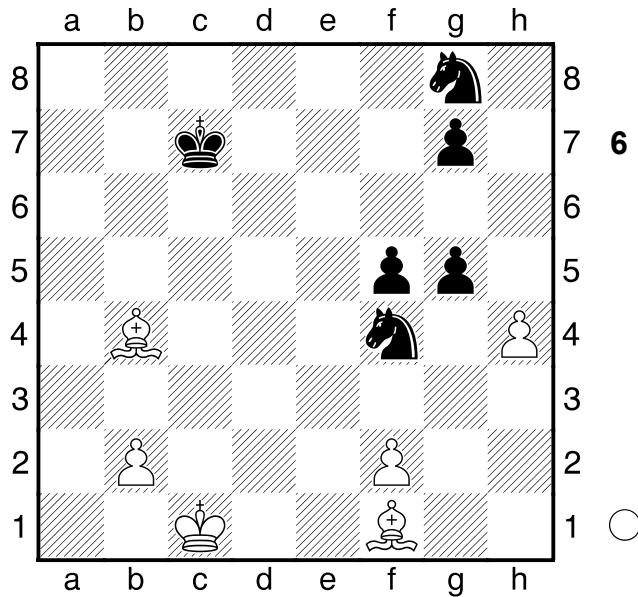


**21.a4** Now Steinitz forces liquidation into a winning ending. **21...bxa4 22.Rxa4 a5 23.Nxb4 axb4 24.Ra8+ Kc7 25.Raxd8 Rxd8**

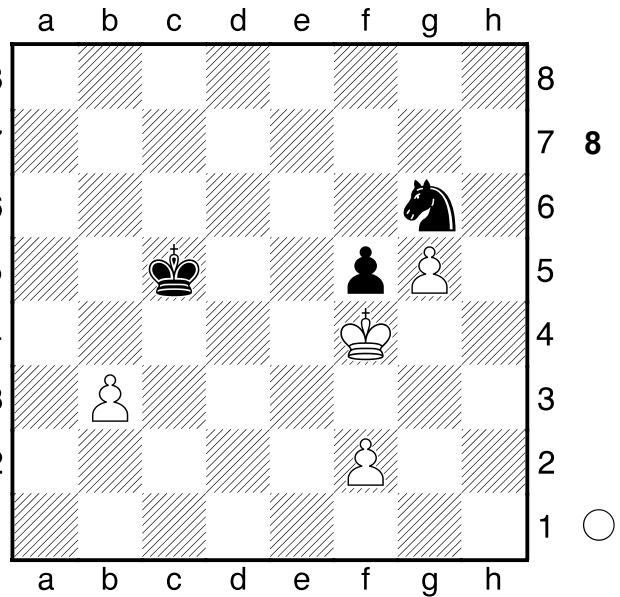
(Diagram 5)



**26.Rxd8 Nxd8 27.Bxc5 Ne6 28.Bxb4  
Nxf4 29.Bf1 h6 30.h4 hxg5**



**36.Bf7 Kd6 37.Ke3 Kc5 38.Kf4 Kd6  
39.b3 Kc5 40.Bxg6 Nxg6+**

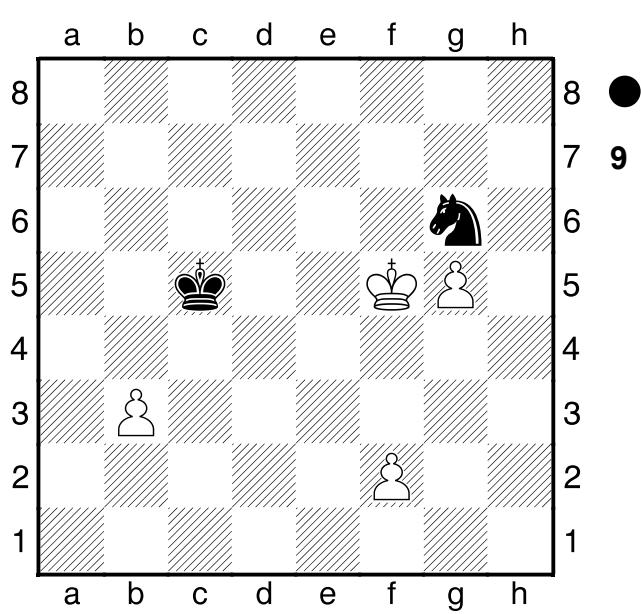


**31.hxg5 Nd5 32.Bf8 g6 33.Bc4 Nge7  
34.Kd2 Kd7 35.Bxe7 Nxe7**

(Diagram 7)

**41.Kxf5**

(Diagram 9)

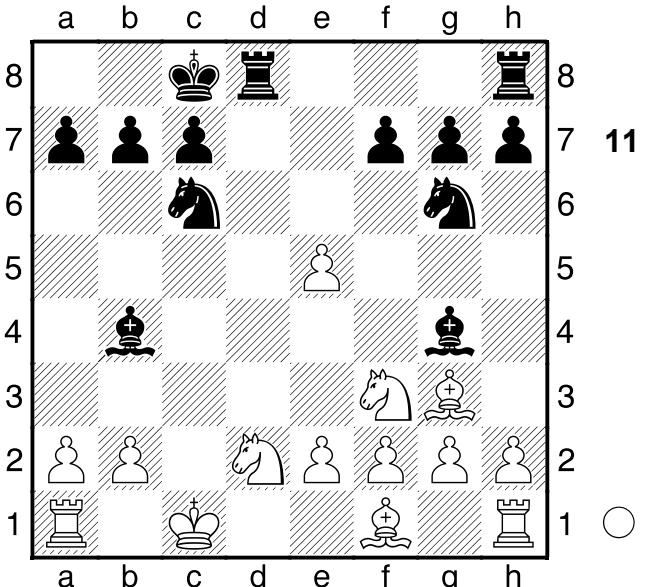


**1-0**

Drzemicki,D  
 Masternak,G  
 2: Slupsk  
 [Jimmy Liew]

D08

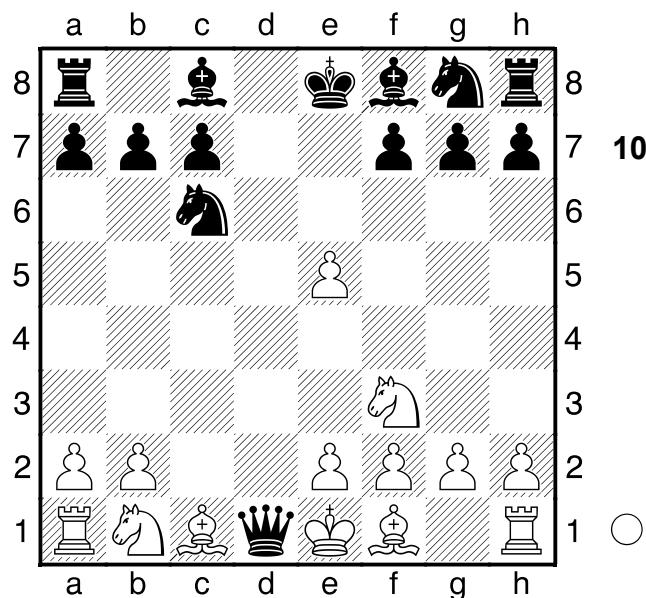
1992



**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.cxd5 Qxd5 4.Nf3**

**e5!** **5.dxe5?!** As a general rule the e5-pawn should never be taken, since White falls behind in development and his king will be exposed in the centre.

**5...Qxd1+**



**6.Kxd1 Bg4 7.Bf4** It is logical to try and hang on to the pawn, even if there is virtually no chance of succeeding.

**7...Nge7 8.Nbd2 Ng6 9.Bg3 0-0-0**

**10.Kc1?!** It is surprising how quickly White's position goes downhill.

[Here he should brave potential checks from b4 or f5 with 10.Kc2 and might yet equalize; for instance, after something like h5 (or 10...Bb4 11.Rd1) 11.h3 Be6 12.e3 Nb4+ (or 12...Bb4 13.Nb3 Bf5+ 14.Kc1 Rhe8 15.a3 Bf8 16.Bb5) 13.Kc1 Nxa2+ 14.Kb1 Bb4 15.Bc4 .]

**10...Bb4**

(Diagram 11)

Notice how easily Black develops his pieces to good squares. Meanwhile White still has to figure out how to bring out his king's bishop and rooks.

**11.a3?!**

[Inserting 11.h3

**A)** 11...Bh5 first, as in J.Bednar-T. Vojta, Tatranske Zruby 2013, would help White, since 12.a3 Bxd2+ 13.Nxd2 Ngxe5? then fails to 14.Bxe5 Nxe5 15.f4 and 16.g4, trapping the h5-bishop. (15.--);  
**B)** So Black should play 11...Be6!, intending 12.Nb3 (or 12.e3 Ngxe5!) 12...Rhe8 13.e3 Ngxe5, regaining the pawn with advantage.]

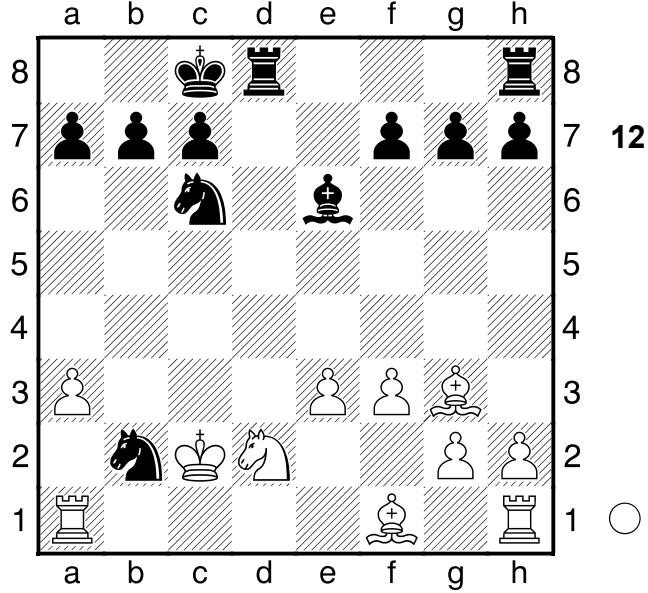
**11...Bxd2+ 12.Nxd2 Ngxe5 13.f3?!**

**Be6 14.e3 Nd3+ Now Black wins a pawn. 15.Kc2**

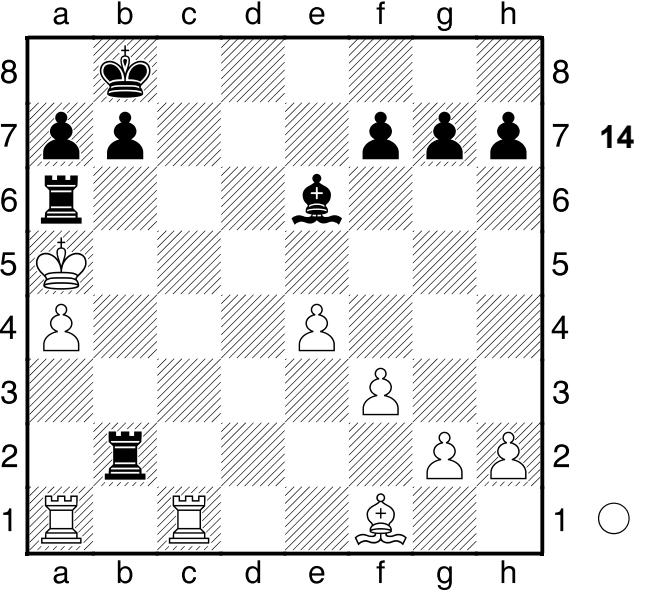
[15.Bxd3 Rxd3 16.Kc2 Rhd8 17.Rad1 Rxe3 is worse.]

**15...Nxb2**

(Diagram 12)

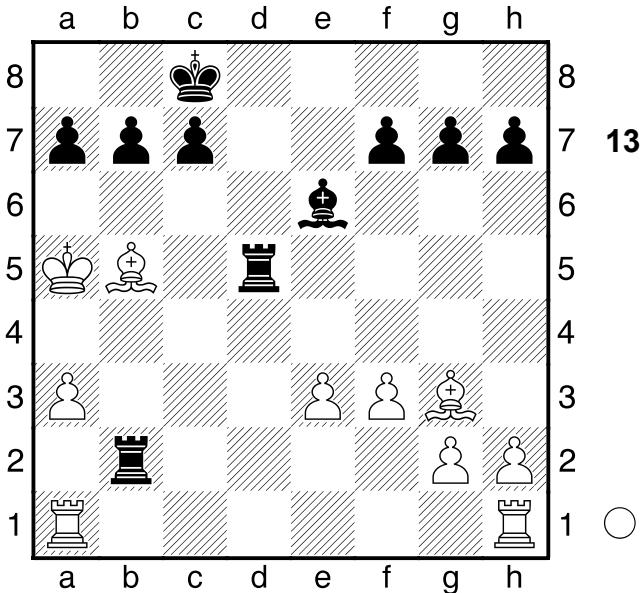


12



14

**16.Bb5 Na5 17.Kxb2 Rxd2+ 18.Kc3  
Rhd8 19.Kb4 Rb2+! 20.Kxa5 Rd5**



13

0-1

**21.a4 Kb8** Threatening mate in two with 22...b6+ 23 Ka6 Bc8. White is only able to delay the end for a few moves.

**22.Bxc7+ Kxc7 23.Rhc1+ Kb8 24.e4  
Rd6 25.Bf1 Ra6+!**

[In view of 25...Ra6+ 26.Bxa6 b6# .]

(Diagram 14)

Wojtaszek,R  
Rapport,R  
3: Biel  
[Jimmy Liew]

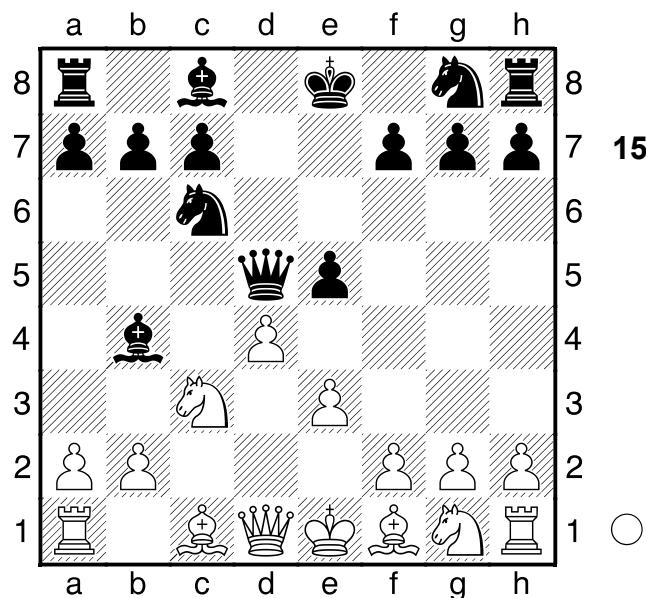
D07

2015

### 1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.cxd5 Qxd5 4.e3

White's main move, solidly supporting the d4-pawn before targeting the enemy queen. Black must react positively or be pushed backwards.

4...e5 5.Nc3 Bb4



### 6.a3!?

[The usual move here is 6.Bd2, which we'll examine in the rest of the chapter. The text is similar to Bxc3 7.bxc3 (Games 4-9) in that White gains the bishop pair and a new c-pawn, but the fact the c1-bishop is left at home means it can be deployed on the a3-f8 diagonal (after a3-a4), whereas in 6 Bd2 lines Black can usually prevent an intended Bb4 with ...a7-a5.]

[Finally, 6.Nf3 transposes to 4 Nf3 e5 5 cxd5 Qxd5 6 e3 in the notes to Game 1.]

6...Bxc3+ 7.bxc3 Nf6 As we'll see in

the main lines, rapid development is the best course for Black. 8.c4 The most consistent and popular move.

[Others:

- a) 8.f3 can be met by 0-0 (or 8...e4!? 9.c4 Qh5 10.Qc2 0-0 11.f4?! Ne7!, as in N.Maiorov-G. Harutjunyan, Roquetas de Mar 2017 )

9.c4 Qd8! 10.d5 and now, since the bishop is missing from d2, Na5! 11.e4 Nxe4!? 12.fxe4 Qh4+ with good play for the piece.]

[b) 8.Nf3 encourages Bg4!?

**A)** if 9.h3 Bxf3 10.gxf3 (or 10.Qxf3 Qb3 11.Bd2 0-0 with standard play ), E.Cooke-G. Antal, Budapest 1999, then 10...0-0;

**B)** 9.Be2 e4 10.Nd2 ( 10.Ng1 plans to retake on e2 with the knight and head for f4, but this leaves c4 firmly under Black's control; V.Kovacevic-A.Raetsky, Geneva 2005, continued Bxe2 11.Nxe2 0-0 12.Rb1 b6 13.Qa4 Na5 14.Rb4 and now Black should play c6 , followed by ...Nc4 and ...b6-b5, seeing that taking the knight loses the exchange ) 10...Bxe2 11.Qxe2 0-0 12.0-0 Rfe8 13.c4

Qg5 (the queen is more aggressively placed here than in the main game) 14.f3 ( 14.Bb2 leaves the e3-pawn vulnerable after f2-f3; e.g. Ne7 15.f3 Nf5 and Black is very comfortable ) 14...Qg6 15.f4 (opening the e-file will again leave e3 weak) Ne7 (the black knights will find good posts on light squares) 16.Rb1 b6 17.Bb2 Nf5 and Black is at least equal.]

**8...Qd6 9.d5 Nb8!** Seeing as White is planning to bring his dark-squared bishop to a3, the retreat to b8 seems

than ...Ne7 here. Black intends to redevelop the knight at a6, when it can block the white bishop from either a5 or b4.

[The trouble with 9...Ne7 is that, after 10.a4, Black risks ending up in an inferior version of a 6 Bd2 main line.

**A) 10...Qb4+ 11.Bd2 Qd6**

was agreed drawn in K.Urban-M. Kaminski, Polish Championship, Brzeg Dolny 1996, but obviously White should play on. To this end 12.Qb1 is the same as 6 Bd2 Bxc3 7 bxc3 Nf6 8 c4 Qd6 9 d5 Ne7 10 Qb1 (see the notes to Game 4) but with an extra a2-a4 for White, which is useful since it prevents any ...b7-b5 counterplay. After a5 13.Bd3 0-0 14.Ne2 c6 15.e4 Nd7 16.0-0 Nc5 17.Bc1 Nxd3?! 18.Qxd3 c5 19.f4, White was clearly better in Z. Bratanov-B.Marzolf, Rennes 2010.;

**B) 10...c5 11.Bb2 0-0**

can be similarly compared with 6 Bd2 Bxc3 7 bxc3 Nf6 8 c4 Qd6 9 d5 Ne7 10 Qb1 0-0 11 Bb4 c5 12 Bc3!, which is good for White anyway. Here he has the extra a2-a4 again and it's his move as well. I. Bukavshin-R.Rapport, Moscow 2015, continued 12.Nf3 ( 12.Ne2 should give White a safe edge ) 12...Ng6 13.Nd2 e4! (the best chance, sacrificing a pawn for the initiative before White consolidates) 14.Bxf6 Qxf6 15.Nxe4 Qe5 16.Nd2 Bg4 17.Be2 (or 17.Qc1 f5 18.h3 Bh5 19.Ra3 f4 20.e4 Qg5 with compensation as White is unable to complete development ) 17...Bxe2 18.Kxe2 Rae8 19.Kf1 f5 20.g3?! (rather than preventing Black's next move, this just encourages it; 20 Ra3 was better) f4! (Rapport wastes no time to blast

open the position; the white king will be completely naked in a few moves) 21.exf4 Nxf4 22.gxf4 Qxf4 23.f3 Re3 24.Rg1 Qxh2 25.Rg2 Qh4 26.Rb1 and now Rfe8! 27.Ne4 (delaying this with 27.a5? , say, allows h5! 28.Ne4 R3xe4! 29.fxe4 Qh1+ 30.Kf2 Rf8+ 31.Kg3 h4+ and Black wins – Marin ) 27...Rf8 28.Kg1 (or 28.Nd2 Rfe8 , repeating ) 28...Rxf3 29.Rxb7 Qxe4 30.Rgxf7+ Kh8 31.Rxh7+ Qxh7 32.Rxh7+ Kxh7 should be a draw.;

**C) 10...Nd7 11.Ba3 Nc5**

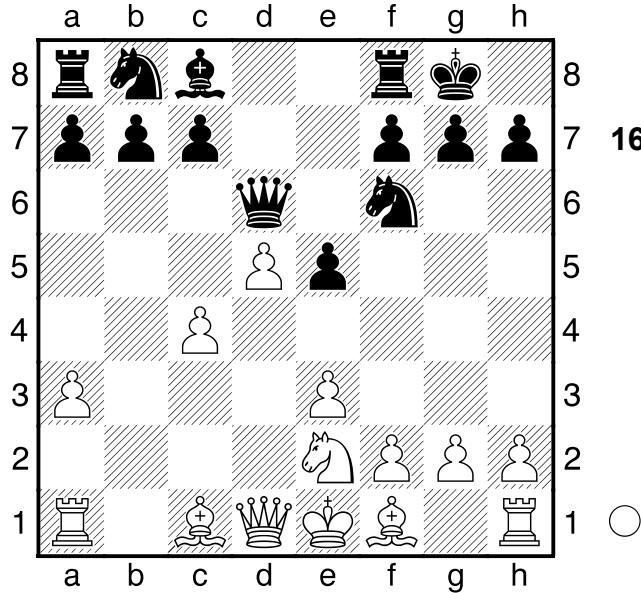
is a less effective blockader, because the knight is not stable and will need to be supported by ...b7-b6, after which White has plans of a4-a5 as well as harassing the black queen with Ne2-c3-b5. D. Khismatullin-R.Pasiev, Taganrog 2014, continued 12.Ne2 Bg4 13.f3 Bd7 14.Nc3 f5 15.Be2 b6 16.0-0 0-0 17.e4 Kh8 18.Qc1 f4 ( 18...a6 ) 19.Nb5 Bxb5 20.cxb5 Ng8 21.Bxc5 bxc5 22.Qa3 Nf6 23.Rfc1 Nd7 and Black was permanently tied down to the weakness on c5. White eventually broke through on the queenside with a well-timed a4-a5 and b5-b6 break. ]

## 10.Ne2

[White can still play 10.a4 directly: Na6 11.Ba3 Nc5 12.Ne2 (after 12.Nf3 Bg4 13.Be2 , D.G.Meier-M. Jäckle, German League 2005, and now b6 14.0-0 0-0 15.Nd2 Bxe2 16.Qxe2 e4 , the position is roughly equal; Black has a nice blockade on the queenside and his e4-pawn restricts the white pieces ) 12...0-0 ( 12...Qa6!? is not completely stupid ) 13.Nc3 a6?! rather passive; (instead,

13...Bf5!? 14.f3 Qb6 is an interesting idea, intending 15.e4 Bxe4!?  
 16.Bxc5 Qxc5 17.Nxe4 Nxe4  
 18.fxe4 f5 , when the opening of the f-file gives Black attacking chances for his piece sacrifice ) 14.Be2 Bf5 15.f3 e4 16.f4 Rfe8 17.g4 Bc8 18.g5 Nfd7 19.h4 Qb6 20.Kf2 Qa5 (White is clearly better here but now goes wrong) 21.Bb2? Nd3+! 22.Bxd3 exd3 23.Qxd3 Nc5 24.Qd4 Nb3 25.Qd3 Nc5 26.Qc2? (he should have taken the draw) Qb4! 27.Kf3 Bf5 28.Qxf5 Qxb2 29.Rac1 Qd2 30.Rhe1 Nd3 31.Re2 Rxe3+!  
 32.Rxe3 Qf2+ 0-1 S.Pilischki-P.  
 Koutny, Stare Mesto 2010. ]

## 10...0-0



## 11.Nc3 Bf5 12.a4 Na6 13.Ba3 Nb4

[ Normally the knight goes to c5 as in the previous note (to which 13...Nc5 would transpose). Rapport has a different idea, planning to play both ...a7-a5 and ...c7-c5, blocking the queenside completely, after which Black can look for counterplay on the kingside. ]

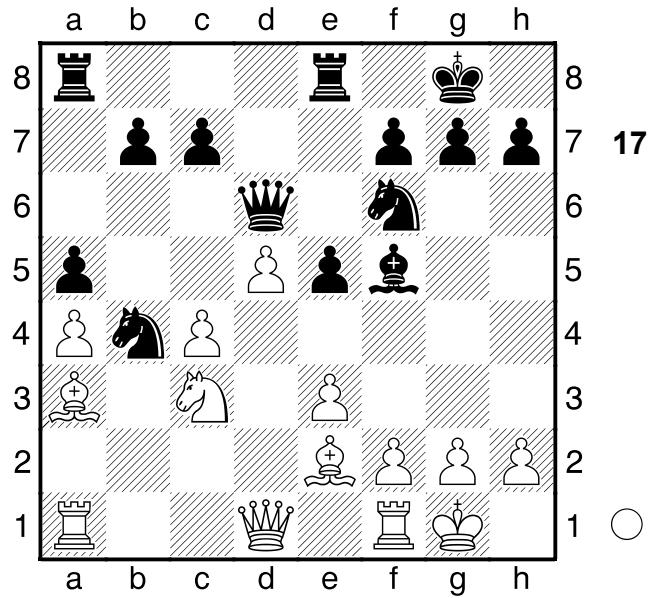
## 14.Be2 a5

[ GM Mihail Marin suggests

14...Nc2+!? 15.Qxc2 Bxc2 16.Bxd6 cxd6 17.f3 Bg6 18.e4 Rfd8 19.Kf2 Nd7 as an equalizing line. Although Black is reduced to passive defence, it is hard to see how White can make any significant progress. ]

## 15.0-0 Rfe8

[ Opening things up with 15...c6!? is risky, but Black might be able to get away with it; for example, 16.dxc6 (or 16.Ra2 cxd5 17.Rd2 Rfc8) 16...Qxd1 17.Rfxd1 bxc6 18.Rd6 Rfd8 19.Rad1 Rxd6 20.Rxd6 Rb8 looks fairly balanced. ]



## 16.Rc1 c5

[ After 16...Ne4?! 17.Nxe4! ( 17.Nb5 Qc5 18.Bd3 Bg6 19.h4 Nf6 is just fine, I think; e.g. 20.Bxg6 hxg6 21.Qb3 Ne4 22.Rb1 Red8! 23.Bxb4 axb4 24.Qxb4 Qxb4 25.Rxb4 c6 and Black regains the pawn ) 17...Bxe4 18.f3 Bf5 19.e4 Qc5+ 20.Kh1 Bd7 , the knight on b4 may shut down the queenside, but White can generate strong play on the other flank with 21.Bb2 and f3-f4. ]

## 17.f3 Bd7

[ Alternatively, 17...e4!? 18.f4 Qd7

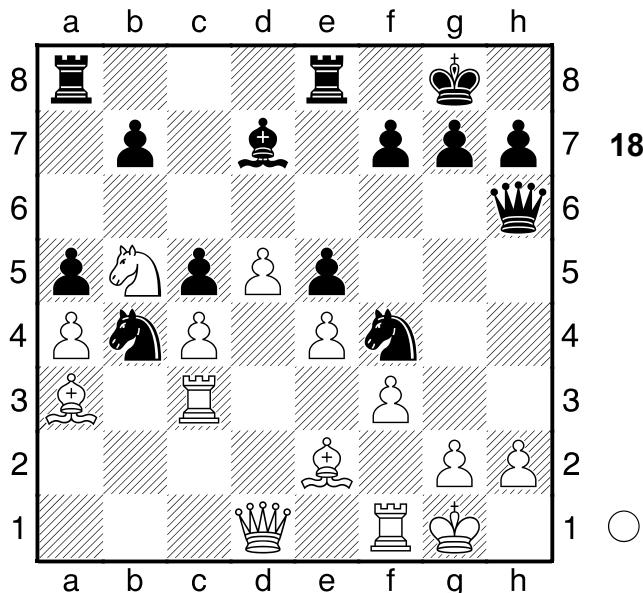
19.Bb2 Ra6 is unclear, according to Marin. Note that 20.h3? (intending g2-g4) is not a good idea because of Bxh3! 21.gxh3 Qxh3 with a strong attack for Black. ]

### 18.e4 Nh5 19.Nb5 Qh6 20.Rc3

[ Not 20.Nc7?? since Qe3+ picks up the a3-bishop, but now the threat of Nc7, winning the exchange, is real. Or is it? ]

### 20...Nf4?!

[ 20...Rad8 looks better here, followed by ...f7-f5. ]



**EXERCISE:** Why did Black play 20...Nf4 then? Did he forget about Nc7, or is there some hidden threat? Try to work out what Rapport had seen.

**21.g3!** Wojtaszek correctly declines the c7-fork and just attacks the black knight.

[ ANSWER: Rapport's idea was that 21.Nc7? fails to Bxa4 22.Qe1 Na2! (surprisingly the c3-rook has no good squares) 23.Rf2 (not 23.Re3?? Nh3+ 24.gxh3 Qxe3+ and ...Qxa3; or 23.Rd3 Nxd3 24.Bxd3 Nb4 25.Bxb4 cxb4 26.Nxe8 Bxe8 and Black is winning with his two passed pawns on the queenside) 23...Nxc3 24.Qxc3

Qg6 25.Kh1 Qd6 26.Nxa8 Rxa8 and Black emerges with an extra pawn. ]

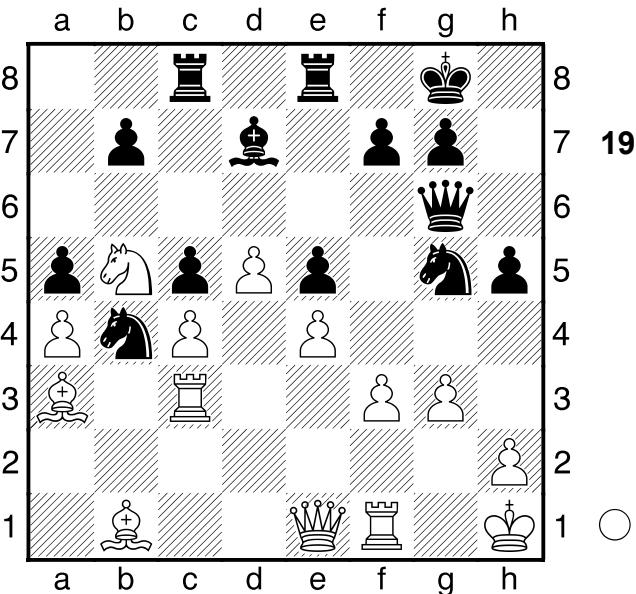
### 21...Nh3+

[ This move was criticized by Marin, who prefers 21...Nxe2+ 22.Qxe2 Rad8 , when Black still has the option of ...f7-f5, or if 23.g4 then perhaps g5 , aiming to set up a dark square blockade across the board. ]

**22.Kh1 Rac8 23.Bd3** White prepares the advance of his f-pawn. Black's h3-knight is not doing anything much now.

**23...Qg6?!** He should take the d3-bishop and follow with ...b7-b6, when Black's position is passive but defensible, whereas after White's next the b4-knight is left out of the game as well.

**24.Bb1 h5** Hoping to prevent being steam-rolled on the kingside. **25.Qe1 Ng5?!**



This just encourages White to push f3-f4, but it's hard to suggest a good move for Black anymore.

### 26.Re3

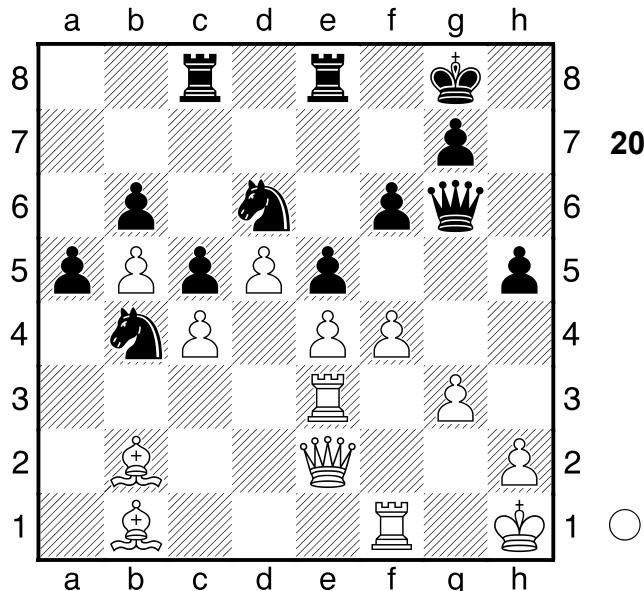
[ Missing the chance to play 26.f4! exf4? ( 26...Nh7 is necessary, when 27.fxe5 Rxe5 28.Bb2 Rce8 29.Re3 Bh3 30.Bxe5 Rxe5 31.Rf4

gives Black some compensation for the exchange, though it shouldn't really be enough – Ramirez Alvarez ) 27.e5 Qc6!? ( 27...Bf5 28.Bxf5 Qxf5 29.Nd6 is just winning ) 28.Na7 (not 28.dxc6? Bxc6+ 29.Kg1?? Nh3# ) 28...Nxd5 29.Nxc6 Bxc6 30.Be4! (deflection!) Nxe4 31.cxd5 Bxd5 32.Kg1 and there is nothing left for Black than to resign. ]

### 26...Bxb5 27.axb5 f6 28.f4 Nf7

Black has reinforced his position on the dark squares, but White still has good chances on the kingside with the g3-g4 break, and Marin's suggestion of throwing in ...Qg4 to interfere with it is only a temporary measure after Ref3, followed by Kg2 and h2-h3.

**29.Qe2 Nd6?!** The knight was better where it was. **30.Bb2 b6?!**



This allows White an unexpected opportunity.

**31.h3!?** It turns out there was no need to prepare g3-g4 here.

[ Marin points out a forced win with 31.g4! ]

**A) 31...hgx4 32.fxe5 fxe5 33.Rg1 Rc7 34.Rxg4 Qf6 35.Rf3 Qh6 36.Rfg3 (Marin) Rd7 37.Rg5**

(if the e5-pawn falls the bishop on b2 becomes all powerful) Qf6

38.Qh5 Rde7 39.Rf3

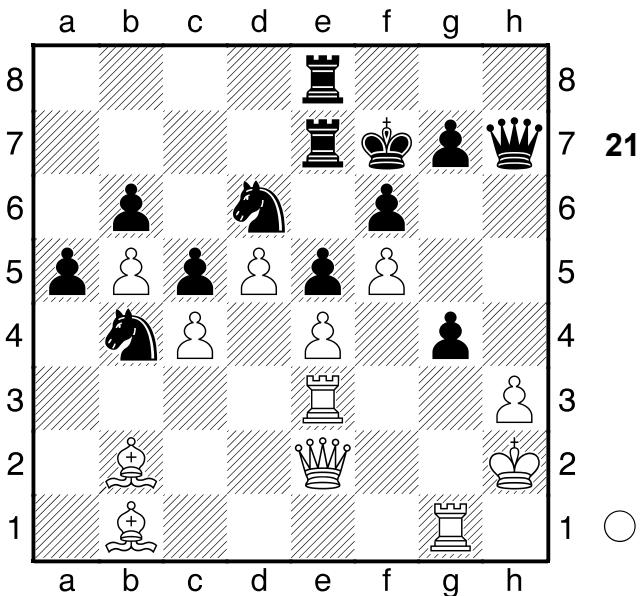
and the queen is lost. ( 39.-- );

**B) After 31...Qxg4 32.Ref3!**

Black is a sitting duck on the g-file; e.g. Re7 33.Rg1 Qd7 (while 33...Qh4 34.Bc3 and Be1 traps the queen ) 34.fxe5 fxe5 35.Rf6 Rf8 36.Rh6 and Qxh5 is a mating attack. ]

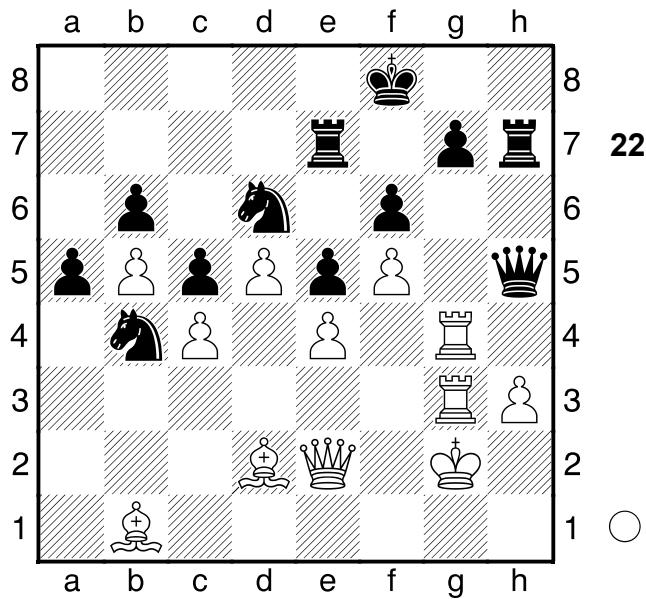
### 31...Rc7 32.Kh2 Rce7 33.f5?

After this, White's winning chances are greatly diminished. **33...Qh7 34.Rg1 Kf7 35.g4 hxg4**

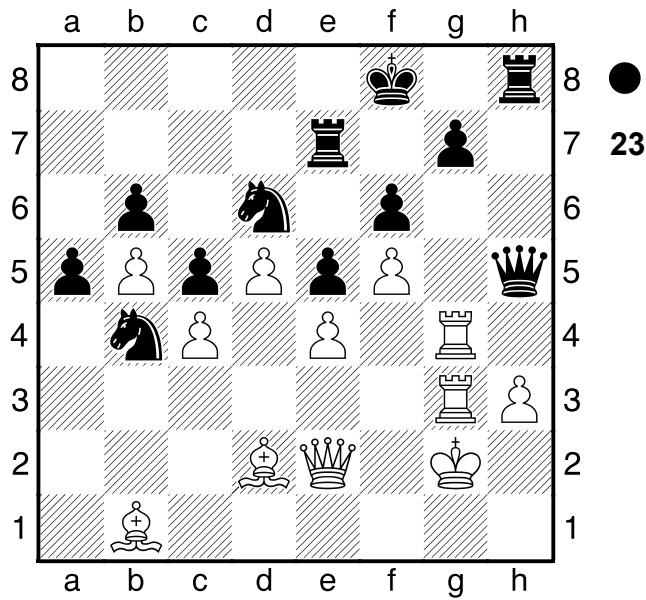


**36.Rxg4 Rh8** Black now has only one weakness, the g7-pawn, and a well-known rule is that you need two weaknesses in order to win. **37.Reg3 Ke8 38.Bc1 Kf8 39.Kg2 Qh5 40.Bd2 Rh7**

(Diagram 22)



**41.Bc1 Rh8 42.Bd2**



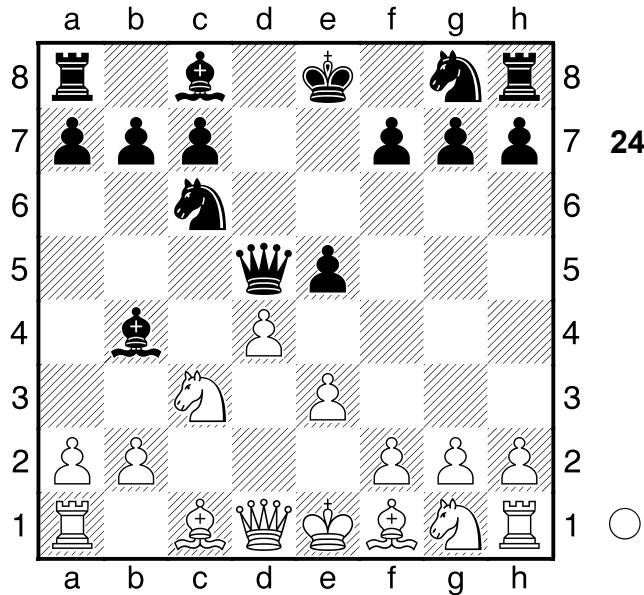
. Rapport really dodged a bullet here.  
½-½

**Glavina,P**  
 **Romero Holmes,A**  
 4: Spanish League  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

D07

2004

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.cxd5 Qxd5 4.e3 e5 5.Nc3 Bb4**



**6.Bd2** The main move, breaking the pin on the c3-knight. **6...Bxc3** Giving up the bishop pair is obligatory since Black does not want to lose any time moving his queen. **7.bxc3**

[The aggressive alternative 7.Bxc3 is examined in Games 10-16.]

**7...Nf6** This is the most common continuation nowadays. Previously Black took steps to prevent the rapid advance of the central pawns, but it seems there is no need, and other moves allow White to develop easily and count on his positional advantages.

[For instance:

a) 7...exd4 8.cxd4 Nf6 9.Nf3  
 (9.Ne2 is also good) 9...Ne4 10.Be2  
 0-0 11.0-0 Bg4 12.Qc2 Nxd2  
 13.Qxd2 Rad8 14.Rfc1 and Black's position is unattractive, A.Rubinstein-

S.Tartakower, San Remo 1930.]  
 [b) 7...Qd6 8.Bd3 Nf6 (or 8...f5  
 9.Ne2 Nf6 10.Bc1! Be6 11.Qa4 e4  
 12.Bb5 Nd5 13.Ba3 with a big  
 advantage, O.Cvitan-F.Levin, Biel  
 1997) 9.f3 0-0 10.Ne2 Re8 11.0-0  
 Be6 12.Qc1 Rad8 13.Be1 Bc8  
 14.Bf2 and Black was left without  
 counterplay in A.Beliavsky-I.  
 Miladinovic, Belgrade 1995.]

**8.Ne2** Simple development sets Black few problems, who is mobilizing more rapidly.

[The same applies to 8.Nf3 0-0  
 9.Qc2 Bg4 10.c4 Qd6 11.dxe5  
 Nxe5 12.Nxe5 Qxe5 13.Bc3 Qg5  
 14.Bd3 Rad8 15.Bxf6 Qxf6 16.0-0  
 g6 and Black was equal in D.  
 Anagnostopoulos-I.Miladinovic,  
 Karditsa 1996.]

[The main move is 8.f3, intending to build a big centre with e3-e4 and d4-d5. This is covered in the next five games.]

[White can also push his pawns at once: 8.c4 Qd6 9.d5 Ne7  
 (9...Nb8!?, intending ...Na6 as in Game 3, is also possible) 10.Qb1 threatening Bb4, which Black should probably prevent; (10.Qb3 a5; and  
 10.Qa4+ Bd7 11.Qb3 a5  
 are similar; while 10.Nf3 c6! 11.Bc3  
 e4 12.Be5 Qd8 sees the white pawn phalanx dissolve) 10...a5  
 (White looks better after 10...0-0  
 11.Bb4 c5 12.Bc3!, as in A.Yusupov-R.Rabiega, Frankfurt rapid 2000,  
 where b5!? 13.Qxb5 Rb8 14.Qa5  
 Ne4 15.Nf3 Ng6 16.Nd2 didn't  
 amount to much for Black) 11.e4 (or  
 11.Bd3 c6 12.e4 b5!, exploding the  
 white centre, S.Bogdanovich-A.  
 Volovikov, Ternopil 2006) 11...0-0  
 12.Nf3 (if 12.f3 c6 13.a4, as in V.  
 Popov-A.Utkin, Peterhof 2005, then

*Nd7* with various ideas of ...Nc5, ...f7-f5, ...Qg6, ...b7-b6 and ...Ba6 ) 12...c6 13.Bc3? Ng6 14.Bd3 b5! (again this move) 15.Nd2? Nf4 16.Bf1 cxd5 17.cxd5 Ng4! and Black had a decisive attack which he conducted with precision: 18.Qc2 Nxf2! 19.Kxf2 Qc5+ 20.Kf3 Bg4+! 21.Kxg4 Qf2 22.g3 h5+ 23.Kh4 f6 with 24...g5 mate to follow, so 0-1 S.Farago-R. Bigaliev, Budapest 1996. ]

[Finally, 8.Qb3 seeks an endgame/queenless middlegame, which Black should avoid for the moment: Qd6 9.Bc1 Be6 10.Ba3 (after 10.Qxb7 0-0, Black has more than enough for the pawn; e.g. 11.Nf3 exd4 12.Nxd4 Nxd4 13.cxd4 Rfb8 14.Qa6 Qb4+ 15.Bd2 Qb2 16.Rd1 Ne4 , D.White-J. Brailsford, correspondence 2007 ) 10...Bxb3 11.Bxd6 Ba4!? (Morozevich)

**A)** 12.Bxc7 exd4 13.cxd4 Nb4 14.Rb1 Nc2+ 15.Ke2 Rc8 16.Rxb7 (not 16.Be5?! Na3 17.Rxb7 Rc2+ 18.Kd3 Bc6 , threatening ...Be4 mate ) 16...0-0 17.Nh3? Nd5 18.Ba5 Rfe8 19.Kd2 Ncxe3! and Black was clearly better in Jo.Ivanov-M.Lyell, Palma de Mallorca 2013; note that 20.fxe3? loses rapidly to Rc2+ 21.Ke1 (or 21.Kd3? Rxe3#) 21...Nxe3 ;

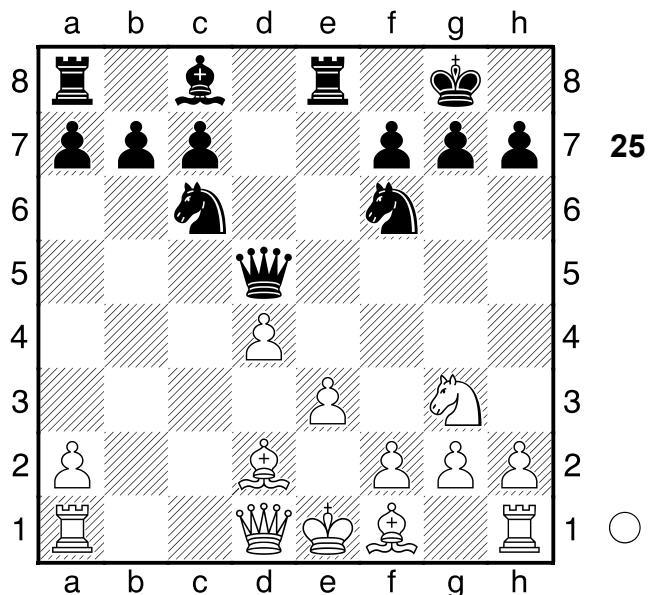
**B)** Or 12.Bxe5 Nxe5 13.dxe5 Nd7 14.f4 (or 14.Nf3 Bc6) 14...f6 with compensation. ]

**8...0-0 9.Ng3?**! This is rather slow, and it is unclear what the knight is doing on g3 in any case.

[White should opt for 9.c4! Qd6 (not 9...Qxc4?? 10.Nf4 , trapping the queen ) 10.d5 after all, though Black can aim for rapid counterplay with ...c7-c6 and ...b7-b5 again. For

example, Ne7 11.Nc3 (or 11.Qb3 a5 12.Nc3 c6 13.e4 b5! as in Z.Kozul-N.Fercec, Ljubljana 2004 ) 11...c6 12.e4 (S.Halkias-T.Bae, Isle of Man 2003) b5! , when 13.Bg5 b4 14.Bxf6 Qxf6 15.Na4 Rd8 16.Qb3 a5 17.Rd1 cxd5 18.cxd5 Bg4 19.f3 Bd7 leaves the first player with a lot of weak dark squares. ]

### 9...exd4 10.cxd4 Re8



Threatening to take on d4. White is already under serious pressure. **11.Bc3 h5!** **12.h4?** Passive defence, weakening the g3-square, gives Black the opportunity for a tactical assault.

[White needed to fight back at once with 12.Qb3 , and if h4 then 13.Bc4 Qxg2 14.Bxf7+ Kh8 15.0-0-0 , when there is still everything to play for. ]

**12...Qd6! 13.Bd3** This does nothing to prevent the threats.

[On the other hand, reinforcing e3 with 13.Qd3 fails to solve White's problems either, as Nd5! 14.Bd2 Ndb4 15.Bxb4 (or 15.Qc4 b5! 16.Qb3 Nxd4 ) 15...Nxb4 16.Qd2 Rxe3+! exposes his king to a very strong attack: 17.fxe3 Qxg3+ 18.Kd1 c5

(by maintaining the knight on b4, Black is able to create more threats)  
 19.dxc5 Bg4+ 20.Kc1 Re8 21.Qxb4  
 Qxe3+ 22.Kb2 Qf2+ 23.Ka3 Re3+  
 24.Ka4 Bd7+ 25.Bb5 Qf6 26.Ka5  
 (the queen is lost after 26.Rhe1  
 Qa6+ 27.Qa5 Ra3+ 28.Kxa3  
 Qxa5+) 26...Bxb5 and mate follows  
 whether White takes the bishop or not;  
 e.g. 27.Qxb5 (or 27.Kxb5 Qa6#)  
 27...Ra3+ 28.Qa4 Qa6+ 29.Kb4  
 Qxa4# . ]

[The engines mostly go for 13.Nxh5 , although after Ne4! (hitting the c3-bishop and 'trapping' the h5-knight) (not 13...Nxh5? 14.Qxh5 Nxd4 15.Bd3 Nf3+ 16.Ke2 and White is suddenly much better ) 14.Rc1 g6 15.Bc4 gxh5 16.Qxh5 Qf6 17.0-0 Qg7 , White's bishops and two pawns are not worth Black's extra piece. ]

### 13...Rxe3+

[Another way was 13...Nd5 14.Bd2 Nxe3 15.Bxe3 Rxe3+ 16.fxe3 Qxg3+ , when if 17.Kd2 ( 17.Kf1 Qxe3 transposes to the next note ), then 17...Bg4 18.Qg1 Re8 19.Rb1 Na5 20.Rc1 b6 21.Rc3 c5 22.dxc5 bxc5 23.Rxc5 Nb7 24.Rc3 Nd6 and Black has great chances of bringing in the point, since the white king is very exposed and the h1-rook plays no part in the game. ]

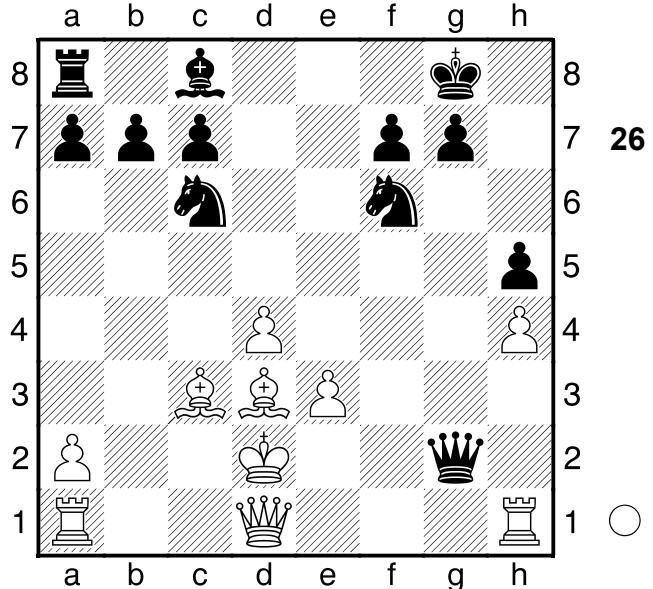
### 14.fxe3 Qxg3+ 15.Kd2

[After 15.Kf1 Nd5 16.Bd2 Nxe3+ 17.Bxe3 Qxe3 18.Qe2 Qf4+ (not 18...Qxd4?? 19.Qe8#) 19.Qf3 Qxd4 20.Re1 Be6 , Black has more than enough for the exchange. ]

### 15...Qxg2+?!

[ 15...Bg4! was stronger. ]

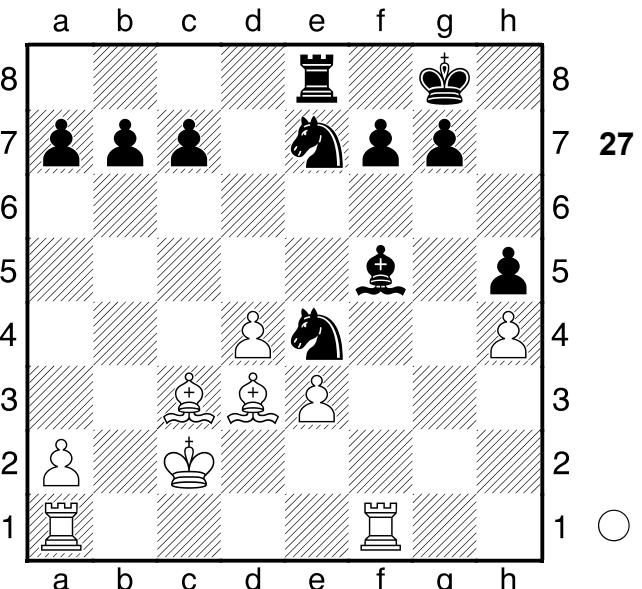
(Diagram 26)



Recouping material at once lessens Black's initiative. **16.Qe2 Ne4+ 17.Kc2**

[If instead 17.Bxe4 Qxe4 18.Qd3 Qg2+ 19.Qe2 Qg6 , Black has a permanent initiative due to White's weaknesses on the light squares. ]

**17...Qxe2+ 18.Bxe2 Bf5 19.Bd3 Re8 20.Rhf1 Ne7**

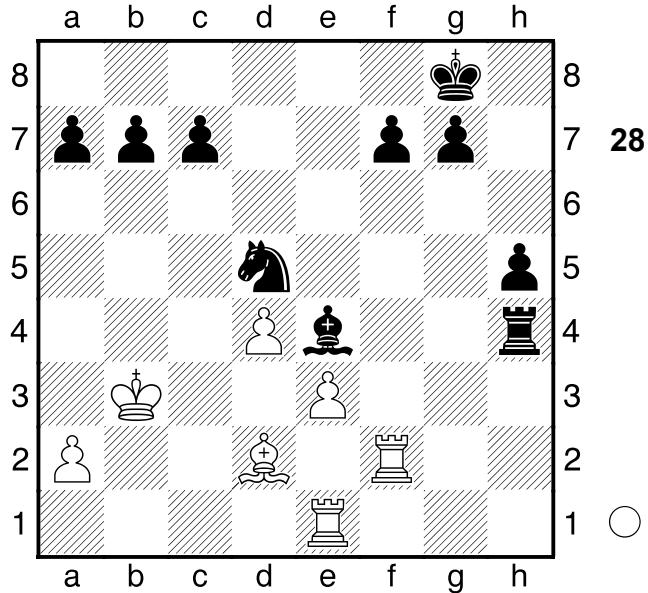


**21.Rae1 Bg6** Nonetheless, Black has set up an ideal blockade on the e4- and d5-squares which limits the scope of the opposing rooks. In fact White cannot really do anything at all, whereas the

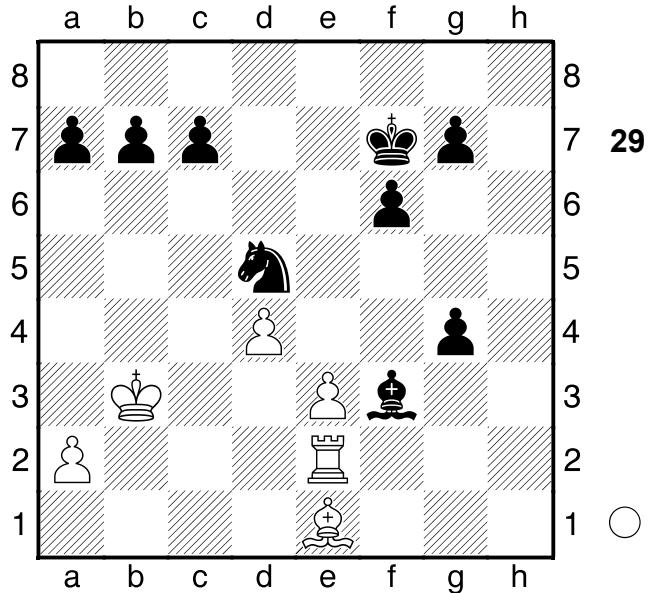
black knights can cause endless headaches.

**22.Bd2 Nd5 23.Bxe4?** This move is difficult to understand, unless White was in time trouble. Giving up the light-squared bishop here loses more material, when Black is just winning.

**23...Rxe4 24.Kb3 Rxh4 25.Rf2 Be4**



**26.Ref1 f6 27.Rg1 Rg4 28.Rxg4  
hxg4 29.Re2 Kf7 30.Be1 Bf3**



. The e3-pawn falls as well, after which the black pawns will roll forward.

**0-1**

**Avrukh,B**  
**Miladinovic,I**  
 5: Istanbul Olympiad  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

**D07**

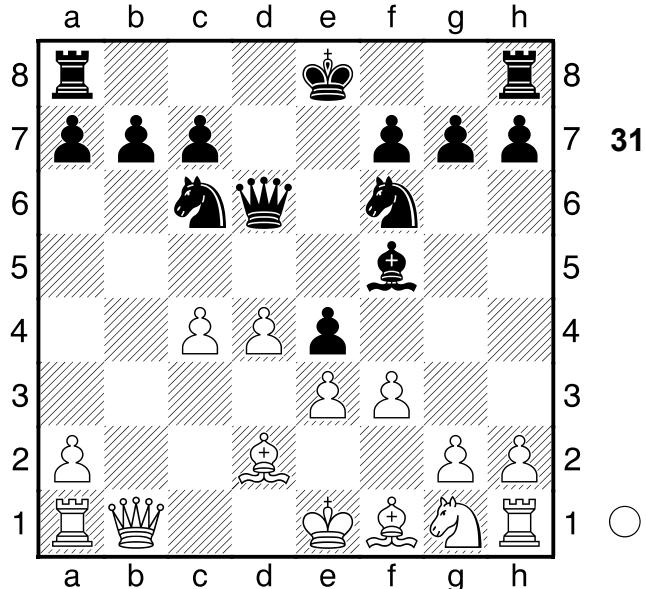
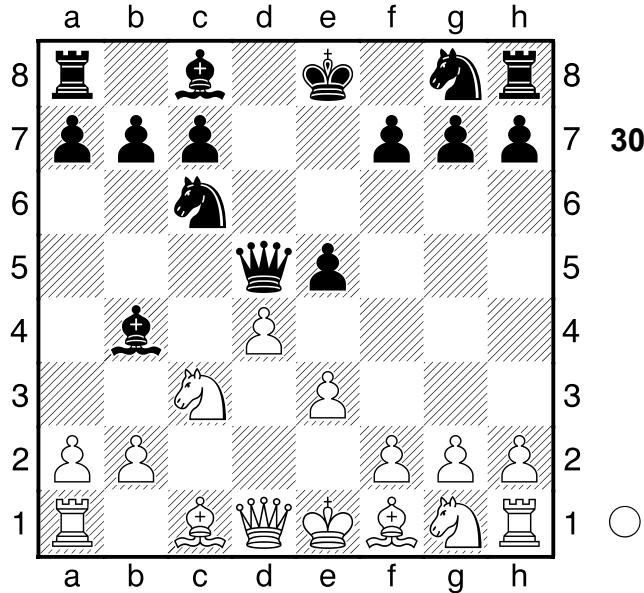
2000

defends the e-pawn tactically in view of 11.fxe4 (or if 11.f4? (S.Skembris-P.Kazantzidis, Kavala 2001) then Ne7! and ...Nf5 already sees White in considerable difficulties ) 11...Qh4+ . ]

### **10.Qb1! Bf5**

[ Obviously 10...exf3?! would be a capitulation by Black. ]

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.cxd5 Qxd5 4.e3 e5 5.Nc3 Bb4**



### **6.Bd2 Bxc3 7.bxc3 Nf6 8.f3 e4**

Black closes the centre and prevents White's intended e3-e4 advance. The black pawn on e4 will cramp the enemy position while taking some space.

[ The downside is that Black's need to defend it reduces his counterplay, so 8...0-0 is more often preferred (see Games 7-9). ]

[ Exchanging on d4 is premature: 8...exd4?! 9.cxd4 0-0 10.Qb3! Qd6 11.Bc4 is very pleasant for White, who can prepare to build the classic pawn centre with e3-e4 at leisure. ]

### **9.c4**

[ Another option is 9.Qb3 , which we'll look at in the next game. ]

### **9...Qd6**

[ 9...Qh5!? might be an improvement, with the idea that 10.Qb1 0-0

The best way to defend e4. **11.f4**

[ If 11.Ne2 first, Black can still castle, since going for the e4-pawn lands White in trouble again: 0-0 12.Ng3 ( 12.f4 transposes to the main game ) 12...Bg6 13.fxe4 ( or 13.Nxe4 Bxe4 14.fxe4 Nxd4! ) 13...Rfe8 14.e5 ( or 14.Bd3 Nxd4! ) 14...Nxe5! 15.dxe5 Qxe5 16.Qc1 h5! and Black has excellent play for the piece. ]

[ QUESTION: Didn't Black's last move leave the b7-pawn en prise?  
ANSWER: Not really, because 11.Qxb7 Rb8 is too risky for White:

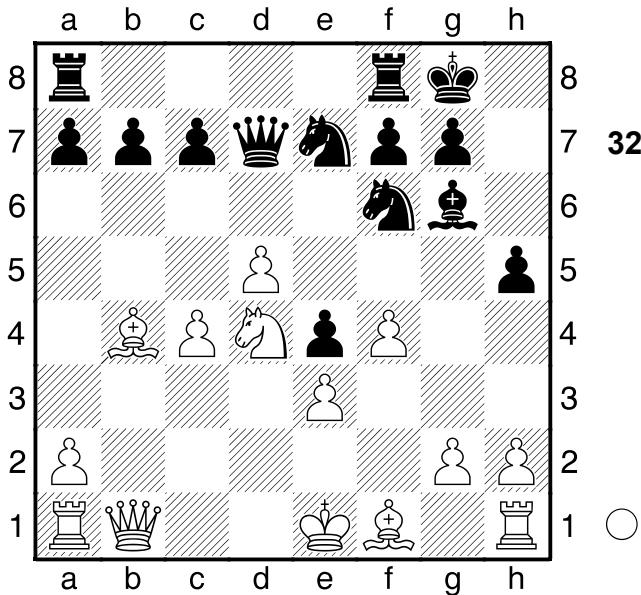
**A)** 12.Qa6 exf3 13.Nxf3 ( or 13.gxf3 Ne4! and the knight cannot be taken, as 14.fxe4 Bxe4 sees the h1-rook trapped ) 13...Nxd4! 14.Qxd6 Nc2+ 15.Kf2

cxd6 16.Rd1 Rb2 and the a2-pawn is indefensible, so Black will soon be a pawn up;  
**B)** 12.c5! (relatively best) 12...Qd7 13.Qa6 (now Bb5 is threatened so Black is limited in his responses) Nb4 14.Qc4 (or 14.Bxb4 Rxb4) 14...Qa4 15.Kf2 0-0 and I cannot recommend this line for White seeing that his kingside pieces are all still on their original squares. Black will have the better of this position.]

**11...0-0 12.Ne2 h5** Discouraging Ng3, but White can play on the other flank as well.

[It is probably better to take control of the b4-square with 12...a5, even if 13.Ng3 (not now 13.d5?! Ne7 since there is no Bb4 harassing the queen and Black can follow up with ...c7-c6) 13...Ne7 (or 13...Bd7 14.Be2 Rfe8 15.Qb2) 14.Be2 Qd7 15.0-0 Rfb8 16.Qc2 c6 17.a4 left Black with no real counterplay in T.T.Hoang-A. Botsari, Bled Olympiad 2002.]

**13.d5! Ne7 14.Bb4 Qd7 15.Nd4 Bg6**

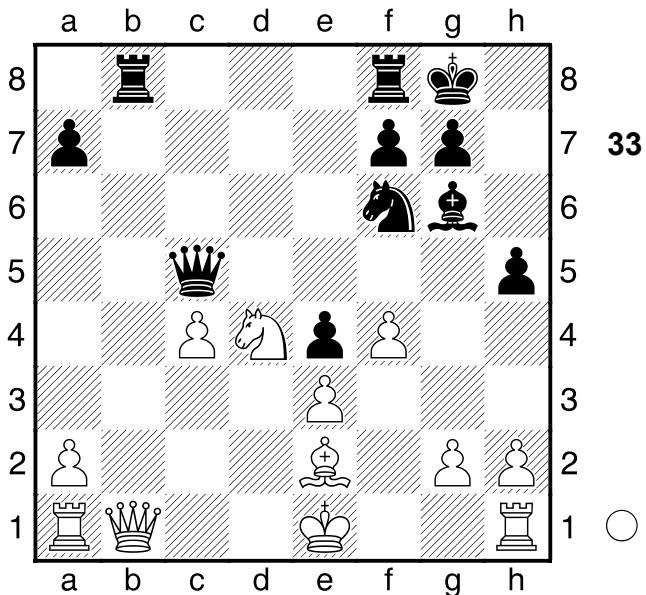


**16.Be2 c6?!** Sacrificing a pawn to free his position, but he doesn't get much for

it.

[Presumably Miladinovic didn't fancy variations like 16...Rfb8 17.0-0 Nf5 18.Nxf5 Bxf5 19.Bc3 Bg4 20.Qb2 Bxe2 21.Qxe2 Qf5 22.Bxf6 gxf6, when Black's wrecked structure leaves him with miserable prospects in the major piece ending.]

**17.dxc6 bxc6 18.Bxe7 Qxe7 19.Nxc6 Qc5 20.Nd4 Rab8**



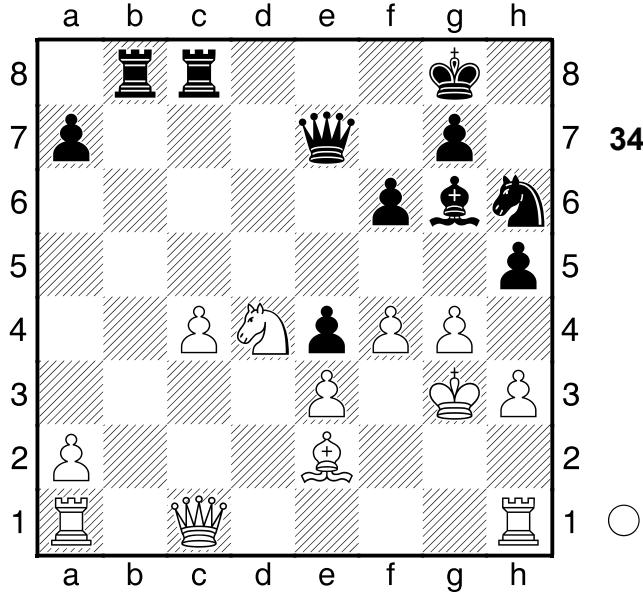
**21.Qc1 Ng4** Hoping to transfer to f5 and exchange off the dominant white knight.

**22.h3 Nh6 23.g4 Qe7 24.Kf2**

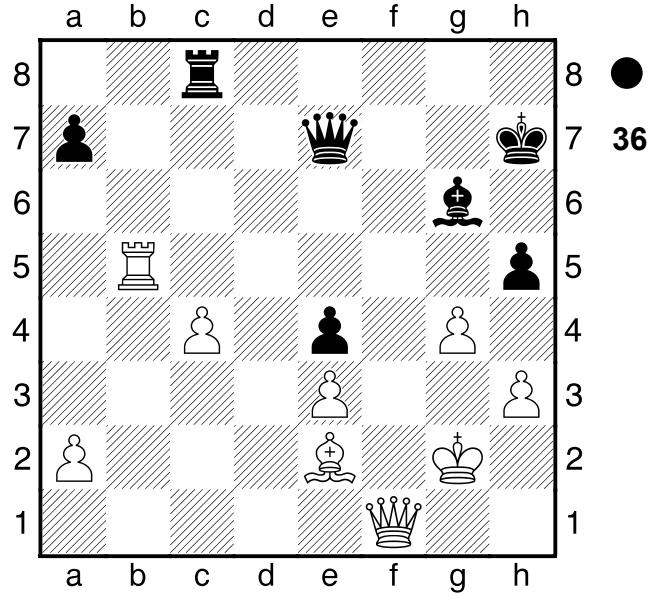
The black pieces are not in a position to exploit the white king here. Miladinovic has a good try at opening things up.

**24...Rfc8 25.Kg3 f6**

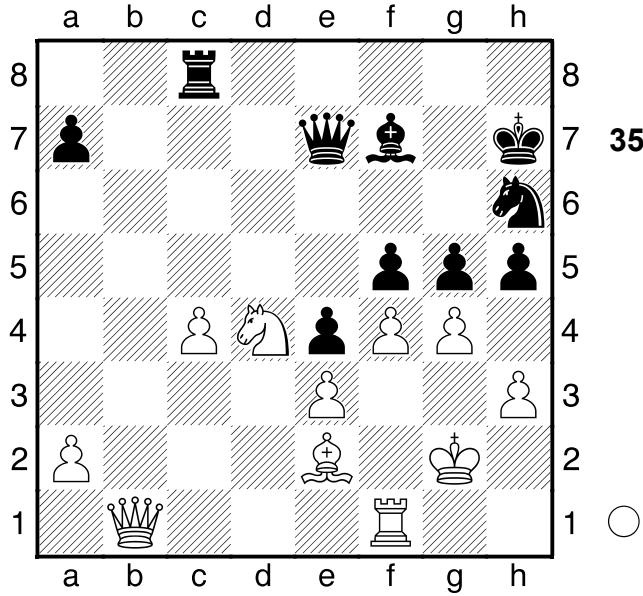
(Diagram 34)



was stronger at the end, since Black either lost on time or gave up. After all, he is two pawns down and has the weaker king. ]



1-0



This is too much. 31.fxg5 Qxg5  
32.Nxf5 Nxf5 33.Rxf5 Qe7 34.Qf1  
Bg6 35.Rb5

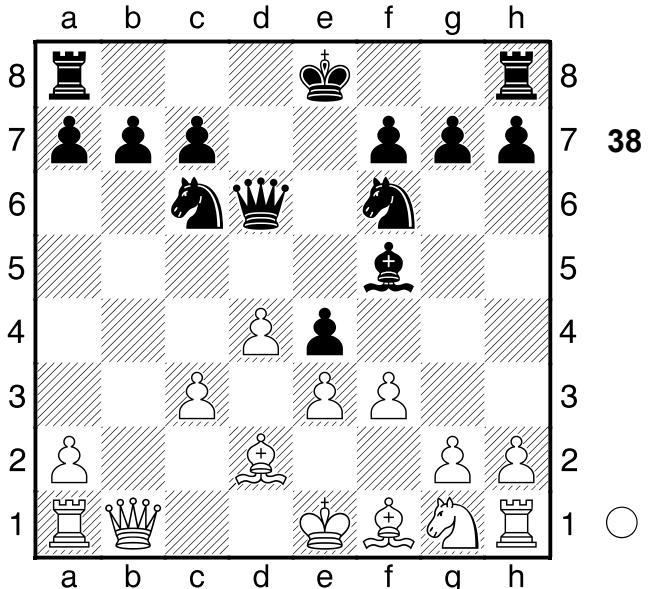
[ It doesn't matter that 35.gxh5

□ Smirin,I  
 ■ Vallejo Pons,F

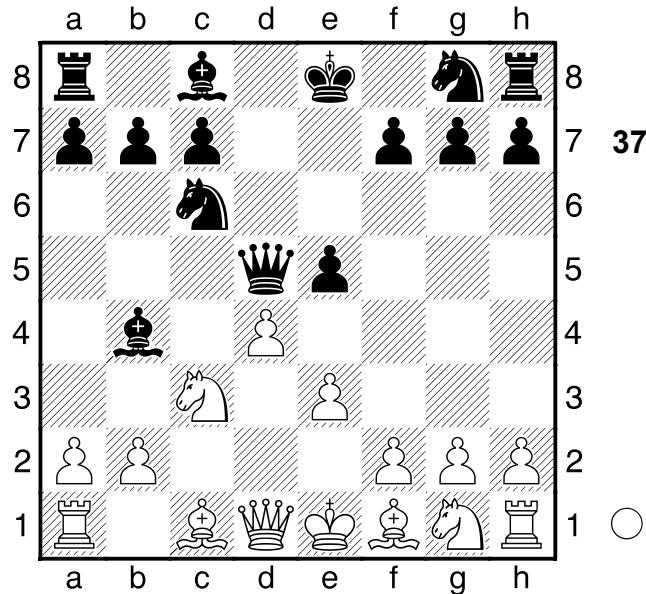
6: European Team Ch., Leon  
 [Jimmy Liew]

D07

2001



**1.c4 Nc6** Giving White the chance to renege on his English Opening, which Smirin accepts. **2.d4 d5 3.cxd5 Qxd5**  
**4.e3 e5 5.Nc3 Bb4**



**6.Bd2 Bxc3 7.bxc3 Nf6 8.f3 e4**

**9.Qb3** Smirin tries a different move.

**9...Qd6 10.Qb1!?** QUESTION: Why did the queen take two moves to go to b1?

ANSWER: By inserting Qb3, White drove the black queen from defence of the e4-pawn. If we compare this with 9 c4 Qd6 10 Qb1 in the previous game, the fact that White's c-pawn is still on c3 gives him more stability in the centre; in particular, seeing as ...Nxd4 is never a threat, White is free to target the e4-pawn with Ne2-g3. Note too that the f1-bishop is not hemmed in and can develop to c4 or even b5. Having said all that, Black is probably okay in this line.

**10...Bf5**

**11.Ne2 Bg6**

[Castling would be premature:  
 11...0-0?! 12.Ng3 Qe6 (or 12...Bg6  
 13.fxe4) 13.Qxb7 safely wins a pawn; ]

[while after 11...0-0-0?! 12.Ng3 Bg6  
 13.f4 (better than 13.fxe4?! Rxe8  
 14.Bd3 Ne5!) 13...h5 14.h4 Ne7  
 15.Qb3, the black king will come under serious pressure on the queenside; e.g. c5 16.Rb1 Rd7  
 17.Bb5 Rc7 18.Qa3 a6 19.c4!  
 (if Black takes the bishop he loses the rook in the corner) Rd8 20.Ba4 cxd4  
 21.Bb4 Qe6 22.Ba5, winning the exchange.]

**12.Qb3** Back to b3 to escape the battery on the b1-h7 diagonal.

[These repeated queen moves shouldn't offer White any advantage but Black still has to be careful, and there isn't anything better anyway:  
 a) 12.Qxb7?! is still no good. After Rb8 13.Qa6 0-0 14.Nf4 Rb6  
 15.Qa4 exf3 16.gxf3 Nd5 17.Nxd5 Qxd5 18.Be2 Qg5, White only superficially has a good position with his big centre and two bishops. Ideally his king should be tucked safely into

a corner, but this is not going to happen anytime soon, since the black queen is coming into g2 and 19.0-0-0?? Rb1# is mate. ]

[b) 12.Nf4?! exf3 13.Nxg6 hxg6 14.gxf3 0-0-0 leaves the h2-pawn under attack, and 15.f4? doesn't save it since Qd5 hits the h1-rook. ]

**12...0-0** Black can now safely castle short.

[ 12...0-0-0?! is less attractive in view of 13.f4 again, when White can look forward to starting operations on the queenside. ]

**13.Nf4 Na5?** This careless move order allows White to force the queens off and reach a favourable endgame.

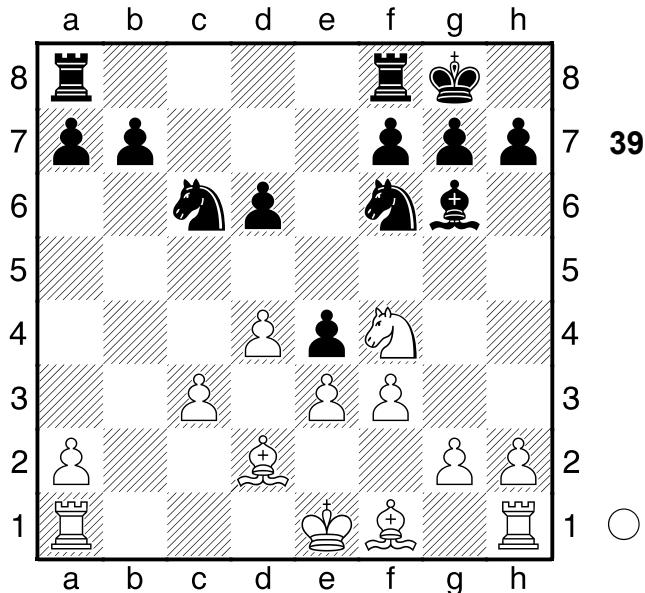
[Black needed to play 13...b6 first, after which ...Na5 and ...c7-c5 provides counterplay.]

[Alternatively, he could return the bishop to f5, since 13...Bf5 14.g4 can be met by g5!. ]

**14.Qb4 Nc6**

[ 14...b6 15.Qxd6 cxd6 16.c4 Rfc8 17.Rc1 is also good for White. ]

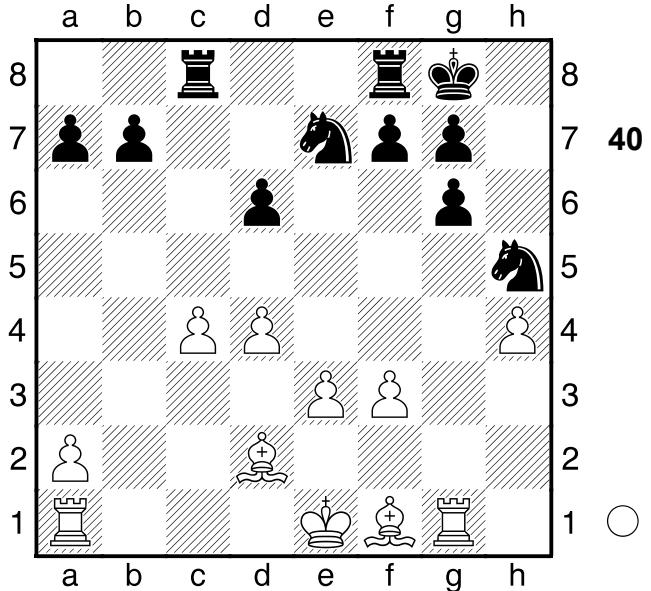
**15.Qxd6 cxd6**



**16.h4** The exchange of queens turns out favourably for White. His king is safe in

the centre, so he can begin operations on the kingside, targeting the vulnerable g6-bishop.

**16...exf3 17.gxf3 Nh5 18.Nxg6 hxg6 19.Rg1 Rac8 20.c4 Ne7**

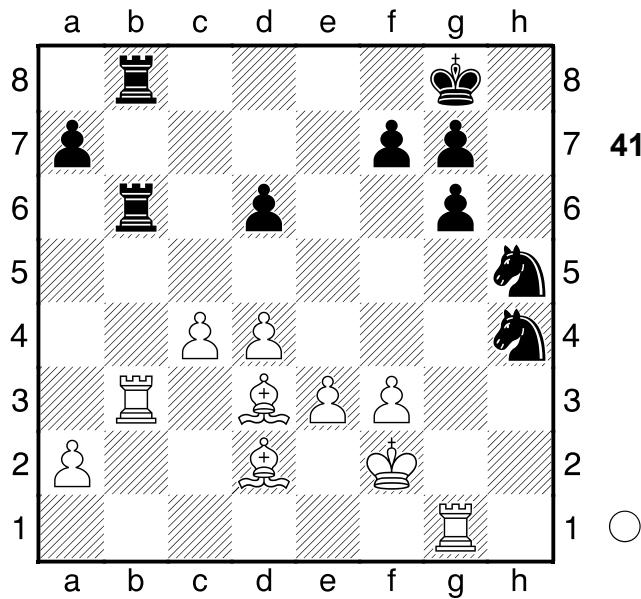


**21.Rb1** This is a perfect position for White in the Chigorin! He has a mobile centre, the bishop pair, and active rooks on half-open files. **21...Nf5?** Trading b7 for h4 only makes White's central pawns stronger.

[Black had to sit tight with 21...b6 and hope that White overplays his hand; for instance, if 22.e4?! Nc6 23.Bc3 (Dautov), then f5! mixes it up a bit.]

**22.Rxb7 Nxh4 23.Kf2 Rb8 24.Rb3 Rb6 25.Bd3 Rfb8**

(Diagram 41)

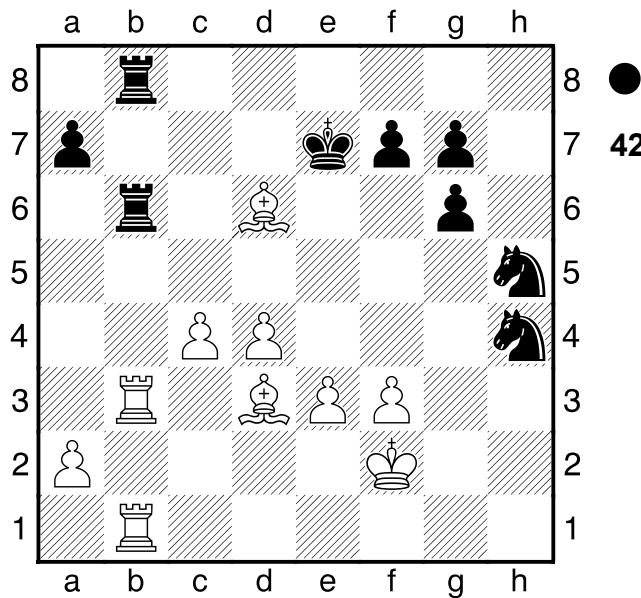


**26.Rgb1 Kf8?** In a hopeless position

Black makes a final mistake.

**27.Bb4 Ke7 28.Bxd6+!**

[If 28.Bxd6+ Kxd6 , the fork on c5 wins material. ]



**1-0**

Beliavsky,A  
 Yermolinsky,A  
 7: Madrid  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

D07

1998

17.Bxd3 Rxd3 is just winning for Black, according to the engines, as White has virtually no moves. ] [White does better with 9.Ne2 , after which another Morozevich game continued Qd6 10.Kf2 ( 10.e4?! transposes to the main game; instead, 10.Ng3 encourages h5 and ...h5-h4; while 10.Qc2 Re8 11.Rd1 , as in V.Dydyshko-L.Klima, Ostrava 2005, might be met by b6 12.Kf2 Ba6 ) 10...Re8 11.Qb3 b6 12.Qb2 Na5 13.Ng3 c5 14.Rd1 Be6 15.Bb5 Red8 and Black had good counterplay in A.Karpov-A.Morozevich, Moscow (blitz) 2001. ]

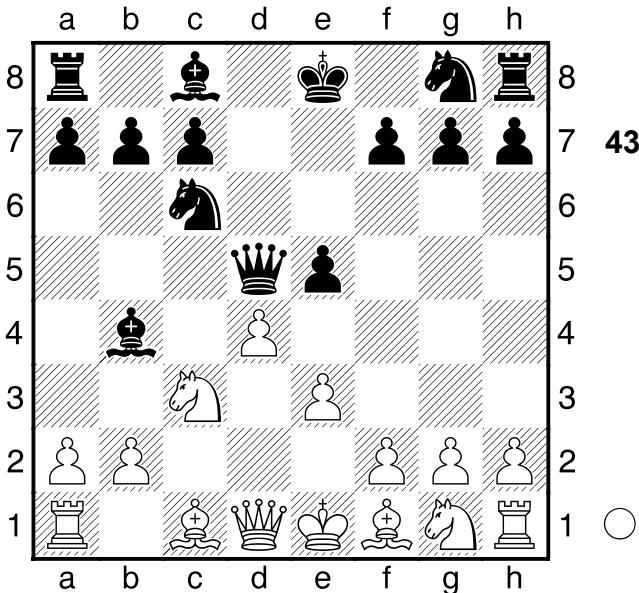
**9...Qd6 10.Ne2?!** QUESTION: Why is White giving up the d4-pawn?  
 ANSWER: He isn't; he has a tactical way to regain the pawn, but it seems Beliavsky misassessed the resulting position.

[The main move is 10.d5 , which we'll examine in the next two games. ]

[As Morozevich indicates, White does best to resolve the tension in the centre immediately, as otherwise he risks a destructive piece sacrifice; for example, 10.Be3 exd4 11.cxd4 Re8 12.Ne2 (or similarly 12.Qd2 Bf5 13.Be2 Bxe4! , as in M.Gagunashvili-G.Souleidis, European Cup, Rethymnon 2003 ) 12...Nxe4! 13.fxe4 Rxe4 14.Qd2 Nb4! 15.Kf2 Nd5 16.Nc3 Rxe3 17.Nxd5 Re4 18.Bd3 Re6 19.Bf5 Qxd5 20.Bxe6 Bxe6 and Black had more than enough for the exchange in M.Freeman-P. Raupach, correspondence 2008. ]

**10...exd4**

(Diagram 44)

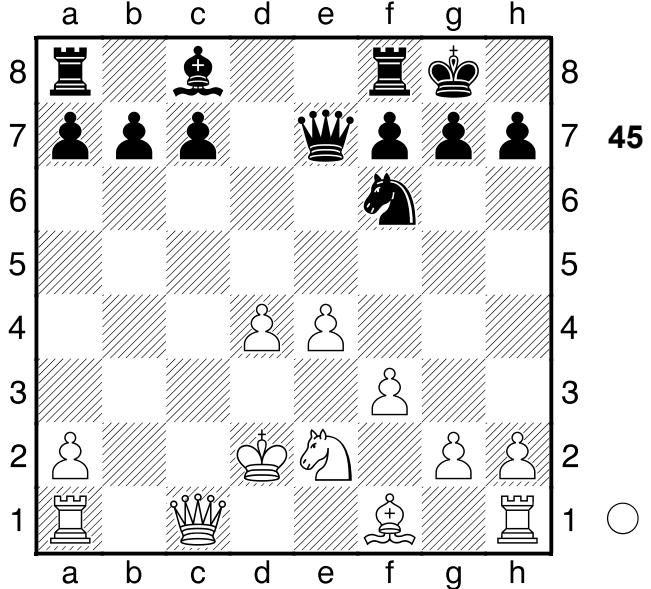
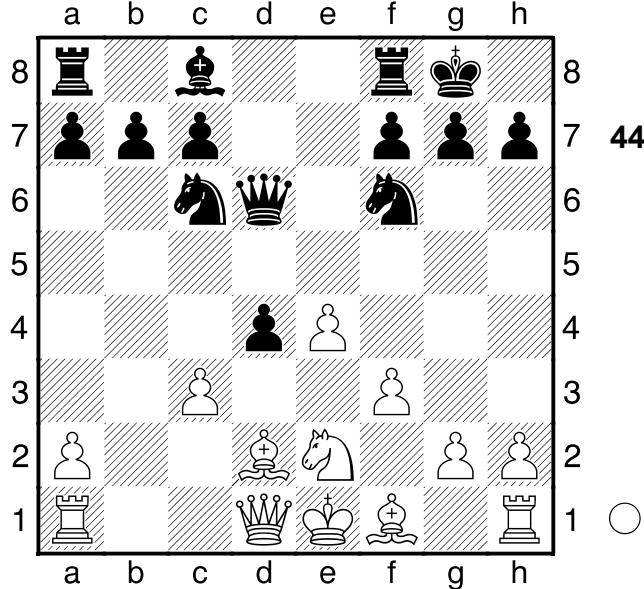


### 6.Bd2 Bxc3 7.bxc3 Nf6 8.f3 0-0

This time Black doesn't hinder the white pawn expansion. Instead, he aims to exert pressure on the centre, utilizing his lead in development, and gain meaningful counterplay before White is able to consolidate.

**9.e4** White is not obliged to push his pawns at once.

[He can also try to develop his kingside first, though he needs to be careful since the natural 9.Bd3?! runs into exd4 10.cxd4 Nxd4! 11.exd4 Qxd4 , as shown by Morozevich, when Black has huge play against the king in the centre. For example, 12.Be2 Bf5 13.Bg5 Qe5 14.Kf1 Rad8 15.Qc1 Rfe8 16.g4 was A.Rychagov-A.Morozevich, Moscow (blitz) 2001, and now Bd3!



### **11.Bf4**

[If White plays 11.cxd4 first, then Nxd4 12.Bf4 Qb4+ 13.Bd2 Qd6 14.Bf4 will be a draw by repetition.]

### **11...Qa3! 12.cxd4**

[Not 12.Bxc7? Be6 13.cxd4 Rac8 14.Bg3 Nb4 15.Kf2 Nc2 16.Qc1 Qe7 17.Rb1 Na3 and Black wins material.]

### **12...Nb4 13.Bc1**

[13.Ng3 should be met by Rd8! (whereas 13...Qc3+?! 14.Kf2 is fine for White), when the threat of ... Rxd4 is rather awkward, and if 14.d5 then Re8! targets the pawn.]

### **13...Nd3+ 14.Kd2 Nxc1 15.Qxc1 Qe7**

(Diagram 45)

This simple retreat highlights White's problem: his king is in the wrong place.

### **16.Qc3?!**

[As Yermolinsky indicates, White should save time by opposing queens with 16.Qc5, when Qd8 (Black does not want the queens off) 17.Rc1 c6 18.Ke3 is still unclear.]

### **16...Rd8 17.Rc1**

[Not 17.Kc1? Rd6 18.Qd2 Nd7 19.Nc3 c6 20.Bc4 b5 21.Bb3 a5 and White is clearly in trouble;] [but running the other way with 17.Ke1 and 18 Kf2 was sensible.]

### **17...c6 18.Qc5 Qe8**

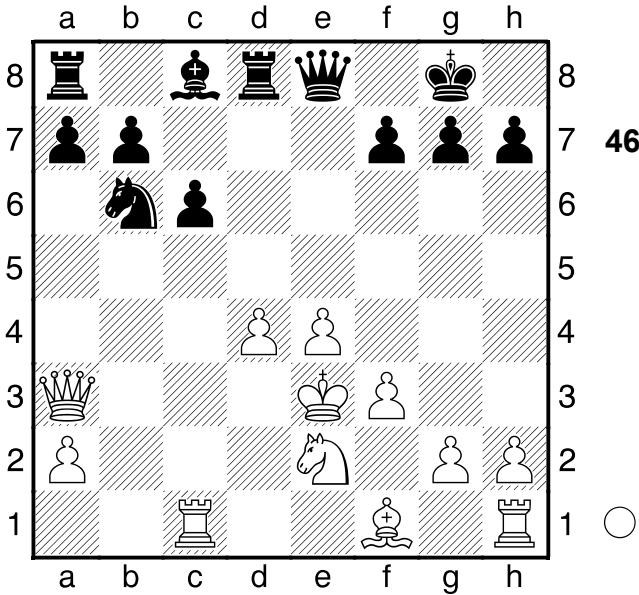
[18...Nxe4+?! 19.fxe4 Qxe4 comes into consideration too.]

### **19.Ke3**

[Not yet 19.Nf4?! because of b6! 20.Qxc6 Rxd4+ 21.Ke3 Bd7 and White has to take on a8, since 22.Qc2? Qe5 23.Bd3 g5 24.Ne2 Nd5+ 25.Kf2 Nb4 is crushing.]

### **19...Nd7 20.Qa3 Nb6**

(Diagram 46)



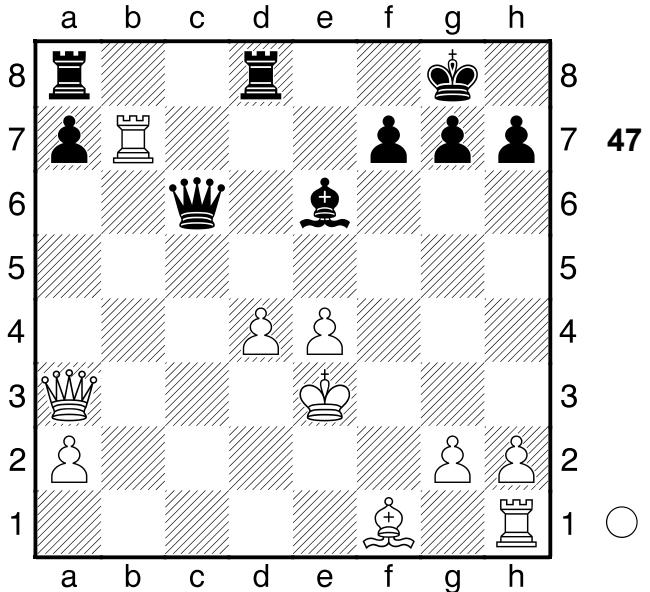
26.Ke3 Qxc7 is winning; ( 26...-- ); **B)** but White has the rather obvious 25.Qe7! Qxe7 26.Rxe7 Kf8 (or 26...Rd8 27.Bc4 ) 27.Rxf7+ Kxf7 28.Kxd4 , which gets him out of danger and even offers him a slight initiative. ]

### 25.Rxb7

[If 25.Bd3 then Rxd4! does work; [while 25.d5 Bxd5 26.Re7 Qf8 27.exd5 Rxd5 , threatening ...Re5, is even worse for White. ]

### 25...Qc6

[Not 25...Bd5?? 26.Re7 and White can safely take the bishop. ]



### 26.Rb5 Bd7 27.Qc5 Qg6!

[Stronger than 27...Qh6+ 28.Qg5 Bxb5 29.Qxh6 gxh6 30.Bxb5 , when White has chances to hold the game as all the black pawns are weak. ]

### 28.Rb7? A mistake in time trouble.

[ 28.Qg5 Bxb5 29.Qxg6 hxg6 30.Bxb5 was still necessary, although Black's winning chances have improved. ]

### 28...Bc6 29.Re7 Qh6+ 30.Kf3

[Other squares are no better: 30.Ke2

**21.Nf4?!** This brings an opposing pawn into contact with his centre.

[Yermolinsky gave 21.g4 as best, enabling White to keep his pawn frontage secure if Black swipes at it with ...f7-f5. ]

### 21...Nd5+ 22.Nxd5 cxd5 23.Rc7?

[He had to try 23.e5! f6 24.f4 fxe5 (the immediate 24...Qg6 can be met by 25.Bd3! , since Qxg2?? 26.Rcg1 Qh3+ 27.Rg3 Qh6 28.Rhg1 turns the tables ) 25.dxe5 (not 25.fxe5?! Qg6 26.Bd3?? Qg5+ and the white king is unable to survive the onslaught ) 25...Qg6 (after 25...g5 26.Bd3 gxf4+ 27.Kf2 Qxe5 28.Rhe1 Qd4+ 29.Kf1 , White is over the worst ) 26.Kf2 Qh6 27.g3 g5 (Black continues to chip away at the white king's sheltering pawns) 28.Rg1 Rf8 29.Ke1 , though Black still looks to have the better chances. ]

### 23...dxe4 24.fxe4

[Otherwise 24.Qe7 exf3 just wins a pawn. ]

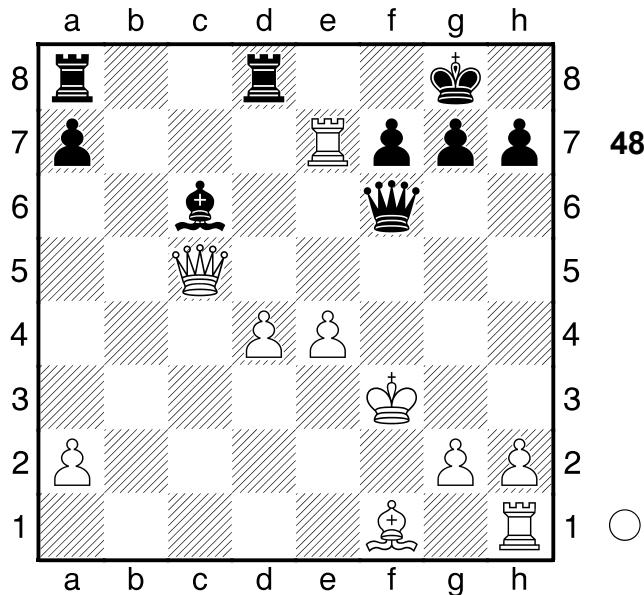
### 24...Be6

[The temporary sacrifice 24...Rxd4? is tempting;

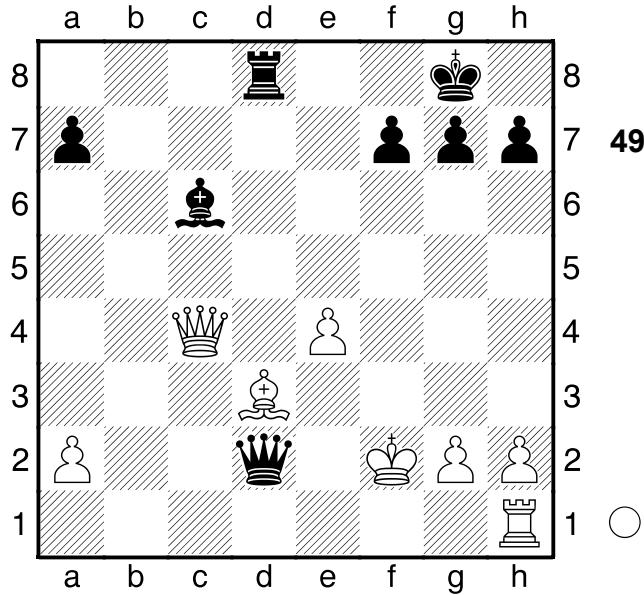
**A)** seeing as 25.Kxd4 Qd8+

Rac8 31.Qf5 Be8 ; ]  
 [or 30.Kd3 Rac8 31.Qf5 Rxd4+!  
 32.Kxd4 Qd2+ 33.Bd3 Rd8+ wins. ]

**30...Qf6+**



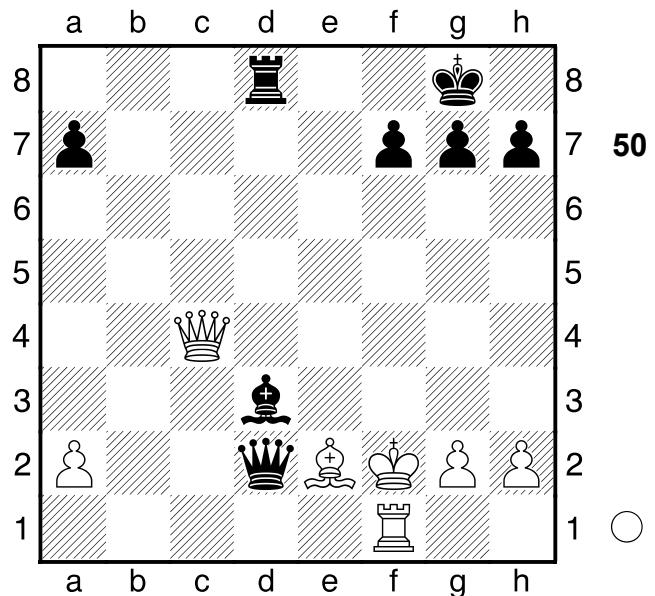
**31.Ke3 Rxd4 32.Qxd4**  
 [Or 32.Bc4 Rad8! 33.Rf1 ( 33.Rxf7!  
 allows *Rxe4#* ) 33...Rxc4 34.Rxf6  
 Rxc5 35.Rxf7 Rg5 and White will not  
 survive for long. ]  
**32...Qxe7 33.Bd3 Rd8 34.Qc4 Qg5+**  
**35.Kf2 Qd2+**



**36.Be2 Qf4+ 37.Ke1**  
 [Or 37.Bf3 Rd2+ 38.Ke1 Qe3+

39.Be2 Rb2 40.Qd3 Qb6  
 and the twin threats of ...Rb1 and ...  
 Bb5 will win material. ]

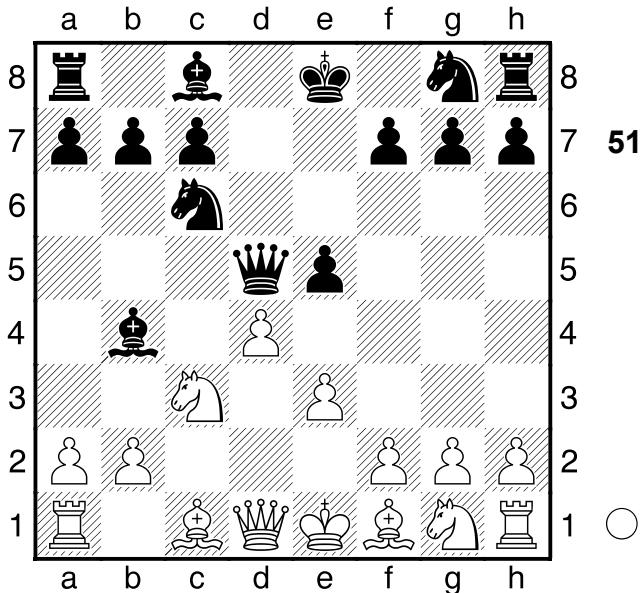
**37...Bxe4 38.Rf1 Qd2+ 39.Kf2 Bd3**  
 [Since 39...Bd3 40.Qg4 Re8 41.Re1  
 Re6 and a check on f6 is  
 devastating. ]



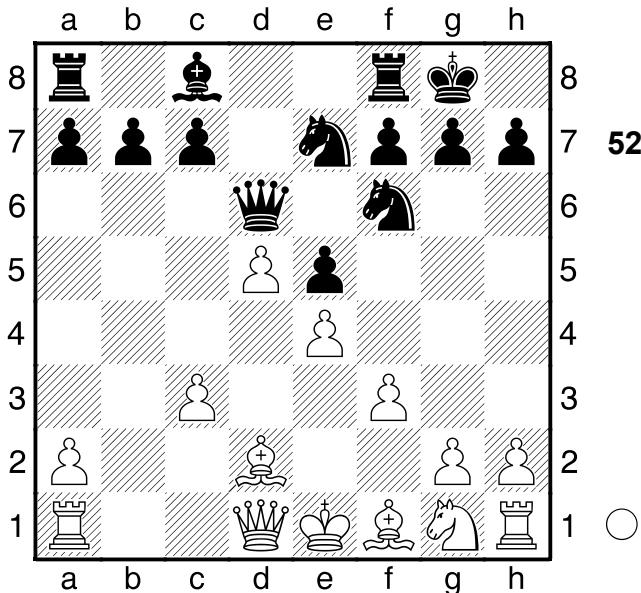
**0-1**

**Piket,J**  
**Morozevich,A**  
 8: Wijk aan Zee  
 [Jimmy Liew]

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.cxd5 Qxd5 4.e3 e5 5.Nc3 Bb4**



**6.Bd2 Bxc3 7.bxc3 Nf6 8.f3 0-0 9.e4 Qd6 10.d5 Ne7**



**11.c4** So White has built the big centre. If he manages to develop safely behind

**D07**

2001

it and castle, he should stand better, so Black needs to hurry with his counterplay. The natural break is with ...f7-f5, which means moving the f6-knight.

**11...Nh5!?**

[Black more usually plays 11...Nd7 , eyeing the tempting outpost on c5, from where the knight blockades the c4-pawn, attacks e4, and controls the d3-square. Morozevich has a different plan in mind, involving pure kingside play in the style of the King's Indian Defence. ]

**12.Qb3!** Exploiting the black knight's absence from the queenside and threatening Bb4, which Black must now prevent. **12...c5 13.Ne2 f5 14.Nc3**

[QUESTION: Hasn't Black blundered? Can't White just take on f5 and follow up with 15.g4 - ?

ANSWER: Not really, because Black obtains a very strong attack if White accepts the challenge. This was actually tried in S.Richkov-L.

Lacrimosa, correspondence 2004:

14.exf5?! Nxf5 15.g4? Nh4 16.gxh5 Nxf3+ 17.Kd1 , when Black could have played Bg4! 18.Kc1 (or 18.Bc3 Nd4 ) 18...Nxd2 19.Kxd2 Rf3 20.Qb2 Raf8 21.Rg1 Qh6+ 22.Ke1 Qe3 23.h3 Bxh5 and White has no hopes of surviving. ]

**14...b6?!** This move seems unnecessary.

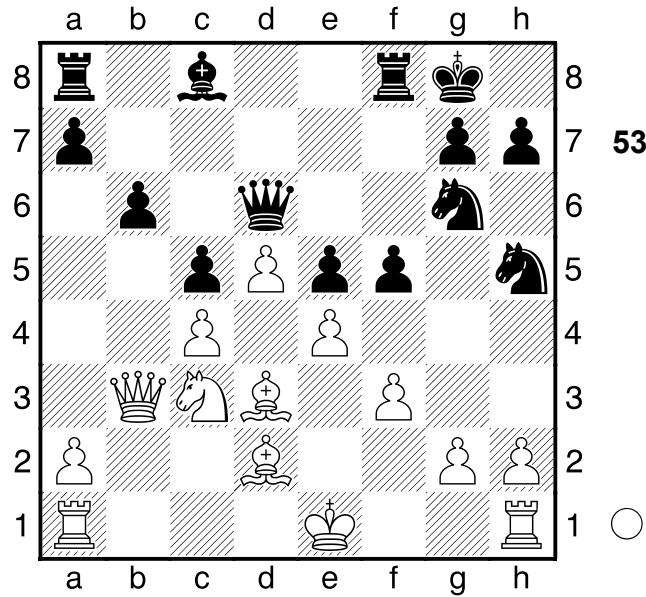
[ 14...Qg6 15.0-0-0 Nf6 is more to the point, trying to encourage an exchange on f5, which will bring the e7-knight into the game, or if 16.Re1 then fxe4 17.Nxe4 Nxe4 18.fxe4 Bd7 , looking for queenside counterplay with ...Qa6, ...Rb8 and ...b7-b5. ]

**15.Bd3 Ng6**

[Black should perhaps play 15...Nf4 , and if 16.Bxf4 (White can avoid this

with 16.0-0 Nxd3 17.Nb5 and stands slightly better – even so Qg6 18.Qxd3 a6 19.Nc3 fxe4 20.fxe4 Bd7

looks preferable to the position Black gets in the game ) 16...exf4 17.0-0 then fxe4 18.Nxe4 Qh6 , followed by ...Nf5, with a strong initiative on the kingside. ]



**16.g3!** Black will not get a second chance to put his knight on f4. **16...Qe7** [ Morozevich later considered 16...f4!? 17.g4 Nh4 18.Be2 Nf6 to be the lesser evil, “trying to erect a blockade on the dark squares.” ]

**17.exf5! Bxf5 18.Bxf5 Rxf5 19.Ne4**

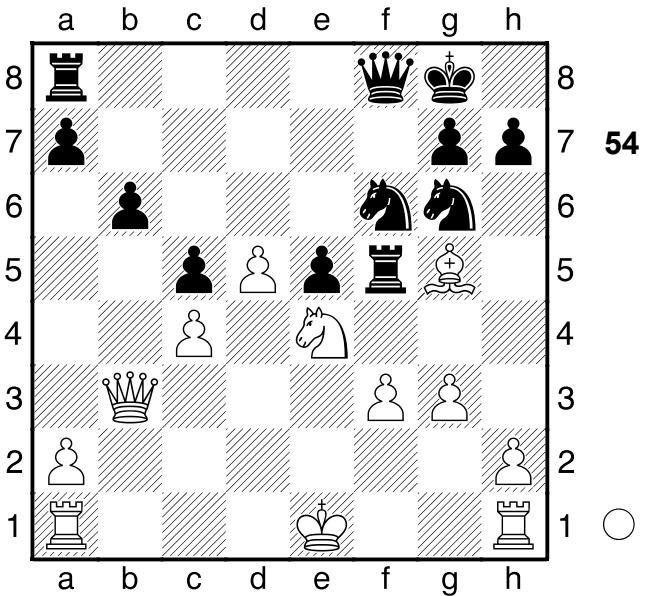
[ 19.0-0 is also good for White; ]  
[ whereas 19.g4? again allows Black a strong attack after Qh4+ 20.Kd1 Rxf3 21.gxh5 Ne7! followed by ...Nf5-d4. This is what Morozevich is looking for: tactical chances in a position which was worse. ]

**19...Nf6 20.Bg5**

[ Still not 20.g4? , this time because of Nxe4 21.gxf5 Qh4+ 22.Kd1 Nf2+ 23.Kc1 Nxh1 24.fxg6 Nf2 25.gxh7+ Qxh7 , when Black has recouped the material and now has great chances

against an insecure white king. ]

**20...Qf8**

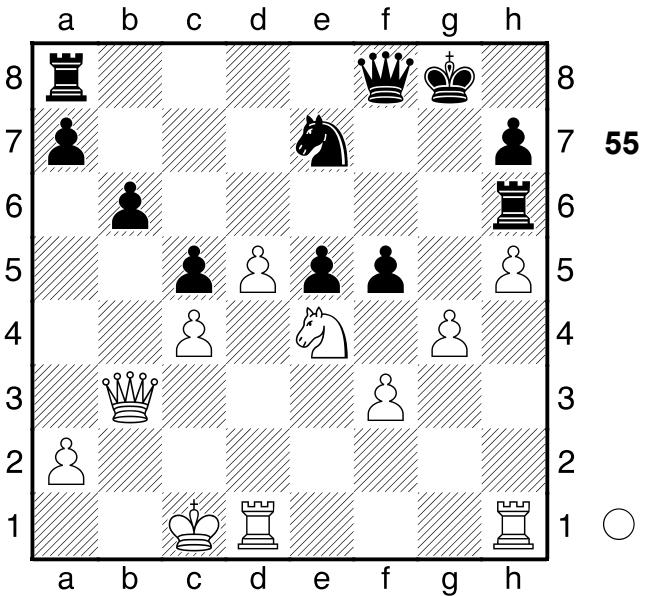


**21.Bxf6 gxf6 22.0-0-0! Rh5 23.h4**

**Rh6** You know your position is really bad when you resort to moving your rook to such a square. **24.h5** Piket plays to shut the h6-rook in completely.

[ The engines give another solution in 24.Qe3!? f5 25.Nf6+! Qxf6 (or 25...Kg7 26.g4!) 26.Qxh6 e4 27.Kc2! and Black has nothing. ]

**24...Ne7 25.g4 f5!**



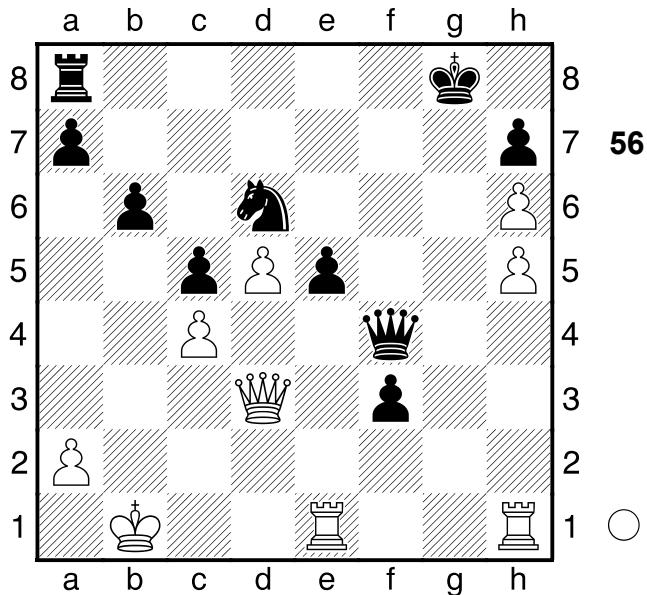
The only way to develop any

counterplay. **26.g5 fxe4 27.gxh6 Qf4+ 28.Kb1 exf3** Morozevich must have been delighted to get this position: there is a material imbalance and he has passed pawns and a nimble knight which will happily settle on d4, e3 or even or d6. Yes, he is still losing, but it's not so easy for White to prove it with the clock ticking, and Piket duly goes wrong.

### **29.Qd3?!**

[ Missing a forced win with 29.Rhg1+ Kh8 30.Rgf1! Rf8 (Black can't push the e-pawn because 30...e4? 31.Qc3+ mates ) 31.d6 Nc6 32.d7 Kg8 33.Qd3 Nd4 34.Rxf3 Qxf3 35.Qxf3 Nxsf3 36.d8Q etc (Morozevich). ]

### **29...Nf5 30.Rde1 Nd6**



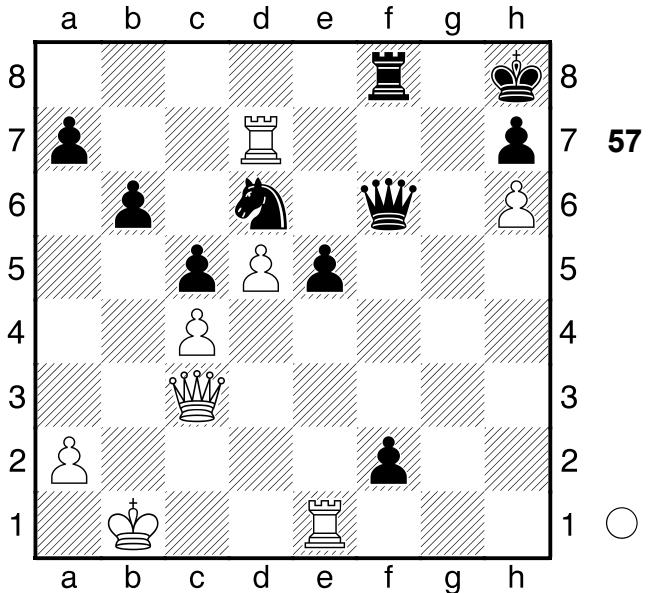
**31.Rhg1+ Kh8 32.Rg7 Qxh6 33.Rd7 Rf8 34.Qc3??** This is the real mistake.

[ Morozevich shows a draw with 34.Rf1 e4

- A)** 35.Qc3+ Qf6 36.Qxf6+ Rxf6 37.Rg1 h6 38.Rd8+ etc. ( 38.-- );
- B)** but White could still have had more after 35.Qc2! ; for example, 35...Qf6 (or 35...Ne8 36.Qxe4 Nf6 37.Qe5) 36.h6 Re8 (or 36...Nf7 37.Qxe4 Ng5 38.Qd3 Qxh6

39.d6 ) 37.Rxf3! (it's mate if Black takes the rook) Qd4 38.Rc3 and White should win. Nf5 39.Rxa7 Qg1+ 40.Kb2 e3 ]

### **34...Qf6 35.h6? f2**



### **36.Rf1 Qf5+ 37.Ka1 Ne4**

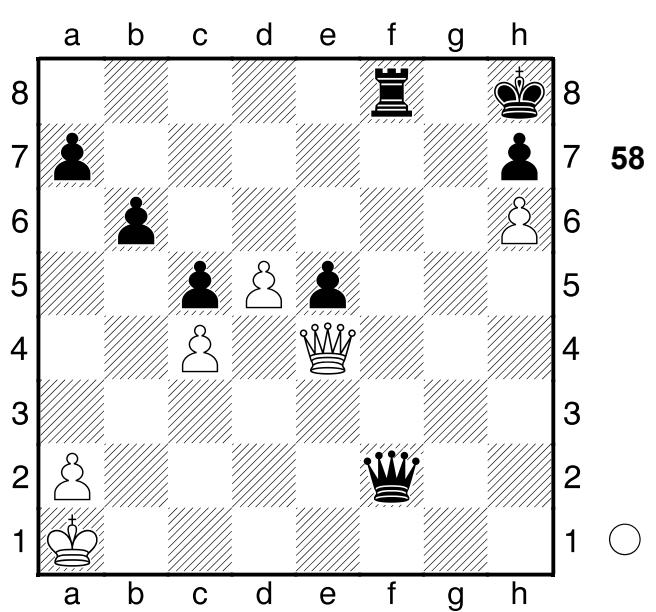
[ 37...Nxc4! was even stronger (Morozevich). ]

### **38.Qd3 Qxd7 39.Qxe4 Qf5 40.Rxf2**

[ 40.Qxf5 Rxf5 41.d6 Rf7-+ 42.d7 Rxd7 43.Rxf2 Kg8 44.Kb2 Rd6 is a straightforward winning endgame for Black. ]

### **40...Qxf2**

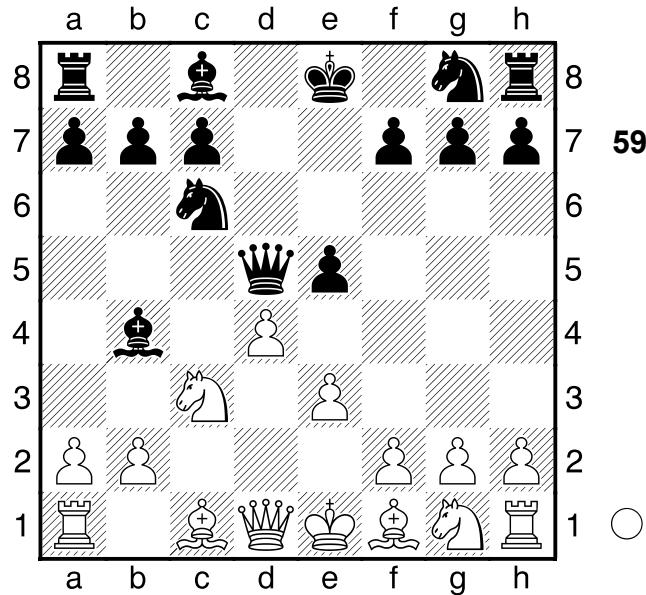
(Diagram 58)



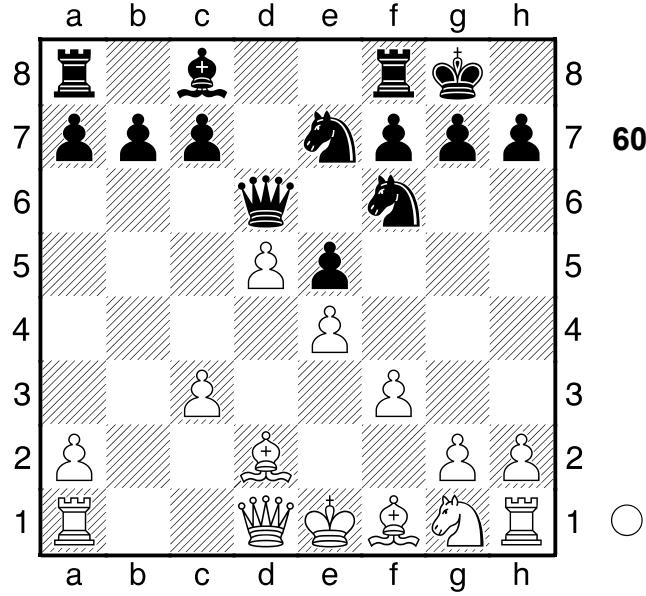
0-1

Hoang,TT  
 Antal,G  
9: Budapest  
[Jimmy Liew]

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.cxd5 Qxd5 4.e3 e5 5.Nc3 Bb4**



**6.Bd2 Bxc3 7.bxc3 Nf6 8.f3 0-0 9.e4 Qd6 10.d5 Ne7**



**11.c4 Nd7** Freeing the f-pawn to advance to put maximum pressure on

D07

2002

White's centre. **12.Ne2**

[Black is only helped by 12.Bd3?! Nc5 ; ] [but 12.Nh3?! is an option and has the advantage of not obstructing the d2-bishop. After Nc5 (if 12...f5 13.Nf2 Qg6?! then 14.Bb4! spoils Black's plan from the main game ) 13.Nf2 f5 14.Bb4! b6 15.Be2 fxe4 16.Nxe4 Nd3+ 17.Qxd3 Qxb4+ 18.Qc3 Qxc3+ 19.Nxc3 , Black was made to work for his draw in A. Schenk-A.Karpatchev, German League 2007. ]

**12...f5 13.Nc3 Qg6!**

[Stronger than the routine 13...Nc5 , even if 14.Be3 ( 14.Nb5?! Qb6 doesn't get White anywhere ) 14...fxe4 15.Bxc5 (or 15.Nxe4 Nxe4 16.fxe4 Qg6 ) 15...Qxc5 16.Nxe4 Qe3+ 17.Qe2 (B.Avrukh-A.Morozevich, ICC 1999) Qb6 seems fine for Black anyway. ]

**14.Qe2**

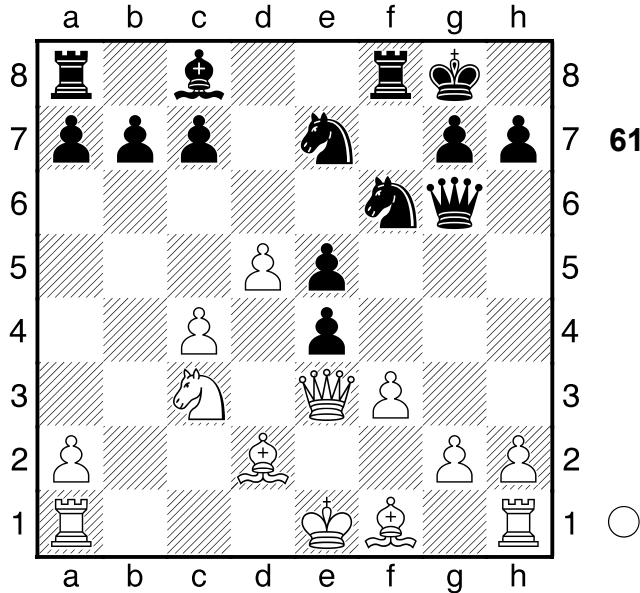
[On 14.Qc2 I like the direct fxe4 15.Nxe4 (after 15.fxe4 Nc5 16.Be3 b6 White has problems completing development, while d6 looks like a nice square for the e7-knight ) 15...Nf5 16.Bc3 Nf6 ; for example, 17.Bd3 Ne3 18.Nxf6+ Qxf6 19.Bxh7+ Kh8 20.Qf2 Qg5 21.Be4 Nxg2+ 22.Kf1 Qh6 23.Kxg2 Bh3+ 24.Kg1 Qg5+ 25.Qg3 Qe3+ 26.Qf2 Qxc3 27.Qh4+ Kg8 28.Qh7+ Kf7 29.Qxh3 Qxa1+ 30.Kg2 Qxa2+ 31.Kg3 Qa6 32.Rb1 with a likely draw in view of Black's open king, so White has just about enough for the exchange. ]

**14...Nf6**

[This time 14...fxe4 15.Nxe4 Nf5 is a little better for White after 16.Qf2 Nd4 17.Bd3 Nf6 18.Nxf6+ Qxf6 19.0-0 , since the black knight isn't doing much on d4 and can be

targeted by the bishop.]  
[So Black might prefer 14...b6!, keeping his options open; for example, 15.Qf2 (or 15.Qe3 Nc5) 15...Ba6 16.Be2 fxe4 17.Nxe4 Nf6 18.Nxf6+ Qxf6 19.0-0 c6 and the white centre is obliterated.]

### 15.Qe3 fxe4



### 16.Nxe4?!

[Opening the f-file with 16.fxe4! appears suicidal; nevertheless, this was the correct course. White has defensive ideas of Qg5, or if Ng4?! then 17.Qg3! Qb6 18.Be2 Nf6 19.Qe3 consolidates his advantage.]

### 16...Nxe4 17.Qxe4

[Now after 17.fxe4 Rf4 18.Bd3 Qxg2 19.0-0-0 Rf3 20.Qc5 Ng6, Black's pieces will find better squares than their white counterparts.]

**17...Bf5 18.Qxe5!** The best try. True, there will be a check on the open e-file and the king will have to take refuge on f2 (or d1), but it is no worse than it is now on the e1-square.

[Whereas trying to keep the position closed with 18.Qe3?! Rae8 19.Bc3? e4 20.f4 leaves White with a terrible

position after Bg4, followed by ... Nf5.]

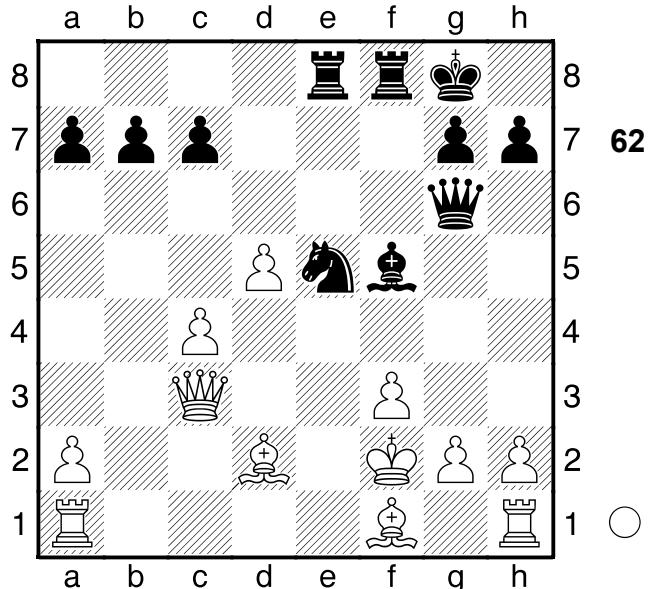
### 18...Nc6 19.Qc3

[Taking the c-pawn as well is too much and White will be punished for his unjustifiable appetite for pawns: 19.Qxc7? Rae8+ 20.Kf2 Qf6 21.Re1 Qd4+ 22.Be3 (or 22.Kg3 Qxd2 23.Rxe8 Rxe8 24.h3 Ne5 25.d6 Qg5+ 26.Kf2 Qh4+ 27.Kg1 Nxf3+ 28.gxf3 Qg3+ 29.Bg2 Re1#), which is just one of the many ways for White to lose] 22...Rxe3 23.Rxe3 Re8 24.dxc6 Qxe3+ 25.Kg3 Qe1+ 26.Kf4.

**EXERCISE:** White's king is in the middle of the board surrounded by menacing black pieces. Take a minute to figure out how to mate him.

**ANSWER:** Did you find it? The strongest continuation is Re4+! 27.fxe4 (or 27.Kxf5 g6+ and ...Qh4 mate) 27...Qxe4+ 28.Kg3 (or 28.Kg5 Qg4#) 28...Qe3+ 29.Kh4 g5+ 30.Kh5 Bg6+ 31.Kh6 (or 31.Kg4 h5#) 31...g4+ 32.Qf4 Qxf4#.]

### 19...Rae8+ 20.Kf2 Ne5



### 21.h3?

[Stopping ...Ng4+ was not a priority,

despite it being a potentially dangerous check, as shown by 21.Re1? Be4 22.Be2 Bxd5! 23.cxd5?? (even 23.Rhf1! Qd6 24.Kg1 Nxc4 25.Bxc4 Qc5+ just leaves White a pawn down ) 23...Ng4+ 24.Kf1 Qb6 , when the dark square weaknesses are now very evident and White is lost; e.g. 25.Be3 Nxe3+ 26.Kf2 Nd1+ 27.Kg3 Qg6+ 28.Kh3 Qh6+ 29.Kg3 Qf4+ 30.Kh3 Nf2# . ]

[ Probably only an engine would find the surprising solution to White's problems: 21.h4! , and if Bd3 (as in the next note) then 22.Rh3! Bxf1 23.Kxf1 Qg4 24.f4! and apparently the position is almost equal. ]

**21...h5** Black wants to advance to h4 to accentuate the dark squares weakness around the white king, and he achieves this to crushing effect in the game.

[ Objectively, Dautov's suggestion 21...Bd3! was a better way to continue the attack, when 22.Bxd3 (or 22.Re1 Bxf1 23.Rhxf1 Nd3+ 24.Kg1 Nxe1 25.Rxe1 Rxe1+ 26.Bxe1 Re8 27.Qd2 Qb1 28.Kf2 Qb6+ 29.Kf1 Qc5 30.Qc3 b5 ) 22...Nxd3+ 23.Kf1 Rf6 is hopeless for White. Compare the huge knight on d3 with the useless rook on h1. One of the many possibilities for Black is to double rooks on the f-file and sacrifice on f3. ]

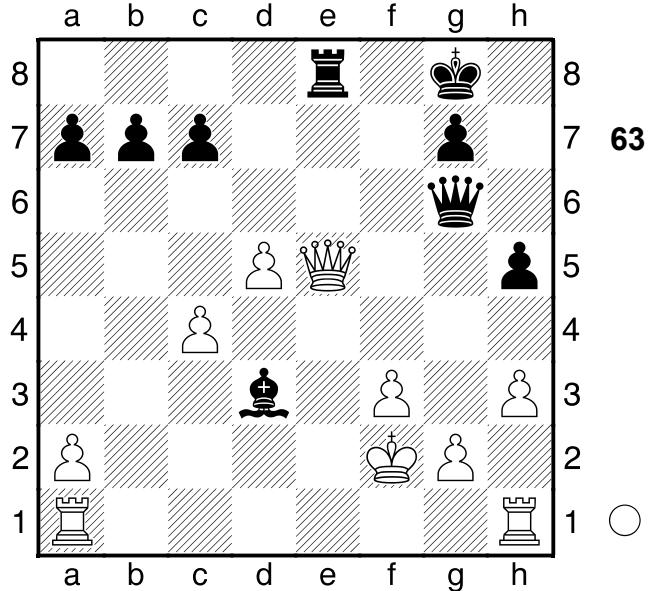
**22.Bf4??** This leads to a forced loss.

[ 22.h4! was even more necessary than before. White may have miscalculated the check on d3, perhaps thinking that opposite-coloured bishops would be a factor. ]

**22...Nd3+ 23.Bxd3 Bxd3 24.Be5**

[ Or 24.Be3 h4! 25.Rae1 Qg3+ 26.Kg1 Rxf3 27.Bd2 Rxe1+ 28.Bxe1 Rf1# . ]

**24...Rxe5 25.Qxe5 Re8**



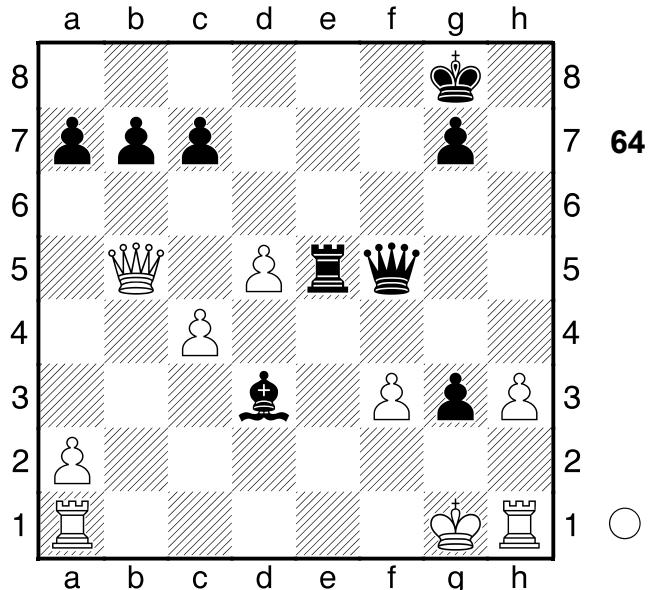
**26.Qb2 h4!**

[ Much stronger than 26...Re2+. The dark square weaknesses are now fatal. ]

**27.g4 hxg3+ 28.Kg1 Qf5 29.Qb5**

[ Or 29.Qg2 Qe5 with the deadly threat of ...Qd4+. ]

**29...Re5**



. There is no answer to ...Qxf3.

**0-1**

Georgescu,T  
 Kulaots,K  
 10: Iasi  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

D07

2014

another question.

[The more solid alternative 8...Nf6 is covered in Games 13-16.]

**9.f3** White of course takes up the challenge, since there is nothing else.

**9...Bxf3?!** At first sight it appears that Black is about to win the exchange.

Unfortunately, his rook on h8 turns out to be equally vulnerable and he ends up material down.

[The simple retreat 9...Be6 is examined in the next two games.]

[Black has also tried leaving the bishop en prise and just continuing development, but this has not stood up to analysis: 9...Nf6?! 10.Nxd4 (not 10.fxg4? dxg3 11.Nxc3 Qg5 and Black is clearly better)

10...0-0-0?!(after 10...Nxd4 11.Qxd4 Qxd4 12.Bxd4 Be6, the two bishops give White a permanent edge)

11.fxg4! (there is no need to go in for 11.Qa4!? Qg5 12.Nxc6 Qxe3+ 13.Be2 Rhe8 14.Qc2 Ne4!? 15.fxe4 bxc6 16.e5! Rd5 17.Rd1 Rxd1+

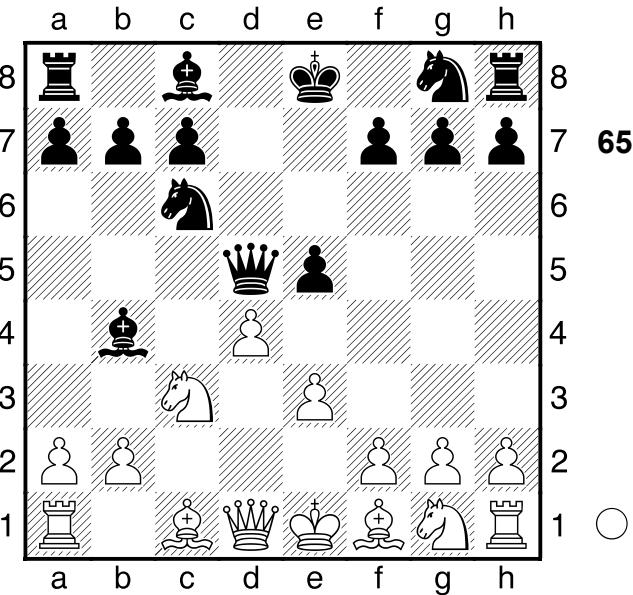
18.Qxd1 Rd8 19.Bd2 Qxe5 20.h3, as in J.Vakhidov-B.Holmirzaev, Tashkent 2009, though White is better here too) 11...Rhe8 12.Nf5! Qc5 (or 12...g6 13.Qxd5 Nxd5 14.Nd4 and Black has nothing, L.Madebrink-L. Olsson, Swedish League 2010)

13.Qe2! (Bronznik) Nb4 (or 13...g6 14.Qb5!) 14.Bxf6 Nd3+ 15.Qxd3 Rxd3 16.Bxd3 gxf6 17.Rd1 and White had too much for the queen in J.Cheung-F.Mottais, NATO Championship, Kaunas 2011.)

[9...0-0-0 10.Nxd4 Nf6? transposes.]

**10.gxf3 Qxf3**

(Diagram 66)



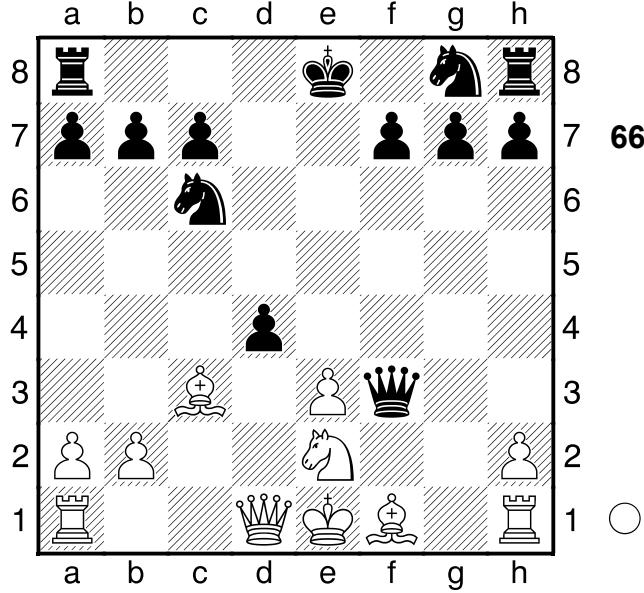
**6.Bd2 Bxc3 7.Bxc3** Instead of recapturing with the b-pawn as in the previous six games, this time White forces the pace and puts pressure on the e5-pawn.

**7...exd4 8.Ne2** The pin on the d-file enables White to take back on d4 with the knight and keep the bishop pair.

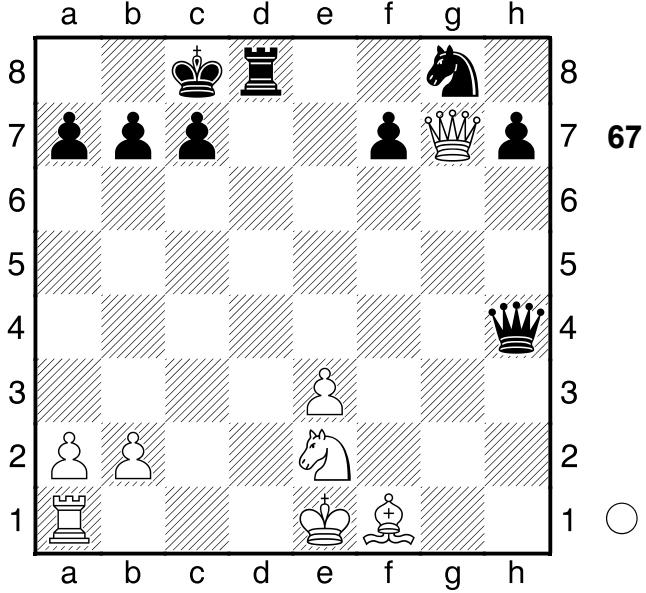
[Obviously, 8.exd4 makes little sense here;]

[while 8.Bxd4 Nxd4 9.Qxd4 Qxd4 10.exd4 leaves White with an isolated d-pawn and no compensation to show for it.]

**8...Bg4** QUESTION: Why put the bishop here knowing that 9 f3 will kick it away?  
 ANSWER: 9 f3 is precisely what Black wants to see, as it weakens the e3-square and allows tactics based on that. Whether those tactics are sufficient is



66



67

## 11.Bxd4!

[Stronger than 11.Nxd4 Qxh1 12.Nxc6 Nf6 , even if the two bishops make this position unattractive for Black as well. After the text the weakness at g7 ensures that White will recoup the rook, leaving Black with insufficient compensation for the missing piece. ]

## 11...Nxd4

[Taking the rook at once is clearly worse: 11...Qxh1? 12.Bxg7 Qxh2 13.Qa4! (guarding against a check on h4, which means Black has no way to disturb the white king) 0-0-0 14.Bxh8 f6 15.Rd1 Re8 16.Qf4 Qh5 was D.Bonneau-M.Bergeron, Quebec 2010, and now 17.Nd4 Qa5+ 18.Kf2 Ne5 19.Bb5 c6 20.Be2 consolidates, since Qxa2? allows 21.Nf5 and the check on d6 is deadly.]

## 12.Qxd4 Qxh1 13.Qxg7 0-0-0

**14.Qxh8 Qxh2 15.Qg7** Otherwise the check on h4 would be very embarrassing. **15...Qh4+**

(Diagram 67)

**16.Qg3 Qb4+ 17.Kf2** Activity is more important than picking up another pawn at the moment. **17...Nf6**

[After 17...Qxb2?! 18.Rc1 Qf6+ 19.Qf4 Qe7 20.Nd4 Nf6 21.Bg2 Ne8 22.Qf5+, White was winning in W.Browne-E.Straver, Reno 2004, since Kb8? 23.Nc6+! leads to mate.]

Although Black is again a piece down (for a couple of pawns), the exposed white king at least give him reasonable practical chances.

**18.Bg2** Answering the threat of ...Ne4+.

[White has also tried:

a) 18.Qf4 Ne4+ 19.Kg1 (or 19.Kf3 Nd2+ 20.Kf2 Ne4+ repeating, C. Barrero Garcia-S.Garza Marco, Seville 2004 ) 19...Qxb2 20.Rc1 Nd6 21.a4 Rg8+ 22.Kf2 Rg6 , P.H.Nielsen-A.Morozevich, ICC 1999. ]

b) 18.Bh3+ Kb8 19.Bf5 (trying to keep the black knight quiet) Qxb2 (or similarly 19...Rd5 20.Qf3 , W.Von Alvensleben-V.Bronznik, Hanover 1998, and then h5 ) 20.Rc1 Qb6 21.Qf3 , S.Shipov-S.Zablotsky, Russian Cup, online qualifier 2004, and now h5 with renewed ideas of ...

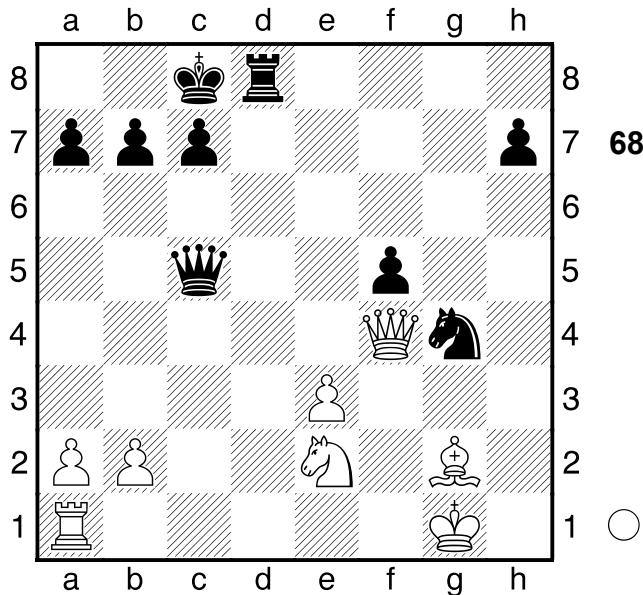
Ng4.

White may be objectively better in all lines but he is still some way from consolidating.]

**18...Ng4+ 19.Kg1 f5 20.Qf4**

[ Possibly 20.Rc1 was stronger; for example, Rd7 (not 20...Qe7? 21.e4! Rxd7 22.Bf1 Rxb2 23.exf5 Nf6 24.Nd4 and White is winning: his king is safe and Ne6 is a threat ) 21.Bd5 (if 21.Bh3 Qxb2 22.Bxg4 fxg4 23.Qxg4 Qxa2 24.Rd1 Qf7 25.Rxd7 Qxd7 26.Qg8+ Qd8 27.Qxh7 c6 , White's chances of converting look slim ) 21...Kb8 22.Be6 Rg7 23.Bxf5 h5 24.Kf1 Qxb2 25.e4 Qxa2 26.Qc3 Qg8 27.Nf4 and the white king has a bit more cover.]

**20...Qc5**



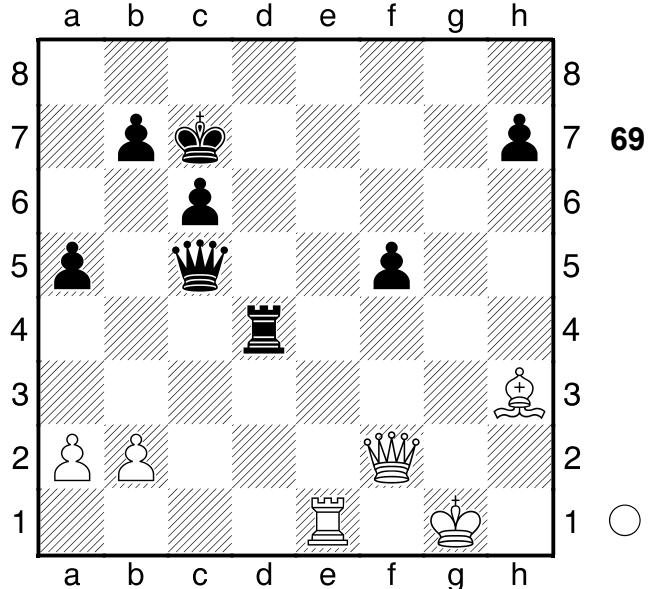
**21.Nd4** Giving up the e3-pawn in order to force the knights off the board.

**21...Nxe3 22.Qxe3 Rxd4 23.Re1**

Black had the very nasty threat of ...Rd1+. **23...a5?!** There was no need to create luft.

[Instead, 23...f4 safeguards the f-pawn. Note that 24.Qe6+ Kb8 25.Qe8+ does not mate because Rd8+ comes with discovered check.]

**24.Qf2 c6 25.Bh3 Kc7**



**26.Bxf5 h5 27.Bh3**

[ 27.Qe3!? might improve, preventing ...Qg5+, coordinating the heavy pieces, and threatening to swap queens with Qe7+. After Qd5 28.Bh3 White's king is relatively safe and he can start thinking about making his extra piece count.]

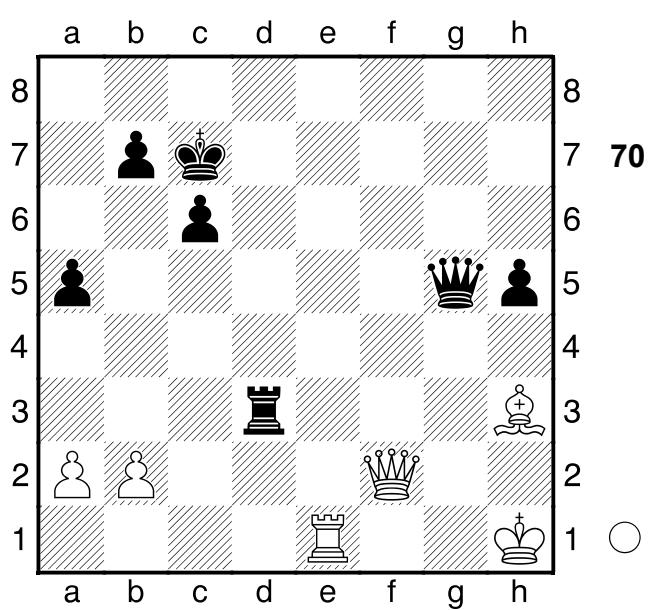
**27...Qg5+ 28.Kh1 Rd3 29.Qf7+!?**

White bails out to a draw.

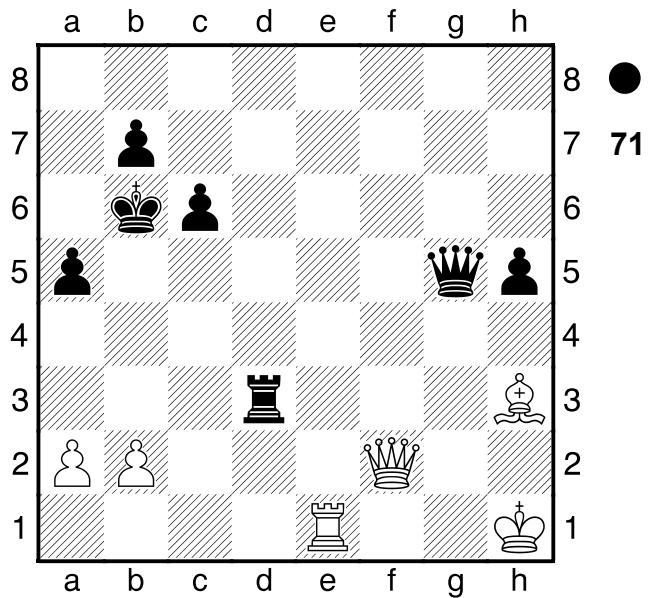
[There was nothing wrong with 29.Bg2 , though after h4 it is difficult to envisage how White might make progress.]

**29...Kb6 30.Qf2+ Kc7**

(Diagram 70)



**31.Qf7+ Kb6 32.Qf2+**



. Black managed to draw this game but it was hard work, so the 9...Bxf3?! variation cannot be recommended.

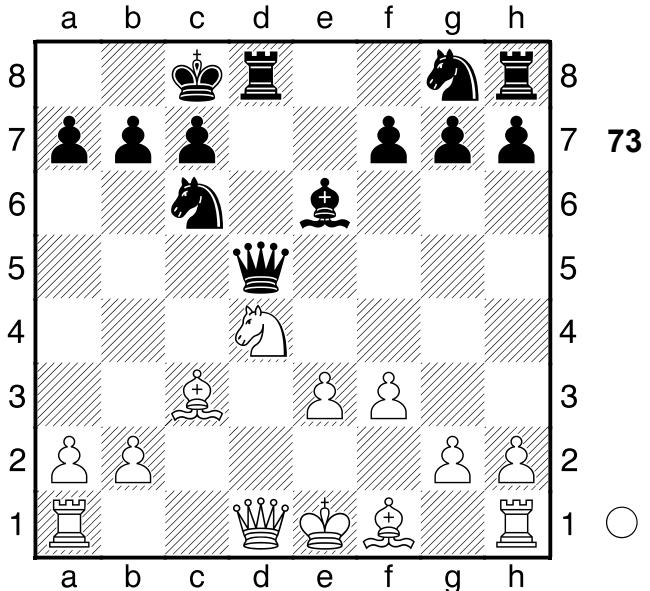
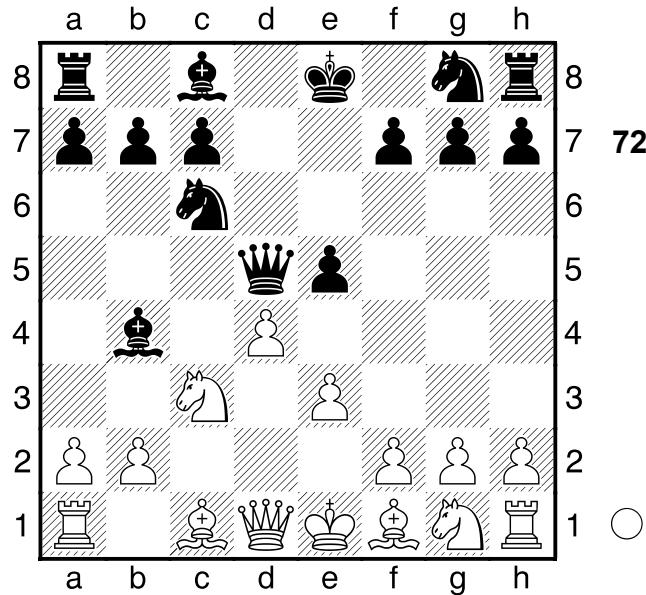
$\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}$

**Jamrich,G**  
**Antal,G**  
**11:** Budapest  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

**D07**

1998

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.cxd5 Qxd5 4.e3 e5 5.Nc3 Bb4**



**6.Bd2 Bxc3 7.Bxc3 exd4 8.Ne2 Bg4**

**9.f3 Be6** Having achieved its purpose – inducing the weakening 9 f3 – the black bishop retreats again. **10.Nxd4 0-0-0**

[Exchanging pieces with 10...Nxd4 11.Qxd4 Qxd4 12.Bxd4 leaves Black in a depressing endgame; for example, f6 13.Kf2 Ne7 14.Be2 Kf7 15.Rhc1 c6 16.b4 Nf5 17.Bc3 Nd6 18.a4 and White's bishop pair and minority attack gave him a clear strategic advantage in S.Atalik-I. Miladinovic, Greek League 1996.]

(Diagram 73)

**11.Qa4 Nge7 12.Nxc6**

[The more subtle 12.Kf2 is examined in the next game.]

**12...Nxc6 13.Bb5 Qc5** Eyeing the weakness at e3.

[13...a6 is considered to be a mistake because of 14.Bxc6 Qxc6 15.Qxc6 bxc6 16.Bxg7 Rhg8 17.Bf6 Rd3 18.Rg1, when

**A) 18...Rxe3+?? 19.Kd2**

traps the rook (Atalik); -- (19...--);

**B) although 18...Bc4! 19.Bd4 Bd5** (threatening ...Bxf3) 20.f4 (or 20.Ke2 Bc4) 20...h5 may not be so easy to win.]

[Another option is 13...Rd6 14.Kf2 (if 14.Bxc6 Rxc6 15.Qxa7 then Ra6 16.Qd4 Qxd4 17.Bxd4 Bxa2 regains the pawn) 14...a6 15.Be2 f6 16.Rhd1 Qc5 and Black is quite solid, even if White still has the better chances with the two bishops.]

**14.Kf2**

[White cannot ignore the threat: 14.0-0?! Qxe3+ 15.Kh1 Bd5 is fine for Black (as exemplified by 16.Rfe1 ½-½ I.Foygel-J.Curdo, Natick 1998);]

[and 14.Bxc6? Qxe3+ 15.Kf1 bxc6

16.Qxc6? Rd6 17.Qb5 a6 18.Qe2 Qc5 (threatening ...Bc4) 19.Qf2 Qb5+ 20.Kg1 Bh3!! is just winning, according to the engines.]

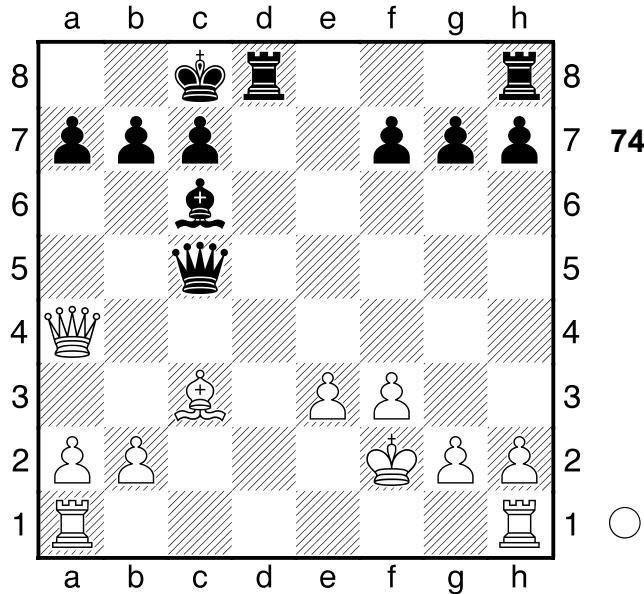
**14...Bd7 15.Bxc6?!** Playing to win a pawn is logical, this is mistimed and allows Black a strong initiative.

[The same applies to 15.Bxg7 Rhg8 16.Bc3 Ne5 17.Bxd7+ Rxd7, when Black has good compensation based on the weak light squares.] [Since 15.Qc4 Qf5 16.e4 (A.Flumbort-G.Antal, Paks 1998) Qh5]

[and 15.Rhe1 (V.Shtyrenkov-P.Tishin, Alushta 2001) Rhe8 also seem okay for Black,]

[White should probably opt for 15.Rad1!, transposing to the next game.]

**15...Bxc6**



**16.Qg4+ f5 17.Qxg7?!**

[Objectively, 17.Qb4 was preferable, with equality.]

**17...Rhg8 18.Qh6** EXERCISE: Black has open lines and very active pieces for the pawn. How should he proceed?

**18...Qd5?!**

[ANSWER: The best move was

18...f4! ;

**A)** intending 19.Qxf4? Rdf8 20.Qe5 Qc4 with huge threats on the light squares.;

**B)** Seeing as 19.Rhe1 Rde8 20.Qxf4 Ref8 doesn't really improve this for White; ( 20....-- );

**C)** and 19.Bd4?? loses at once to Qc2+;

**D)** he has to try 19.Rae1!, after which 19...Rgf8 keeps up the pressure (the immediate threat is ...Rd3). White is clearly suffering here with only a pawn to show for it, though there doesn't seem to be a forced win.]

**19.Qh3**

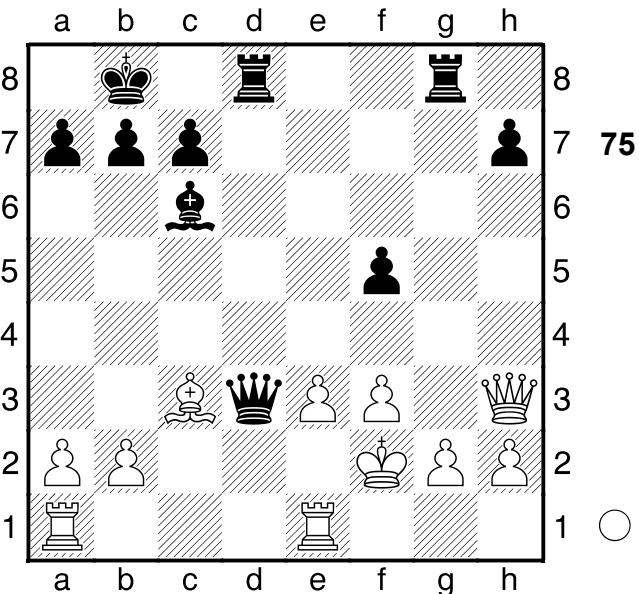
[QUESTION: Why not 19.Rad1, forcing major exchanges?

ANSWER: Black was hoping for that, as he has the tactical shot Rxg2+! 20.Kxg2 Qxf3+ 21.Kg1 Qg2# .]

**19...Qd3 20.Rhe1**

[This time 20.Rad1?? loses to Qc2+ .]

**20...Kb8**



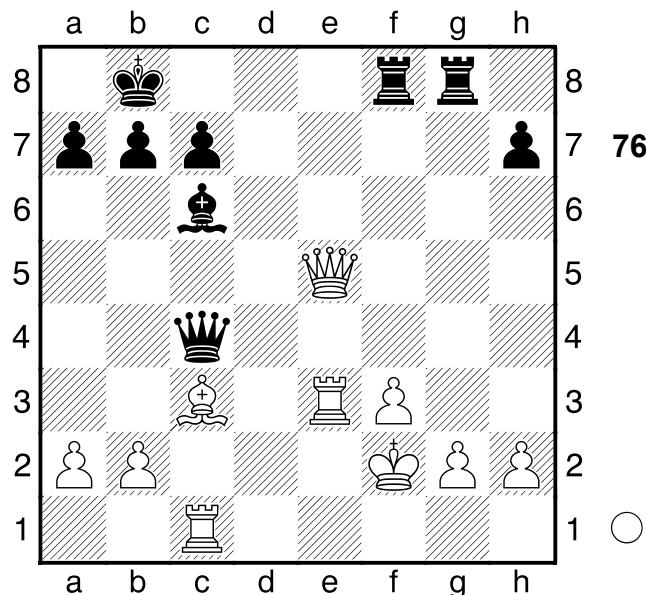
**21.Rac1 f4!?** Throwing the f-pawn to open lines. **22.exf4 Qc4 23.Qf5 Rdf8** The remainder of the game seems to

have been conducted in mutual time trouble, as both sides make serious mistakes, starting with:

#### 24.Qe5?

[Instead, 24.Be5 Qxa2 25.Qxh7 keeps White firmly in control. The black rooks have no useful points of attack, so White's mass of kingside pawns should eventually triumph.]

#### 24...Rxf4 25.Re3 Rff8?!



#### 26.Rce1?

[Here 26.Qxc7+! was possible, although Ka8 (not 26...Kxc7? 27.Be5+ and 28 Rxc4 with two extra pawns) 27.Qe7 (if 27.Qxh7 then Rxg2+! draws) 27...Qg4! 28.Qd8+! Rxd8 29.fxg4 Rxg4 wouldn't be easy for White to convert.]

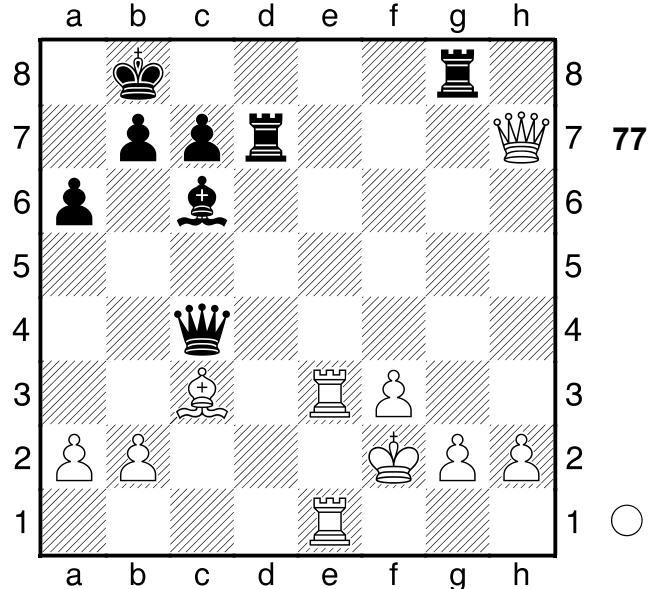
#### 26...a6? 27.Qh5 Rd8 28.Qxh7 Rd7??

#### 29.Qh5?

[Missing 29.Qxg8+! Qxg8 30.Re8+, which liquidates to a winning endgame. White gets more than one chance for this.]

#### 29...Rd5 30.Qh7 Rd7

(Diagram 77)

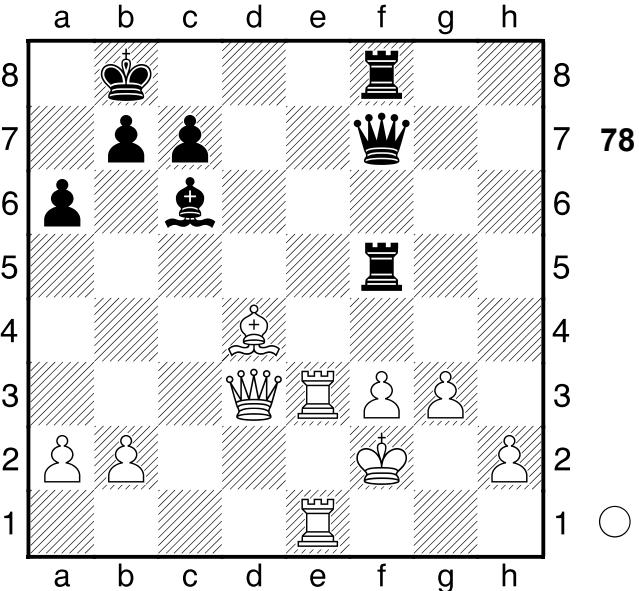


#### 31.Qh5 Rd5 32.Qh7 Rdg5!?

Black starts to get optimistic about his position.

[Otherwise 32...Rd7 repeats for the third time with a draw.]

#### 33.g3 Rf8 34.Qd3 Qf7 35.Bd4 Rf5



**36.f4?** Weakening the light squares is very dangerous.

[36.Kg1 was better.]

#### 36...Qd5 37.R1e2? Bb5?

[Now Black lets a win go by: 37...Rxf4+! 38.gxf4 Rxf4+ 39.Ke1 Rxd4 and the white queen cannot

move away because of mate on h1.]

**38.Qe4 Qf7** Sensibly declining the exchange.

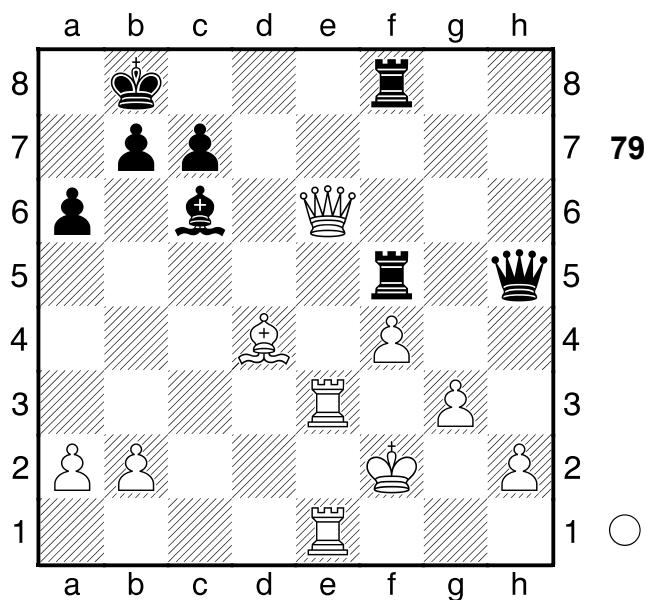
[After 38...Bxe2 39.Rxe2 Qf7 40.Be5 White is very safe with the enemy bishop gone from the board.]

**39.Re1?**

[39.Be5 was correct. Black has already shown he doesn't want the rook.]

**39...Bc6 40.Qe6? Qh5?**

[For a second time 40...Rxf4+! is crushing: 41.gxf4 Qxf4+ 42.Ke2 Qxd4 with the deadly threat of ... Bb5+.]



**41.Kg1 Rd8 42.Bc3 Rfd5 43.h3?!**

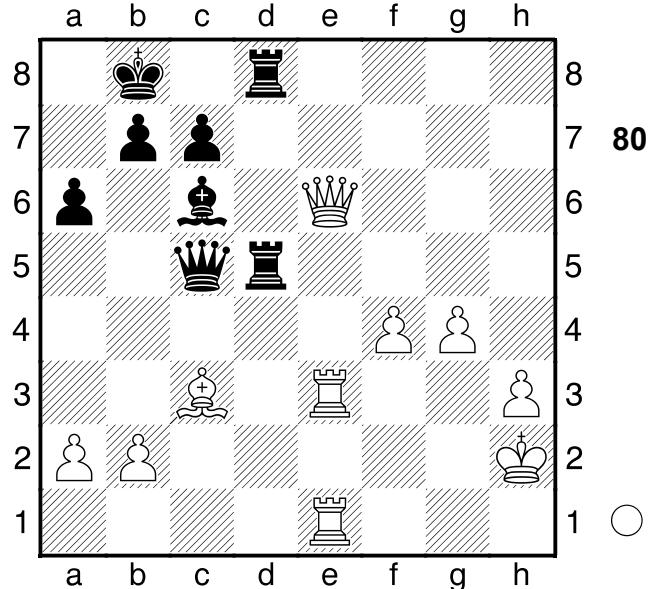
There was no need for preparation.

[43.g4! was stronger.]

**43...Rd3 44.g4 Qc5 45.Kh2 R3d5?**

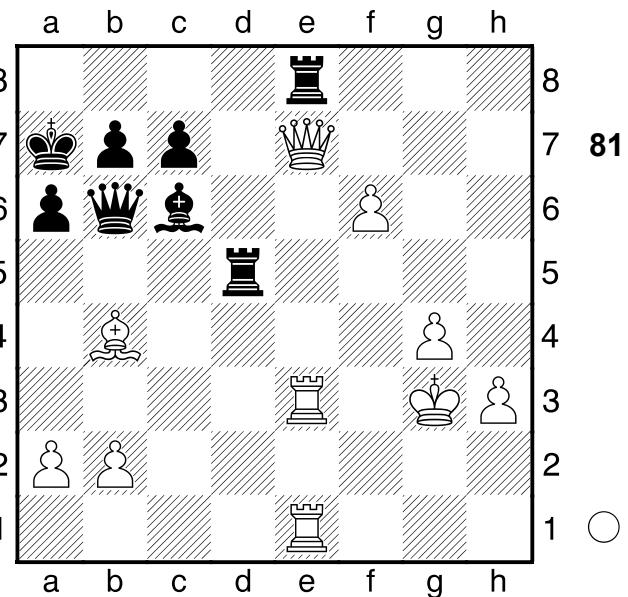
[Black had to play 45...Re8, even if 46.Qxe8+ Bxe8 47.Rxe8+ Ka7 48.Rf1 still leaves White with all the chances.]

(Diagram 80)



**46.Kg3 Ka7 47.Qe7 Qb6 48.f5 Rd3**

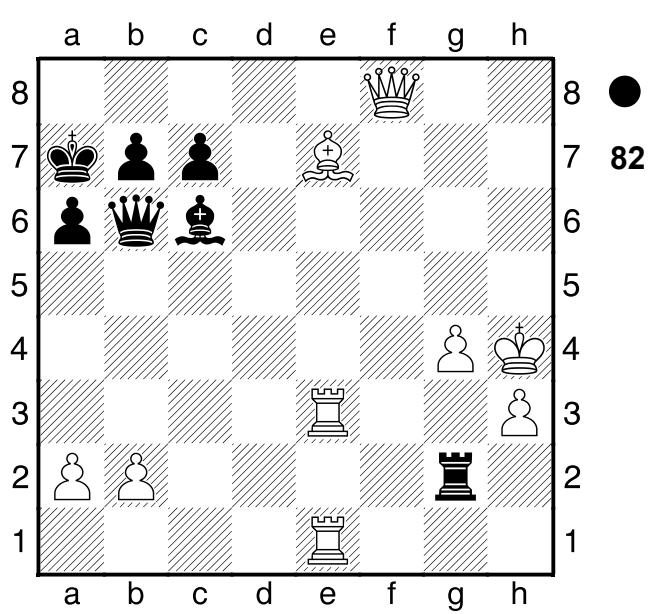
**49.Bb4 R3d5 50.f6 Re8**



Too late. **51.f7! Rxe7 52.Bxe7 Rd2**

**53.f8Q Rg2+ 54.Kh4**

(Diagram 82)

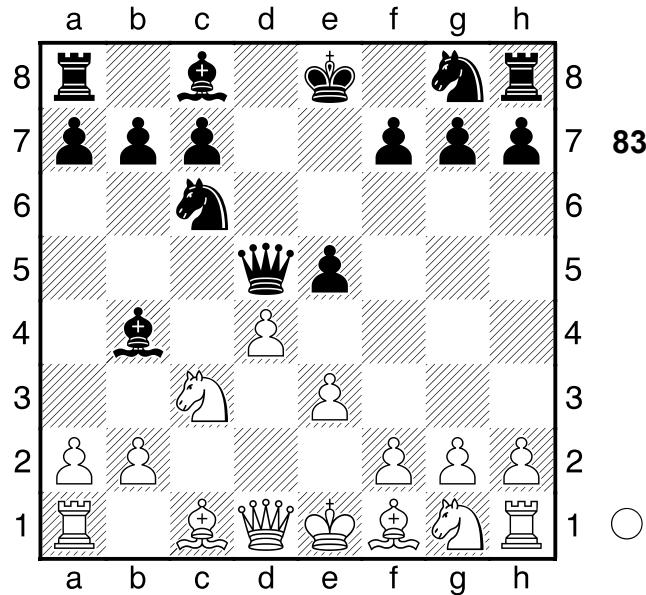


. It should be mentioned that (future GM) Gergely Antal was only 13 years old when he played this game – and 14 in the next one – though he soon (in 2000) obtained the IM title.

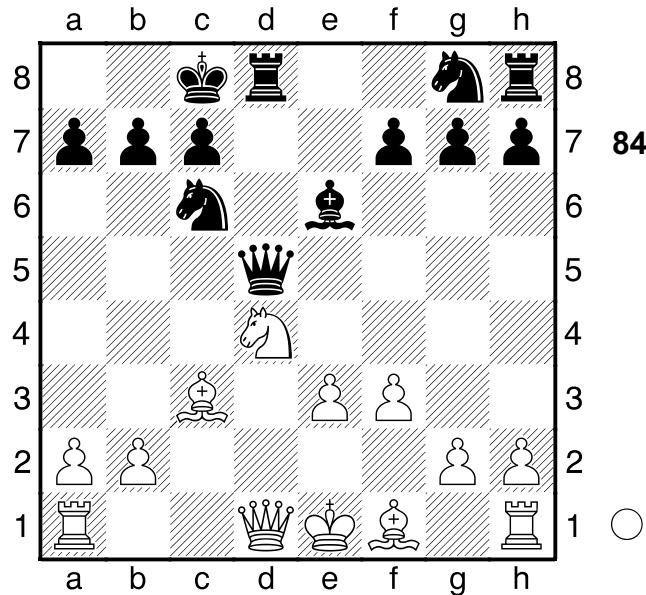
**1-0**

Hardicsay,P  
 Antal,G  
 12: Budapest  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.cxd5 Qxd5 4.e3 e5 5.Nc3 Bb4**



**6.Bd2 Bxc3 7.Bxc3 exd4 8.Ne2 Bg4  
9.f3 Be6 10.Nxd4 0-0-0**



**11.Qa4 Nge7 12.Kf2!** Rather than take on c6 at once, White leaves it as a

**D07**

1999

threat and first secures his king.

**12...Bd7** Black copies his own play from Game 11.

[Exchanging with 12...Nxd4 13.Qxd4 Qxd4 14.Bxd4 f6 reaches the same position as in Atalik-Miladinovic (see 10...Nxd4 etc in the previous game), except that Black has ...0-0-0 as an extra move. While that is definitely useful, it doesn't alter the general assessment substantially; the two bishops still offer White a slight advantage. Nevertheless this may be Black's best option here.]

**13.Nxc6 Nxc6 14.Rd1**

[Taking the g-pawn at once is a serious consideration too: 14.Bxg7! Rxe8 and now 15.Re1! (covering all White's weak points) ( 15.Rd1? allows the following forced sequence: Qg5 16.Bd4 Nxd4 17.Qxd4 Bc6 18.Qf4 Qxf4 19.Rxd8+ Rxd8 20.exf4 Rd2+ 21.Kg3 Bd5 and Black regains the pawn with the more active rook and bishop ) 15...Qd2+ 16.Re2 Qb4 ( 16...Qc1? 17.Bf6 is just winning ) 17.Qxb4 Nxb4 18.Bf6 (or 18.Rd2!? Be6 19.Rxd8+ Rxd8 20.a3 Nd3+ 21.Bxd3 Rxd3 22.g4 Rd2+ 23.Kg3 with decent prospects despite the opposite-coloured bishops ) 18...Bb5 19.Bxd8 Bxe2 20.Bxe2 Rxd8 21.f4! (after 21.a3 Nd3+ 22.Bxd3 Rxd3 23.Ke2 Rb3 24.Rb1 a5 , Black's activity gives him good drawing chances in the rook ending ) 21...Rd2 (if 21...Nxa2 then 22.Bc4 and Bxf7; or 21...Nd3+ 22.Bxd3 Rxd3 23.Ke2 ) 22.Kf3 Rxb2 23.Bc4 f6 24.Be6+ Kd8 25.Rd1+ Ke7 26.Bf5 Rxa2 27.Rd7+ Kf8 28.Rxc7 and White's powerful kingside majority dominates in all cases.]

**14...Qc5** As in the previous game, the black queen observes the weakness at

### e3. 15.Bb5

[The immediate capture is still an option: 15.Bxg7 Nb4!]

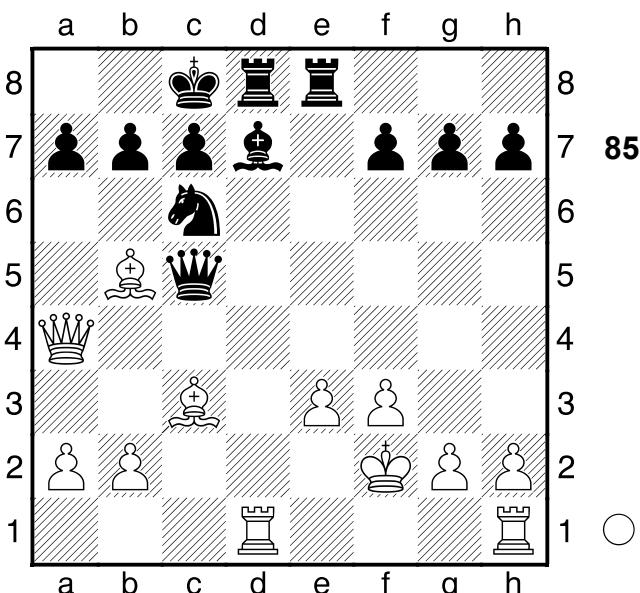
**A)** The attempt to win more material with 16.Rxd7 Rxd7 17.Bxh8 only leads to perpetual check: Rd2+ 18.Kg3 (or 18.Be2 Rxe2+! 19.Kxe2 Qc4+ 20.Kd2 Qd3+ 21.Kc1 Qxe3+ 22.Kb1 Qd3+ 23.Ka1 Nc2+ 24.Kb1 Nb4+ etc) 18...Qg5+ 19.Kh3 Qh5+ 20.Kg3 Qg5+;

**B)** 16.Qb3 Be6 17.Qc3 Qxc3 18.Rxd8+ Rxd8 19.Bxc3 Nxa2 20.Bd4 and White maintains an edge with the two bishops and a superior pawn structure.]

### 15...Rhe8

[The difference from Game 11 is that if Black now plays either 15...a6 ]

[or 15...f6 , then 16.Bxc6 Bxc6 17.Qg4+ wins the g7-pawn quite safely.]



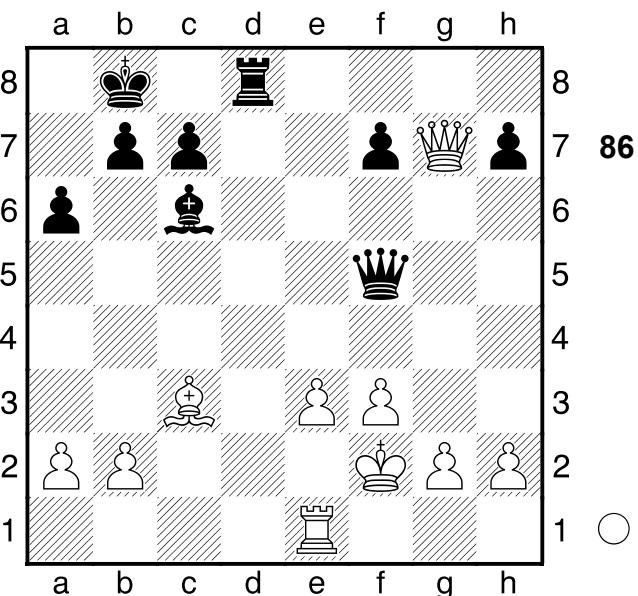
**16.Rhe1 a6** Now White can win the g-pawn again.

[It might be better to let the a7-pawn go: 16...Qh5!? 17.Bxc6 Bxc6 18.Qxa7 b6 19.Rxd8+ Rxd8 20.Kg1

Rd6 , when Black's solid position and the opposite-coloured bishops will make converting the pawn more difficult.]

### 17.Bxc6 Bxc6 18.Rxd8+ Rxd8

**19.Qg4+ Kb8 20.Qxg7** So White is just a pawn up and this time Black's chances against the white king are negligible. **20...Qf5**

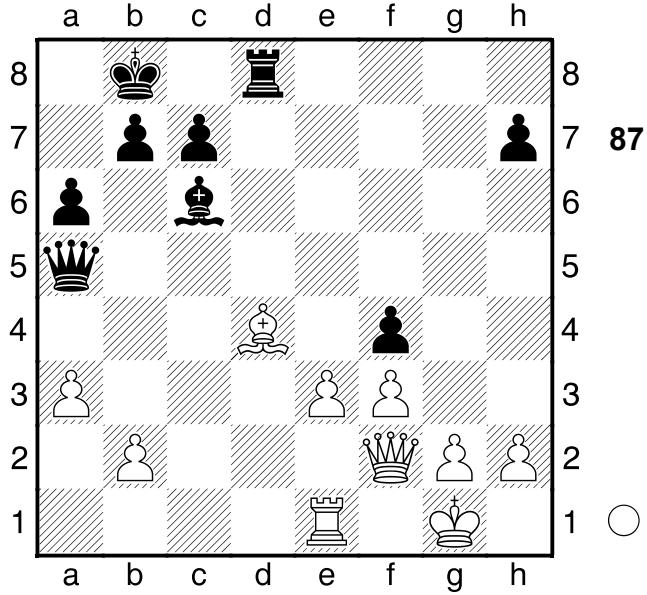


### 21.Bd4 Qc2+ 22.Kg1

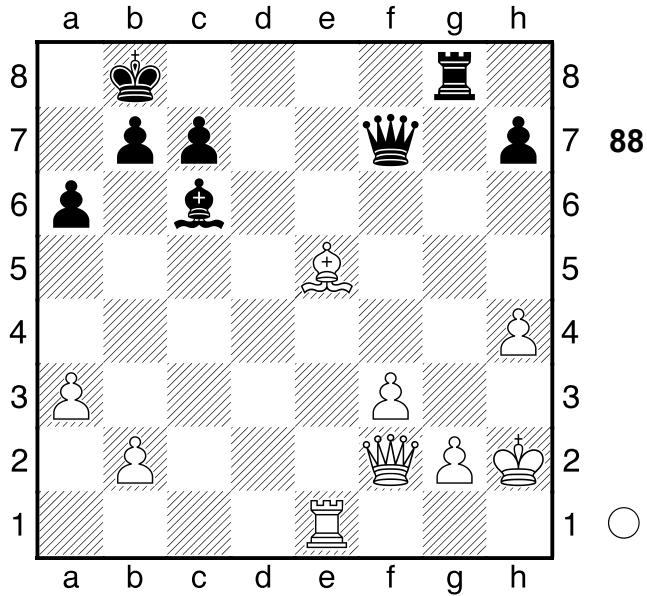
[Taking the h7-pawn as well would be greedy: 22.Re2 Qd1 23.Qxh7? Bb5! 24.Qc2 Bxe2 25.Qxe2 Qh1 26.h3 Rg8 27.Qf1 Qh2 and Black is back in the game.]

**22...Qd2 23.Qg3 f5 24.Qf2 Qa5 25.a3 f4**

(Diagram 87)



**26.Bc3 Qg5 27.h4** Preparing a home on h2 for his king. **27...Qh6 28.exf4 Qxf4 29.Be5 Qf7 30.Kh2 Rg8**



**31.Bg3 Rd8 32.Re5 Rd7?**

Surrendering the back rank at this moment could have had fatal consequences. It is well known that opposite-coloured bishops are hardly a trivial draw with major pieces on the board, as the side with the safer king can often generate a strong attack.

[ 32...Rd5 was better. ]

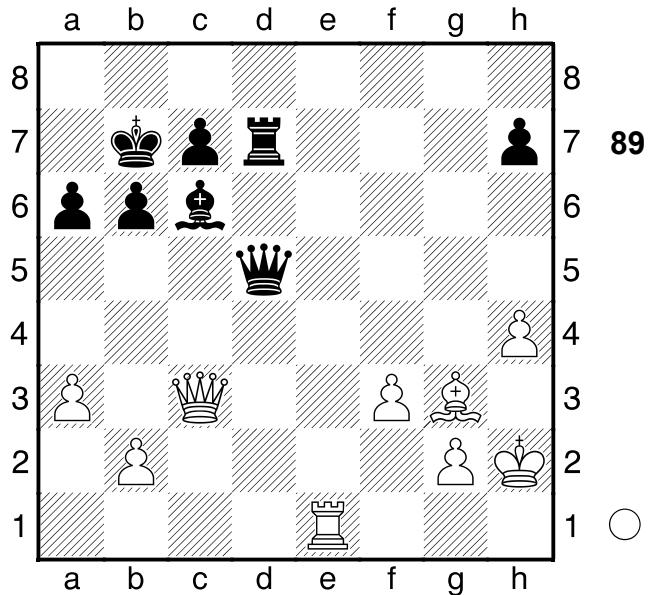
**33.Qe3!** Threatening Re8+. **33...b6**

[If 33...Rd8 then 34.Re7 . ]

**34.Qc3?**

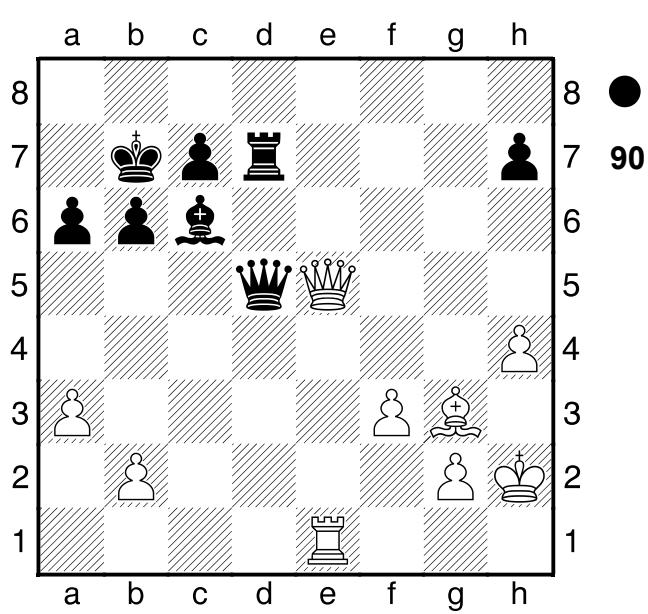
[Missing his chance: 34.a4! a5 ( 34...Bxa4 35.Qe4 wins the bishop due to the twin threat of mate on a8 ) 35.b4 axb4 36.a5 gives White a decisive attack; e.g. bxa5 (or 36...Kb7 37.axb6 cxb6 38.Bf2) 37.Rxa5 Kc8 38.Qc5 Rd5 39.Qc4! Qd7 40.Ra7 Bb7 41.Qxb4 Rb5 42.Qf8+ Qd8 43.Qg7 and Black's position is hopeless. ]

**34...Kb7 35.Re1 Qd5**



**36.Qe5**

(Diagram 90)

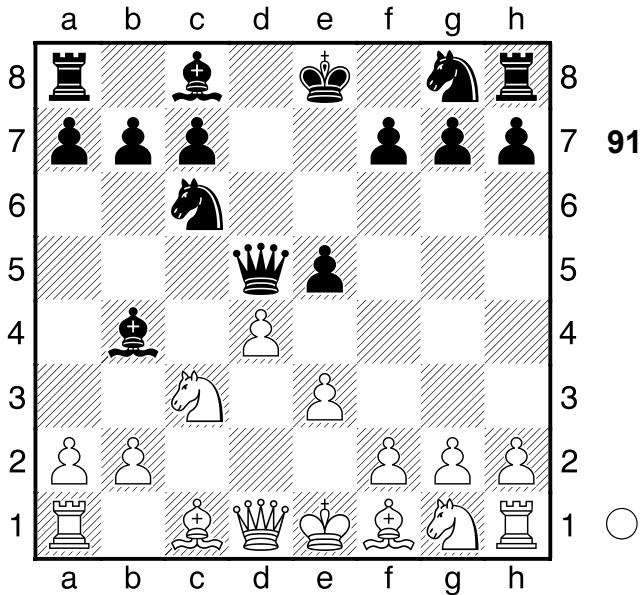


. Running out of either ideas or time,  
White is finally content with a draw.

$\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}$

Kishnev,S  
 Rabiega,R  
 13: German League  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.cxd5 Qxd5 4.e3 e5 5.Nc3 Bb4**



**6.Bd2 Bxc3 7.Bxc3 exd4 8.Ne2 Nf6**

This seems to be the most reliable continuation. Black castles quickly and utilizes his lead in development to create threats against the white king.

**9.Nxd4 0-0**

[As usual Black should avoid exchanging queens: 9...Nxd4?! 10.Qxd4 Qxd4 11.Bxd4 leaves White with his two bishops and a persistent edge.]

[Going for the c3-bishop with 9...Ne4?! is also a mistake, as after 10.Nb5 Qxd1+ (there is nothing else) 11.Rxd1 Black loses the c7-pawn for nothing.]

**10.Be2!?** QUESTION: Developing the bishop ignores the threat to the g-pawn. Is this justified?

ANSWER: White reckons that the opening of lines will benefit the side with

**D07**

2001

the bishops. He gets considerable compensation if Black takes on g2.

[The main move 10.Nb5 is examined in Games 14-16.]

[Others do not really test Black:

a) 10.Qf3 Ne4 11.Nxc6 Qxc6 12.Bd3 (or if 12.Bd4 Qc2 13.Qe2 then Qxe2+ 14.Bxe2 c5 15.Be5 Re8 16.Bf4 g5 , hunting the bishop down ) 12...Nxc3 13.Qxc6 bxc6 14.bxc3 Rb8 is fine for Black, H. Machelett-D.Ortmann, German League 2007.]

[b) 10.Qb3 Nxd4 11.Bxd4 (or 11.Qxd5 Nc2+ 12.Kd2 Nxd5 13.Kxc2 Bf5+ ½-½ Z.Ilinic-I. Miladinovic, Bosnian League 2006 ) 11...Qd6 12.Rd1 (or 12.Rc1 b6 ) 12...c5 13.Bc3 Qe7 14.Bc4 Ne4 15.0-0 b6 16.Bd5 Rb8 17.f3 Nxc3 18.Qxc3 Bb7 19.e4 and ½-½ R. Dautov-A.Morozevich, German League 2000.]

[c) 10.Qa4 , J.Barkhagen-G.Svenn, Swedish League 2003, can be met by Bd7! (Bronznik) 11.Nb5 Qf5 12.Rd1 (or 12.Nxc7 Rac8 13.Nb5 Ne7! 14.Qf4 Qxf4 15.exf4 Ned5 with excellent compensation ) 12...Ne4 13.Qc2 Nxc3 14.Qxf5 Bxf5 15.Nxc3 Rfd8 and Black has equalized.]

[d) 10.Nxc6 Qxc6 11.Rc1 ( 11.Qf3 Ne4 transposes to 10 Qf3 above )

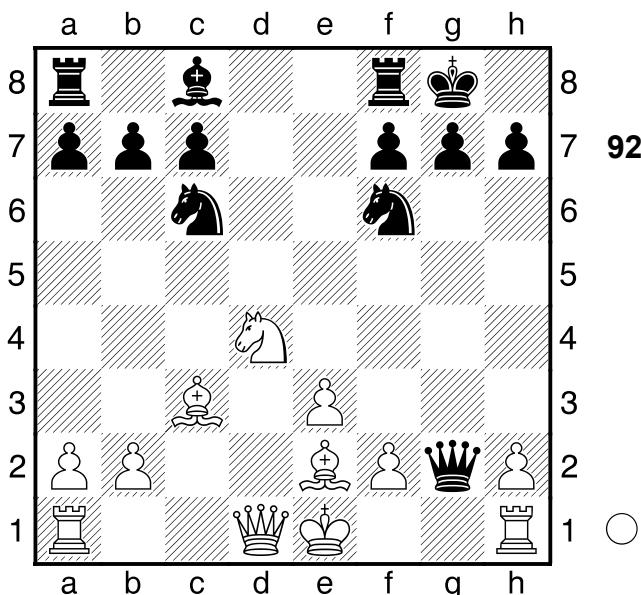
**A)** 11...Qe6! 12.Qd4 (or 12.Bd3 Ne4 13.Bd4 c5 ) 12...c5 (not 12...Qxa2?? 13.Bc4 and the queen is lost ) 13.Qe5 (or 13.Qh4 Nd5 ) 13...Qxa2 14.Be2 Bd7 15.0-0 Bc6 16.Qxc5 Ne4 17.Bc4 Qa4 18.Qd4 Nxc3 19.Qxc3 Bb5 20.Bxb5 and ½-½ J.Ebner-W.Van Vugt, correspondence 2015.;

**B)** Better than 11...Re8 12.Bd4 Qd6 13.Bd3! b6 , as in M.Conrad-T.Schlager, German League 2008,

when 14.Bxf6 Qxf6 15.Rxc7 Qxb2 (or 15...Be6 16.Qb1 leaves White with an extra pawn ) 16.Bxh7+ Kh8 17.Bc2 . ]

## 10...Qxg2!?

[Refusing the pawn with 10...Ne4 is much safer; for example, 11.Nxc6 (or 11.0-0 Nxc3 12.bxc3 Ne5 13.Qb3 Qd6 14.Rfd1 Qe7 , P.Genov-I.Miladinovic, French League 2003 ) 11...Qxc6 12.Bb4 (or 12.Bd4 Qg6 13.0-0 c5 14.Be5 Bh3 15.Bg3 Rfd8 , P.Andreasen-T. Bromann, Danish League 2001 ) 12...Re8 13.0-0 Qg6 14.Bf3 Bf5 , J.Plachetka-G.Haubt, World Seniors Championship, Arco 2010. Black has nothing much to worry about in any of these cases. ]



Courageously accepting the challenge.

## 11.Bf3 Qg6 12.Nxc6 bxc6 13.Qd4

[Grabbing the pawn back with 13.Bxc6?! is inconsistent and cedes the initiative to Black. For example, Rb8 14.Qf3 (or 14.Qd4 Rb6 15.Bf3 Bf5 16.0-0-0 Bb1 17.Rd2 Rd6 18.Qf4 Rxd2 19.Kxd2 Rd8+ 20.Ke1 Qc2 and the white king is not in a

happy place ) 14...Bg4 15.Qf4 Rb6 16.Bg2 Qd3 17.Bf1 Qc2 18.Rg1 (J.Schroer-Joe.Benjamin, US Chess League 2013) and now Rxb2!

19.Bxb2 Ne4 would have been very good for Black. ]

White's plan is simple: to castle queenside and use the open g-file for an attack. Black, on the other hand, has to defend precisely – especially difficult in new territory as the first player to face this line. Rabiega in fact makes a fatal mistake straight away.

## 13...Qf5?

Very tempting – the queen vacates the g-file and attacks the f3-bishop – but it's actually a serious loss of time.

[Before we get to the best reply, let's look at some other moves Black has tried:

a) 13...Be6? 14.0-0-0 c5 P.Van Hoolandt-O.Perez Mitjans, Seville 2016; (or if 14...Bxa2 15.Rhg1 Qb1+ 16.Kd2 Qxd1+ then 17.Bxd1! Rfd8 18.Kc1 Rxd4 19.Bxd4 and Black is in trouble ) 15.Qh4 Bxa2 16.Bxf6! and White has a big advantage – the check on b1 does nothing with the f6-bishop controlling both b2 and d8. ]

[b) 13...Bf5?! 14.0-0-0 Bb1 15.Qa4 Rad8 (S.Schafranietz-A.Karpatchev, Neuhausen 2004) 16.Rhg1 Qf5 17.Rg3 is also good for White, since the black queen is burdened with the defence of the bishop on b1 and the knight on f6. ]

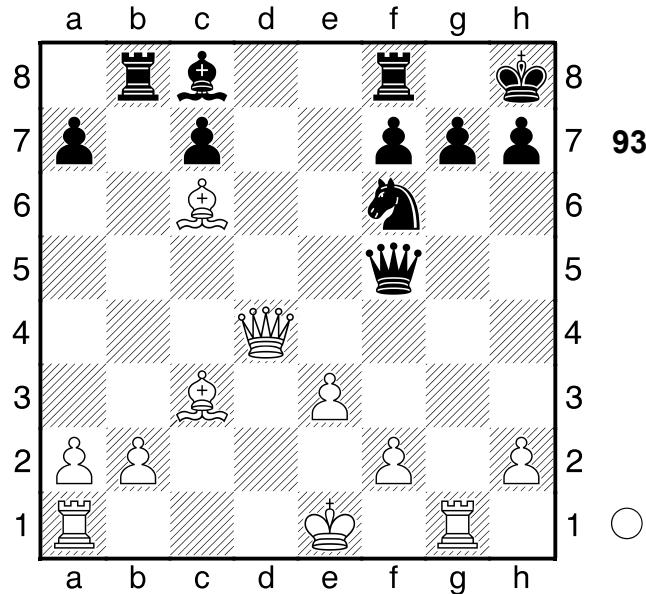
[c) 13...Bg4!? 14.Rg1 Bxf3 15.Rxg6 fxg6 and now 16.Qc4+ ( 16.Rc1 Rf7 17.Qb4 Ne4 18.Bd4 Rd8 gave Black good play for the queen in J. Duquesnoy-C.Marzolo, Marseille 2001 ) 16...Bd5 17.Qe2 Ne4 18.f4 (intending Be5) Nxc3 19.bxc3 and 20 c4 may offer a small plus. ]

[d) 13...Bb7! is correct, but who would find this over the board (other than Karpov perhaps)? The point is seen after 14.0-0-0 c5! 15.Qf4 Bxf3 16.Qxf3 (now Black can oppose queens) Qe4! (better than 16...Qg4 17.Qxg4 Nxg4 , then 18.Rhg1 f5 19.Rd5! g6 20.Rg2 , when White will regain the material with interest as f5, c5 and c7 are all weak ) 17.Qg3 Qe6 18.Rhg1 (or if 18.e4 , as in A.Mandel-Ch.Mann, German League 2004, then Ne8 – Dautov ) 18...g6 19.Qe5 Qxe5 20.Bxe5 Ne4 21.f3 f6 (or 21...Nd6 ) 22.Bxc7 Ng5 and Black should be fine. ]

#### **14.Bxc6 Rb8 15.Rg1!**

[Castling first would be inaccurate, since 15.0-0-0 Rb6! defends the vulnerable f6-knight after the white bishop retreats; whereas now the knight is under threat from the pin on the g-file, forcing Black to waste a tempo with the king. ]

#### **15...Kh8**



#### **16.0-0-0 Rb6**

[Nothing else is any better: 16...Be6 runs into 17.Rxg7! Kxg7 18.Rg1+ Kh6 (or 18...Kh8 19.Qxf6+ Qxf6

20.Bxf6# ) 19.Qh4+ Nh5 ( 19...Qh5 20.Qf4+ ) 20.Bg7# ; ]  
[while 16...h6 loses more prosaically to 17.Be4 Qxe4 18.Qxe4 Nxe4 19.Bxg7+ Kh7 20.Bxf8 . ]

#### **17.Qd8 Qc5**

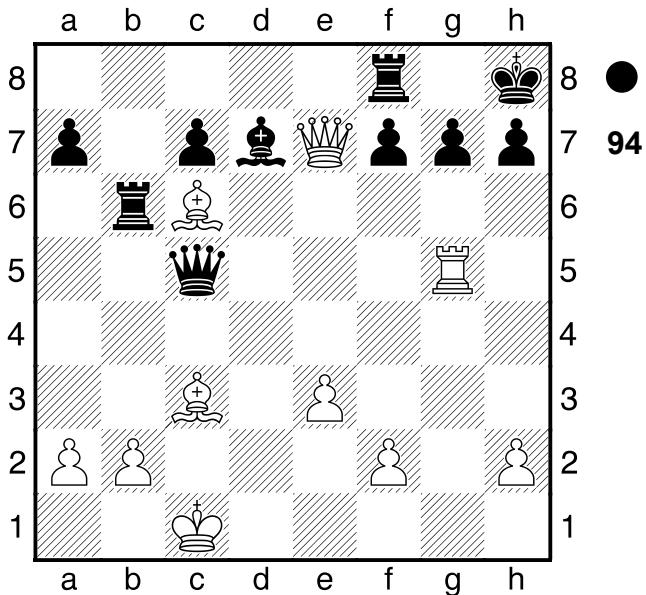
[If 17...Rg8 then 18.Qxg8+ forces mate with Nxg8 (or 18...Kxg8 19.Rd8+ Ne8 20.Rxe8# ) 19.Bxg7# . ]

#### **18.Rg5 Nd7 One last try.**

[ 18...Qxc3+ 19.bxc3 Rxd8 20.Rxd8+ Ng8 21.Rgd5 h6 22.Rxc8 Rxc6 23.Rdd8 wins another piece (Kishnev). ]

#### **19.Rxd7 Bxd7 20.Qe7!**

[Black resigns in view of 20.Qe7 Qxe7 21.Bxg7+ Kg8 22.Bf6# . ]

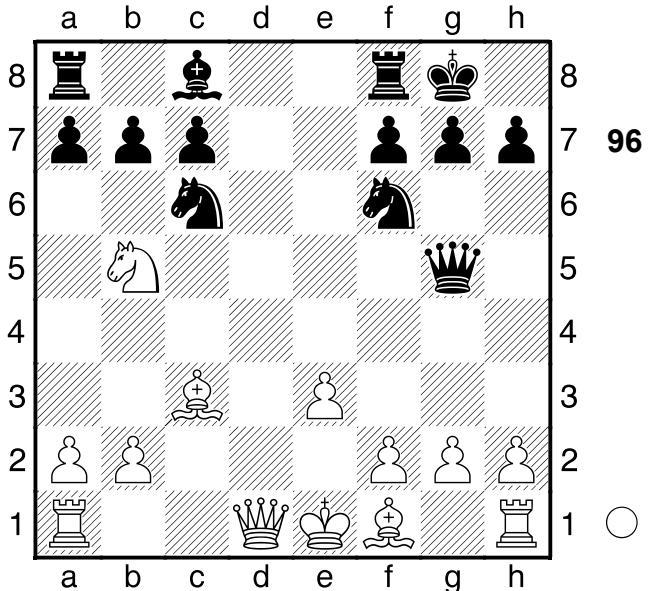


**1-0**

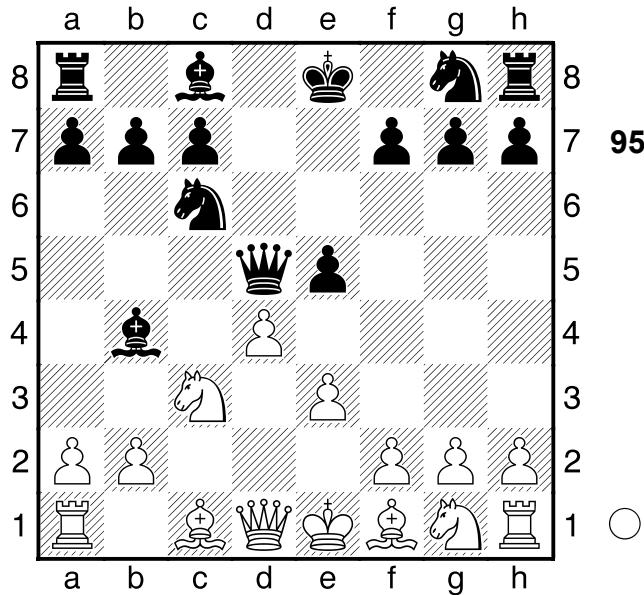
Husari,S  
 Lyell,M  
 14: Budapest  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

D07

2011



**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.cxd5 Qxd5 4.e3 e5 5.Nc3 Bb4**



**6.Bd2 Bxc3 7.Bxc3 exd4 8.Ne2 Nf6**

**9.Nxd4 0-0 10.Nb5** The black queen is powerfully placed on d5, observing both g2 and a2. The former is critical if White wants to bring his king to safety on the kingside, since his king's bishop needs to defend the g2-pawn. Therefore, White plays to force the black queen from its excellent perch, while attacking the c7-pawn at the same time.

**10...Qg5**

[Defending with 10...Qxd1+ 11.Rxd1 Ne8 is unattractive. Material is level but after 12.Bc4 a6 13.Nd4, the bishop pair always gives White the edge.]

From here the queen continues to exert pressure on g2. Black is ready to give up a pawn (and more) if necessary.

**11.Nxc7**

[White can also throw in 11.h4 first. We will look at this in Game 16.]

**11...Bg4 12.Qb3**

[After 12.f3? Rac8 Black has a huge attack for free; for example, 13.Nb5 Qxe3+ 14.Be2 (or if 14.Qe2, M.Podgaets-Bj.Johnson, online blitz 2004, then Qc5! 15.0-0-0 Bf5) 14...Rcd8 15.Qc1 Qb6 16.Bxf6 gxf6 17.fxg4 Rfe8 18.Kf1 Rxe2! 19.Kxe2 Re8+ 20.Kf3 Ne5+ 21.Kg3 Nd3, threatening ...Re3+, and White is lost.]

**12...Rad8** As required in this position Black goes all in, targeting the enemy king sitting in the centre. Meanwhile, White can take another pawn.

**13.Qxb7**

[For 13.h3 and other moves, see the next game.]

**13...Rd6** Defending the c6-knight and preparing either to double rooks or transfer to e6 when the white knight moves away.

[Black has another option in

(Diagram 96)

13...Qc5!?

**A)** The immediate idea is ...Qd6, threatening the c7-knight as well as ...Qd1+ and mates; e.g. 14.Na6? Qd6 15.f3 Rfe8 16.Kf2 Nd5;

**B)** and 14.Qb5? Qd6 15.f3 Qxc7 16.Bxf6 gxf6 17.fxg4 Rfe8

are both very good for Black.;

**C)** White has three reasonable ways to defend:

14.Qb3 Ne4 15.Bb5 (O.Kniest-A. Liebau, correspondence 2000) a6!? ( 15...Qf5; and 15...Rd6 are good too ) 16.Qc4 (or 16.Nxa6 Qf5 17.f3 Qg5 18.fxe4 Qxe3+ 19.Kf1 Qf4+ etc; not 16.Bxa6?! Rd7) 16...Qf5 17.f3 Bxf3 18.gxf3 Qxf3 19.Rf1 Qg4 20.Rf4 Qg1+

with a draw.;

**D)** 14.Bb5 Rd6 15.Na6

(the white queen is uncomfortably situated on b7 and already there are simple threats; e.g. 15.0-0? Bc8 16.Qa8 Bd7 17.Qb7 Nd8 18.Qb8 Ne6 19.Qb7 Qxc7 , winning a piece ) 15...Qd5 16.0-0 Bc8 17.Qc7 Qxb5 18.Qxd6 Ne4 19.Qf4 Nxc3 20.bxc3 Bxa6 21.Rfd1 , L.Van Wely-I.Miladinovic, Groningen 1997. White has secured his king with rook and two pawns for the two minor pieces. The game is equal.;

**E)** 14.h3! (Miladinovic) is probably best: 14...Ne4 (Bronznik's 14...Bc8!? 15.Qb3 Ne4 may be an improvement )

**E1)** the not so obvious threat was ...Qf5 and f2 is indefensible; e.g. 15.Rc1?? Qf5 16.Rc2 (and 16.f4 Qc5 17.Bd2 Qxc1+ 18.Bxc1 Rd1# are mate; while 16.f3 Qg5! 17.Ke2 Qh4 18.Be1 Rd2+! is a total disaster for the white king ) 16...Rd1#;

**E2)** 15.Qb5! Nd4!? ( 15...Qd6

16.Nd5 Qxd5 17.Qxd5 Rxd5

18.hxg4 Nxc3 19.bxc3

was good for White in the computer game Rebel Tiger-Century, Cadaques 2000 )

16.Bxd4 (not 16.Qxc5?? Nc2#)

16...Qc2 17.Be2 Rxd4 18.hxg4 Nc3 19.Bd3! (and not

19.bxc3?? Qxc3+ ) 19...Rxd3

20.bxc3 Qxc3+ 21.Ke2 Rd2+

22.Kf3 Qxc7 23.Rhd1

, when Black's attack fizzles out, leaving him a pawn down in a major piece ending. ]

**14.Nb5?** As in the previous game, a natural move turns out to be a critical mistake.

[ This variation really needs to be prepared at home as it is next to impossible for either side to work out such random-looking positions over the board. I had a deeper look and it seems White has two acceptable continuations (lines 'c' and 'd' below):

a) 14.Bc4? Rfd8 15.Kf1 (if 15.0-0 Bf3 16.g3 Qg4; or 15.Bb3 Bc8! 16.Qb5 Qxg2 wins ) 15...Rd1+ 16.Rxd1 Rxd1+ 17.Be1 Qc5 18.b3 Nd8 19.Qb8 Ne4 and White has no good defence to ...Nd2+ and mates. ]

[b) 14.h4? Rfd8 ( 14...Qf5! 15.f3 Qc5 16.Kf2 Rb8 17.Qa6 Ne5 may be even stronger ) 15.Be2 Qg6 (Bronznik) 16.Nb5 ( 16.Bxg4? Qxg4 17.0-0 Nh5 is hopeless for White ) 16...Bc8 17.Qxc8 Rxc8 18.Nxd6 Qxg2 19.0-0-0 Rd8 and Black is clearly better if not winning. ]

[c) 14.h3 Bf5!? ( 14...Qh4 15.g3 Rfd8 16.Be2 Qh6 , as in M.Peek-M. Zumsande, correspondence 2001, is probably okay too; whereas 14...Rb8 15.Qa6 Bh5 16.Qa4 Rc8 , J.Vilela de Acuna-H.Asis Gargatagli, Barbera

del Valles 2008, and now 17.g4!? , intending *Bg6* 18.h4 , looks good for White ) 15.Nb5 (or 15.Qb5 Ne4 ) 15...Re6 (threatening to sacrifice on e3) 16.0-0-0 Ne4 17.g4 Nxf2 18.gxf5 Qxe3+ ( 18...Rxe3!? 19.Bd2 Nxh1 is a possibility ) 19.Bd2 (or 19.Rd2 Qe1+ 20.Kc2 Qe4+) 19...Qc5+ 20.Nc3 Qxf5 (threatening ...Nd4) 21.Qb5 Ne5 22.Be2 Ned3+ 23.Bxd3 Nxd3+ 24.Kb1 Re5 25.Qa4 Nb4+ 26.Ka1 Nc2+ with a draw. ] [d) 14.Qb5 Qg6! (Black continues to eye the g2 square) 15.f3 ( 15.Be2? , as in M.Socko-C.Foisor, Athens 2004, fails to *Rb8!* 16.Qc4 *Bxe2* 17.Qxe2 *Qxg2* – Bronznik; instead, 15.Qc4 *Rc8* was surprisingly agreed drawn in L.Soule-E.Keber, correspondence 2006, perhaps in view of 16.Bxf6 *Qxf6* 17.Qxg4 *Qxb2!* 18.Qxc8+ Nd8 19.Rd1 Qc3+ 20.Ke2 Qc2+ 21.Kf3 Qxd1+ 22.Kg3 Rg6+ and so on )

**A)** and now I think the best continuation is 15...Qh6!

, when White has to tread very carefully.

For example, 16.Qe2 (not 16.Kf2 *Rc8* 17.Na6? Nd5 18.Re1 *Nxc3* 19.bxc3 *Qh4+* 20.g3 Qf6 21.Bg2 Ne5 22.Qe2 Nd3+ 23.Kg1 Nxe1 24.fxg4 *Qxc3* and White's position is in complete ruins ) 16...Rd7 17.fxg4 (not 17.Bxf6?! *Qxf6* 18.Nb5? *Rfd8* 19.fxg4 *Rd2* 20.Qxd2 *Rxd2* 21.Kxd2 *Qxb2+* and Black gains a decisive material advantage; while after 17.Nb5 *Re8* 18.Kf2 Ne4+ 19.Kg1 Nxc3 20.Nxc3 *Rxe3* 21.Qf2 *Bxf3*! , intending 22.gxf3? Ne5 , Black is clearly on top ) 17...Rxc7 18.h4! Ne4 19.g5 Qd6 (or 19...Qe6 20.Qc4) 20.Rh3

and Black has nothing definite, although “the position is still extremely complicated” (to quote Bronznik).;

**B)** 15...Rc8 , as in S.Atalik-A. Morozевич, Moscow 2002, might be met favourably by 16.fxg4!?

*Rxc7* (or 16...Qe4 17.Qc5) 17.Be2 . ]

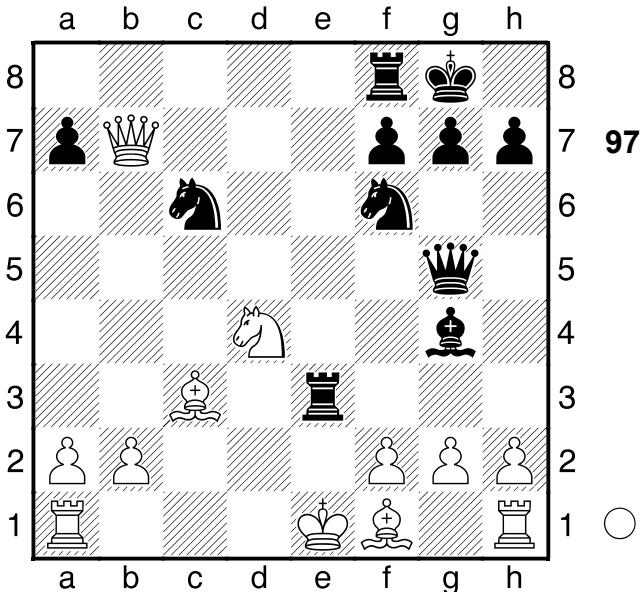
**14...Re6** There are no subtleties here. Black makes known his intentions to sacrifice on e3!

### 15.Nd4

[The rook sacrifice follows against other moves too: 15.h4? *Rxe3+* is all over; ]

[or 15.Bc4 *Rxe3+* 16.fxe3 *Qxe3+* 17.Kf1 Qf4+ 18.Kg1 *Qxc4* 19.h3 Bc8 20.Qc7 *Qxb5* 21.Bxf6 *gxf6* (Bronznik) and the two pieces are clearly better than the rook; e.g. 22.Qg3+ Kh8 23.Qd6 Kg7 24.Qg3+ Qg5 25.Kh2 *Qxg3+* 26.Kxg3 Be6 with a very good endgame for Black. ]

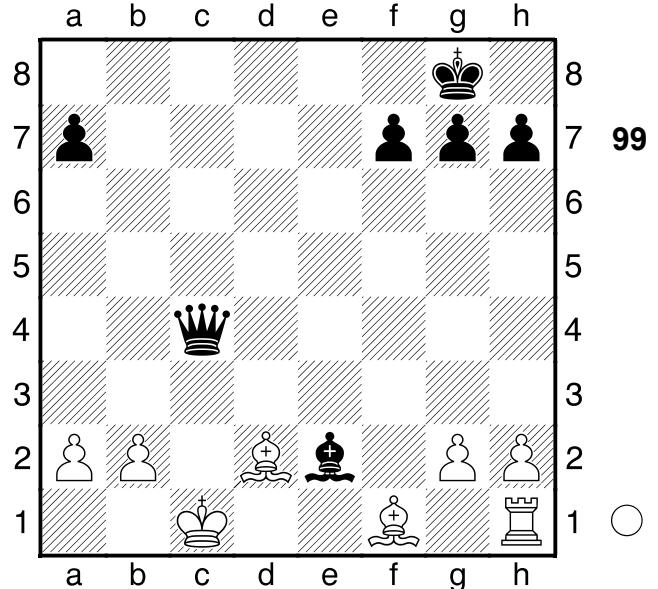
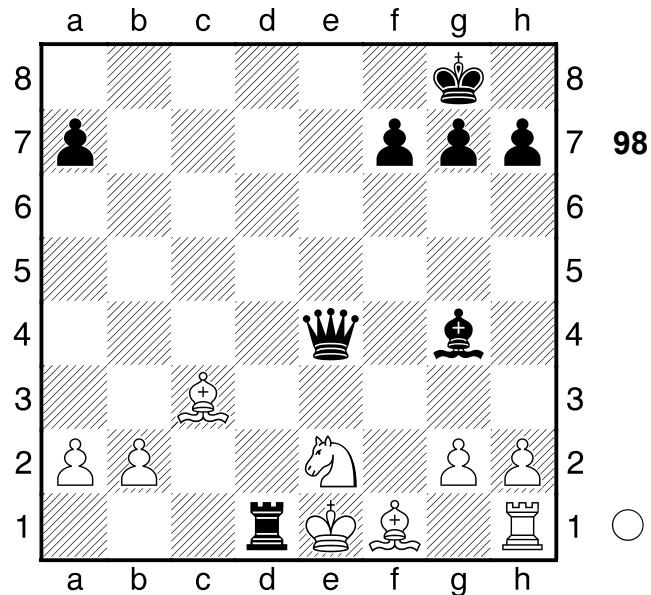
### 15...Rxe3+



**16.fxe3 Qxe3+ 17.Ne2 Ne4 18.Qxc6 Rd8 19.Qxe4** The only way to prevent ... *Qf2* mate. **19...Qxe4 20.Rd1?** Losing more material.

[He had to try 20.h3 Bxe2 21.Bxe2 Re8 22.0-0 Qxe2 23.Rae1 Qb5 24.Rxe8+ Qxe8 25.a3 , when White can play on for a long time. ]

**20...Rxd1+**



**0-1**

**21.Kxd1 Bxe2+** This had all been played before; White resigned here in A. D.Martin-C.Scheerer, ICC 2003.

**22.Kc1**

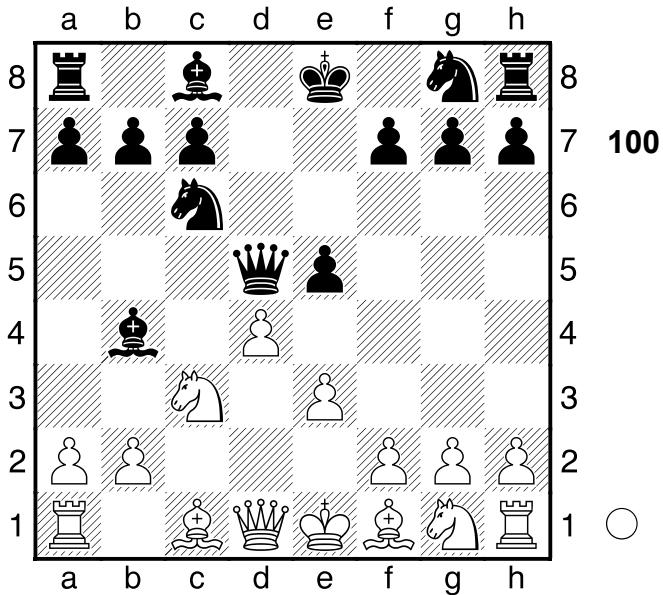
[ 22.Bxe2 Qb1+ wins the rook on h1 and a kingside pawn as well, so White has no hope of a double bishop fortress. ]

**22...Qf4+ 23.Bd2 Qc4+**

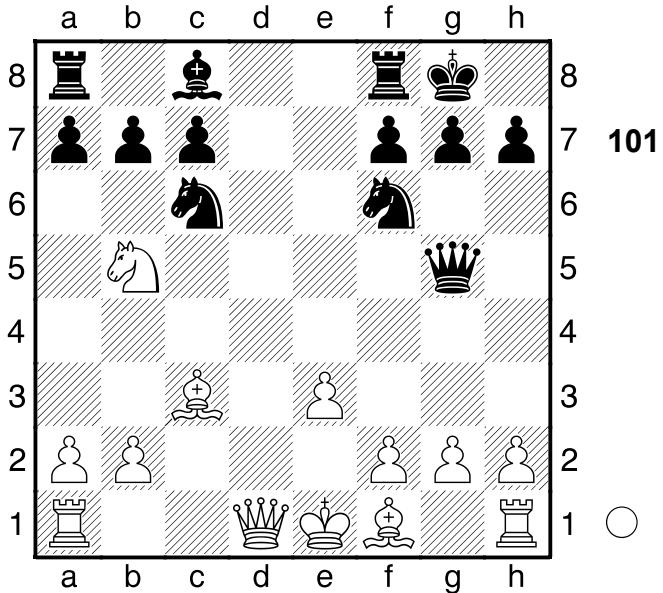
(Diagram 99)

**Flear,G**  
 **Miladinovic,I**  
 15: Athens  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.cxd5 Qxd5 4.e3 e5 5.Nc3 Bb4**



**6.Bd2 Bxc3 7.Bxc3 exd4 8.Ne2 Nf6 9.Nxd4 0-0 10.Nb5 Qg5**



**11.Nxc7 Bg4 12.Qb3 Rad8 13.h3!?**  
 In this game and the next we'll look at

**D07**

1999

attempts by White to shift the position in his favour by inserting a swipe with the h-pawn. Here White drives away the g4-bishop from its active post. On the downside, this clears the black queen's view to the g2-square, making it very difficult for White to develop his king's bishop.

[The fact that g2 is an issue can be seen after 13.Bc4?! (A.Summerscale-D.Oates, Hampstead 1998), when Bh5! already places White in difficulties; e.g. 14.Kf1 (not 14.0-0? Bf3 15.g3 Qg4; or 14.Bxf6 gxf6 15.Bd5 Rd7 16.Qxb7 Ne7 , winning a piece ) 14...Ne4 15.Bd5 Nxc3 16.Qxc3 Rxd5 and Black is clearly better.]

[The text improves on 13.Qb5?! Qg6

**A)** when 14.Bxf6?! Qxf6! 15.Nd5? Rxd5! 16.Qxd5 Qxb2 just wins for Black. ( 16...-- );

**B)** Instead, D.Bunzmann-M.M. Ivanov, German League 2005, saw 14.f3 Bf5! 15.Qxb7 Qh6! 16.Kf2 Rb8 17.Qa6 Rfc8 18.Bxf6 ( 18.Nb5 Nb4! is good for Black too ) 18...Qxf6 19.Nd5 Qd8 20.Nf4?! Nb4 21.Qxa7 Nc2 22.Be2 Nxa1 23.Rxa1 Rxb2 24.Kf1 Bb1 25.h3 g5 26.Qa3 Rc1+ 27.Kf2 gxf4 and White resigned, as it's mate after ...Qh4+ or 28.exf4 Rxe2+! etc.;  
**C)** If 14.Bc4 , then 14...a6! 15.Qxb7 Rd6 . ]

**13...Bc8!?** The bishop goes home to defend the b7-pawn.

[Alternatively, 13...Bf5 14.Qxb7 Rd6 transposes to 14 h3 Bf5 in the notes to the previous game.]

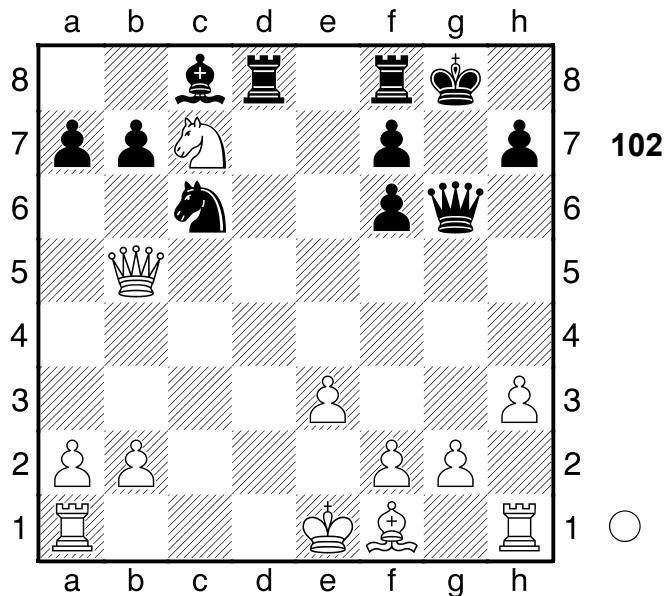
[Not 13...Bh5?! , since 14.Qxb7 Rd6 (or 14...Qc5 15.Bb5 ) 15.Qb5 Qg6 16.g4 Qe4 (M.Santos-J.Cubas, San Jose do Rio Preto 2006) 17.Rh2 Bg6

18.Qc4 is good for White.]

**14.Qb5 Qg6 15.Bxf6** White quickly exchanges the dangerous f6-knight before it can come to e4. **15...gxf6!**

[Stronger than 15...Qxf6 16.Nd5!, when:

- A) 16...Rxd5?** 17.Qxd5 Qxb2 is no good because White has 18.Rd1 . ( 18.-- );
- B) 16...Qg6** allows 17.Qxc6! (exploiting a 18 Ne7+ fork to regain the queen) Qg5 18.h4 Qe5 19.Nf6+! gxf6 20.Qc3 and White escapes with a slight edge.]



**16.Rc1** Taking control of the c2-square; [in view of lines like 16.Na6? Qc2 ] [or 16.Nd5 Rxd5! 17.Qxd5 Nb4 and ...Nc2+, though in fact the latter is okay for White: 18.Qd6! Nc2+ 19.Kd2 Nxa1 20.Bd3 Bf5 (not 20...Qxg2?! 21.Qxf6 Qxh1?? 22.Qg5+ Kh8 23.Qh6 and White wins ) 21.Rxa1 Bxd3 22.Qxd3 Qxg2 23.Qf5 with a draw in E.Rulfs-P.Pupke, correspondence 2008 ]

**16...Qe4** The queen continues to keep an eye on g2 and takes the d5-square away from the white knight.

**17.Bc4!?** White gives up the g2-pawn to free his pieces and, hopefully, obtain some counterplay on the open g-file.

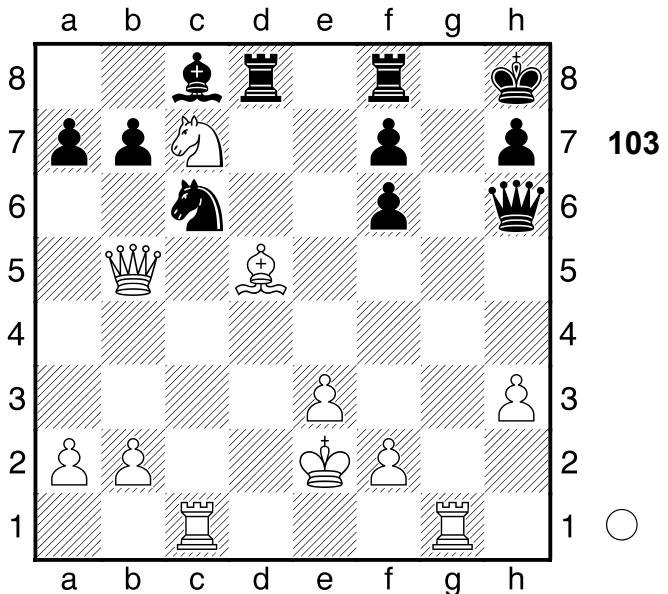
[Note that it can't escape the other way because of 17.Na6? Rfe8 18.Nc5 Qh4 19.Rc3 (or 19.g3 Rxe3+!) 19...Nd4 20.Qa4 b6 21.Bb5 Qh5 22.0-0 (not 22.Bxe8?? Qe2#) 22...Nxb5 23.Qxb5 bxc5 , winning a piece.]

[The safer course was 17.Qc4! Qe5 (or 17...Nd4 18.Qd3 Qe5 19.f4 Qe7 20.Qa3 ) 18.Nb5 Be6 (or 18...Qxb2 19.Qc3 Qxa2 20.Bc4 ) 19.Qc3 Bxa2 20.Qxe5 fxe5 21.Be2 and White has equalized.]

**17...Qxg2 18.Bd5 Qg6 19.Ke2 Kh8**

**20.Rhg1 Qh6**

[Possibly 20...Qh5+!? 21.Bf3 Qxh3 was stronger.]



**21.Bxc6** Otherwise the knight will find a strong outpost on e5. **21...bxc6**

**22.Qxc6 Qh5+ 23.Ke1 Qe5**

White has defended well so far and has made it into the drawing zone, if only he had sufficient time left on the clock to stay there.

**24.Rg3** Although there's nothing wrong

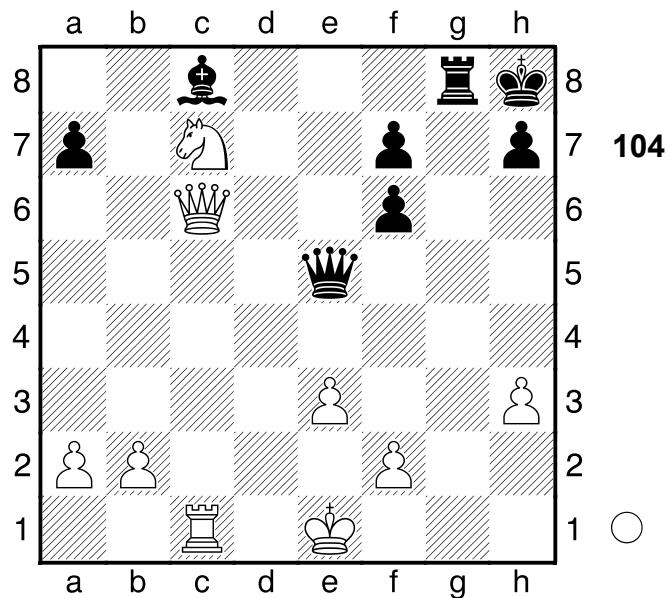
with this move, ceding the g-file complicates White's task.

[ Either 24.Nd5! Rxd5 ( 24...Be6 25.Nc3 ) 25.Qxc8 Rfd8 26.Qc3 ]  
 [ or 24.Qc3 Bxh3 ( 24...Qf5 25.Qc5 ) 25.Qxe5 fxe5 26.Rc5 should hold more easily. ]

#### **24...Rg8 25.Rxg8+**

[ Here too 25.Qc3 was more straightforward. ]

#### **25...Rxg8**



#### **26.Nd5 Be6 27.Nc3 Bxh3 28.Qd5**

**Bg2 29.Qxe5** White is understandably keen to exchange queens.

[ Few human players would opt for 29.Qxf7 Bf3 30.Qxa7 in time trouble, even if the engines show that it's the best way to draw; e.g. Qg5 ( 30...Rg1+ 31.Kd2 Rg2 32.Rf1 beats off the attack ) 31.Kd2 Rd8+ 32.Kc2 and Black has to take the perpetual with Qg6+ 33.Kb3 Qg8+ 34.Kc2 Qg6+ etc. ]

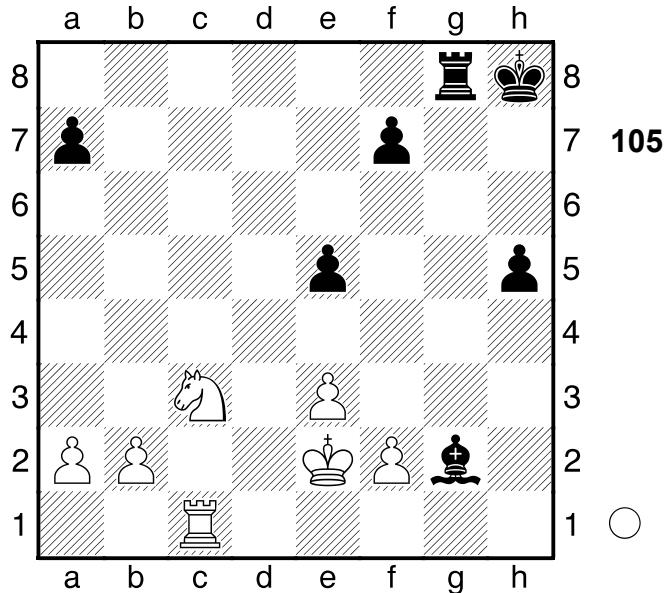
The problem with the text is that the black h-pawn now becomes dangerous, and White fails to find a way to neutralize it. ]

#### **29...fxe5 30.Ke2?!**

[ White needed to activate his rook.

Thus 30.Ne2! h5 ( or 30...Bf3 31.Rc7 ) 31.Rc5 h4 ( or 31...f6 32.f4 ) 32.Rxe5 with a probable draw. ]

#### **30...h5**



#### **31.f3 h4 32.Ne4 h3 33.Kf2??**

The fatal mistake.

[ White still had some tactical chances to hold with 33.Rc4! ]

**A)** intending 33...h2 34.Nf2 Rg7 (if 34...h1Q then 35.Nxh1 Bxh1 36.Rh4+ wins the piece back ) 35.Rc8+ Kh7 36.Rc4! Rg3 (or 36...Rg6 37.Rh4+ Rh6 38.Rxh6+ Kxh6 39.Ng4+ ) 37.Rh4+ Kg6 38.Rxh2 Bxf3+ 39.Kd2

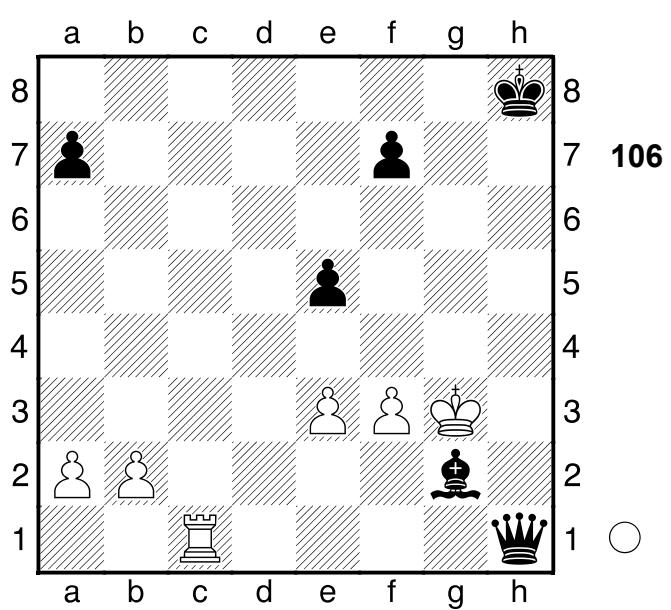
and the ending is level. Rather than push the pawn at once;

**B)** Black can try 33...f5 34.Nf6 Rg6 35.Rh4+ Kg7 36.Nd7 e4 37.Ne5 Ra6 38.fxe4 fxe4 39.a3 Rb6 40.Nc4;

**C)** or 33...Rg6 and continue to press, but at least there's no forced win. ]

#### **33...h2 34.Ng3 Rxg3 35.Kxg3 h1Q**

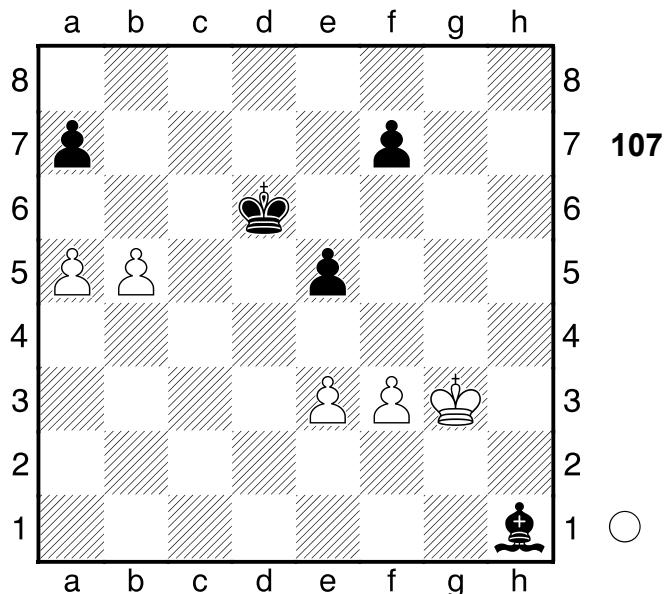
(Diagram 106)



**36.Rxh1+ Bxh1** Give White a couple of free moves and he'd be winning. As it is the black king is fast enough to stop the queenside pawns.

**37.b4 Kg7 38.a4 Kf6 39.b5 Ke6**

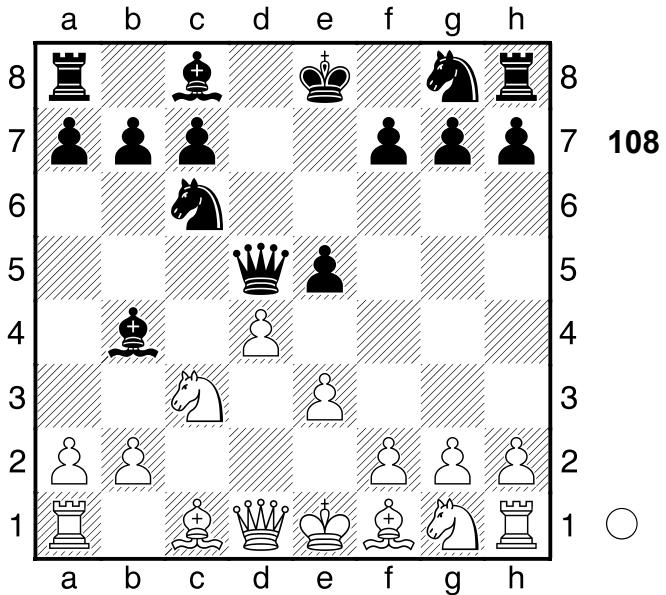
**40.a5 Kd6**



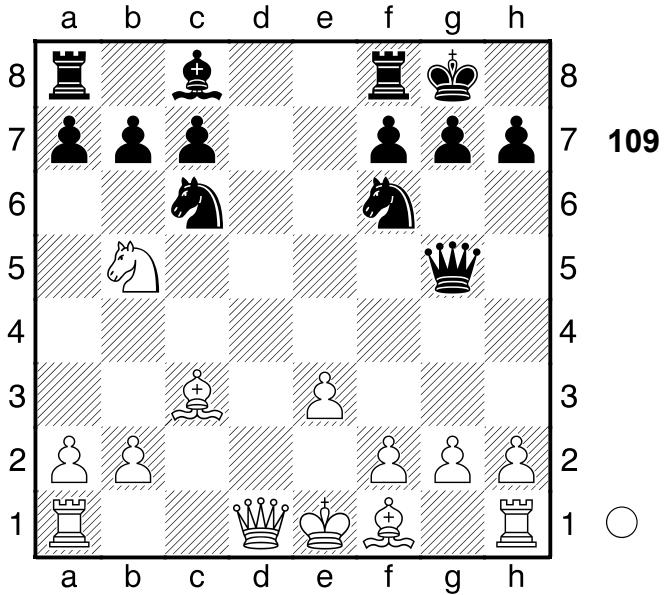
**0-1**

**Van Wely,L**  
 **Brynell,S**  
 16: German League  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.cxd5 Qxd5 4.e3 e5 5.Nc3 Bb4**



**6.Bd2 Bxc3 7.Bxc3 exd4 8.Ne2 Nf6 9.Nxd4 0-0 10.Nb5 Qg5**



**11.h4!?** QUESTION: What's the reasoning behind this move? It seems

**D07**

2015

to weaken the kingside and make it less desirable for castling.

ANSWER: There are two points to it. White gains space on the kingside and may increase this by pushing the pawn further.

[More significantly, White hopes to improve on the 11.Nxc7 lines of Game 14 by first driving the black queen away from g5 – but he shouldn't succeed.]

**11...Qh6** QUESTION: This is a strange square. Why not put the queen on g6 so that g2 is still under pressure?

[ANSWER: 11...Qg6?! runs into 12.Nxc7 Bg4 (or 12...Rd8 13.Qa4 Rb8 14.Qf4 a6?! 15.Be2! Qxg2 16.Bf3 Qg6 17.h5 Qf5 , S.Krivoshey-M.M.Ivanov, Salou 2005, and now 18.Qg3 , S.Krivoshey-M.M.Ivanov, Salou 2005, and now ) 13.Bd3! Qh6 (if 13...Bxd1? 14.Bxg6 Rac8 15.Bf5 Rxc7 16.Rxd1 , White is a clear pawn up with the two bishops ) 14.Qa4 Rad8 (or 14...Rac8 15.Nb5 ) 15.Bc2 Bc8 16.Rd1 Rd7 17.Rxd7 Bxd7 18.Qc4 and Black has no compensation for the pawn, R. Cifuentes Parada-I.Miladinovic, Dos Hermanas 2000. ]

**12.Nxc7**

[If White decides not to take on c7, he will set Black few problems:

a) 12.Be2 Rd8 13.Qc2 Nd5 14.Rd1 Be6 15.a3 Rd7 16.Nd4 Nxc3 17.Qxc3 Nxd4 18.Rxd4 Rad8 19.Rxd7 Rxd7 20.Bf3 b6 was fine for Black, who even went on to win in D.Rogozenco-A.Morozevich, Istanbul Olympiad 2000. ]

[b) 12.Qf3 Bg4 13.Qg3 Rad8 14.Bc4 ( 14.Nxc7 transposes to the next note ) 14...Be6 15.Bxe6 fxe6 16.Qg5 Qxg5 17.hxg5 Nd5 18.Nd4 Nxd4 19.Bxd4 Nf4! 20.Rd1 e5

21.exf4 exd4 22.g3 c5 and a draw was soon agreed in R.Cifuentes Parada-F.Vallejo Pons, Spanish League 2002. ]

### **12...Bg4 13.Qb3!?** Following sequence with Game 14.

[ Objectively, I think White does better to play 13.Qd6 Rad8 14.Qg3!, though Black seems to have more than one way to equalize; for example, Rd7 (or if 14...Bf5 15.Qg5 Qxg5 16.hxg5 Ne4 17.Nb5 , S.Rezan-N.Fercec, Rabac 2003, then Nxg5 looks fine; Morozevich also liked 14...Ne7!?) 15.Bc4 Rfd8 16.Nd5 was G.Dizdar-M.M.Ivanov, Austrian League 2005, and now Nxd5! 17.Bxd5 Rxd5 18.Qxg4 b5 19.a3 a5 20.0-0 f5 would have given Black sufficient play for the pawn, according to Ivanov. ]

### **13...Rad8 14.Qxb7**

[White got in a huge mess after 14.Bc4 Ne4 15.Nd5 Rfe8 16.Kf1? ( 16.0-0 Qxh4 17.Nf4 may still be okay ) 16...Ne5 17.Nf4 Rc8 18.Bb5 in M.Nezar-B.Taddei, Nancy 2003, where Rxc3! 19.Qa4 Bd7! 20.Bxd7 ( or 20.bxc3 Nxc3 ) 20...Rc4 would have won for Black. ]

### **14...Rd6!**

[With his queen on h6 Black has a strong alternative in 14...Ne4!? (obviously 14...Qc5 is not an option here) 15.Bb5 Bd7 16.Be2 (after 16.Nd5 Nd6 17.Qa6 Nb8 18.Nf6+ gxf6 19.Qxd6 Bxb5 20.Qxf6 Qxf6 21.Bxf6 Rd7 22.Rh3 Rc8 23.Rg3+ Kf8 24.Bc3 Rc4 25.Rg5 Bc6 Black's knight, even sitting on b8, is better than White's pawns, C.Marcelin-S.Conquest, French League 2001 ) 16...Qg6 , as in J.Dunham-A.Albano, correspondence 2000, when 17.Bf3! Nc5 18.Qb5 Nb4 ( Scheerer's

18...Ne5!? 19.Qe2 Qd6 is okay too ) 19.Qc4 Nc2+ 20.Ke2 Nxa1 ( or if 20...Qd6 then 21.Bd4 Qxc7 22.Qxc2 Bb5+ 23.Kd1 and the engines claim equality, though it certainly looks like it's up to White to prove it ) 21.Rxa1 is unclear, according to Bronznik ]

### **15.Bc4**

[ Note that 15.Nb5 Re6 is basically the same as Game 14. After 16.Bc4 Rxe3+! 17.Kf1 Qf4 18.Kg1 Rxc3 19.Nxc3 Qxc4 20.Qb5 Qe6 , Black was virtually winning already in Peng Zhaoqin-M.Stöber, German League 2001. ]

### **15...Rfd8**

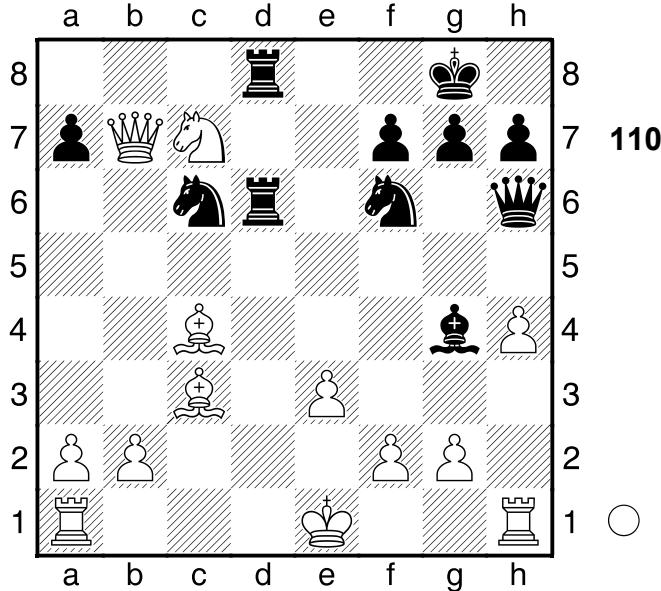
[Black should play 15...Rb8! 16.Qa6 Rbd8 , when the white queen is in a more precarious position.

**A)** 17.0-0 Nd4! 18.Qa4 ( or 18.Qa5 Nf3+! 19.gxf3 Qxh4 gives Black a very strong attack – Bronznik ) 18...Nf3+ 19.gxf3 Bxf3;

**B)** Jo.Ivanov-J.Moreno Carnero, Dos Hermanas 2004, continued 17.Bb3 Nd4 ( 17...Ne5 18.Qxd6 Nd3+ 19.Qxd3 Rxd3 20.0-0 Qxh4 ) 18.Qxd6 Rxd6 19.Bxd4

**B1)** 19...Rxd4!? 20.exd4 Qf4 21.Nd5 Nxd5 22.Bxd5 Qxd4 23.Bb3 Qd3 24.Bd1 and was eventually drawn. ( 24.-- );

**B2)** However, Black had another strong in-between move: 19...Qg6! 20.f3 Rxd4 21.exd4 Qd3 22.Nd5 ( not 22.fxg4?? Ne4 and mates ) 22...Nxd5 23.Bxd5 Bd7 and it's much harder for White in view of his weak dark squares. ]



This thematic move allows White to show his idea. **16.0-0!** We now see the key difference from the equivalent line in Game 14. There Bc4 and 0-0 lost straight away to ...Bf3, threatening mate on g2. With his queen on h6 Black doesn't have that threat, so what does he do instead?

**16...Bf3!** Brynell plays it anyway!

[Black does have other ways of conducting the attack:

a) 16...Ne4? fails to 17.Ne8! R6d7 18.Nf6+ (E.Krüger-E.Rödel, Berlin 2008) gxf6 19.Qxc6 Nxc3 20.bxc3 Qxh4 21.Rab1 and White remains a pawn to the good.]

[b) 16...Qxh4?! is also met by 17.Ne8! R8d7 18.Qc8 Rd8 19.Qc7 R8d7 (or 19...Nd5 20.Bxd5 Rxd5 21.Nxg7) 20.Bxf6! (20.Qxd6 Rxd6 21.Nxd6 Bf3! 22.Bxf7+ Kf8 23.Be6 Bxg2! 24.Kxg2 Qg5+ 25.Kh2 Ne5 26.f3 Ke7 is a big mess) 20...gxf6 21.Qxd6 Rxd6 22.Nxd6 Bf3! 23.Nf5 Qxc4 24.gxf3 and White has whatever chances are going.]

[c) 16...Bc8! looks good too; e.g. 17.Qb3 Qxh4 18.Bxf7+ Kh8 19.Ne8! (again) Nxe8 20.Bxe8 Rxe8 21.Qf7

Rg8 22.Bxg7+! Rxg7 23.Qf8+ Rg8 24.Qxd6 Bh3 25.Qxc6 Rxg2+ 26.Qxg2 Bxg2 27.Kxg2 Qg4+ with a draw.]

**17.Ne8!** This sets Black the toughest test.

[Instead, 17.gxf3 Qxh4 18.Rfc1 leads to a straightforward draw after Ne4 (or 18...Ng4 19.Bxf7+! Kxf7 20.Qb3+ Ke7 21.fxg4 Qxg4+ etc) 19.fxe4 Rg6+ 20.Kf1 Qh1+ 21.Ke2 Qh5+ 22.Ke1 Rg1+ 23.Bf1 Rxf1+ 24.Kxf1 Qh1+ 25.Ke2 Qh5+ and the white king cannot escape the checks.]

**17...R6d7**

[The knight cannot be taken:

17...Nxe8?? 18.Qxf7+ Kh8 19.Qg8#] [or 17...Rxe8?? 18.Qxf7+ Kh8 19.Bxf6 and White wins.]

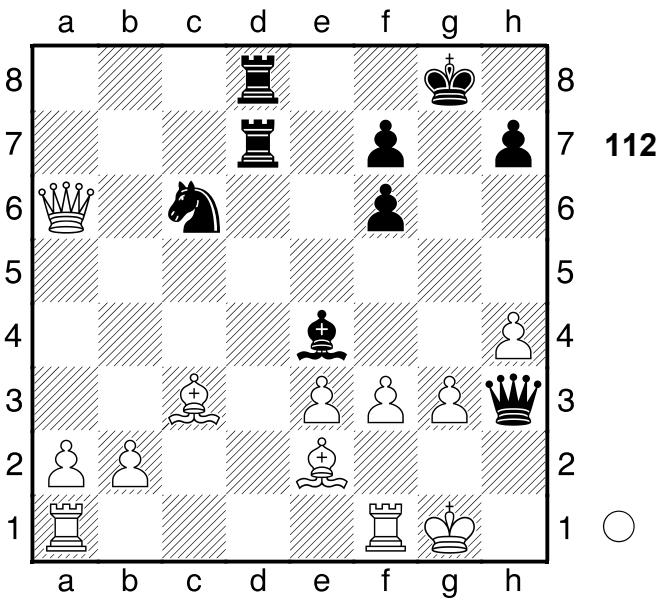
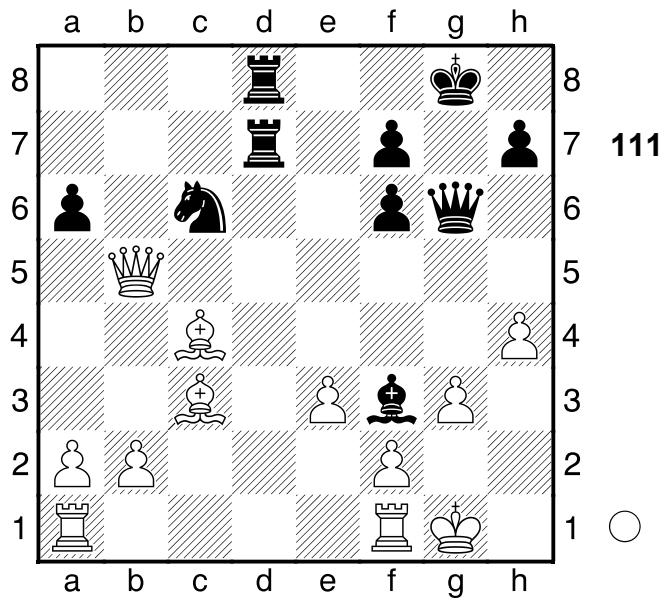
**18.Nxf6+ gxf6 19.Qb5! Qg6 20.g3**

White has two extra pawns to go with his bishop pair, whereas Black, with his structure shot to bits, is a drowning man looking for straws.

**20...a6?**

[Amazingly, Black could have found his straw with 20...Rd2! (threatening 21...Qxg3+! 22 fxg3 Rg2+ etc) 21.Rfe1 (neither 21.Bxd2 Rxd2; nor 21.Kh2 Qc2! 22.Bxd2 Rxd2 23.Kg1 Qg6 changes anything) 21...a6! (only now) 22.Qc5 (here 22.Qxa6? Qf5 wins for Black) 22...Qg4 23.Bf1 Be4 24.Bg2 Bxg2 25.Kxg2 Ne5 26.Bxd2 (not 26.Bxe5? Rxf2+!) 27.Kxf2 Rd2+ 28.Kg1 Qh3) 26...Qf3+ 27.Kg1 (or 27.Kh3 Qf5+) 27...Rxd2 28.e4 Qxg3+! 29.fxg3 Nf3+ 30.Kf1 Nh2+ and the knight gives perpetual check.]

(Diagram 111)



1-0

Deflecting the queen is the right idea,  
but this is the wrong moment. **21.Qxa6**  
**Qf5?**

[Even now 21...Rd2! was worth trying:  
22.Bxd2 Rxd2 (threatening ...Qxg3+ again)  
23.Qc8+! Kg7 24.Rfd1! Bxd1  
25.Qxc6 Qf5 26.Qg2 h5! (avoiding  
26...Bf3 27.g4!) 27.e4 Qe5  
and Black still has chances.]

**22.Be2 Be4 23.f3 Qh3**

[Black resigned without waiting for  
23...Qh3 24.Rf2, which snuffs out all  
his hopes.]

(Diagram 112)

## Chapter Two

### The Provocative 3 Nc3

This is White's most provocative ([view in Game format](#)), as well as natural, reply to the Chigorin. White continues with his standard Queen's Gambit development and puts pressure on the d5-pawn which Black has so far neglected to defend. It leads to a very sharp and theoretical lines where the better prepared player will likely end up victorious. Black can now choose between 3...dxc4 and 3...Nf6, which often lead to same position.



After 3...dxc4, White has to answer the pressure on his own d-pawn. Defending it with 4 e3 allows the standard 4...e5 ([Game 24](#)), while pushing it on with 4 d5 can be met by 4...Ne5 ([Games 22-23](#)). For this reason the first player

by 4...Ne5 (Games [22-23](#)). For this reason the first player more often opts for 4 Nf3, taking control of the e5-square, after which Black develops his own king's knight with 4...Nf6.

The alternative 3...Nf6 offers White another opportunity to take on d5, but in fact 4 exd5 Nxd5 (Games [17-19](#)) gives him few chances of obtaining an advantage. So White usually prefers 4 Nf3 again, after which 4...dxc4 transposes to the 3...dxc4 4 Nf3 Nf6. Other 4th moves are inferior for Black, as we'll see in [Game 20](#).

Via either route, by taking on c4 Black allows his opponent to build a strong centre with 5 e4 (Games [32-37](#)). In return Black gains easy and quick development for his pieces as a basis from which to generate counterplay. If White is not keen on this, he does have several other possibilities, such as 5 d5, 5 e3 and 5 Bg5. These are examined in Games [25-31](#).

[17: P.Eljanov-Y.Sepman, St. Petersburg 1999](#)

[18: D.Navara-R.Rapport, Biel 2015](#)

[19: L.Aronian-R.Rapport, European Cup, Novi Sad 2016](#)

[20: G.Sargissian-I.Miladinovic, European Championship, Plovdiv 2008](#)

[21: K.Neven-A.Fester, Correspondence 1998](#)

[22: A.Teh-J.Liew, Kuala Lumpur 2013](#)

[23: V.Ivanchuk-A.Morozevich, New York \(rapid\) 1995](#)

[24: L.M.Christiansen-A.Morozevich, New York \(rapid\) 1995](#)

[25: T.Polak-Z.Pakleza, Czech League 2017](#)

[26: A.Teh-P.Barbot, World Junior Championships, Al Ain 2013](#)

- 27: A.Beliavsky-A.Morozevich, German League 2000
- 28: P.Horvath-G.Antal, Budapest 2003
- 29: V.Ivanchuk-W.Arencibia Rodriguez, Havana 2005
- 30: V.Milov-A.Morozevich, Tilburg 1994
- 31: P.Schreiner-V.Bukal, Oberwart 2011
- 32: H.R.Lim-J.Liew, Kuala Lumpur 2013
- 33: N.Studer-M.Godena, Plovdiv 2017
- 34: W.M.Koch-V.Bronznik, German League 2000
- 35: Ki.Georgiev-A.Morozevich, Tilburg 1994
- 36: H.Schaufelberger-M.Nemeth, Balatonlelle 2004
- 37: E.Megerramov-M.Al Modiahki, Dubai 2000

## Summary

Black has two thematic replies to White's 3 Nc3, respectively 3...Nf6 and 3...dxc4. These very often transpose (after 4 Nf3), while allowing White different options on move four.

After 3...dxc4 the main alternative is 4 d5, hitting the c6-knight. Sending it to the edge with 4...Na5 (as in [Game 21](#)) commits Black to a speculative piece sacrifice, which is not considered quite correct but can be very effective when unleashed against an unsuspecting opponent. Black gets two (sometimes three) connected pawns that can roll down like molten lava destroying everything in their path. It might not be one to play at the highest level but most readers of this book are unlikely to

highest level but most readers of this book are unlikely to be contesting in the Candidates. Moreover, 4...Ne5 is no less complicated (see Games [22-23](#)), as the knight can be kicked again by f2-f4, when Black has to play precisely to stay in the game.

If Black prefers to avoid all that, there is the quieter 3...Nf6, awaiting further events. If White then captures on d5 and follows up with e2-e4, we reach a Grünfeld-type pawn structure without a fianchettoed g7-bishop. As in the 3 cxd5 lines of [Chapter One](#), Black should respond with an quick ...e7-e5 to challenge White in the centre (see Games [17-19](#)).

In both cases, if White simply develops with 4 Nf3, Black should play whichever of the two moves (...Nf6 or ...d5xc4) he hasn't already played, either way reaching the same position. White then has various possibilities, such as 5 d5, 5 e3 and 5 Bg5 (Games [25-31](#)), but the most common is to seize the centre with 5 e4, after which Black plays 5...Bg4, pinning the knight. The consequences of the main line 6 Be3 e6 7 Bxc4 Bb4 are examined in Games [33-37](#). Careful note should also be taken of GM Dragan Solak's 6 Bxc4!? in the notes to [Game 32](#). Although this has only been seen in a handful of master games so far (seven to be precise, and just one with 9 Be2!), it may yet prove critical to Black's entire set-up after 3 Nc3, so it is important to study it properly.

## Chapter Two: Intro [Jimmy Liew]

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nc3** is White's most provocative, as well as natural, reply to the Chigorin. White continues with his standard Queen's Gambit development and puts pressure on the d5-pawn which Black has so far neglected to defend. It leads to a very sharp and theoretical lines where the better prepared player will likely end up victorious. Black can now choose between 3...dxc4 and 3...Nf6, which often lead to same position. **3....--**

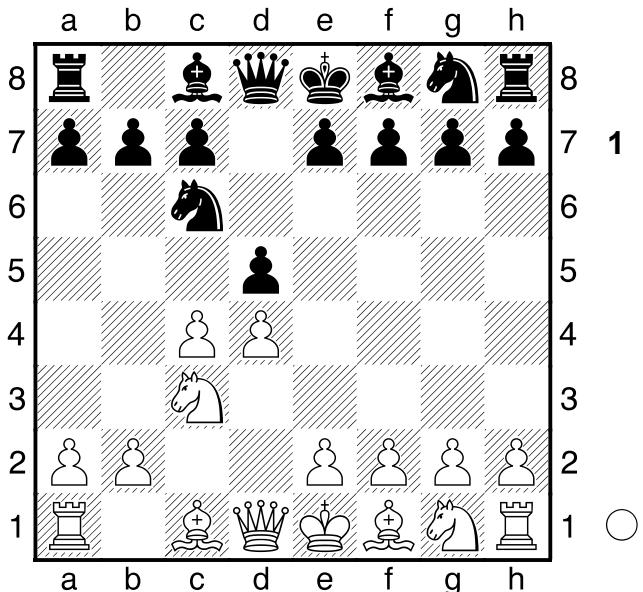
[After 3...dxc4, White has to answer the pressure on his own d-pawn.

- A)** Defending it with 4.e3 allows the standard e5 (Game 24);
- B)** while pushing it on with 4.d5 can be met by Ne5 (Games 22-23). (4....--);
- C)** For this reason the first player more often opts for 4.Nf3, taking control of the e5-square, after which Black develops his own king's knight with 4...Nf6.]

[The alternative 3...Nf6 offers White another opportunity to take on d5;

- A)** but in fact 4.cxd5 Nxd5 (Games 17-19) gives him few chances of obtaining an advantage. (4....--);
- B)** So White usually prefers 4.Nf3 again, after which 4...dxc4 transposes to the 3...dxc4 4 Nf3 Nf6. Other 4th moves are inferior for Black, as we'll see in Game 20. Via either route, by taking on c4 Black allows his opponent to build a strong centre with 5.e4 (Games 32-37). In return Black gains easy and quick development for his pieces as

a basis from which to generate counterplay. (If White is not keen on this, he does have several other possibilities, such as 5.d5; 5.e3; and 5.Bg5. These are examined in Games 25-31.)]



Eljanov,P  
 Sepman,Y  
 17: St. Petersburg  
 [Jimmy Liew]

D07

1999

### 1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nc3 Nf6

The first of two main options for Black.

[ 3...dxc4 material begins in Game 21. ]

[Instead:

a) 3...e6 is playable but passive, and inconsistent with 2...Nc6. If Black is going to defend the d-pawn with ...e7-e6 he might as well do so on move two and play something stronger than ...Nc6 on move three. ]

[b) 3...e5?! is too sharp: 4.cxd5 Nxd4 5.e3 Nf5 6.e4 Nfe7 (if 6...Nd6 7.f4! exf4 8.Bxf4 a6 , A.Nimzowitsch-S. Tartakower, San Remo 1930, then 9.e5 Nf5 10.Nf3 Bc5 11.Qa4+ followed by Qe4; or 6...Nd4 7.f4! Bd6 8.Be3 c5 9.fxe5 Bxe5 10.Nf3 Nxf3+ , M.Kovacs-L.Kopetzky, Vienna 1952, then 11.gxf3! Bd7 12.Qd2 Qh4+ 13.Qf2 – both lines look pretty bad for Black ) 7.Nf3 Ng6 8.Bb5+ Bd7 9.Qb3 , A.Shariyazdanov-H.Jurkovic, Oberwart 2004, when Black is seriously behind on 3...dxc4 4 e3 e5 5 d5 Nce7 lines of Game 24. ]

**4.cxd5** Eliminating the d5-pawn to seize the centre is a very logical continuation, but it has not proven to give White any advantage.

[ 4.Nf3 is the main line, which we'll look at first in Game 20. ]

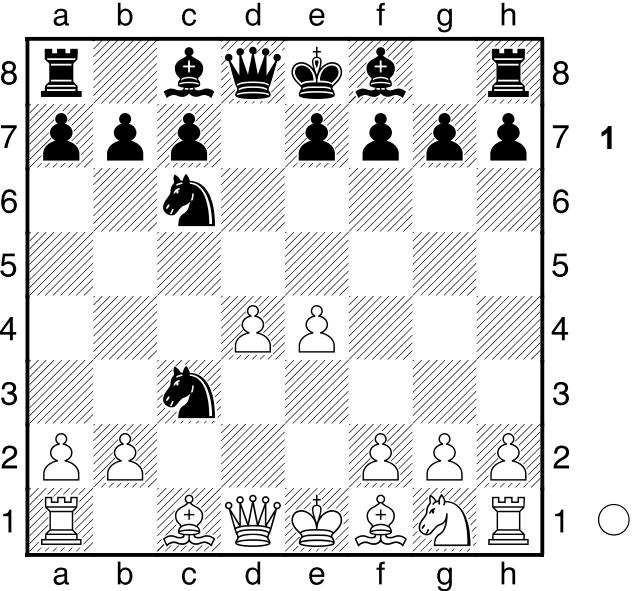
[Another possibility is 4.Bg5 . This can be met by IM John Watson's dxc4!? ( 4...Ne4 is good too ) 5.e3 (instead, 5.Nf3 transposes to 5 Bg5 in the main line – see Games 28-31; while if 5.d5 Ne5

6.Qd4 Ng6 7.Qxc4 e5 8.dxe6 Bxe6 9.Qb5+ Bd7 10.Qxb7 , T.Polak-P. Pisk, Olomouc 2010, then Be7! and ...0-0 gives Black a useful lead in development for the pawn ) 5...e5! 6.dxe5 (or 6.d5 Na5 , intending 7.Qa4+ c6 8.b4?! cxb3! 9.axb3 Qb6 ) 6...Qxd1+ 7.Rxd1 Nxe5 8.Bxf6 gxf6 9.f4 (or 9.Nd5 Bd6 10.Nxf6+ Kf8 ) 9...Ng4 10.Nd5 Bc5 11.Nxc7+ Ke7 12.Nxa8 Nxe3 with sufficient compensation, despite Black being a rook down at the moment; e.g. 13.Rd2 Bd7 14.Nc7 Bc6 15.Nf3 Bb4 16.Ke2 Bxd2 17.Nxd2 Nxf1 18.Rxf1 Kd7 and Black gets it all back. ]

**4...Nxd5 5.e4** Seizing the centre at once.

[White tries 5.Nf3 in the next two games.]

**5...Nxc3**



**6.bxc3 e5!** Black strikes back in thematic fashion. **7.Nf3**

[This move has been criticized but White hasn't achieved anything by pushing on, since 7.d5 Nb8! leaves Black in control of the dark squares.]

**A)** For example, 8.Nf3 Bd6 9.Bb5+

Nd7 10.Qb3 (or 10.0-0 0-0  
 11.Be3 Qe7 12.Nd2 Nc5 13.Be2  
 f5 with the initiative, E.Kahn-T.Bors,  
 Hungarian League 2009 ) 10...0-0  
 11.Bxd7 Bxd7! 12.Qxb7 Qf6  
 13.Qb1 Qg6 (Black's activity  
 provides very good compensation  
 for the pawn) 14.0-0 Bh3 15.Ne1  
 f5 16.Qd3 Bg4 17.exf5 Qh5  
 18.h3 Be2 19.Qe4 Bxf1 20.Kxf1  
 Qxf5 and Black was clearly better in  
 A.Lesiege-I.Miladinovic, Montreal  
 2000.;  
**B)** 8.f4 is well met by 8...Bc5!  
 9.Nf3 exf4 10.Bxf4 0-0

, and Black is fine with ideas of ...c7-c6, ...Re8 and ...Bg4; (this looks more accurate than the immediate 10...c6 , as in S.Lputian-M.Sibilio, Nareto 1999. )]

**7...exd4! 8.cxd4 Bg4** Putting the white centre under serious pressure. **9.d5**

[Not 9.Be3? Bb4+ and Black is virtually winning already; ]

[while both 9.Bc4 Bxf3 10.Qxf3 Bb4+ 11.Kf1 0-0 ]

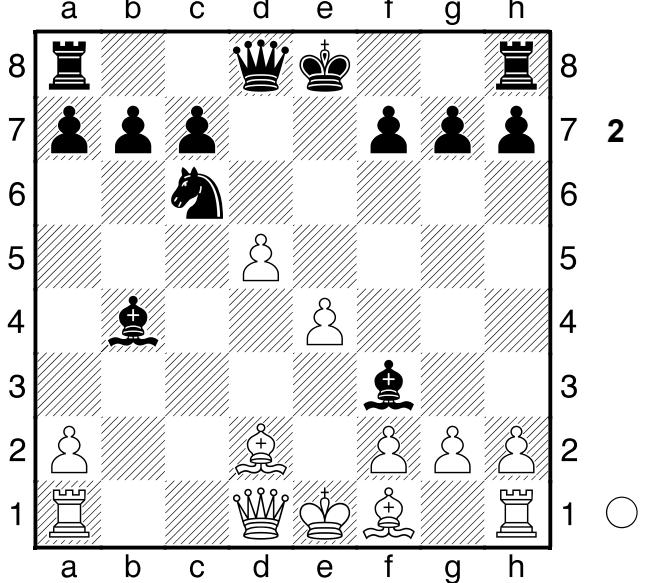
[and 9.Bb5 Bb4+ 10.Kf1 Bxf3 11.gxf3 Bc3 12.Rb1 Qxd4 13.Be3 Qf6 14.Bc5 Rd8 15.Qa4 Bd4 , G.Kjartansson-I.Johannesson, Bodsmot 2008, are hardly attractive for White either. ]

**9...Bb4+ 10.Bd2** Forced.

[The attempt to profit from the loose c6-knight and b4-bishop with 10.Ke2?? runs into Qe7! 11.dxc6 Qxe4+ 12.Be3 Rd8 13.Qb3 Rd2+ (Motwani) with mate in seven: 14.Ke1 Rxa2+ 15.Kd1 Rxa1+ 16.Bc1 Qe1+ 17.Kc2 Rxc1+ 18.Kb2 Rb1+ 19.Ka2 Ra1+ 20.Kb2 Qc1# . ]

**10...Bxf3**

(Diagram 2)

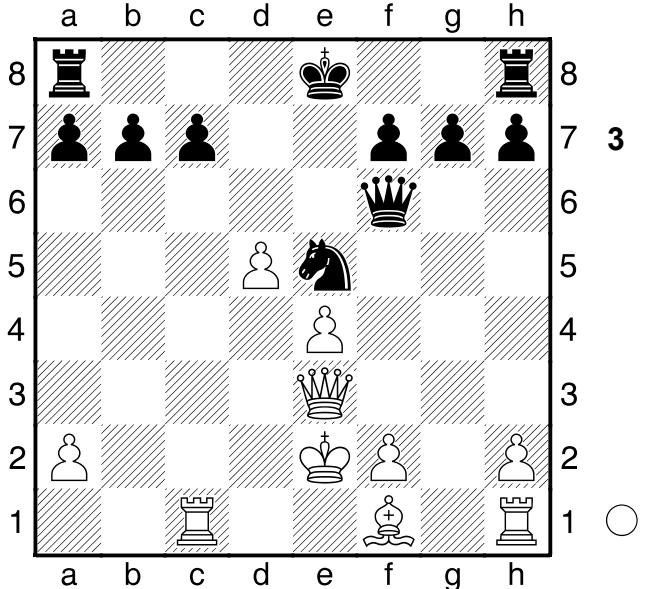


**11.gxf3 Bxd2+ 12.Qxd2 Qf6 13.Rc1 Ne5 14.Qe3?!**

[Not 14.Bb5+? c6 15.dxc6? Nxf3+ 16.Kd1 0-0! 17.Qc3 Qd8+ 18.Qd3 bxc6 19.Bc4 Qf6 20.Kc2 Ne5 and White cannot avoid loss. ]

[It was necessary to settle for 14.Be2 Nxf3+ 15.Bxf3 Qxf3 16.0-0! 0-0 17.Rxc7 and White shouldn't lose the major piece ending. ]

**14...Nxf3+ 15.Ke2 Ne5**



**16.f4 Ng4**

[Even stronger was 16...Ng6! 17.f5

**Ne5 18.Qa3 (or 18.Rxc7 0-0)**  
**18...c6**, which is clearly favourable for Black since the white king will find no peace in the centre. ]

### 17.Qg3?

[White should perhaps try and bail out with 17.e5 Nxe3 18.exf6 Nxd5 19.fxg7 Rg8 20.Rg1, though his chances of survival are at best 50-50.]

### 17...Qb2+ 18.Kf3 h5 19.Be2 Rh6?!

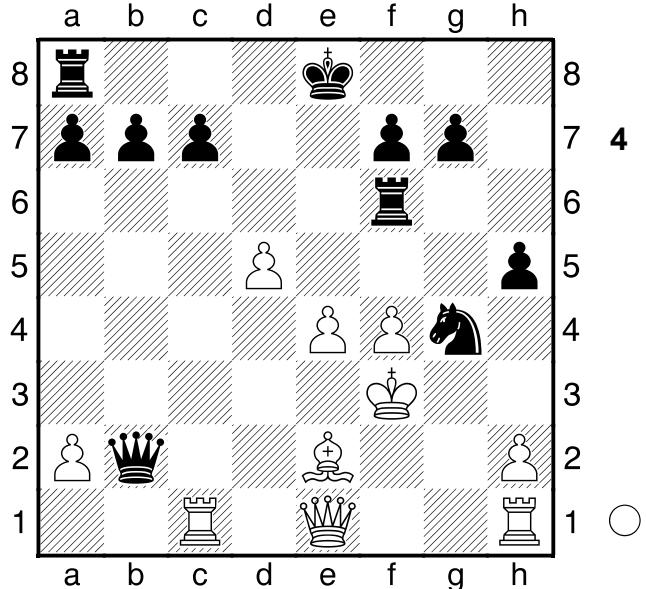
Black has played well so far, but it must have cost him all his time because he now starts to falter. This rook move is too slow and allows White to organize his forces for the defence.

[Castling long made much more sense, and 19...f5! is even stronger, opening the position up for the attack. After any of or 20.Rhe1 (or 20.exf5 0-0-0! 21.h3 Rhe8; or 20.e5 Qd2! 21.Bc4 g5! 22.fxg5 0-0-0) 20...fxe4+ 21.Kg2 0-0-0, the assessment for White is only various degrees of losing.]

### 20.Qe1 Rf6?

[It wasn't too late for 20...f5!, when 21.exf5 0-0-0 22.Qc3 Qb6, threatening ...Qf2 mate, shows how vulnerable the white king is. After 23.Qc5 (23.Rcf1 Re8) 23...Re8 24.Qxb6 Rxb6 25.Rc3 Rb2 Black is still in the driver's seat; e.g. 26.h3 Nf6 27.Bc4 Ne4 28.Rcc1 Nd2+ 29.Kg3 Re4, winning material.]

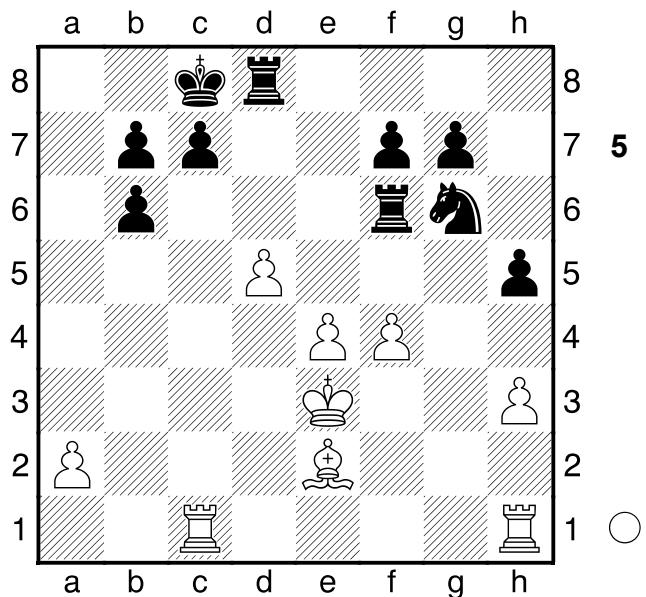
(Diagram 4)



### 21.Qc3 Qb6 22.Qc5 0-0-0?!

[After 22...g5! 23.f5 0-0-0 Black would at least keep control of the central dark squares. Now he has to give way.]

### 23.h3 Ne5+ 24.Ke3 Ng6 25.Qxb6 axb6



**26.Rhf1** White is back on his feet. With the queens off the board his king will feel safe and in fact stands very well in the centre. Now White threatens e4-e5 which will trap the black rook on f6.

### 26...Nh4?

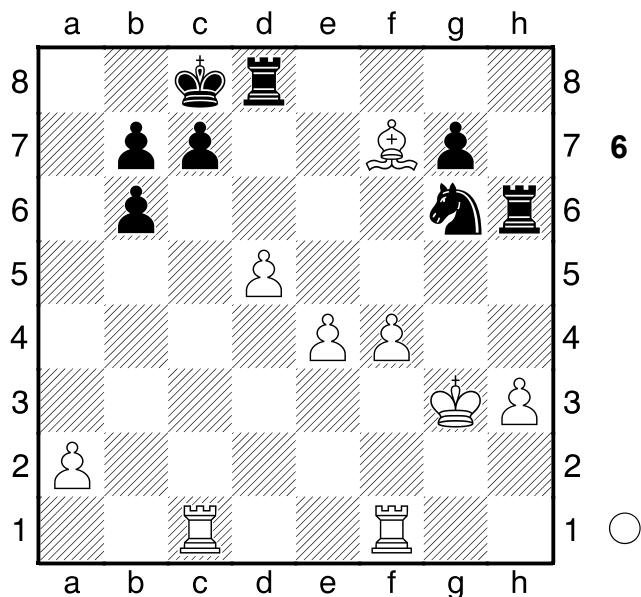
[Black is unable to keep the extra pawn and so should play 26...Ne7 27.Bxh5 g6 28.Bf3 Rfd6 , when he can still draw.]

### **27.Bxh5 Ng2+? 28.Kf3 Nh4+**

[Since 28...Nxf4? loses a piece after 29.Bg4+ Kb8 30.e5 .]

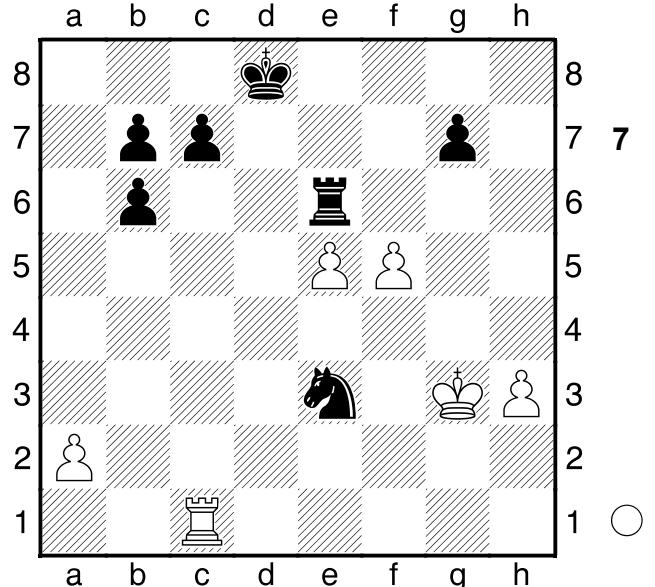
**29.Kg3 Rh6?** Black's position has turned sour but giving up a pawn is not going to help it any. The no doubt relieved future grandmaster playing White finishes the game off without further incident.

### **30.Bxf7 Ng6**

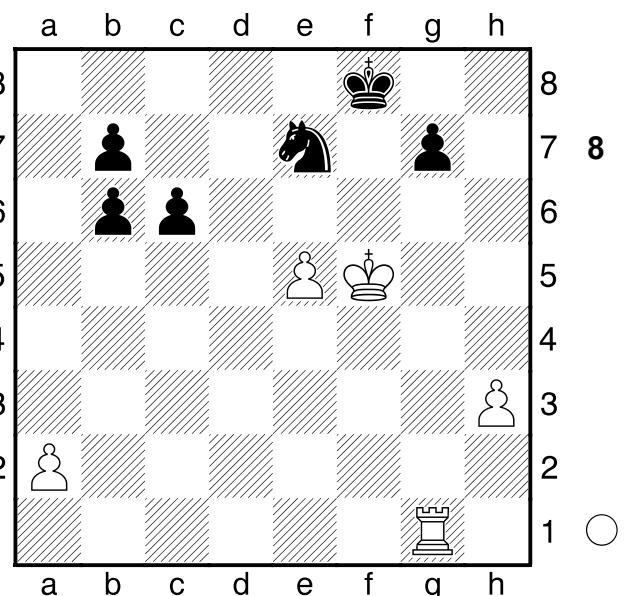


**31.e5 Ne7 32.f5 Nxd5 33.Rfd1 Ne3  
34.Be6+ Rxe6 35.Rxd8+ Kxd8**

(Diagram 7)

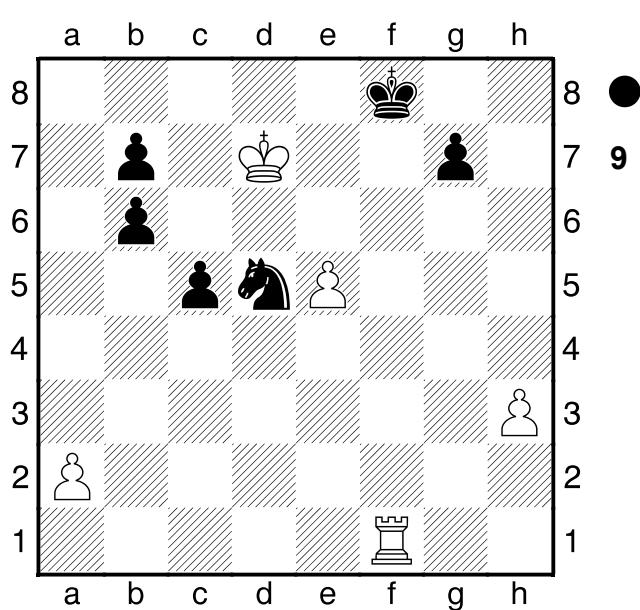


**36.fxe6 Nd5 37.Kg4 Ke7 38.Kf5 c6  
39.Rg1 Kf8 40.e7+ Nxe7+**



**41.Ke6 Nd5 42.Kd7 c5 43.Rf1+**

(Diagram 9)



1-0

**Navara,D**  
 **Rapport,R**  
 18: Biel  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

**D07**

2015

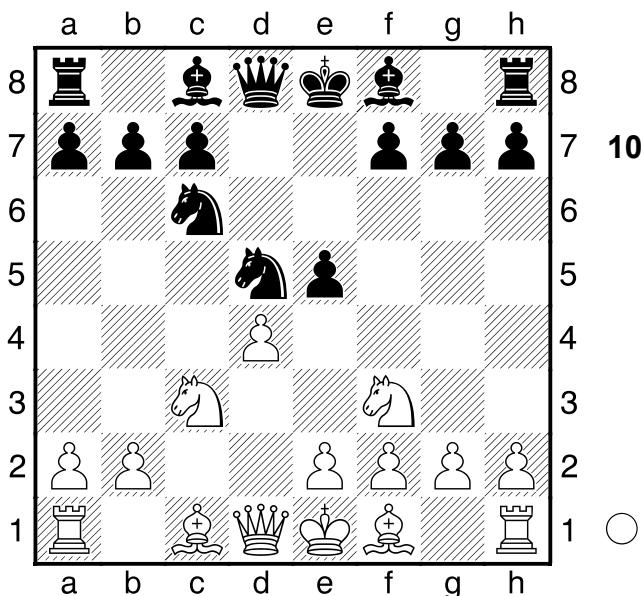
**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6** Richard Rapport is one of those top players who continue to venture the Chigorin against other top players. Here he fearlessly tries his hand against GM David Navara. It was actually Rapport's second Chigorin in Biel; the first was against Wojtaszek in round one (see Game 3).

**3.Nc3 Nf6 4.cxd5 Nxd5 5.Nf3**

Rather than push the e-pawn at once, White seeks first to control the e5-square. **5...e5!**

[For the inferior 5...Bf5]

[and 5...Bg4, see Game 20.]



The move every Chigorin stalwart should play without hesitation! **6.dxe5**  
White has nothing better.

[ 6.e4 Nxc3 7.bxc3 transposes to the previous game; ]

[while 6.Nxe5 Nxc3 7.bxc3 ( 7.Nxc6 Nxd1 8.Nxd8 Nxb2 9.Bxb2 Bb4+]

10.Kd1 Kxd8 is equal ) 7...Nxe5 8.dxe5 Qxd1+ 9.Kxd1 Bf5 , followed by ...O-O-O+, gave Black excellent compensation in V.Antoshin-P.Voiculescu, Uppsala 1956. ]

**6...Be6**

[The immediate 6...Nxc3?! 7.Qxd8+ Kxd8 8.bxc3 Bg4 9.Bf4 leaves Black struggling to show enough for the pawn. With the text he plans to recapture on d8 with the rook, before Navara's next move messes this up.]

[Instead, 6...Bb4 is probably better, and Rapport indeed switched to this in Game 19.]

**7.Bg5!?**

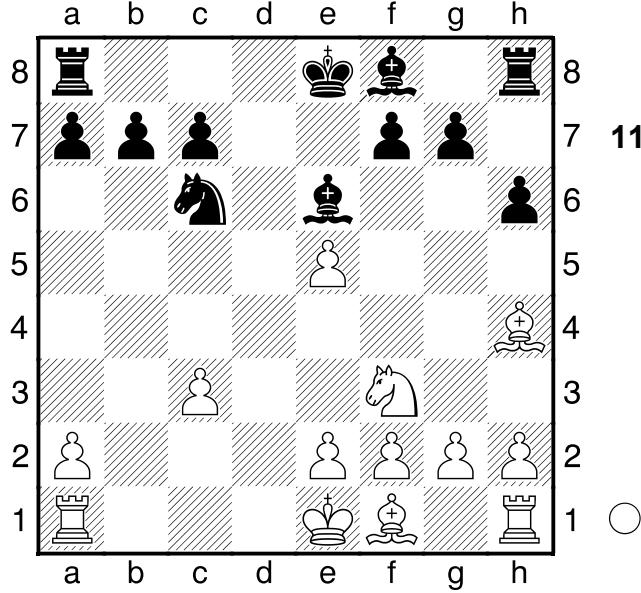
[If 7.Nxd5 Bxd5 8.Bd2, as in M. Kozak-T.Vojta, Czech League 2015, then Qd7, followed by ...O-O-O (Krasenkow), gives Black good compensation; e.g. 9.Bc3 O-O-O 10.a3 (preventing ...Bb4) Qf5 11.e3 Bc5 12.Qd3 Be4 13.Qc4 Bxe3! 14.fxe3 Bxf3, regaining the pawn since 15.gxf3?? loses to Qxf3 16.Rg1 Qxe3+ etc.]

**7...Nxc3 8.Qxd8+ Nxd8 9.bxc3**

The fact that Black has had to recapture on d8 with the knight means he will have to waste another tempo returning it to c6. Even so, it isn't easy for White to prove an advantage.

**9...h6 10.Bh4 Nc6**

(Diagram 11)



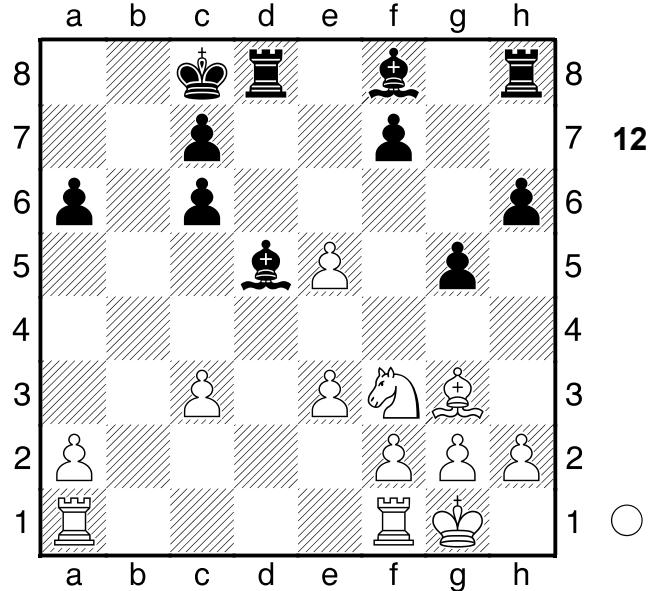
### 11.e3 Bd5

[Here 11...g5 12.Bg3 0-0-0 looks more accurate, and if 13.Bb5 then Bd5 transposing; ]  
[whereas after 11...Bd5 , White might play 12.Be2 g5 13.Bg3 0-0-0 (or 13...Bg7 14.c4 ) 14.h4 . ]

### 12.Bb5 g5 13.Bg3 0-0-0 14.0-0 a6

### 15.Bxc6 bxc6!?

[ANSWER: GM Michal Krasenkow also considers 15...bxc6 to be an unnecessary weakening of the queenside, so how does Black justify it? Perhaps Rapport did not want to waste a tempo on 15...Bxc6 16.Nd4 Bd5 , whereas after 15...bxc6 he can take control of d4 with ...c6-c5 and still have a c-pawn behind to cover the dark squares around his king; and the pawns are not especially weak at the moment since it's not easy for White to attack them without a light-squared bishop. It seems that Rapport's unexpected pawn capture was an interesting and dynamic choice, though it does place the onus on Black to play precisely, otherwise his wrecked structure might well prove a factor later in the game. ]



QUESTION: What could Rapport be thinking?? 15...Bxc6 looks obvious and better. **16.h4**

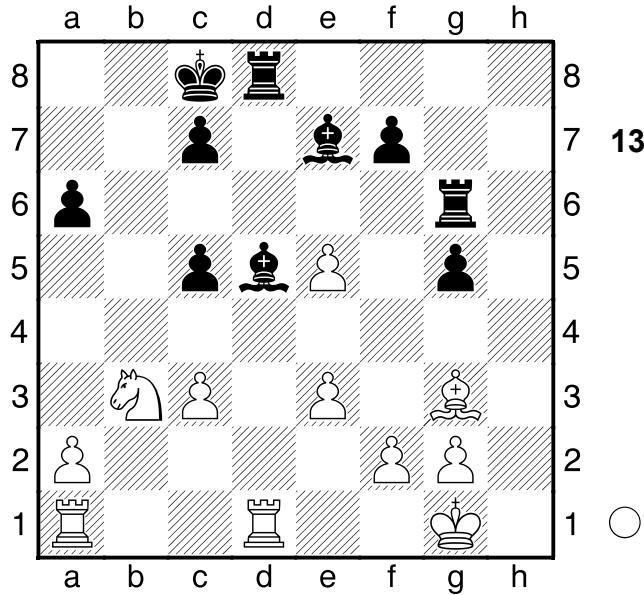
[Now if 16.Nd4 Black might even play c5 17.Nb3 c4!? 18.Nd4 Ba3 , after which 19...Bb2 regains the pawn, while 19.Rab1 (or 19.Ne2 Be6 ) 19...Be4 sees him coming in on the light squares. ]

### 16...Rg8 17.hxg5 hxg5 18.Nd4 c5

**19.Nb3** Navara keeps the pawn but Black's minor pieces are better than White's. The g3-bishop in particular serves only one function: to defend the extra pawn on e5.

**19...Rg6!** Activating the rook along the sixth rank. **20.Rfd1 Be7**

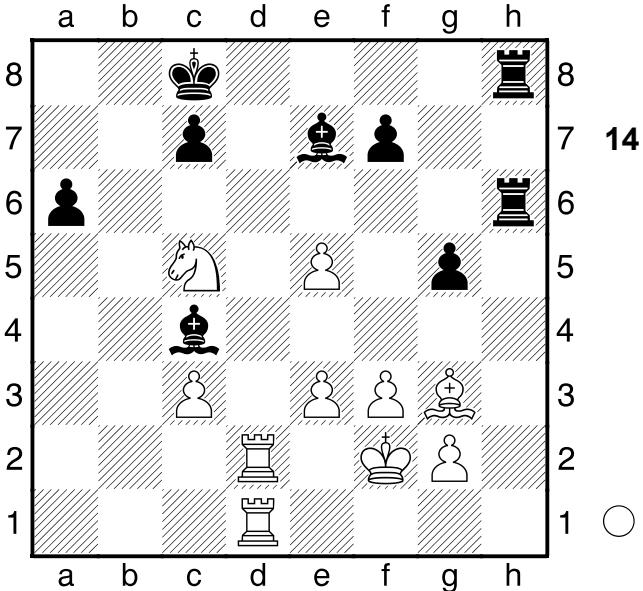
(Diagram 13)



**25.Kf2**

[Not 25.Rxa2?! Rh1+ and Black wins the exchange.]

**25...Bc4**



So Black remains a pawn down but now has excellent compensation with his strong bishops, active rooks and passed a-pawn. **26.Ne4**

[Krasenkow notes that White might bail out with 26.Rd4 Bb5 27.Ne4 Rh1 28.c4 Rxd1 29.Rxd1 Bxc4 30.Nd6+! cxd6 31.exd6, when the second threat of Rc1 ensures that he regains the piece to reach a drawn endgame.]

**26...Rh1 27.f4!?** Mobilizing his kingside majority, but it's risky as Black's a-pawn now becomes more dangerous.

[27.Rd4 Rxd1 28.Rxd1 Rd8 29.Ra1 is still roughly equal.]

**27...gxf4 28.exf4 a5 29.f5 a4**

[29...Bb3! might have been more accurate; for example, 30.Rxh1 Rxh1 31.e6 fxe6 32.f6 Bf8 33.c4 (or 33.Be5 Rh5! 34.Bd4 Rf5+ 35.Ke1 a4 36.g4 Rd5 and 37...e5) 33...a4 34.Be5 Rh5 35.Bc3 Rf5+, followed by ...Bxc4, and Black is now a pawn up.]

**21.Rd2 Rb6** This puts pressure on the b3-knight. Rapport won't have missed White's reply so he must have calculated quite deeply. **22.Nxc5**

A little tactic, exploiting a potential pin on the d-file; but there is a drawback in that the knight no longer defends the white rook in the corner.

[Not 22.Rad1?! Bxb3 23.Rxd8+ Bxd8 24.axb3 Rxb3, when Black has regained his pawn, possesses the stronger bishop, and his outside passed pawn gives him the edge in the endgame.]

**22...Rh6!** This must have been prepared by Rapport. Black suddenly threatens ...Rh8 and ...Rh1+, which is either mate or wins the undefended rook on a1.

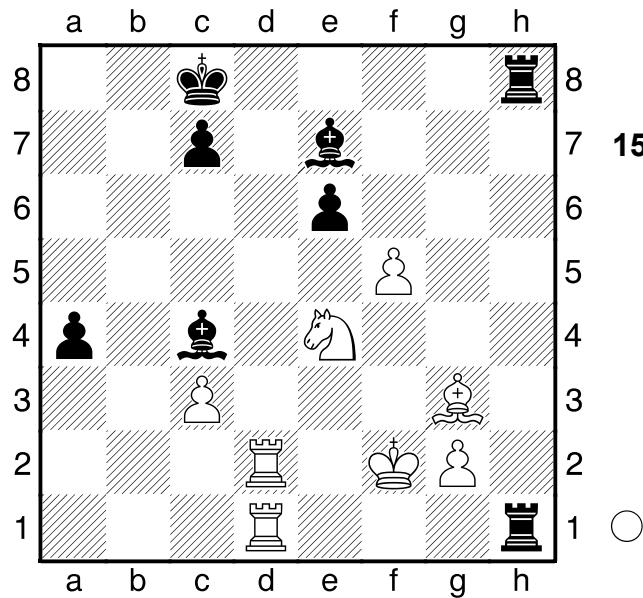
[Taking the knight is just bad: 22...Bxc5? 23.Rad1 Be7 (or 23...c6 24.c4) 24.Rxd5 Rb2 25.Rxd8+ Bxd8 26.a4 Rb3 27.f4 gxf4 28.exf4 Rxc3 29.Bf2, when White keeps his extra pawn and now has a powerful kingside majority which is far stronger than Black's passed c-pawn.]

**23.Rad1** Forced. **23...Rdh8 24.f3**

**Bxa2!** The bishop moves out of the line of fire and snatches a pawn.

**30.e6** There is no time to waste! Passed pawns must be created immediately.

**30...fxe6**



**31.f6 Rxd1 32.Rxd1 Bf8 33.Bf4**

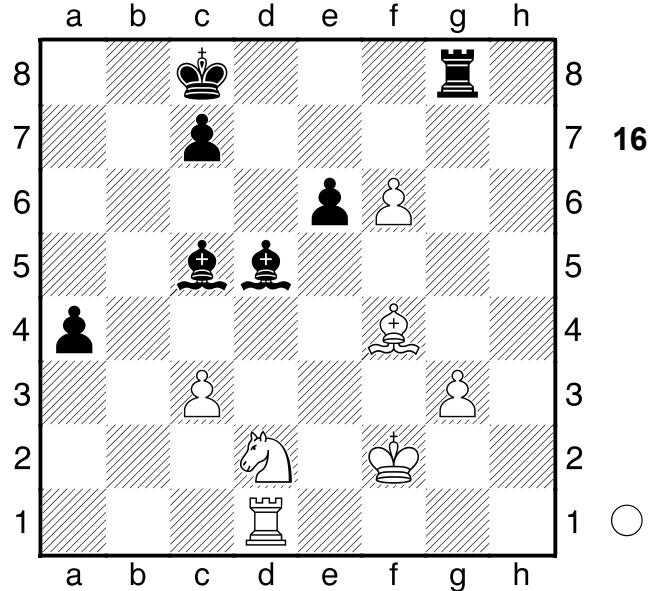
[It looks more natural to put the bishop on e5, but after 33.Be5? Black has the strong idea of Rh5! again, which seems to win by force this time; for example, 34.Bd4 Rf5+ 35.Kg1 (or 35.Ke3? Bh6+) 35...e5 36.Be3 a3 37.g4 Rf1+! 38.Rxf1 Bxf1 39.Bc1 Bd3 40.Nf2 Bc2 (Black's bishops work very well to stop the opposing pawns while supporting their own, and he can now bring his king across to the kingside) 41.Kg2 Kd7 42.Kf3 Ke6 43.g5 Kf5 44.Nh3 a2 45.Bb2 e4+ 46.Kf2 Bc5+ 47.Ke1 Bb3 48.Ba1 e3 and Black is clearly winning.]

**33...Bd5 34.Nd2?!**

[Here 34.Ke3! a3 35.Kd4 Bb3 36.Ra1 was safer.]

**34...Rg8 35.g3 Bc5+**

(Diagram 16)



**36.Be3**

[Not 36.Ke2? e5 37.Bxe5 Re8 and Black wins a piece.]

**36...Bd6** Obviously Black wants to hang on to the bishop pair.

[After 36...Bxe3+?! 37.Kxe3 Rxg3+ 38.Ke2, he has to scurry back with Rg8 39.Ke3 Rf8 40.Ra1 Bc6 41.Rf1 Kd7 42.Kd4 and White should hold.]

**37.c4 Bc6 38.Ke2 a3?** In time trouble Rapport starts to go wrong.

[Black should play 38...Rxg3 39.f7 Bf8!, avoiding the tactical ideas White is dreaming about, (such as 39...Rg7 40.Ne4! Bxe4 41.Rxd6! Rxf7 42.Rxe6 and draws.)]

**39.f7 Rxg3? 40.Ne4! Rg2+?**

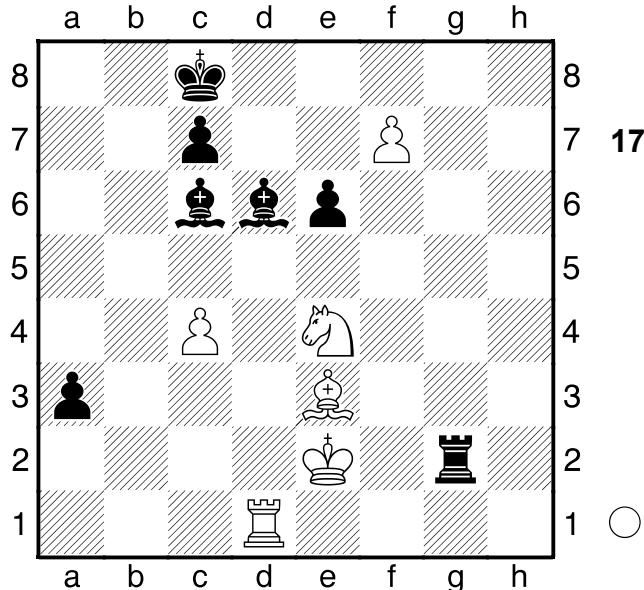
[Black could still have drawn with 40...Bxe4! 41.Rxd6! Rf3 42.Rxe6 Rxf7 43.Rxe4 a2 44.Bd4 Rh7!, intending ...Rh1, and the a-pawn will force White to return the piece.]

**A)** This cannot be stopped: 45.Kd2 Rd7! pins the bishop; (45...--);

**B)** 45.Rf4 Re7+ 46.Kf2 Rd7 47.Ba1 Rd1 finds another way in;

**C)** and 45.c5 c6! doesn't change anything (but not 45...Rh1?? due to 46.c6! and Black gets

mated. )]



Sometimes you have to readjust your ambitions and accept that your winning chances have disappeared. **41.Kf1 Bf8**

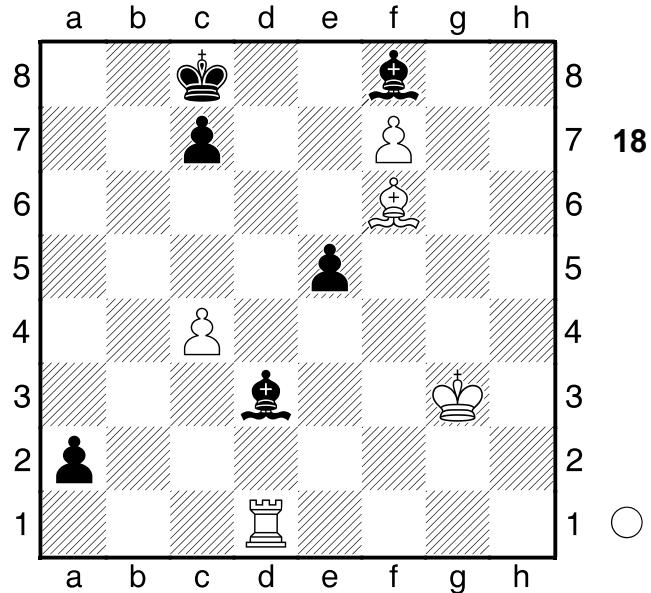
[ Now after 41...Bxe4 42.Rxd6 , the f7-pawn cannot be stopped. ]

**42.Kxg2 Bxe4+ 43.Kg3** Black is the exchange down but he still has that a-pawn. His next move keeps the white bishop off the a1-h8 diagonal for a crucial moment.

**43...e5! 44.Bg5 a2 45.Bf6 Bd3??**

[ 45...c5! was necessary to give the black king a square on c7. This can be seen in the line 46.Bxe5 Bc2 47.Rd2 (while after 47.Rf1 Kd7 48.Kg4 Ke7 the black bishops keep the enemy king out, so White can make no progress) 47...Bb3 48.Bf6 Kc7 , when 49.Rd8?? loses to a1Q . ]

(Diagram 18)



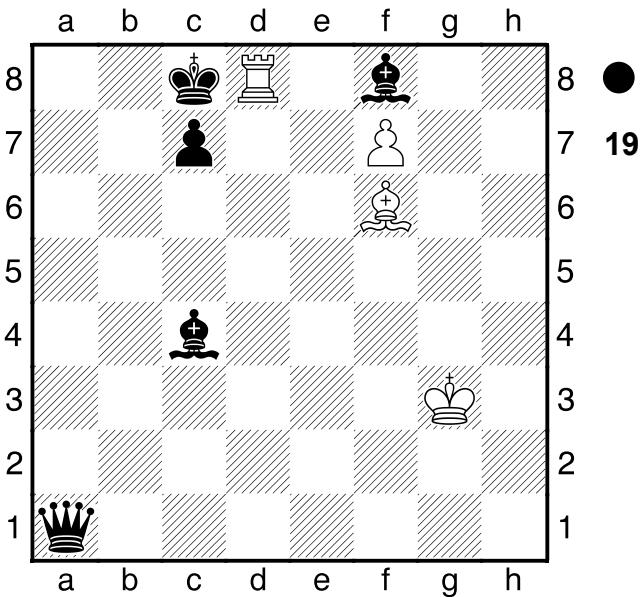
The final mistake. **46.Bxe5 Bxc4**

**47.Bf6! a1Q**

[Or 47...Bxf7 48.Rd8+ and Rxf8. ]

**48.Rd8+**

[After 48.Rd8+ Kb7 49.Bxa1 , White will soon be a rook up. ]



1-0

Aronian,L  
 Rapport,R  
 19: European Cup, Novi Sad  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

D07

2016

[After 8.Bxc3 Bxc3+ 9.bxc3 Qe7 Black regains the pawn at once, since 10.Qd5?! Be6 is not advisable for White.]

**8...Ba5!** Black already has a good position with rapid, easy development, whereas White's only plus is his extra pawn, which he therefore needs to keep.

**9.e3**

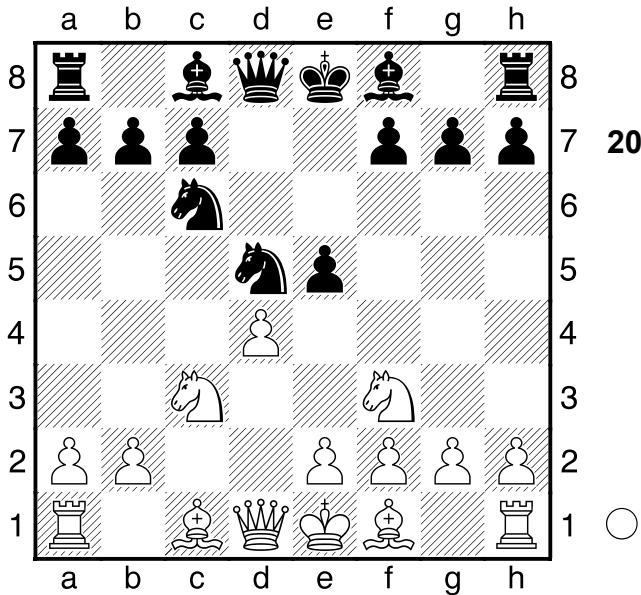
[Other moves:

a) 9.Qa4 0-0 10.e3 Bb6 transposes to the game.]

[b) 9.e4 , D.Mikrut-M.Kukawski, Polish League 2013, is met most simply by 0-0 10.Bb5 Bd7 11.Qe2 (or 11.0-0?! Nxe5 ) 11...Re8 , which wins the pawn back easily enough.]

[c) 9.g3 Qe7 10.Bg2 0-0 11.Qa4 , Zhao Yuanhe-Signorelli, World Junior Championship, Tarvisio 2017, and now Bb6 12.Bf4 Bd7 seems okay for Black, (or even 12...Qc5!? 13.0-0 Qxc3 .)]

**9...0-0 10.Qa4 Bb6**

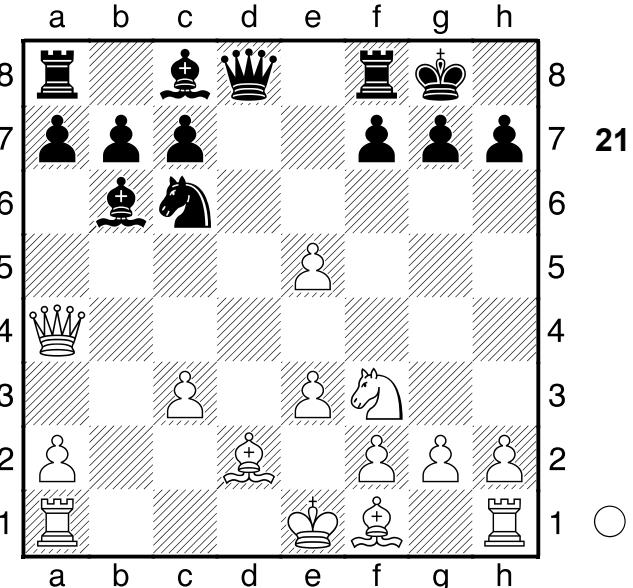


**6.dxe5 Bb4** This time Rapport opts for the recommended move, having presumably revised the theory after his game with Navara.

**7.Bd2**

[Inserting 7.a3 Ba5 changes things a little, since White now has 8.Bd2 (not 8.b4?! Ncxb4! 9.axb4 Bxb4 10.Bd2 Bxc3 and Black wins a pawn; while 8.Bg5 Nxc3 9.Qxd8+ Nxd8 10.Bd2 Nc6 11.Bxc3 Bxc3+ 12.bxc3 Bg4 13.h3 Bxf3 14.exf3 Nxe5 was equal in L.Eastoe-C.Glanville, correspondence 2013 ) 8...Nxc3 9.Qc2!? . Nevertheless, Black should be okay after Nxe2 (or 9...Nb5 10.Bxa5 Nxa5 ) 10.Bxa5 Ned4 11.Nxd4 Nxd4 12.Qa4+ Qd7 13.Qxd7+ Bxd7 14.Rd1 c5 . ]

**7...Nxc3 8.bxc3**



**11.Qf4 Qe7 12.h4!?** This is very ambitious, as castling is now quite dicey for White. Does he really think his king is safer in the centre?

[In M.Ziegler-S.Zehnter, Gerolhofen 2011, White was successful with 12.Bc4 Be6 13.Bb5 Qc5 14.Bxc6 Qxc6 15.0-0 Rad8 16.Rfd1 , even if Black looked fine at this stage.]

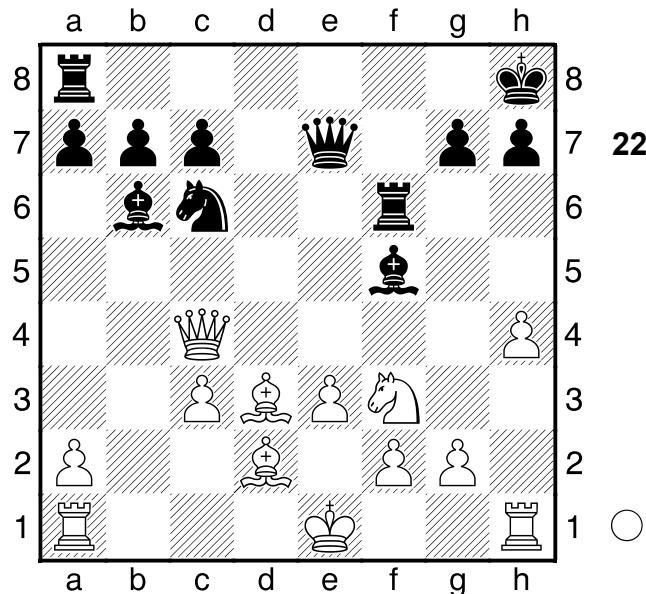
**12...f6!?** Rapport opens things up at once.

[An alternative was 12...Re8 13.Bc4 Be6 14.Bxe6 Qxe6 15.Ng5 Qe7 16.Qe4 g6 17.f4 f6 , when Bronznik analyses 18.Qc4+ Kg7 19.exf6+ Qxf6 20.e4 Na5 21.Qe2 Qc6 22.f5 Nc4 23.Rf1 gxf5 24.Rxf5 Nxd2 25.Qh5 Rxe4+ 26.Nxe4 Qxe4+ 27.Kd1 Kh8 28.Re5 Qd3 29.Re8+ as leading to a draw by perpetual check.]

**13.exf6**

[If instead 13.Bc4+ then Be6 14.Bxe6+ (or similarly 14.0-0 h6!) 14...Qxe6 15.exf6 h6! , preventing Ng5; (rather than 15...Rxf6?! 16.Ng5! with an edge for White.)]

**13...Rxf6 14.Qc4+ Kh8 15.Bd3 Bf5**



**16.Bxf5 Rxf5 17.Ng5?** Allowing Black to centralize his own knight is a mistake. After almost anything else, the game would remain in the balance. **17...Ne5**

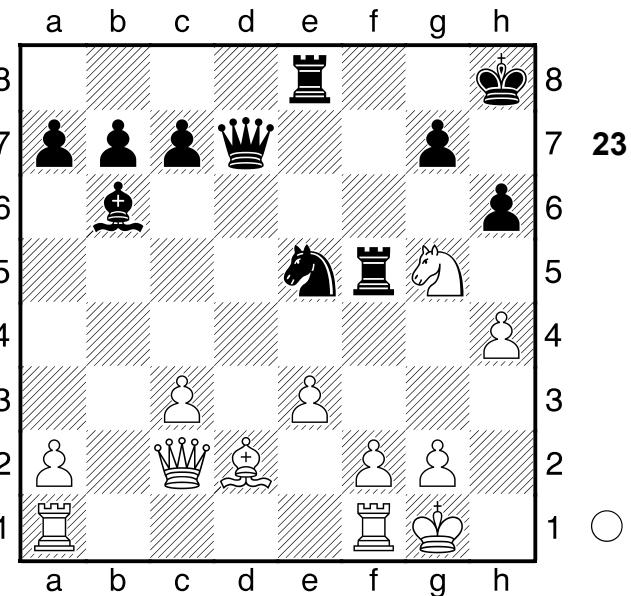
**18.Qe4?**

[Retreating with 18.Qe2 Rd8 19.f4 Nd3+ 20.Kf1 was relatively best.]  
[Not 18.Qe6?? Nd3+ 19.Ke2 Rxf2+! 20.Kxd3 Rd8+ 21.Ke4 Qf8! (Notkin) and White is busted.]

**18...Qd7!** Now White is in big trouble on the light squares. **19.0-0 Re8**

[Black could have won with 19...h6 20.Nh3 (or 20.Nf3 Nxf3+ 21.gxf3 Raf8) 20...Re8 21.Qc2 (or 21.Nf4 g5!) 21...Nf3+! 22.gxf3 Rxf3 23.Nf4 Rxf4 24.exf4 Qg4+ 25.Kh2 Qxh4+ 26.Kg2 Qg4+ 27.Kh2 Re2 and White is defenceless against the killer blow ...Bxf2.]

**20.Qc2 h6**

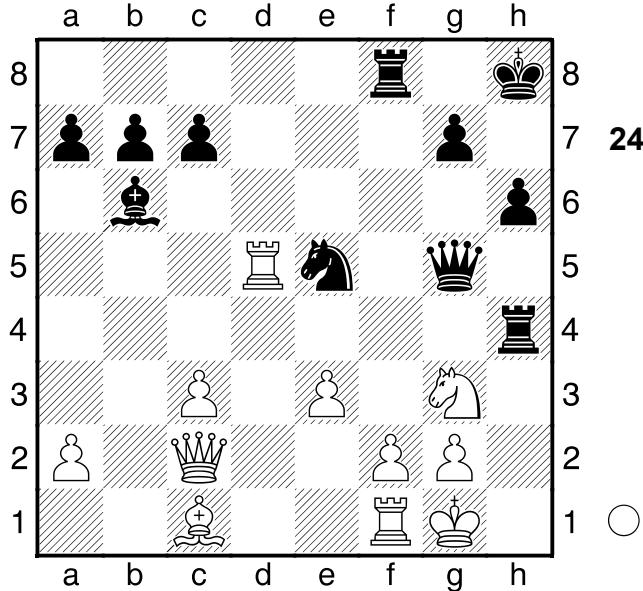


**21.Ne4 Rh5** White must have been regretting pushing his h-pawn so recklessly earlier. **22.Ng3**

[22.g3 weakens the light squares disastrously: Nf3+ 23.Kg2 Qg4 24.Qd1 Nxh4+ 25.Kg1 Nf3+ 26.Kg2 Rh2#.]

**22...Rhx4** Black has now recaptured all his pawns and retains great attacking chances. **23.Rad1 Rf8 24.Bc1 Qg4 25.Rd5 Qg5!**

(Diagram 24)



This move is very hard to anticipate, as you don't normally volunteer to move into a pin. The point is the discovered attack with ...Nf3+ winning the rook.

### 26.Qe2 c6

[Not now 26...Nf3+?? 27.Qxf3 and Black has to resign.]

**27.Rd4** White seeks to exchange attackers. In particular, he wants to see the rook on h4 disappear from the board.

[At the same time he sets a small trap – 27.Rd4 Bxd4?? 28.exd4, when both queen and knight are en prise – not that a player of Rapport's calibre will fall for that.]

**27...Rh1+!!** Black's reply is to give the rook away for free!! **28.Kxh1**

[Not 28.Nxh1?? Nf3+ and White has to give up his queen.]

### 28...Bxd4 29.f3

[After 29.exd4 Qh4+ 30.Kg1 Ng4 31.Re1 Qh2+ 32.Kf1 Qxg3 33.Be3, Black has no immediate win but White is so tied up it does not matter.

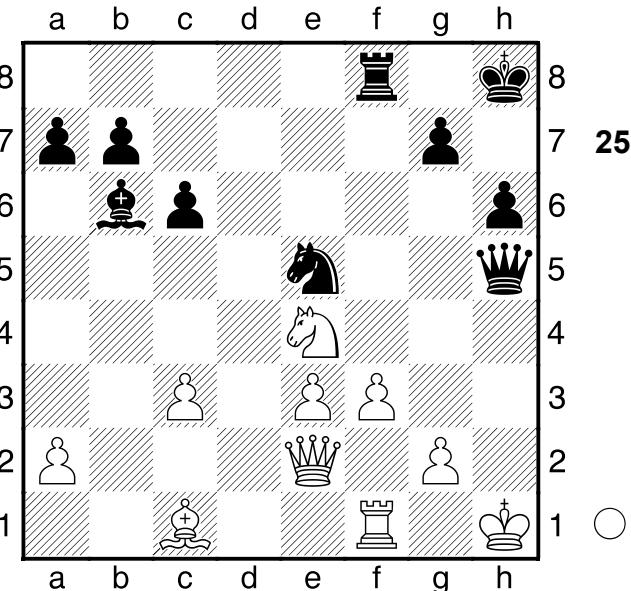
**A)** One plan that comes to mind is to advance the h-pawn to h3, though this need to be properly timed. The immediate **33...h5**

**A1) 34.Qd2 h4 35.c4 h3**

36.gxh3 sets up Nh2+ 37.Ke2 Rxf2+! 38.Bxf2 Qf3# ; ( 38...-- ); **A2)** but in this line White can play **34.d5!** (giving the bishop some breathing room) 34...cxd5 35.Bc5 Qh4 36.Qd2 Qh1+ 37.Ke2 Re8+ 38.Kd1 Rxe1+ 39.Qxe1 Qxe1+ 40.Kxe1, when he has survived for the moment, even if he still faces a dismal pawn down endgame;

**B)** Black can improve by first playing **33...b6!** (Bronznik), after which there is little White can do; e.g. 34.d5 cxd5 35.Bd4 Qh4 36.f3 (or 36.Qd2 Kg8!) 36...Nh2+ 37.Kg1 Nxf3+ 38.gxf3 Qg3+ 39.Kh1 Rf5 40.f4 Rxf4 41.Bxg7+ Kh7! 42.Qc2+ Kxg7 43.Qg2 Qxg2+ 44.Kxg2 Ra4 leaves Black two pawns up in the rook endgame with a fairly simple win.]

### 29...Bb6 30.Ne4 Qh5+



### 31.Kg1 Bc7?!

[Here 31...Rf4! was stronger, utilizing the pin on the e3-pawn. After 32.Kf2 Qg6 (threatening ...Qxe4) 33.Ke1 (33.Kg1? now allows Nxf3+) 33...Rf8, the white king has been driven back

into the centre, making his defence that much more difficult. But it doesn't matter since Aronian sends his king that way voluntarily. ]

### 32.Kf2?

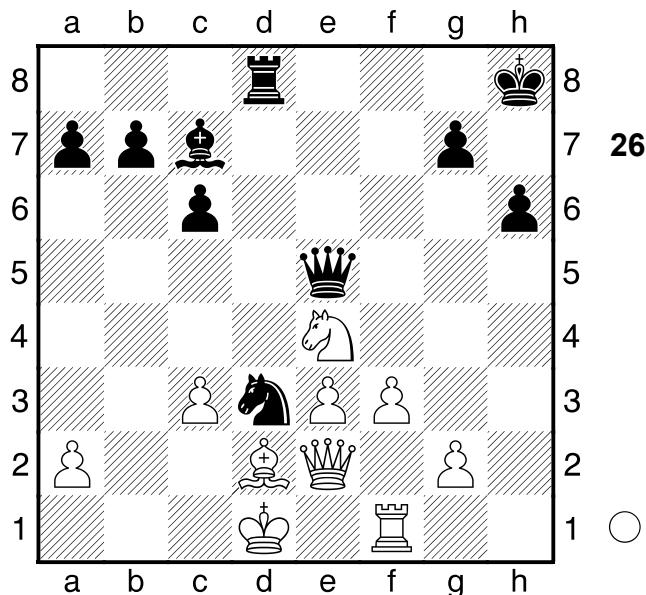
[After 32.Ba3! Rd8 33.c4

White would be in the game. ]

**32...Qh2 33.Ke1?** The white king tries to flee to the queenside, but he was safer in the kingside warzone.

[ 33.f4! was the only move, and if Re8 34.Ng3 Qh4 then 35.Qh5 Nd3+ 36.Kf3 Qe7 37.Qg6! Nxc1 38.Nf5 and White is hanging on; e.g. Qe4+ 39.Kg3 Bxf4+! 40.Kh3! Rg8 41.Rxf4 Qe8 42.Qd6 Qh5+ 43.Nh4 Ne2 44.Re4 . ]

**33...Rd8! 34.Bd2 Nd3+ 35.Kd1 Qe5**

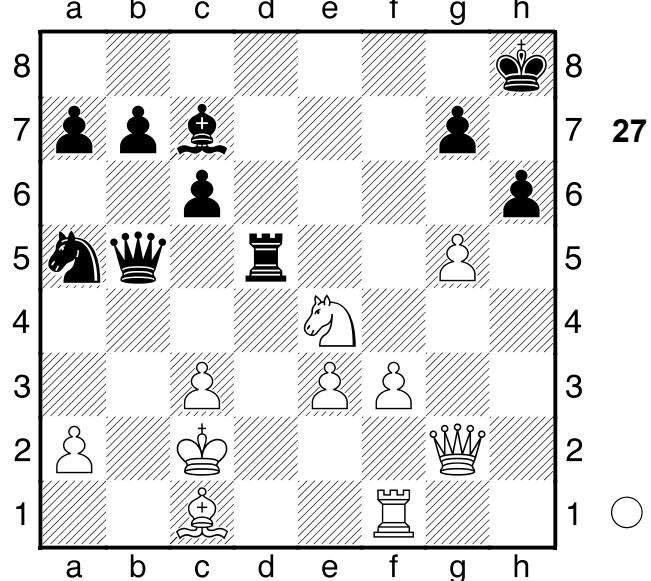


**36.g4 Qb5** The black queen follows along. **37.Qg2 Nb2+** **38.Kc2**

[If White repeats the position with 38.Ke1 Nd3+ 39.Kd1 , Black can switch to Qa4+ 40.Ke2 Qc4 41.Kd1 Rd5 , transferring the rook to the b-file where a check on b1 will win easily. ]

**38...Nc4 39.Bc1 Rd5 40.g5 Na5!**

(Diagram 27)



This quiet move, clearing the black queen's path to d3, finishes the game.

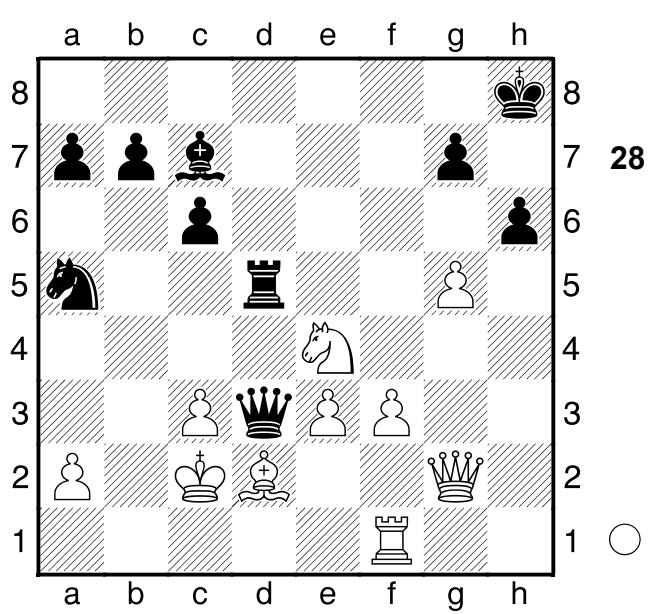
**41.Bd2**

[Or 41.gxh6 Qd3+ 42.Kb2 Rb5+ 43.Ka3 Bd6+ 44.Nxd6 Qxc3+ 45.Ka4 Qb4# . ]

**41...Qd3+**

[The finish could be 41...Qd3+ 42.Kd1 Nc4 43.Ke1 Nxd2 44.Qxd2 Qb1+ 45.Kf2 Rxd2+ and Black wins everything. A tremendous game by one of the most exciting players in the world against one of the best players in the world. ]

(Diagram 28)



Aronian has enough and throws in the towel.

**0-1**

Sargissian,G  
 Miladinovic,I  
 20: European Championship, Plovdiv  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

### 1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nc3 Nf6

Miladinovic is unusual amongst top Chigorin aficionados in preferring this move.

[Most other grandmasters opt for 3...dxc4, which we'll come to at last in the next game.]

**4.Nf3** White forgoes the option of taking on d5 for the moment and just develops his other knight. **4...Bf5** Black is treating the opening like a reversed London System. It's an interesting approach, but we must not forget he is one move behind.

[Now 4...dxc4 reaches the main lines, examined in Games 25-37. If Black declines to capture the c4-pawn he risks White playing c4xd5 in a more favourable position.]

[Instead:

a) 4...Bg4?! is met by 5.cxd5! Nxd5 6.e4, when numerous attempts have failed to make this line work for Black.

**A)** 6...Nxc3 7.bxc3 e5 8.d5 Nb8 9.Qa4+ Nd7 10.Nxe5 Qf6

was topical for a while, until White discovered 11.Be2!, which is pretty much a refutation. For example, Qxe5? (losing by force)

(though after 11...c6 12.dxc6 Qxe5 13.cxd7+ Bxd7 14.Qd4, G.Rey-M.Leski, San Francisco 1987; or 11...b5 12.Qxb5 Qxe5 13.Bxg4 Qxe4+ 14.Qe2

, C.Garcia Palermo-R.Libau, German League 1988, Black is just a pawn down anyway) 12.Bxg4 0-0-0 (or 12...Qxc3+ 13.Bd2

Qxa1+ 14.Ke2 ) 13.0-0 Bc5

14.Rb1 Rhe8 15.Rxb7! and White won in Z.Gyimesi-F.Patuzzo, World Junior Championship, Guarapuava 1995.;

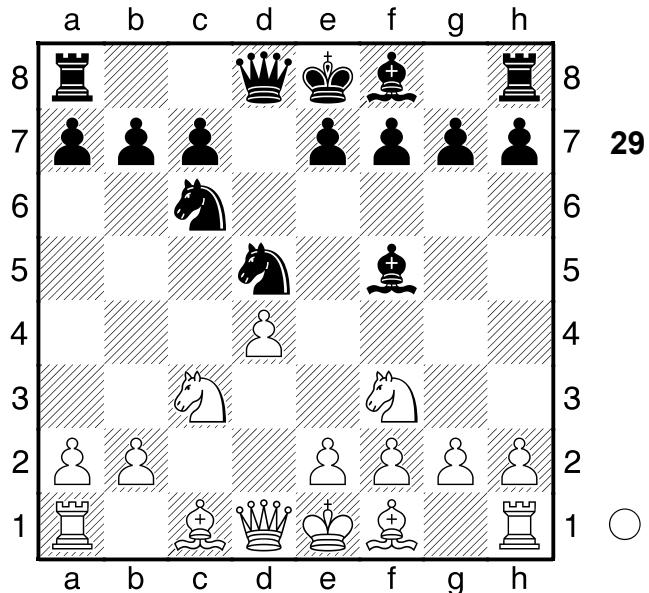
**B)** Inserting 6...Bxf3 7.gxf3

is no improvement, in view of Nxc3 8.bxc3 e5 9.d5 Nb8 10.Rb1! Bd6 (or similarly 10...Bc5 11.Qa4+ Kf8, M.P.Townsend-S.Kapnisis, Irakleio 2018, and now 12.Rxb7, since Bb6? loses to 13.Ba3+ Kg8 14.d6 cxd6 15.Bc4 etc ) 11.Rg1 g6 12.Rxb7 and White is a pawn up for nothing, Z.Ribli-W.Wittmann, Dubai Olympiad 1986.]

[b) 4...e6, on the other hand, is quite sound but can be criticized on the same basis as 3...e6; i.e. what was 2...Nc6 for in that case? White has a slight edge in a position any Queen's Gambiteer should be happy to play.]

### 5.cxd5! Nxd5

[There is no time for 5...Nb4?? as 6.Qa4+ wins a piece.]



**6.Qb3!** Attacking the d5-knight and b7-pawn, as well as preparing a pawn fork

with e2-e4.

[Not yet 6.e4?? Nxc3 7.bxc3 Bxe4 and Black has won a pawn; ] [though 6.e3 e6 7.Bb5 Bd6 8.0-0 0-0 9.Re1 should also offer White a small plus, J.Sriram-S.Iuldachev, New Delhi 2009. ]

### 6...e6

[The immediate 6...Nxc3 7.bxc3 only solves two of Black's problems since the b7-pawn is still an issue; e.g. e6 (or 7...b6 8.e4! with a clear advantage as Bxe4? loses to 9.Bb5 f6 10.Qa4 Qd7 11.Nd2 Bxg2 12.f3) 8.Qxb7 Na5 9.Qa6 c6 was D.Przepiorka-D.Janowski, Marienbad 1925, and now 10.Nd2!, followed by e2-e4, is very good for White.]

### 7.e4

[Not yet 7.Qxb7?? Ndb4 (threatening to trap the queen) 8.Bf4 Rb8 9.Qxc7 Nc2+ 10.Kd1 Qxc7 11.Bxc7 Rxb2 , which is clearly in Black's favour.]

### 7...Nxc3 8.exf5

Since his queen is no longer on d1, White is free to capture the bishop instead. **8...Nd5 9.Bd2!**

[Black was threatening ...Bb4+, as shown by:

a) 9.fxe6?! Bb4+ 10.Bd2 (or 10.Kd1 0-0) 10...Bxd2+ 11.Nxd2 fxe6 (or 11...0-0!? 12.exf7+ Rxf7 13.0-0-0 Nxd4) 12.Bb5 0-0 13.Bxc6 bxc6 14.0-0 Rb8 15.Qc2 Nf4 16.Nf3? Qd5! , threatening ...Nxf2, and Black's opening has been a success, S.De Blecourt-C.Amura, Dresden Olympiad 2008.]

[b) 9.Qxb7 Bb4+ 10.Kd1 Nde7 11.Bb5 0-0 12.Bxc6 Rb8 13.Qa6 Rb6 14.Qc4 Nxc6 15.fxe6 fxe6 and White may be a pawn up but his king is in a war zone; it was Black who won in F.Abbasov-I.Miladinovic, Tournefeuille 2008.]

### 9...Qd6!?

Continuing to offer up the b7-pawn.

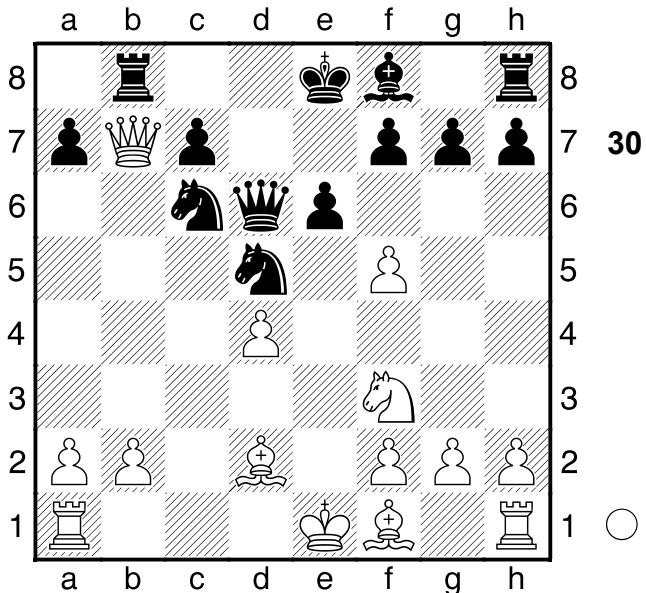
[If Black plays 9...Bb4 now, then 10.Bxb4 Ndxb4 11.fxe6 fxe6 12.a3! Qd5 13.Qxd5 Nxd5 14.Bb5 leaves him facing a tricky ending, D. Brun-S.Bortolotti, Condino 2012. Even so, this might be his best option.]

### 10.Qxb7

White takes the plunge and the b-pawn.

[Refusing it with 10.Rc1! and 11.Bb5 might be even better.]

### 10...Rb8



### 11.Qa6 exf5?

This neglects development and looks quite inconsistent with Black's play so far.

[Presumably he wanted to avoid something like 11...Be7 12.Bb5 Rb6 13.Bxc6+ , followed by Qc8+ and f5xe6, when White has a safe extra pawn, but the game continuation is far worse.]

### 12.Rc1 Qe6+ 13.Be2

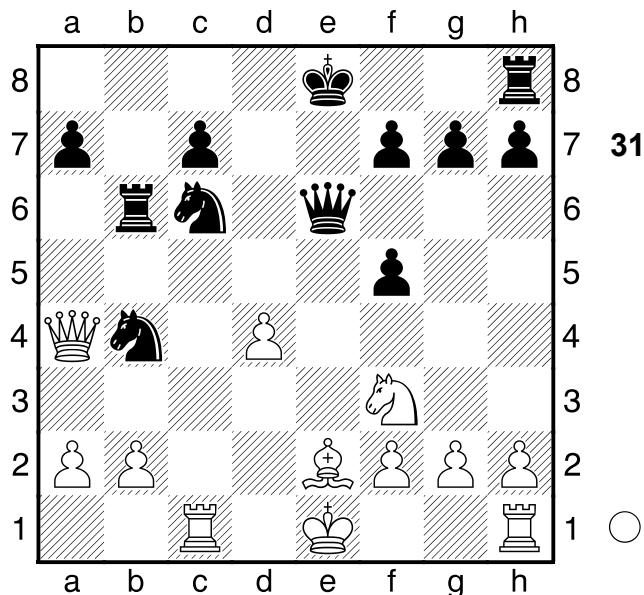
[Missing 13.Kd1! with a sharp, forced win, since Black has no good way to defend his c6-knight and answer the threat of Bb5 and Re1; for example, Ndb4 (nothing else is any better: 13...Rb6 14.Qa4 Kd8 15.Bb5; and

13...Nd8 14.Bb5+ Rxb5 15.Re1; and  
 13...Nce7 14.Bb5+ Kd8 15.Ne5  
 Qxa6 16.Nxf7+ Kc8 17.Bxa6+  
 all win ) 14.Bxb4 Nxb4 15.Qa4+ Kd8  
 (or 15...c6 16.Bc4 Qd6 17.Re1+  
 Be7 18.a3 ) 16.Ne5 Qd5 17.Qxa7  
 Rb7 18.Qa8+ Ke7 19.Rc4 Kf6  
 20.a3 and Black has brought his king  
 to safety but will lose on material. ]

### 13...Rb6 14.Qa4 Bb4 15.Bxb4?!

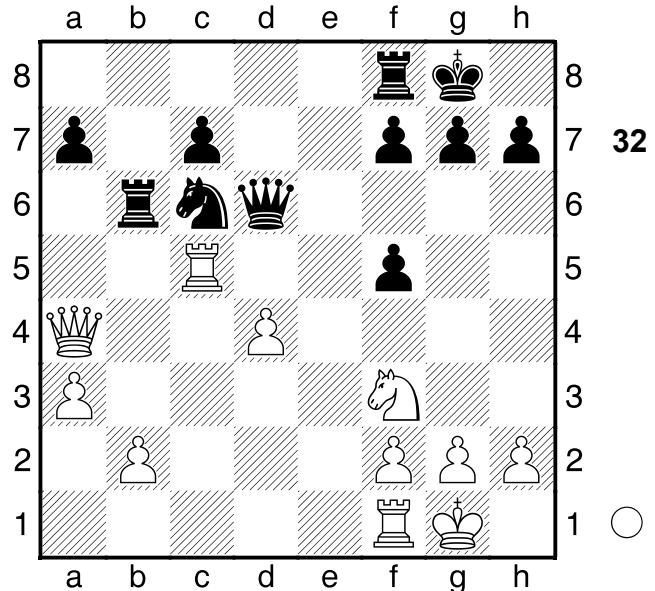
[This time White misses a more straightforward win: 15.Rxc6! Rxc6  
 (or 15...Qxc6 16.Qxc6+ Rxc6  
 17.Bb5 Bxd2+ 18.Kxd2 Ne7  
 19.Ne5 ) 16.Ne5 Bxd2+ 17.Kxd2  
 Qh6+ 18.Ke1 Qc1+ 19.Bd1 Ne7  
 20.d5 etc. ]

### 15...Ndxb4



16.0-0 0-0 17.Bc4 Qd6 18.a3 Nd5  
 19.Bxd5 Qxd5 20.Rc5 Qd6

(Diagram 32)



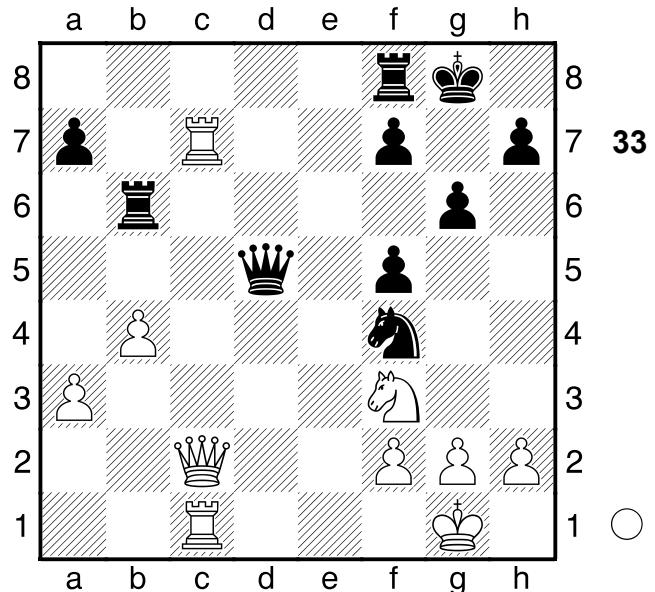
### 21.Rfc1 Nd8 22.b4 Ne6 23.Qc2?

[Here 23.Rxf5 Nxd4 24.Nxd4 Qxd4  
 25.Rfc5 Rb7 26.Qa6 Rfb8 27.g3  
 would keep the advantage. Black has  
 avoided losing any pawns for the  
 moment, but his rooks are so passive  
 that White still has excellent chances  
 of bringing in the point. ]

### 23...g6?

[After 23...Ra6! Black would suddenly  
 be perfectly okay, whereas now White  
 gets another opportunity to press. ]

### 24.d5 Nf4 25.Rxc7 Qxd5

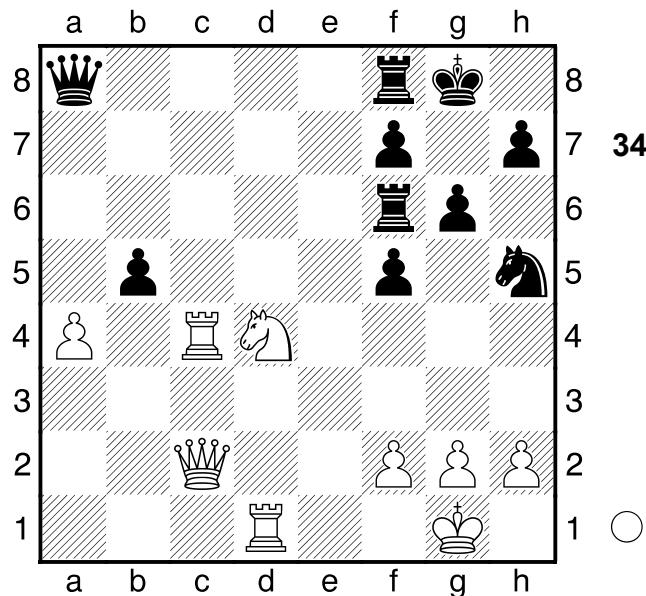


## 26.Rd1 Qa8 27.Rc4?

[ Doubling rooks on the seventh makes more sense: 27.Rdd7 , with the threat of both 28.Rxa7 and a6 28.Rxf7 Rxf7 29.Rc8+ Qxc8 30.Qxc8+ . ]

## 27...Nh5?! 28.Nd4 Rf6 29.b5 a6!

Reducing the queenside is Black's best chance to draw. 30.a4 axb5



## 31.axb5 Rd6 32.Nc6 Re6?!

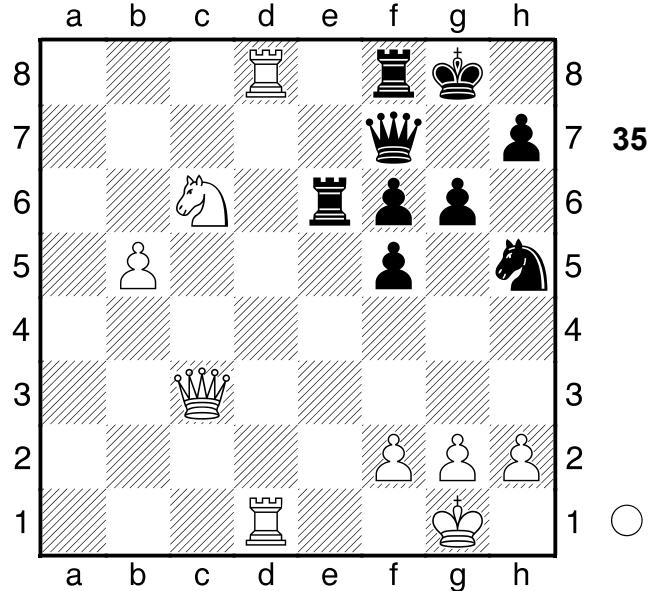
[ Swapping a pair of rooks with 32...Rxd1+ was better, aiming to set up a solid defence with moves like ...Qb7, ...Nf6 and ...Re8. ]

## 33.Rcd4 Qe8?? Black finally makes a fatal mistake. 34.Qc3! f6

[ Or 34...Re2 35.Rd8 Qe6 36.Rxf8+ Kxf8 37.Qh8# . ]

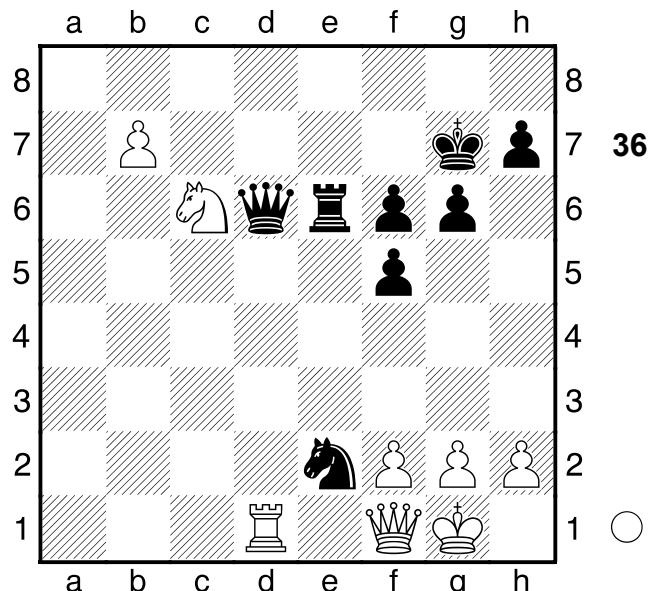
## 35.Rd8 Qf7

(Diagram 35)



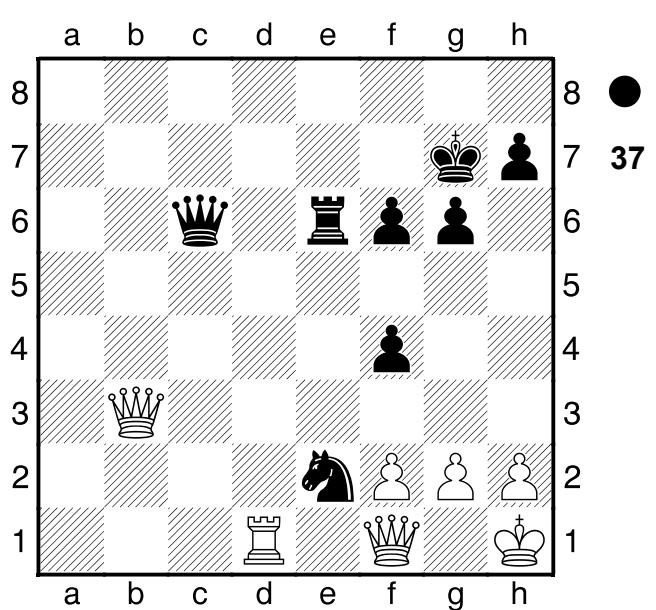
## 36.Rxf8+ Qxf8 37.b6 Kg7 38.b7 Nf4

## 39.Qc4 Qd6 40.Qf1 Ne2+



## 41.Kh1 Qxc6 42.b8Q f4 43.Qb3

(Diagram 37)



1-0

Neven,K  
 Fester,A  
21: Correspondence  
[Jimmy Liew]

D07

1998

### 1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nc3 dxc4

We now get to Black's second, and most popular, reply to 3 Nc3. This time Black eliminates the pressure on his d5-pawn by simply taking on c4, revealing counter-pressure on the d4-pawn. He also invites White to enter a very sharp line.

#### 4.d5 Taking up the challenge.

[The main line with 4.Nf3 is examined in Games 25-37.]

[White's third option is to defend the d-pawn with 4.e3, as in Game 24.]

**4...Na5!?** Black is playing a mirror-image King's Gambit, Schallopp's Defence (1 e4 e5 2 f4 exf4 3 Nf3 Nf6 4 e5 Nh5). The difference with the Chigorin version is that Black's knight on the edge is rather less secure, which means he must be ready to sacrifice it for two or three pawns. Although Black gets an impressive-looking queenside mass, which can provide good practical chances, objectively the sacrifice is probably not quite sound.

[Instead, the centralizing 4...Ne5 is considered more reliable, for which see the next two games.]

#### 5.Qa4+! The critical reply.

[Natural developing moves do not pose any problems for Black, who will immediately attack the advanced d-pawn with ...e7-e6 and/or ...c7-c6. For example, 5.e4 e6 6.Bxc4

(utilizing a tactic to regain the pawn at the cost of giving up the bishop pair) (then again none of 6.Nf3 c6; or 6.Bf4 Nf6; or 6.Qa4+ c6 offers White

any advantage either; note in the last case that 7.b4?! no longer works because of cxb3 8.axb3 Qb6!, intending 9.Qxa5? Qxa5 10.Rxa5 Bb4 and Black comes out a clear pawn up) 6...Nxc4 7.Qa4+ c6

**A)** not 8.dxc6??, hoping for Nb6?

(because 8...b5! 9.Qxb5 Nd6 allows Black to keep the piece)  
9.cxb7+ Bd7 10.bxa8Q;

**B)** 8.Qxc4 cxd5 9.exd5 Nf6!

(9...exd5 10.Nxd5 Bd6 is just level) 10.Bg5 (10.Qb5+ Bd7 11.Qxb7 Nxd5 12.Nxd5 exd5 13.Qxd5 Bb4+ 14.Bd2 Bxd2+ 15.Qxd2 0-0 gives Black excellent play for the pawn, since 16.Ne2 Re8 17.0-0?? loses to Bb5

, as in H.Golombek-W.Lange, Hamburg 1955) 10...exd5 11.Qb5+ (11.Bxf6 dxc4 12.Bxd8 Kxd8 13.0-0-0+ Kc7 just leaves Black

with the bishop pair) 11...Bd7

12.Bxf6? (12.Qxb7 is still level)

12...Qxf6 13.Qxb7? (or 13.Qxd5? Bc6 and 14...Bxg2 at once; the dismal 13.Qe2+ was necessary) 13...Bc6 14.Qc7 d4 (the threat of ...Bxg2 is decisive) 15.0-0-0 Be7 16.Rxd4, J.Bonin-J. Rizzitano, New York 1983, and now Black could have played Bxg2 and wins, since 17.Qd7+ Kf8

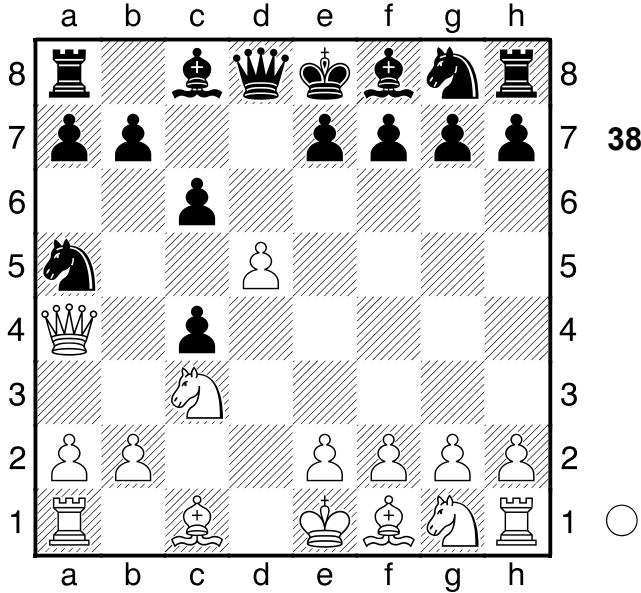
is nothing to worry about.)

[Similarly 5.Bf4 e6]

[or if 5.Bg5!? then f6 and 6...e5.]

5...c6

(Diagram 38)



12.Nc3 Ba6 13.Bg5 e6 14.Nd4 Rc8  
 15.Bd2 e5 16.Nf5 d4 17.Nd1 c3  
 18.Bc1 Rb8 , W.Rost-R.Wegelin East German Championship, Erfurt 1972, is an example of how White can be overwhelmed by the black pawns if he does not play actively ) 10...e6  
 11.exd5 exd5 12.Be3 with a similar position to that in the main game. K. Elison-F.Fleischanderl, correspondence 2000, continued Nf6 13.Be2 Be7 14.Nf3 0-0 15.Bc5 Re8 16.Nd4 Bd7 (showing a drawback to Na4 – the knight can be attacked) 17.Bxe7 Rxe7 18.Nc5 Rc8 19.Nxd7 Rxd7 20.Rb1 Rb7 21.0-0 Rc5 and White soon offered a draw, presumably feeling he couldn't get anywhere. Here 22.Nc2 looks like one way of trying, intending Rxa5 (or 22...b3 23.axb3 cxb3 24.a6 Rb6 25.Nd4; or 22...Rcb5 23.Bf3, followed by Rfd1 and Ne3 ) 23.Rxb4 . ]

**9...cxd5** Black gets two pawns for the piece (three if you count the a5-pawn which is likely to fall). In addition he has a nice pawn chain (after playing ...e7-e6) which will limit the white pieces. For this reason, White must strike immediately.

**10.e4!** No time is to be wasted – the d5-pawn must be weakened. This brings the base of the pawn chain up to d5 where it will be easier to attack later.

#### **10...e6**

[ 10...dxe4? 11.Bxc4 is obviously senseless, as Black's pawns are broken up for no reason. ]

#### **6.b4**

[After 6.dxc6 Nxc6 White cannot hope for anything; e.g. 7.e4 (or 7.e3 Bd7 8.Bxc4 e6 , S.Alapin-M.Chigorin, Monte Carlo 1901 ) 7...Bd7 8.Bxc4 e6 , C.Walbrodt-M.Chigorin, Vienna 1898. ]

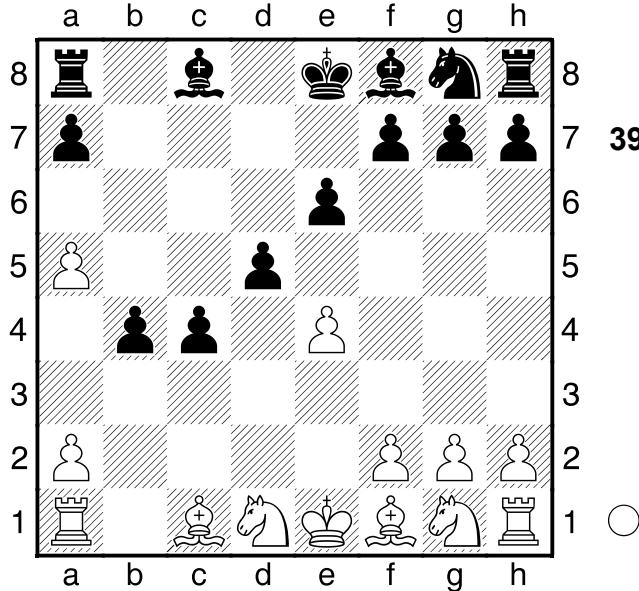
**6...b5** Taking the b4-pawn en passant only works if Black has already moved his e-pawn, freeing the f8-bishop.

[Here 6...cxb3?! 7.axb3 e6 is too slow because of 8.Bd2! (not 8.Qxa5?? Qxa5 9.Rxa5 Bb4) 8...Nxb3 (or 8...b6 9.b4) 9.Qxb3 exd5 (yes, Black has several pawns for the piece; unfortunately, the endgame is a long way off) 10.e4! dxe4 (or 10...d4 11.Bc4! , R.Vera-E. Formanek, Andorra 1996, since dxc3? 12.Bxf7+ is crushing ) 11.Bc4 Qe7 12.Nge2 b5 13.Bxb5 cxb5 , J.Wheeler-E.Formanek, Chicago 1997, when 14.Nxb5 Rb8 15.Qc4 looks terrible for Black. ]

#### **7.Qxa5 Qxa5 8.bxa5 b4 9.Nd1**

[White's knight can also go to the edge: 9.Na4 cxd5 10.e4! (immediately attacking the black pawn chain) ( 10.Nf3 Nf6 11.a3 b3

(Diagram 39)



The only reasonable move. **11.Be3**

After the pawn exchange on d5, the d4-square is White's natural blockading post.

[E.Bareev-L.Klima, European Cup, Ohrid 2009, took a similar path:  
**11.Nf3 Nf6 12.exd5 exd5 13.Be3 Bd6 14.Bd4 Bc7?!** (a wasted move as Black doesn't have time to capture the a5-pawn) (**14...Be6** at once is better) **15.Ne3 Be6 16.Bxf6 gxf6 17.0-0-0 0-0-0 18.Nd4 Kb7** (**18...Bxa5?** **19.Nc6** forks the two pieces) **19.a6+??** (missing a simple winning plan in **19.g3 Bxa5 20.f4 Bb6 21.Bg2**, when either the c5- or d5-pawn will fall; the text looks like a case of 2600+ grandmaster sees a check, gives a check) **19...Kb6!** (perhaps this was what White overlooked; the black king takes up a commanding position on c5) **20.g3** (far less strong than a move earlier) **Be5 21.Nxe6** (after **21.f4? Bxd4 22.Rxd4 Kc5 23.Rd1 Rhe8 24.f5 Bc8** the d5-pawn is defended) **21...fxe6 22.Bh3 f5 23.Rhe1 Bc3 24.Re2 Kc5** (Black only has two pawns for the piece, but look at those

pawns!) **25.Ng2 Rd6 26.Kb1 Rb8 27.Nf4 e5 28.Nxd5** and the game was agreed drawn, which is a pity since Black now stands much better. Perhaps he took a draw out of respect for his much higher rated opponent, a so-called "grandmaster draw". ]

**11...Bd6 12.exd5 exd5 13.Bd4?!**

[White does better to play **13.Ne2**, followed by g2-g3 and Bg2, and then he can consider putting something on d4.]

**13...f6?!** Limiting the scope of White's dark-squared bishop is logical but not the best.

[Instead, the engines suggest the shocking move **13...Ne7!**, offering up the g7-pawn to break the dark square blockade after **14.Bxg7 Rg8 15.Bf6** (or **15.Bd4 Nc6**; or **15.Bb2 c3**)

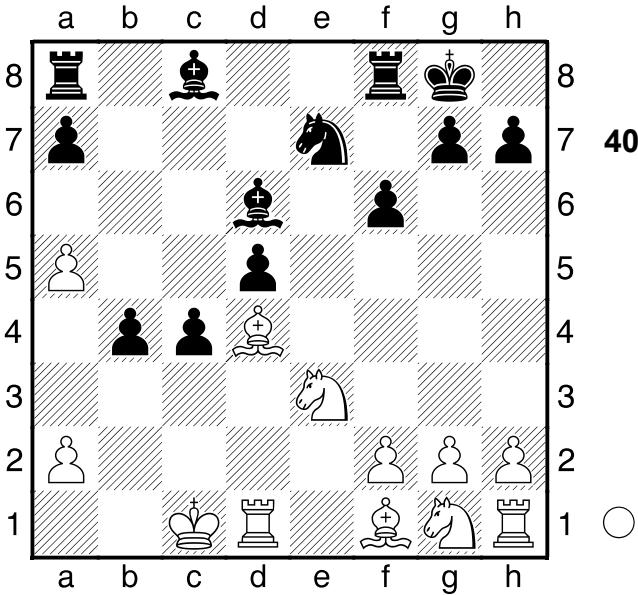
**15...Rg6**. If White refuses the pawn Black can just castle, develop the c8-bishop, and think about moves like ... Rfb8-b5.]

**14.Ne3 Ne7 15.0-0-0!?** An enterprising move. White sends his king across to help deal with the black pawn mass. The risk is that if White loses control of the position, his king will then be in the firing line.

[**15.g3**, followed by Bg2, Ne2 and 0-0 was safer.]

**15...0-0**

(Diagram 40)



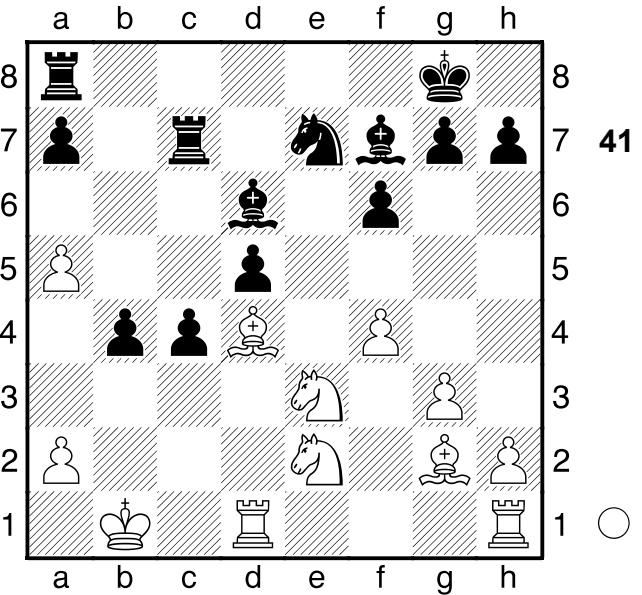
after all.

**19...Rc8 20.f4?** This throws away his initiative.

[White may have been worried about lines like 20.Rc1? (trying again to exploit the pin on the long diagonal) Rab8! 21.Bxa7 Rb5 22.Bb6 Bg6+!, when his king is suddenly in trouble, and so tries to shut the enemy light-squared bishop out with f2-f4-f5 first. But this plan is too slow.]

[He should have played 20.Nf4, attacking the d5-pawn, and if Bxf4 21.gxf4 Rc7 then 22.a3! Rb8 23.axb4 Rxb4+ 24.Kc1 neutralizes Black's pawns.]

**20...Rc7**



**21.f5 Rb8** Now that Black has consolidated the queenside, he is free to conduct active piece play behind the pawn mass, starting with the desired rook lift.

**22.g4 Rb5 23.a6 Ra5 24.h4 Rc6!** Doubling rooks without a fully open file!  
**25.g5 fxg5**

(Diagram 42)

**16.g3** Very sensible. The bishop on g2 will put additional pressure on d5.

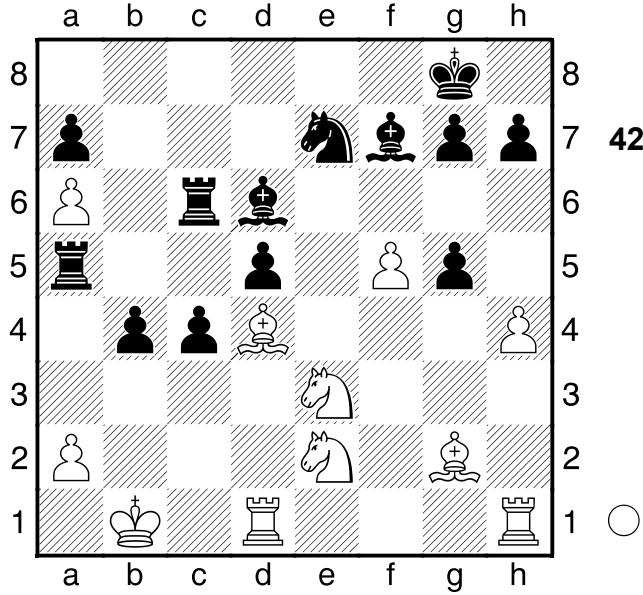
**16...Be6 17.Bg2 Rfb8?!** QUESTION: What's the idea of this strange-looking rook move?

ANSWER: It's actually a standard manoeuvre in these positions. Black wants to play ...Rb5, defending the d5-pawn and picking up the white a5-pawn, while leaving the queen's rook at home to defend the a7-pawn. Unfortunately, there are tactical reasons why he can't easily play ...Rb5 here, so 17...Rc8, followed by ...Rc7 and ...Rab8 would have been better.

**18.Ne2 Bf7**

[Seeing that 18...Rb5? runs into 19.Bxf6! gxf6 20.Nd4, forking rook and bishop, and Rxa5 21.Nxe6 Rxa2 22.Nxd5 Nxd5 23.Rxd5 Rxf2 24.Bf1 Be5 25.Bxc4 Rc8 26.Rc5 isn't sufficient for Black. This line suggests that Black should perhaps have played 15...Kf7.]

**19.Kb1** So that ...Rb5 can be met by Nxc4, exploiting the pin on the long diagonal, without running into a counterpin on the c-file. So Black reluctantly moves his rook to the c-file

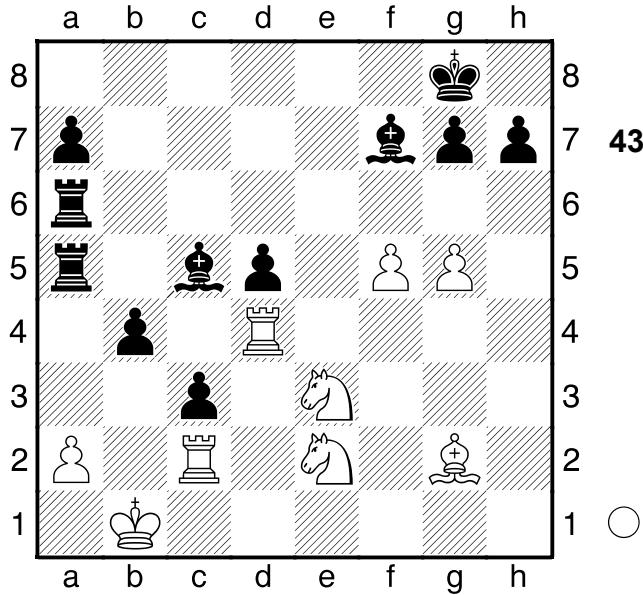


**26.hxg5 Rcx a6 27.Rd2 c3 28.Rc2**

**Nc6 29.Rd1 Nxd4 30.Rxd4**

[Letting the g5-pawn go to bring a knight to b3 with 30.Nxd4! Bf4 31.Ng4 Bxg5 32.Nb3 was safer, though he would have to foresee d4 33.Nxa5 Rxa5 34.Rxd4 Bxa2+! 35.Rxa2 b3 and now 36.Rd8+! Bxd8 (or 36...Kf7 37.Bd5+) 37.Rxa5 Bxa5 38.Bd5+ and White survives.]

**30...Bc5**



**31.Rxd5**

[Not 31.Rd3? d4 , when Black

successfully protects his c-pawn and ... b4-b3 will be decisive.]

**31...Bxd5 32.Nxd5 b3! 33.Rxc3**

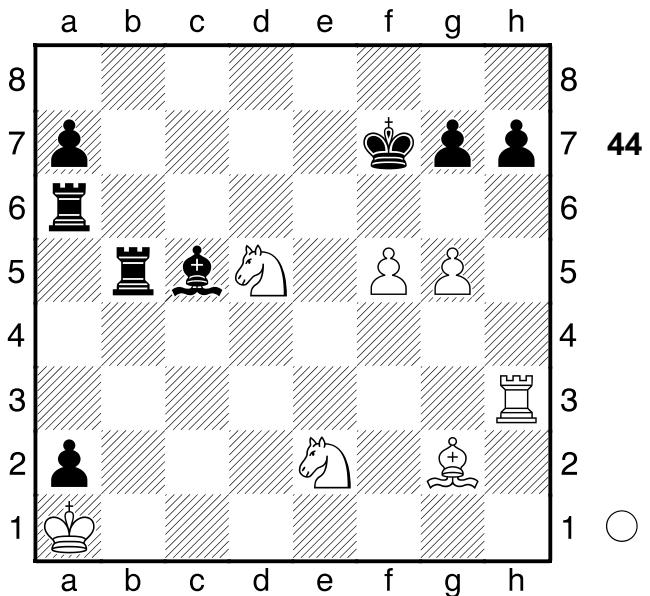
**bxa2+ 34.Ka1 Kf7!** This quiet king move has a deadly point behind it.

[The obvious breakthrough for Black is with ...Rb5, but if he plays this at once, White has another hidden resource: 34...Rb5 35.Be4 Ba3 36.Rc8+! Kf7 37.Rc7+ Ke8 (White will keep checking until Black puts his king on this square) 38.Rc2 Bb2+ 39.Rxb2 Rxb2 40.Nc7+ Kf7 41.Nxa6 Rxe2 42.Nc5 and Black doesn't have enough to win. So he moves his king first.]

**35.Rh3?** White fails to see the threat.

[He had to play 35.Be4 , after which the position remains unclear. A possible line runs Bd6 36.g6+ hxg6 37.fxg6+ Ke6 (not 37...Ke8?? 38.Rc8+ Kd7 39.Bf5# with an unexpected mate ) 38.Nc7+ Bxc7 39.Rxc7 Rd6 40.Nc3 (the bishop and knight work well together to keep the black rooks out) Rd7 41.Bd5+ Kd6 42.Rxd7+ Kxd7 43.Bf7 with a draw.]

**35...Rb5**

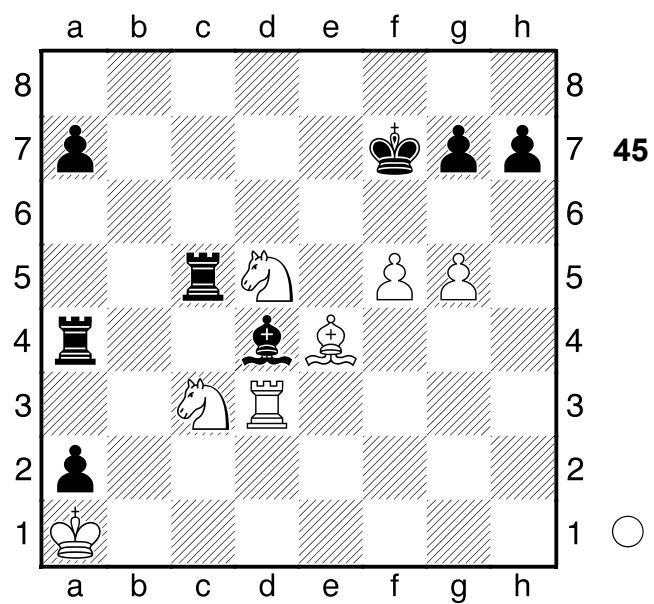


### 36.Nec3?

[Now 36.Be4? Ba3 and ...Bb2+ wins easily.]

[The last chance was 36.g6+! hxg6  
37.fxg6+ Kg8 (taking the pawn allows  
38 Be4 with tempo) 38.Nec3 , though  
Ba3 39.Nxa2 Re6! 40.Rh1 Bd6  
41.Ndc3 Be5 42.Bf1 Rc5 43.Kb2  
Rxg6 leaves Black with all the  
chances.]

**36...Bd4 37.Be4? Rc5 38.Rd3 Ra4**



. Black wins material after Ra4-c4.

**0-1**

Teh,A  
 Liew,J  
22: Kuala Lumpur  
[Jimmy Liew]

D07

2013

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nc3 dxc4 4.d5 Ne5** This time the knight goes to the centre of the board where it is safer than on the edge, although White can still target it in several ways. **5.f4** Pushing the f-pawn is White's most forceful course.

[Instead:

a) 5.Bf4 Ng6 6.Bg3 allows Black to strike back with e5!. Then 7.e4 (but 7.dxe6 Bxe6 8.Qxd8+ Rxd8 9.Bxc7 Rd7 10.Bg3 Nf6 , J.Aguiar Garcia-V. Gomez Polo, Malaga 1981, is fine for Black too, who has the superior development ) 7...Bd6 8.Bxc4 a6 9.Nf3 Nf6 10.0-0 0-0 11.Bb3 is a harmless Queen's Gambit Accepted position, where White has wasted time misplacing his dark-squared bishop. ]

[b) 5.Nf3 seeks to accelerate his development after Nxf3+ 6.exf3 , but e5 seems solid enough; e.g. 7.Bxc4 Bd6 8.0-0 (or 8.Bb5+ Bd7 9.Qb3 b6 10.Ne4 Ne7 11.Bg5 Bxb5 12.Bxe7 Bxe7 13.Qxb5+ Qd7

14.Qxd7+ Kxd7 and Black has an edge in the endgame, A.Kremenietksy-M.Kobalia, Moscow 1996 ) 8...Ne7 9.f4 exf4 10.Qf3 0-0 11.Bxf4 Bxf4 12.Qxf4 Ng6 13.Qg3 a6 14.Rfe1 Bf5 15.Rad1 Qd6 and Black is holding, V.Babula-R.Biolek, Pardubice (rapid) 2009. ]

[c) 5.Qd4 Ng6 (IM Watson's idea of 5...f6!?, giving the knight the f7-square, is interesting too ) 6.Qxc4 ( 6.e4 e5 7.Qxc4 a6 8.Nf3 Bd6

is another reasonable QGA position for Black ) 6...a6 (not now 6...e5? as 7.dxe6 Bxe6 8.Qb5+ Bd7 9.Qxb7 wins a pawn ) 7.Qb3 makes it difficult for Black to develop so he needs to play accurately: Nf6!

**A)** 8.Nf3 b5! (Morozhevich), intending to attack the centre with ...e7-e6. For example:

**A1)** 9.e4 e6!;

**A2)** or 9.h4 e6 10.h5 Ne7 , as in H.Lehtinen-H.Hurme, Tampere 2011 ( 10...-- );

**A3)** while 9.g3 can be met by 9...h6! 10.Nd4 (or 10.Bg2 e5 and ...Bd6 again ) 10...c5 . In all cases, Black's position seems to hold up.;

**B)** or 8.g3 Rb8! 9.Bg2 e5 10.h4 h6! 11.h5 Ne7 , intending 12.Nf3 (or if 12.e4 , as in N.Napoli-D. Petrov, Panevezys 2015, then Neg8! , followed by ...Bd6 and ...Ne7 again, or 13.f4 Ng4 ) 12...Nexd5 . ]

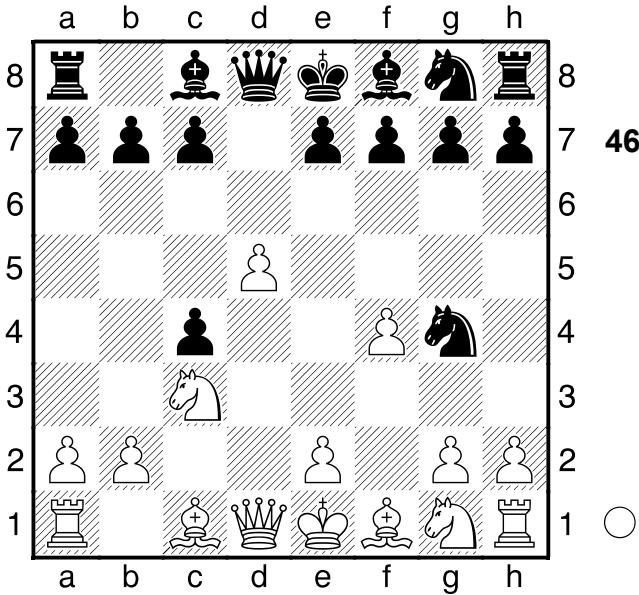
[d) 5.e4 e6 doesn't trouble Black, who can now answer 6.f4 (or otherwise defend the knight with ...Bd6, including 6.Qd4 Bd6 7.f4 Ng6 8.e5 Bb4 9.Bxc4 Bxc3+ 10.bxc3 N8e7 ) , with 6...Nd3+ 7.Bxd3 cxd3 8.Qxd3 c6 . ]

**5...Ng4**

[Another option, 5...Nd7 , is examined in the next game. ]

[Dropping the knight back to g6 seems too passive here. After 5...Ng6?! 6.e4 e6 (or 6...e5?! 7.f5! ) 7.dxe6 Qxd1+ 8.Kxd1 fxe6 9.Bxc4 Bd7 (or 9...Bd6 10.e5 ) 10.Nf3 0-0-0 11.Kc2 , White has a definite edge, I.Stohl-N.Fercec, Croatian League 2007. ]

(Diagram 46)



The most aggressive square for the knight. Black has hopes of targeting the kingside dark squares with ...e7-e5 and ...Bc5. **6.h3?!** White decides to drive the knight away at once, preventing any dark square shenanigans. The drawback is that Black is now set up to attack the light squares with ...e7-e6.

[A stronger alternative is to play 6.e4 e5

**A)** pushing on with 7.f5 takes the pressure off the centre, which should help Black; e.g. h5 8.Nf3 Bc5 9.h3 (or 9.Bxc4 Nf2 10.Qb3 Nf6 11.Qb5+ Nd7 12.Rf1 Ng4 and Black was fine in A.Pavlidis-V. Kotronias, Greek Championship, Athens 2014) 9...Ne3 ;

**B)** 7.Nf3 Bc5 and only then 8.h3 (instead, 8.Qa4+ can be met by c6!, since 9.dxc6?? runs into Bf2+ 10.Ke2 Qd3#; while 8.Bxc4 exf4 9.Bxf4 N8f6 10.b4?! Bb6 11.e5 0-0! only caused trouble for White in R.Cabrera Pando-P.Barrionuevo, Buenos Aires 2014 )

**B1)** Here Black must abandon the fork since 8...Nf2? 9.Qa4+ Bd7 10.Qxc4 Nxh1 11.Qxc5

is more or less winning for White, M.Narciso Dublan-R.Rabadan Velasco, Madrid 2012. ( 11.-- ); **B2)** But 8...Ne3 9.Bxe3 Bxe3 10.fxe5 Ne7 11.Bxc4 Ng6 may be okay; for example, 12.Qa4+ Bd7 13.Qa3 (preventing Black from castling short) Bf4 14.e6 Bg3+ 15.Kf1 fxe6 16.dxe6 Bc6 17.Rd1 Bd6 18.Qb3 Qe7 (Black can now castle long), and if 19.Nd5 Bxd5 20.Rxd5 0-0-0! 21.e5 Nxe5 22.Rxe5 Bxe5 23.Nxe5 , then Rhf8+ 24.Nf7 Qc5! 25.Be2 Rd2 26.Qc3 Qxc3 27.bxc3 Re8 28.h4 Rxe6 29.Bg4 Kb8! 30.Bxe6 Rd1+ 31.Ke2 Rxh1 and Black's rook is at least the equal of the two pieces, given White's scattered pawn formation.]

**6...N4f6 7.e4 e6!** Black attacks the centre at the first opportunity. **8.dxe6?!** After this move White actually stands worse.

[Instead:

a) 8.Nf3 exd5 9.e5 ( 9.exd5?! Bc5 10.Bxc4 Ne7 11.Na4 Bb4+ is given as ½-½ A.Hauschild-A. Pelagatti, Latschach 2008, in the database; obviously Black should play on here ) 9...c6! 10.exf6 Nxf6 is reminiscent of the 4...Na5!? line: Black has three queenside pawns for the piece, and this time they're not so easily controlled. After 11.Be3?! Bd6 12.Qd2 0-0 13.0-0-0?! ( 13.Be2 Re8 14.0-0 was better, though Morozevich won a game against this too ) 13...b5 14.Ne5 b4 15.Ne2 Qa5 16.Kb1 (or if 16.Nxc4 dxc4 17.Qxd6 then Nd5!) 16...Bxe5 17.fxe5 Ne4 18.Qe1 c3 , Black soon won in M.Dlugy-A. Morozevich, ICC 1999. ]

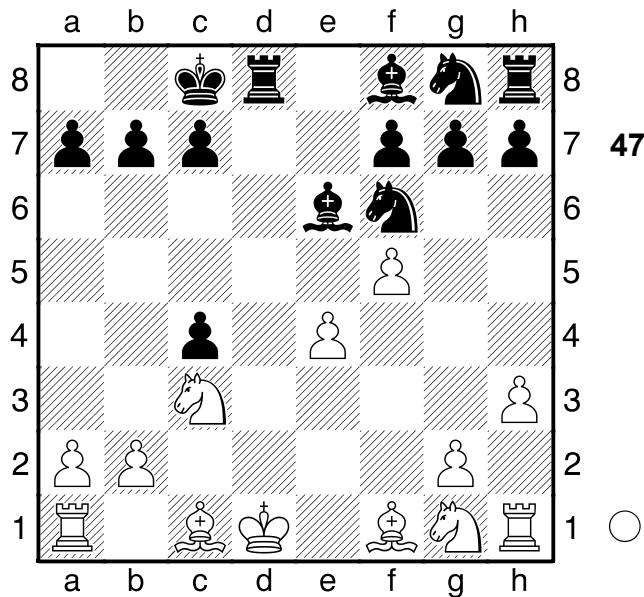
[b) 8.Bxc4 (relatively best) exd5  
9.Bxd5 (and again; both 9.exd5?!  
Bc5; and 9.Nxd5?! Nxe4! 10.Qe2 Bf5  
11.Nf3 Ne7 are good for Black )  
9...Nxd5 10.Qxd5 Qxd5 11.Nxd5  
Bd6 12.Be3 ( 12.e5?! is well met by  
Be6 ) 12...Be6 13.Nc3! and White  
should be okay, B.Fjellengen-P.  
Dalberg, Copenhagen 2007. ]

### **8...Qxd1+ 9.Kxd1 Bxe6 10.f5**

This is the natural follow-up, driving the e6-bishop back so that White can capture on c4. The fact that it works out badly for White is why his position is no good. It's also hard to suggest anything else.

[For instance, after 10.Nf3 0-0-0+  
11.Kc2 Nxe4! 12.Nxe4 Bf5 13.Nfg5  
Nf6 14.g4 (not 14.Nxf7?? Bxe4+  
15.Kc3 Rd1 16.Nxh8 b5!  
, threatening ...Nd5 mate ) 14...Bxe4+  
15.Nxe4 Nxe4 16.Bxc4 h5 17.g5  
Nd6 , Black comes out a pawn up;  
[ and trying to control the f5-square  
with 10.g4 is easily met by 0-0-0+  
11.Kc2 h5!. ]

### **10...0-0-0+**



### **11.Bd2**

[ Moving the king either way exposes it

to tactics: 11.Kc2 Bd7 12.Bxc4  
Nxe4! 13.Nxe4 Bxf5 14.Bd3 Rxd3  
15.Kxd3 Nf6 , G.Fish-N.Nüsken,  
German League 2009, when Black  
has destroyed the white centre,  
gained the two bishops, picked up two  
pawns for the exchange, and has  
good chances of more by hunting the  
white king. ]

[ 11.Ke1? Bd7 12.Bxc4 Nxe4!  
13.Nxe4 Re8 is even worse. ]

### **11...Bd7 12.e5**

[ 12.Bxc4 runs into b5! 13.Bd3 (or  
13.Bxf7 b4 14.Nd5? Nxe4 15.Kc1  
Nxd2 16.Kxd2 Nh6 , winning a  
piece ) 13...Bc6 14.Kc2 b4  
and Black gets the pawn back again. ]

### **12...Nd5**

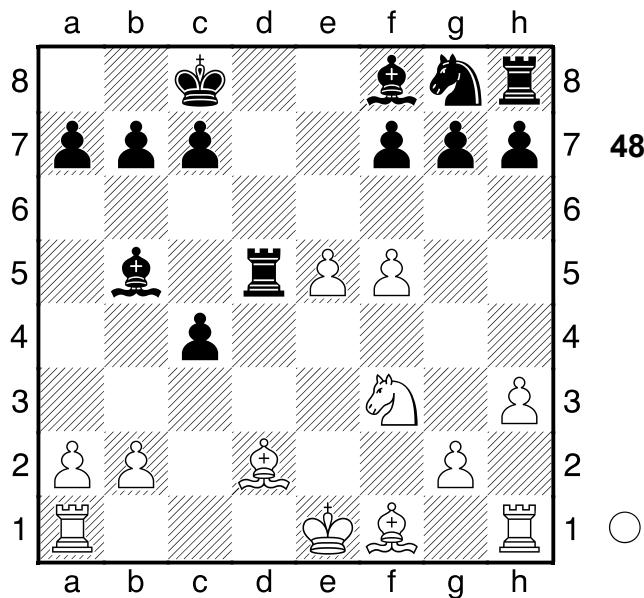
[ Possibly stronger was 12...Nh5  
13.Nge2 Bc6 14.Rh2 and now:  
EXERCISE: White has powerful-  
looking pawns on e5 and f5. If he can  
unpin his king with Kc2 and push g2-  
g4, he will have a big advantage. How  
should Black deal with this threat?

ANSWER: g6! has the dual purpose  
of challenging the white pawn chain  
and letting the f8-bishop out to h6,  
where it increases the pressure on  
the pinned bishop at d2. For example,  
15.g4 (or 15.Kc2 gxf5 16.g4 Ng7)  
15...Bh6 16.Nc1 Bf4 17.Rf2 Bg3  
18.Re2 there is nothing better; (after  
18.gxh5 Bxf2 19.Bxc4 Ne7  
White is the exchange down and his  
once proud centre is collapsing )  
18...Nf4 19.Re3 Bf2 (the rook is  
finally trapped) 20.Kc2 Bxe3 21.Bxe3  
Nd5 22.Nxd5 Bxd5 23.f6 (the only  
try, shutting out the g8-knight, but it  
has a tactical refutation) Re8 24.Bf4  
(or 24.Bd4 c5 25.Bc3 b5 26.a3 a5  
etc ) 24...Nxf6 25.exf6 Re1 26.Be2  
Re8 (the pin on the back rank is  
deadly as there is no way for White to

unpin) 27.Bd1 Rf1 28.Bg3 Be4+ 29.Kd2 Rd8+ and Black wins a piece. ]

### **13.Nxd5 Ba4+ 14.Ke1 Rxd5 15.Nf3 Bb5?**

[I should have played 15...b5! 16.b3 cxb3 17.axb3 Bxb3 , intending 18.Rxa7 Ne7 19.g4 Nc6 20.Ra8+ ( 20.Ra1 Nxe5 ) 20...Kb7 21.Re8 Nb4 22.Be2 Nc2+ 23.Kf1 b4 , when the passed pawn is unstoppable. ]



This leads to the bishop being sidelined, doing nothing other than defend the c4-pawn. **16.a4 Ba6 17.Bc3**

[If 17.Rc1 then f6 destroys the white centre. ]

### **17...Ne7?!**

[Clearly Black should prevent g2-g4 with 17...h5 first. After 18.Be2 Ne7 19.Ng5! Nxg5 20.Nxf7 Rg8 21.Bxh5 Ng3 22.Bg4+ (or 22.Bf3 Rd3 ) 22...Kb8 23.Rh2 Be7 , the position is very complex but Black's pieces have better co-ordination, and a timely ...b7-b6 will bring the a6-bishop back into the game. ]

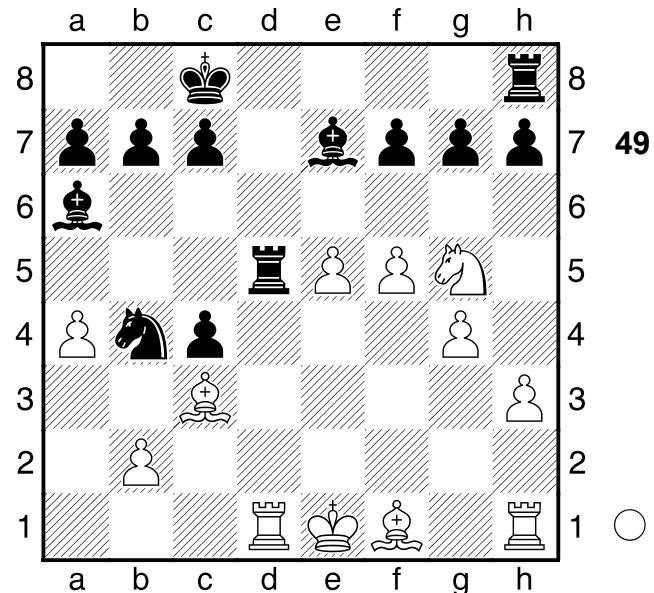
**18.g4 Nc6 19.Rd1 Nb4?** Mistimed,

and allowing White to seize the initiative.

[Seeing as I was running low on the clock, I should have probably played 19...Rxd1+ 20.Kxd1 Bb4 , intending 21.Bxb4 Nxb4 22.Ng5 Rd8+ 23.Kc1 Na2+ 24.Kb1 Nb4 25.Kc1 (the only way to keep the black rook out) Na2+ with a draw. ]

### **20.Ng5 Be7?!**

[Even so, after 20...f6 21.exf6 gxf6 22.Bg2 (not 22.Bxf6?? Nc2+ 23.Kf2 Bc5+ 24.Kg3 Rxd1 25.Bxh8 Bd6+ 26.Kf2 Rd2+ 27.Kf3 b5! and Black has the advantage again ) 22...Rxd1+ 23.Kxd1 Be7 24.Ne6 , White is now the one with the more co-ordinated forces. ]

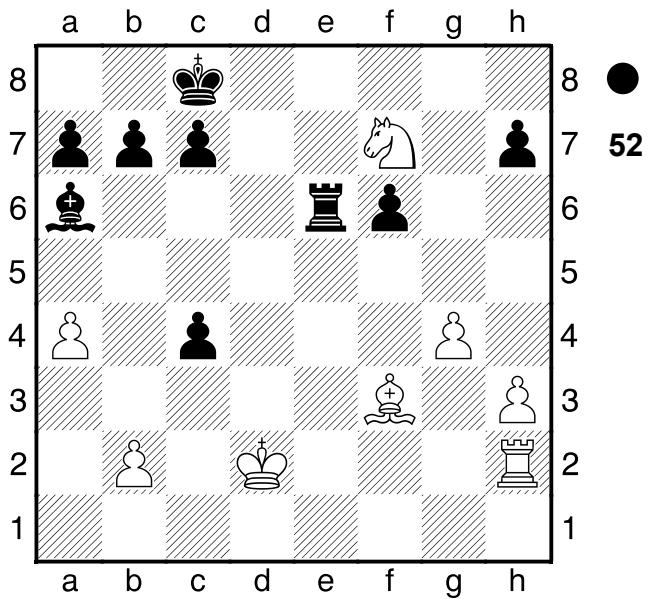
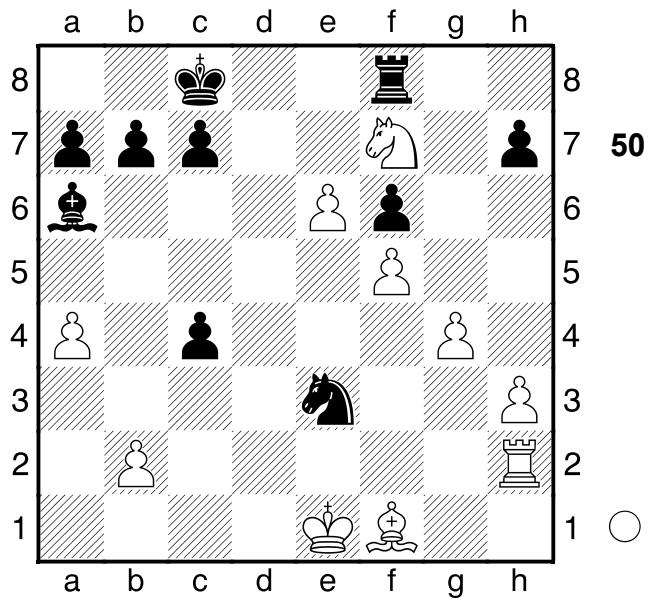


There was no need to give up the f7-pawn. **21.Rxd5 Nxd5 22.Nxf7 Rf8 23.e6 Bf6?** A final mistake.

[ 23...Nxc3 24.bxc3 g6 is still far from lost for Black. ]

**24.Bxf6 gxf6 25.Rh2** White is now winning. He will drive the d5-knight away and follow with g4-g5, creating connected passed pawns. Black has no defence. **25...Ne3**

(Diagram 50)

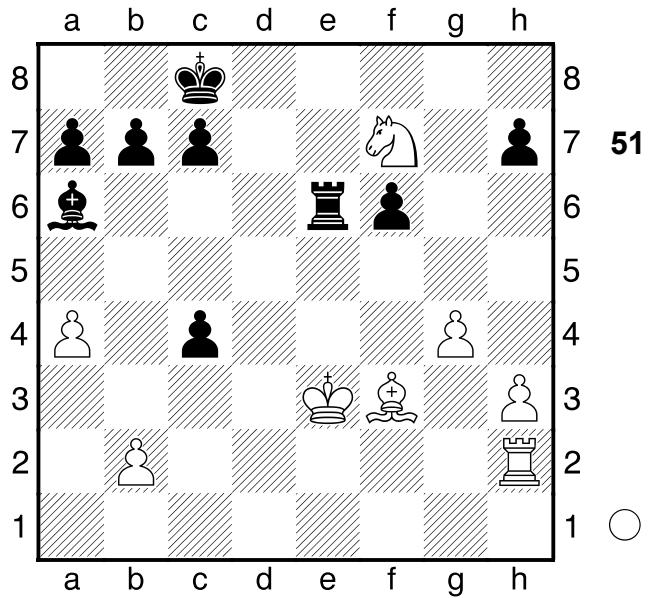


**26.Be2 Re8 27.Kd2 Nd5 28.Bf3 Nf4**

**29.Ke3 Nxe6**

[Or 29...Nd3 30.g5 etc.]

**30.fxe6 Rxe6+**



**1-0**

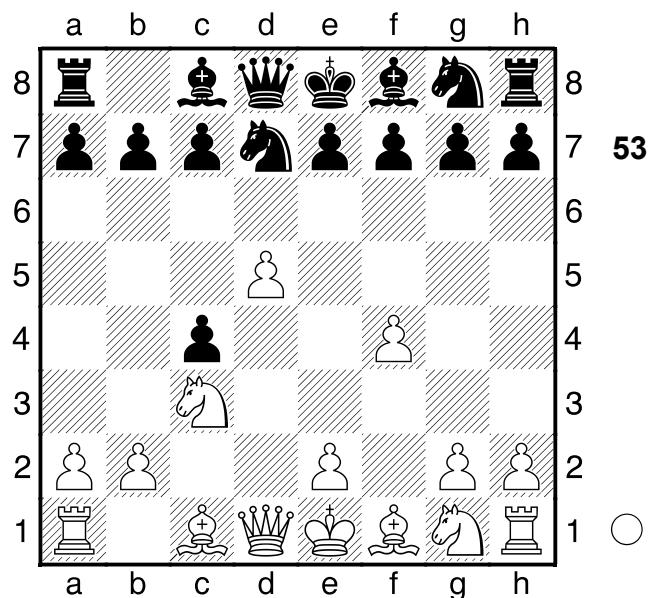
**31.Kd2**

(Diagram 52)

**Ivanchuk,V**  
 **Morozevich,A**  
 23: New York (rapid)  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6** In this tournament Morozevich played the Chigorin exclusively against 1 d4, and even offered it against Kasparov, answering 1 Nf3 with 1...Nc6.

**3.Nc3 dxc4 4.d5 Ne5 5.f4 Nd7**



This time the black knight stays on the queenside, heading for b6 to defend the c4-pawn and add pressure to the d5-pawn. In order to win the pawn back, White will have to give up one of his bishops, though he remains with a strong centre.

**6.e4**

[If White opts to pin the knight with 6.Qa4, Black can target the queen instead: a6 7.e4 Rb8 8.Qxc4 b5 9.Qd4 e5 10.dxe6 (or 10.fxe5 Bc5) 10...fxe6 11.Be2 Ngf6 12.e5 Ng4 13.Qd1 Nh6 with good counterplay, A. Hislop-C.Lennox, correspondence 1997.]

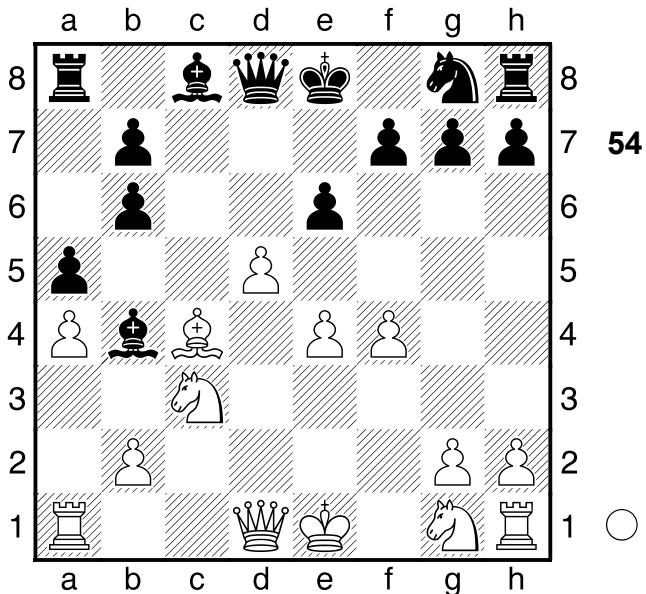
**D07**

1995

**6...Nb6 7.a4** Forcing Black to push his a-pawn so that Be3 and Bxb6 will weaken his queenside.

[White has not demonstrated any advantage giving up the other bishop with 7.Bxc4 Nxc4 8.Qa4+ Bd7 9.Qxc4, because his big centre is not as strong as it looks. After c6 10.dxc6 (or 10.Nf3 e6 11.dxe6 Bxe6 12.Qe2 b5, creating an outpost for the bishop on c4, as in R.Romon Poves-S.Garza Marco, Zaragoza 2001) 10...Bxc6 11.Be3 e6 12.Nf3 Nf6 13.0-0 Be7 14.Rfd1 (or 14.f5 exf5 15.Nd4 Bd7) 14...Qa5 15.Ne5 Rc8 16.a3 0-0 17.b4 Qc7 18.Rac1 Qb8 19.Qb3 Rfd8, Black was fine in H.C.Andersen-J.Riff, German League 2003.]

**7...a5 8.Be3 e6 9.Bxb6 cxb6 10.Bxc4 Bb4**



White has regained his pawn, kept the big centre, and damaged the enemy structure. On the other hand, Black has an unopposed dark-squared bishop and can look for play on that colour complex, particularly the a7-g1 diagonal.

**11.Nf3** Simple development, allowing Black to castle, should not give White anything.

[ Playing to win a pawn with 11.dxe6 Bxe6 12.Bxe6 fxe6 13.Qh5+ is not dangerous either, as Black has sufficient counterplay against e4 and c3, and g6 14.Qe5 (or 14.Qb5+ Qd7 15.Qxb6 Nf6) 14...Nf6 15.Qxe6+ Qe7 16.Qxe7+ Kxe7 17.e5 Ne4 18.Nge2 Rhc8 led to a draw in R.Douziech-E.Gibney, correspondence 2005. ]

[The critical continuation appears to be 11.Bb5+! (preventing Black from castling) Kf8 (not 11...Bd7? , since 12.dxe6 fxe6 13.Qh5+ is then strong) 12.dxe6 Bxe6 13.f5 ( 13.Qf3 Nf6 14.f5 Bd7 15.Nge2 Bxb5 16.axb5 Qe7 17.0-0 Re8 was okay for Black in E.Bacrot-Virtual Chess 2, rapid match, Cap d'Agde 1998, who even won as its human opponent went wrong) 13...Qxd1+ ( 13...Qh4+?! 14.Kf1 Rd8 15.Qc2 Bc8 16.Nf3 is good for White, J. Mansson-N.Fallowfield, British League 2015 ) 14.Rxd1 Bb3 15.Rd2 g6 16.Nge2 gxf5 17.Nd4 Be6 18.Nxe6+ (or 18.exf5 Bd5! 19.Nxd5 Bxd2+ 20.Kxd2 Rd8 21.Bc4 Ne7 22.Nxe7 Rxd4+ 23.Kc3 Rxc4+ 24.Kxc4 Kxe7) 18...fxe6 19.exf5 exf5 20.Rd7 Re8+ 21.Kd1 Bxc3 22.bxc3 Re7 and Black has just about enough play to hold the endgame, P.Ruiz Vidal-P. Roques, correspondence 2011. ]

### 11...Nf6 12.0-0

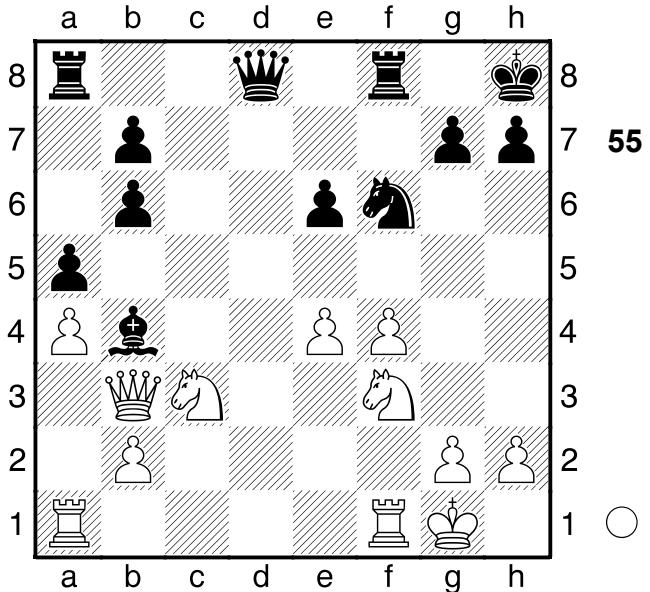
[Now 12.Bb5+ Bd7! is fine for Black.]

### 12...0-0 13.dxe6 Bxe6 14.Bxe6 fxe6!?

[In his book Morozevich gives this a "?" mark, saying that 14...Qxd1 15.Raxd1 (as is 15.Bxf7+ Rxf7 16.Raxd1 Bxc3 17.bxc3 Nxe4 18.Ng5 - Vaisser) 15...fxe6 would be equal. However, there's nothing wrong with the game move

either. ]

### 15.Qb3! Kh8



**16.Ng5 Ng4** As we've already mentioned, Black's counterplay is based on the dark squares, but this has to be conducted correctly.

[Not 16...Bc5+? 17.Kh1 Ng4 , as after 18.Qxe6! ( 18.h3! , intending Nxe6, is good too) 18...Nf2+ 19.Rxf2 Bxf2 , White can return the favour with 20.Nf7+ Rxf7 21.Qxf7 Qd2 22.Rb1 and hang on to the extra pawn. ]

### 17.Nxe6

[Not now 17.Qxe6? Qd4+ 18.Kh1 Nf2+ 19.Rxf2 Qxf2 20.Nf7+? Rxf7 21.Qxf7 , since Qxb2 forks rook and knight; ]

[while after 17.Rad1 Qe7 18.Qxe6 Qc5+ 19.Kh1 Nf2+ 20.Rxf2 Qxf2 21.Nf7+ Rxf7 22.Qxf7 Rf8 23.Qc4 Bxc3 24.Qxc3 Qxf4 , Black has sufficient play in the major piece ending despite the passed e-pawn. In this type of endgame White cannot both support and push his pawn without leaving his king open to dangerous checks. ]

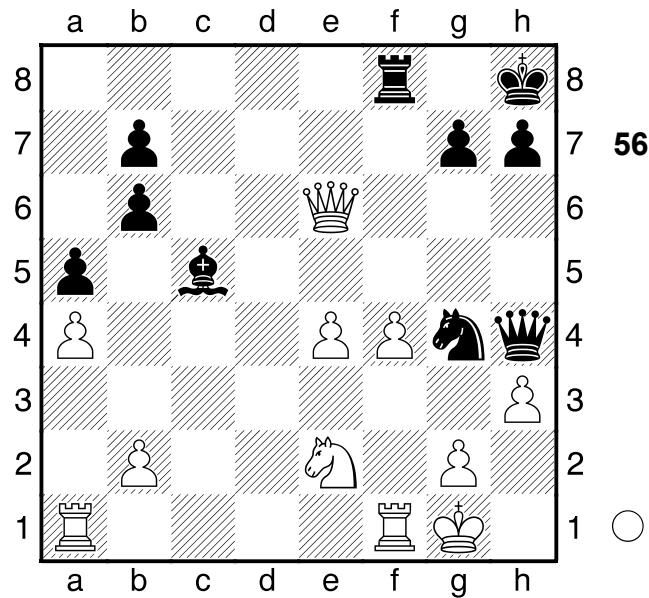
**17...Qh4??** This is the real mistake.

[Vaisser shows that Black could have drawn with 17...Bc5+ 18.Nxc5 (not 18.Kh1?? Qh4 19.h3 Qg3 and mate cannot be stopped, since 20.hxg4 Qh4# is also mate ) 18...Qd4+ 19.Kh1 bxc5 20.h3 (not 20.Qc2? Ne3) 20...Nf2+ 21.Kh2 Nxe4! (not 21...Rxf4?? 22.Ne2) 22.Nxe4 (and not 22.Rad1? Nd2 23.Qc2 Nxf1+) 22...Qxe4 , reaching a level endgame. ]

### **18.h3 Rae8 19.Ne2!**

[Intending to answer 19.hxg4?? with Rxe6 20.Qxe6? Bc5+ and mates. Unfortunately, White is not obliged to capture the knight immediately.]

### **19...Rxe6 20.Qxe6 Bc5+**

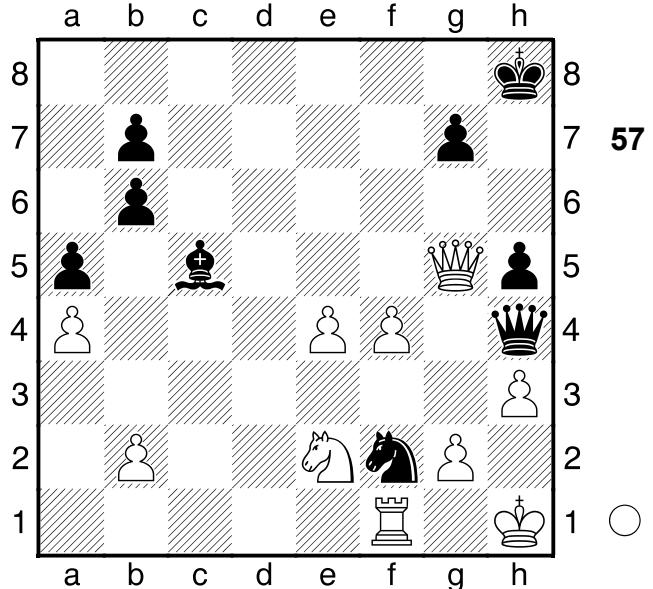


### **21.Kh1 h5 22.Rad1 Rd8**

[After 22...Nf2+ 23.Rxf2 Qxf2 24.Qc4 White is effectively two pawns up, including the passed e-pawn, while Black has no real threats anymore.]

### **23.Rxd8+ Qxd8 24.Qd5 Qh4 25.Qg5 Nf2+**

(Diagram 57)



### **26.Rxf2 Qxg5**

[Or 26...Qxf2 27.Qxh5+ Kg8 28.Kh2 .]

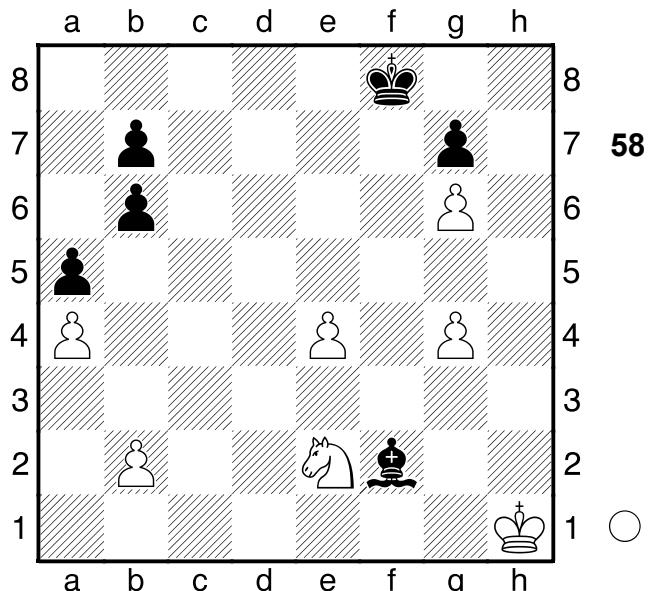
### **27.fxg5 Bxf2 28.g6!** Keeping the black king stuck on the back rank.

[White is winning with routine play as well; e.g. 28.g3 Kh7 29.Kg2 Be3 30.h4 Kg6 31.Kf3 Bd2 32.Nf4+ and more pawns fall.]

### **28...Kg8**

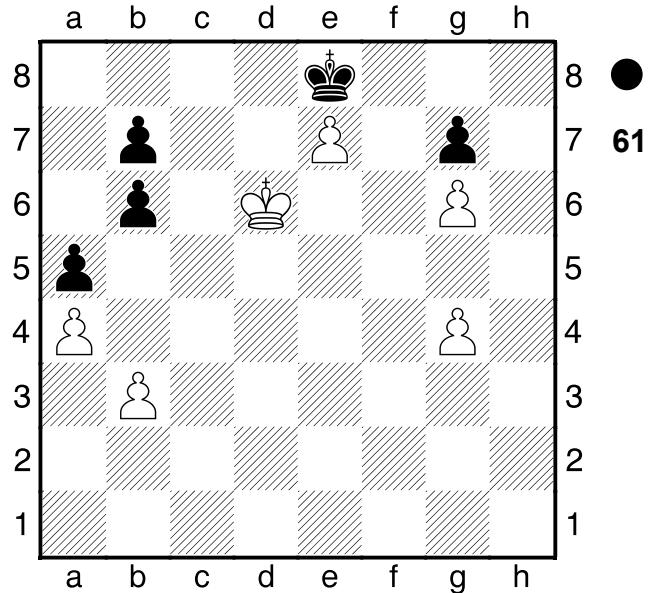
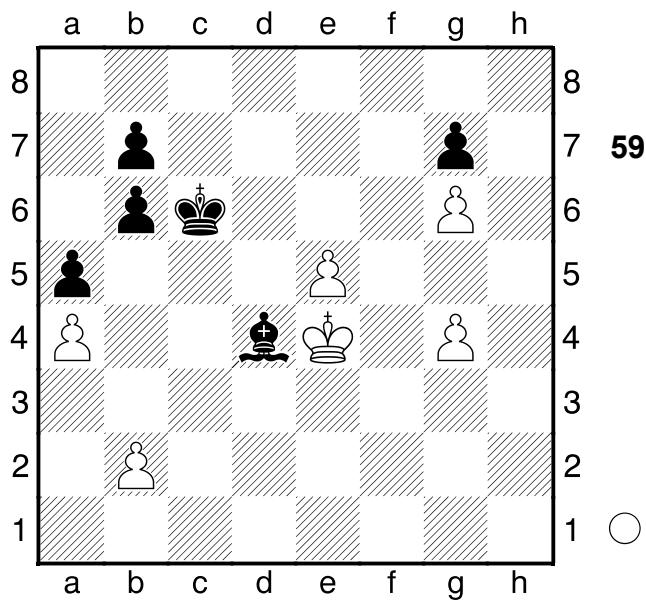
[Or 28...h4 29.g4 hxg3 30.Kg2 .]

### **29.g4 hxg4 30.hxg4 Kf8**



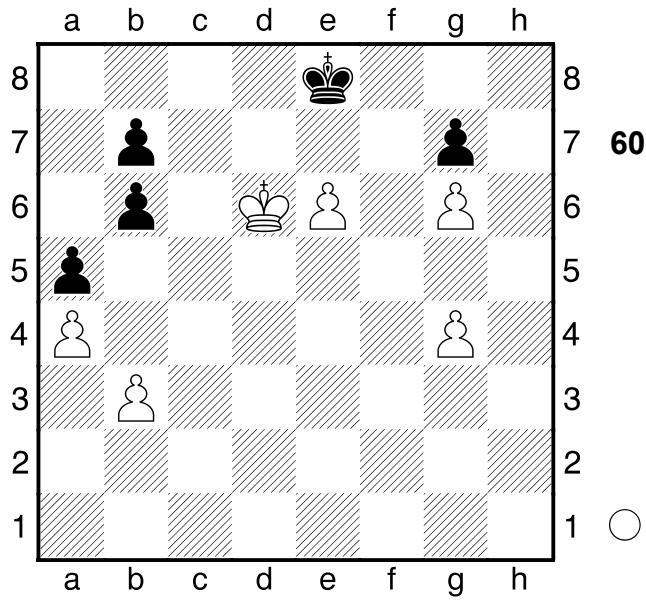
### **31.Kg2 Bc5 32.e5 Ke7 33.Kf3 Kd7**

**34.Ke4 Kc6 35.Nd4+ Bxd4**



**1-0**

**36.Kxd4 Kd7 37.Kd5 Ke7 38.e6 Ke8  
39.Kd6 Kd8 40.b3 Ke8**



**41.e7**

[White will just pass until Black is forced to give him a passed b-pawn; e.g. 41.e7 b5 42.Ke6 b4 43.Kd6 b6 44.Ke6 b5 45.axb5 a4 46.b6 etc.]

(Diagram 61)

Christiansen,LM  
 Morozevich,A  
 24: New York (rapid)  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

D07

1995

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nc3 dxc4 4.e3**

White reinforces his d-pawn and threatens simply to capture on c4 with the bishop and reach a favourable Queen's Gambit Accepted position.

**4...e5** Black reacts in the Chigorin style, attacking the centre immediately.

**5.d5**

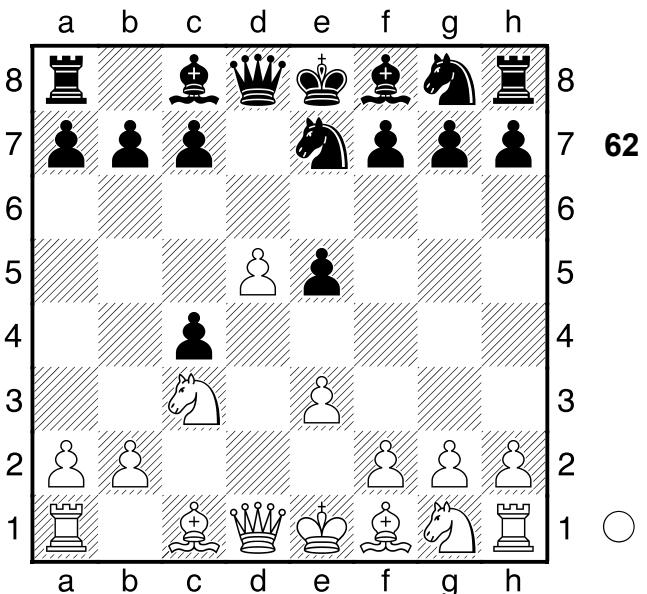
[White can continue in QGA fashion with 5.Nf3, but this time it's a fairly harmless variation (3 e3 e5), where Black's knight actually belongs on c6. For example, exd4 6.exd4 Bd6 7.Bxc4 Nf6 8.0-0 0-0 (this position can also arise via the French and Petroff Defences) 9.h3 (the usual move, preventing ...Bg4) (if 9.Bg5 then h6 10.Bh4 Bg4 is fine for Black) 9...h6 (snap) 10.Re1 (10.Qc2, preventing ...Bf5, can be met by Na5 11.Bd3 Be6) 10...Bf5 11.Be3 a6 12.a3 Qd7 13.d5 Ne5 14.Bf1 Rfe8 15.Bd4 Nxf3+ 16.Qxf3 Rxe1 17.Rxe1 Re8 and the players soon agreed a draw, J.Timman-A. Morozevich, Moscow Olympiad 1994.]

**5...Nce7**

[The critical line runs 5...Na5!? 6.Qa4+! (both 6.Bxc4 Nxc4 7.Qa4+ c6! 8.Qxc4 Ne7; and 6.Nf3 a6! 7.Nxe5 b5, A.I.Khasin-J.Boey, correspondence 1984, are fine for Black) 6...c6 7.b4 (if 7.Bd2 Bd7 8.b4, as in M.Feroul-J.Boey, correspondence 1984, then c5!? 9.Qxa5 cxb4 10.Qxd8+ Rxd8 comes into consideration) 7...cxb3

8.axb3 .

**A)** Now 8...Qb6? is refuted by 9.d6! Bxd6 10.Qxa5 Qxb3 (note that the usual trick 10...Qxa5 11.Rxa5 Bb4 doesn't work because the e5-pawn is en prise) 11.Rb1 Qc2 12.Nge2!, followed by Rb2, when Black's pawns are not worth the piece.;  
**B)** However, 8...b5! 9.Nxb5 (not 9.Bxb5?? cxb5 10.Qxb5+ Bd7 11.Qxa5 Qxa5 12.Rxa5 Bb4 and wins, J.Quan-A.Dake, US Open 1987) 9...Bd7 10.Nc3 (or 10.dxc6 Nxc6) 10...Rb8 may be okay for Black; e.g. 11.Ba3 (if 11.dxc6 Nxc6 12.Bb5 then Bb4; or 11.Qxa5 Qxa5 12.Rxa5 Bb4 again) 11...Ne7 12.Ne4 Nb7 13.d6 Nc8 14.Nf3 f6 15.Rd1 c5 16.Bb5 Nbx6 (or 16...Ncxd6 .)]



Black can also put the knight on the edge (as in Game 21). **6.Bxc4 Ng6**

[Developing the king's knight with 6...Nf6 is possible too:

**A)** when Black has options of 7.Bb5+ c6;  
**B)** and 7.Qb3 Nf5 (7...--);

**C)** as well as **7.Nge2** c6!? ;  
(apart from 7...Ng6 8.Bb5+ Bd7  
9.Qb3 Rb8 which transposes to the  
game. )]

[If Black is bothered about bishop  
checks on b5, he can play 6...a6  
first, since White has no way to exploit  
the ‘wasted’ tempo. One game  
continued 7.Nf3 ( 7.Qb3 is met by  
b5; and 7.a4 Ng6 sees Black already  
out of danger ) 7...Ng6 8.0-0 ( 8.e4  
Bd6 ) 8...f5!? 9.a4 Bd6 10.a5 Nh6  
11.b4?? e4! (presumably hoping for  
11...Bxb4?? 12.Qa4+, but Black just  
ignores it ) 12.Nd4 .

EXERCISE: Find a well-known  
attacking mechanism for Black.

ANSWER: Bxh2+! (the Greek gift  
sacrifice, which enables Black’s queen  
and knight to come forward with  
tempo) 13.Kxh2 Qh4+ 0-1 Pe.Simon-  
G.Bogdanovich, Liberec 2007. After  
14.Kg1 Ng4 White would have to give  
up his queen, since 15.Re1 Qxf2+  
16.Kh1 Qh4+ 17.Kg1 Qh2+ 18.Kf1  
Qh1+ 19.Ke2 Qxg2# is mate. ]

**7.Bb5+** The light-squared bishop is  
limited by the d5-pawn, so White is quite  
happy to swap it off.

[Instead, 7.Qb3!? Bd6 (otherwise d5-  
d6 follows) 8.Bb5+, forcing Kf8  
, is one way for White to try and make  
something of this variation ( 8...Bd7  
drops the b7-pawn ). Having to move  
the king is annoying for Black, but in  
a closed position he can always  
unravel with ...Nf6, ...h7-h6 and ...Kg8-  
h7, and White can’t play just as he  
likes. For instance, 9.e4 Nf6 10.Nge2  
, W.Gerstner-R.Baumhus, German  
League 1991, might have been met by  
a6 11.Bd3 Nh4!, with the idea  
12.0-0?? Bh3! 13.gxh3 Qc8  
and wins. ]

[ Note that the routine 7.e4 Nf6

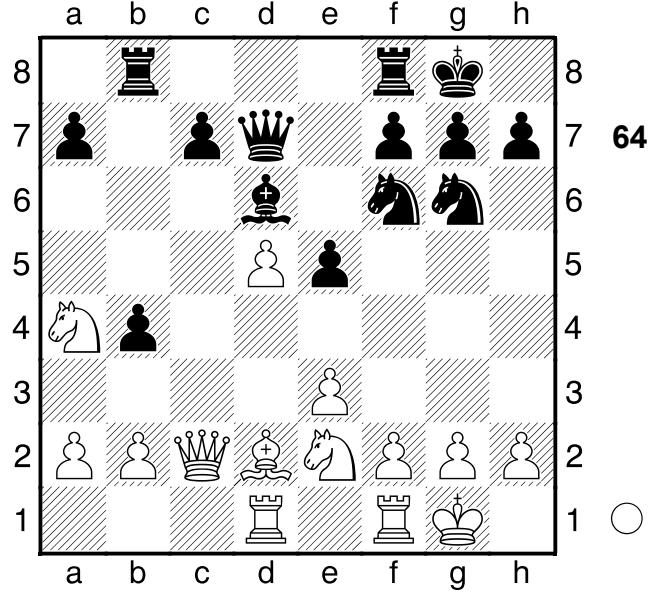
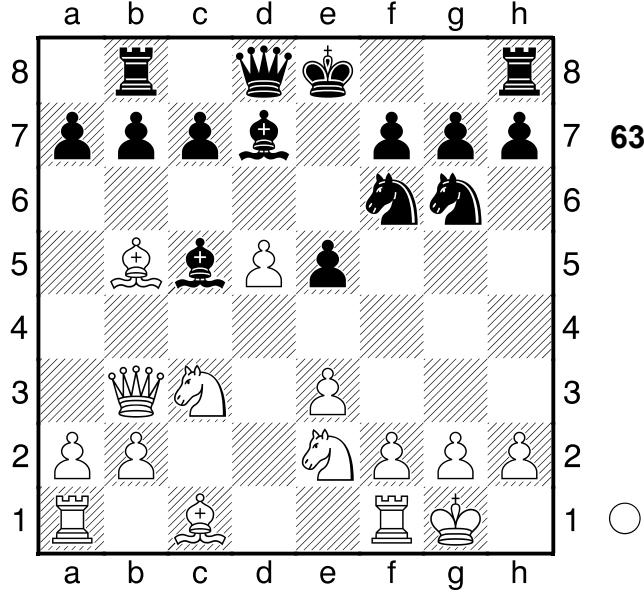
sees White playing a Queen’s  
Gambit Accepted (2...dxc4 3 e4 Nc6 4  
Be3 Nf6 5 Nc3 e5 6 d5 Ne7 7 Bxc4  
Ng6) a tempo down (i.e. with his  
c1-bishop still at home). ]

**7...Bd7 8.Qb3 Rb8** Otherwise the b7-  
pawn would be lost after Bxd7+. **9.Nge2**  
Holding the e-pawn back serves several  
purposes: on e3 it controls the f4-square  
(preventing a black knight from landing  
there), blocks the a7-g1 diagonal  
(against a black bishop on c5), and  
potentially leaves the e4-square for a  
white knight (after Ng3). On the  
downside, White’s dark-squared bishop  
is obstructed, and his d5-pawn may be  
cut off by Black playing ...e5-e4 himself,  
as later happens in the game.

[More often White has opted for 9.e4  
, albeit without proving any advantage.  
For example, a6 10.Bxd7+ Qxd7  
11.Be3 threatening Ba7; ( 11.Nf3 Bc5  
12.0-0 Nf6 13.Qc4 Bd6 14.Ne2 Nh5  
15.Ng3 Nxg3 16.fxg3 0-0 17.Be3  
Rbc8 , preparing ...c7-c6 at an  
appropriate moment, was level in A.  
Yusupov-R.Henley, Lone Pine 1981 )  
11...b5 12.Nf3 Bd6 13.Ne2 N8e7  
14.Ng3 0-0 15.0-0 h6 16.Rfe1  
, D.Wilke-E.Fischer, World Seniors  
Championship, Gladbach 1999, and  
now f5 17.exf5 Nxf5 is roughly  
equal. ]

**9...Nf6 10.0-0 Bc5**

(Diagram 63)



**11.Bxd7+ Qxd7 12.Bd2** The bishop has no good squares for the time being.

[Attempting to develop it outside the pawn chain with 12.e4 0-0 13.Bg5 allows Nh5 and Black has good play on the dark squares.]

**12...0-0 13.Rad1 b5!** Queenside expansion, while preparing to drive the c3-knight away with ...b5-b4, thus removing a defender of the d5-pawn.

**14.Qc2?!** After this move White ends up in a passive position.

[Bronznik suggests 14.Ng3 b4 15.Nce4 as an improvement, when the game is still roughly equal.]

**14...b4 15.Na4 Bd6**

(Diagram 64)

**16.Bc1** White's minor pieces look disorganized and misplaced and his d5-pawn is now becoming vulnerable.

[Note that 16.e4 is no longer possible due to Nxe4 17.Qxe4 Qxa4 .]

**16...e4!?**

[Black could have won a pawn here with either 16...Ne7 ]

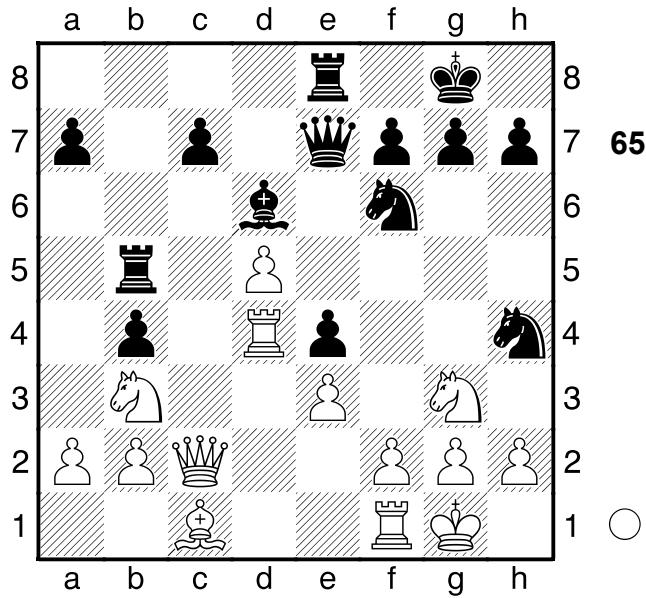
[or 16...Qb5 , followed by 17...Nfxd5 (since 17.e4 runs into Nxe4)! ]. However, in a rapid game gaining and maintaining the initiative is often more important than in a standard time control. Morozevich's move isolates the white d5-pawn, opens the diagonal for the d6-bishop, and frees the e5-square for a knight. In any case the d5-pawn isn't going anywhere, so Black may be able to pick it up later.]

**17.Ng3 Rfe8 18.Nc5 Qe7 19.Nb3 Nh4?!**

[This time he should have gone for the pawn: 19...Rb5 20.Qc4 Bxg3! 21.hxg3 (or 21.fxg3 a6; and not 21.Qxb5? Bxh2+! with a crushing attack ) 21...a6 (intending ...Qe5) 22.Nd4 Ne5 23.Qb3 Rxd5 24.Nc6 Nxc6 25.Rxd5 Nxd5 26.Qxd5 Qe6

with an extra pawn in the ending for Black.]

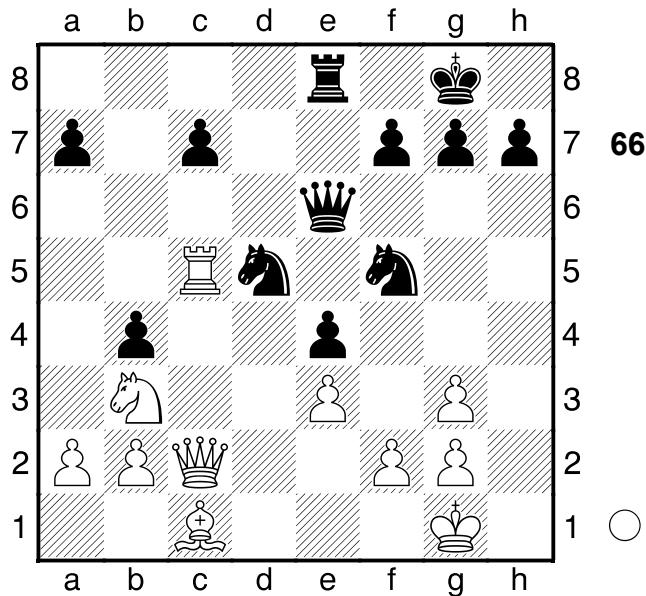
## 20.Rd4 Rb5



## 21.Rfd1 Bxg3 22.hxg3 Nf5 23.Rc4!

[Giving up the d5-pawn to activate his pieces ( 23.R4d2?! a5 would be very passive); White should get the pawn back anyway in view of Black's weak queenside.]

## 23...Rxd5 24.Rxd5 Nxd5 25.Rc5 Qe6



**26.Bd2?!** The bishop is no better placed here than on c1.

[ 26.Qc4 was stronger; e.g. Nfe7

27.Nd2 f5 28.g4 g6 29.gxf5 gxf5 30.b3 , aiming to bring the bishop to the long diagonal.]

EXERCISE: Black has an extra pawn and the initiative. How does he continue?

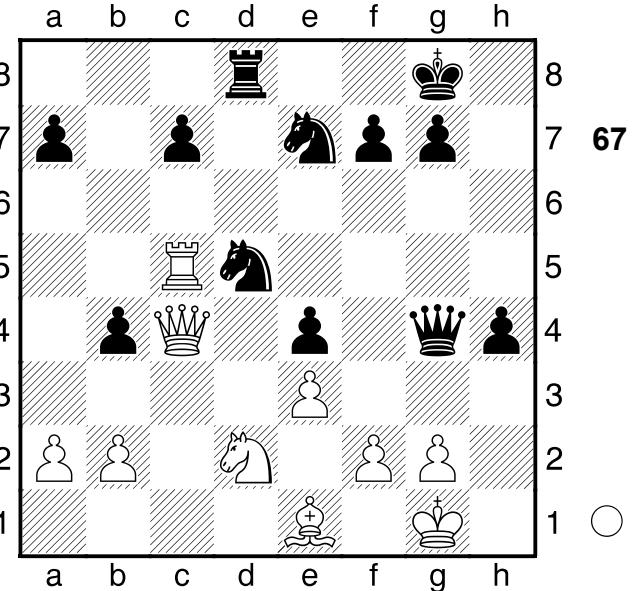
ANSWER: Against a f2/g2/g3 formation it is very common to push the h-pawn to open up lines on the kingside.

## 26...h5! 27.Qc4 Rd8 28.Be1

[White can't take the b-pawn, since 28.Bxb4?? Nxb4 29.Qxb4 Rd1+ 30.Kh2 Nh6! (threatening ...Ng4+) 31.Qb8+ Kh7 32.Rxh5 Qf6 and ...Qxf2 wins for Black.]

**28...h4 29.g4** The only move to keep things under control on the kingside.

## 29...Nfe7 30.Nd2 Qxf4



## 31.Qxe4 Qe2

[ 31...Qd1 32.Nf3 h3 is well met by 33.Qc2! . ]

**32.Nf3 h3** Offering a pawn to expose the white king. **33.gxh3?!** This is too obliging.

[ Or if 33.g3?? then Nf6! wins a piece.]

[ 33.Qc2 was again correct:

**A)** when 33...Qxc2 34.Rxc2 hxg2 35.Rc4 is okay for White; ( 35.-- );

**B)** or if 33...Qa6 then 34.g3 Qxa2

35.e4 Nc3! (the only dangerous try)

36.Kh2 Qa6 37.Kxh3 Qf1+

38.Kg4 and the king is surprisingly safer here than in the game. ]

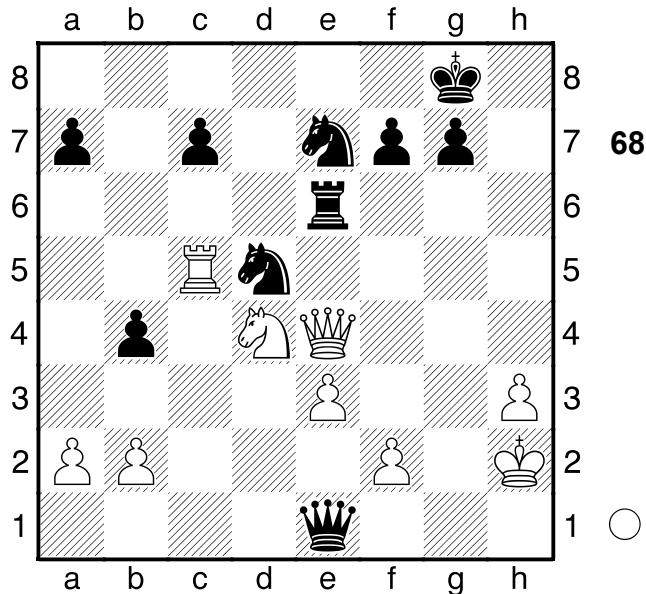
**33...Rd6! 34.Kh2?**

[Here 34.Rc2 Qa6 35.Kh2 was necessary, having driven the black queen to a less dominant square.]

**34...Re6??** Letting White off the book.

[Nearing the end of a rapid game, Morozhevich can perhaps be excused for missing 34...f5!, when White drops a piece.]

**35.Nd4 Qxe1**



**36.Nxe6 Qxf2+ 37.Qg2!**

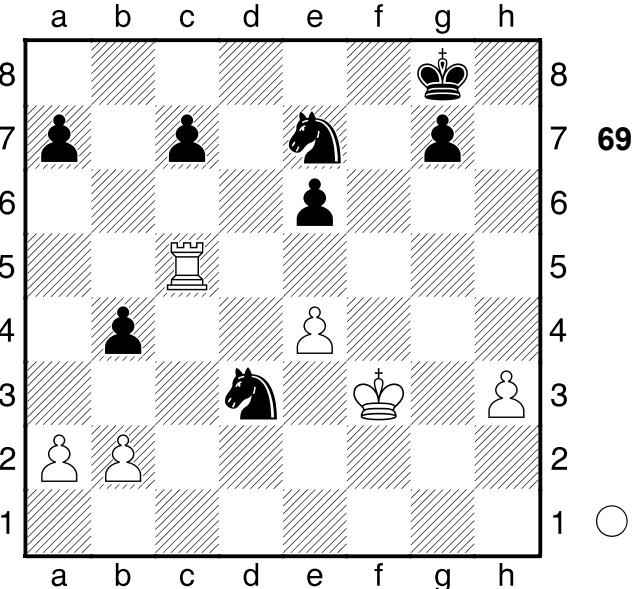
The counterthreat of Qxg7 mate enables Christiansen to swap queens and reach a defensible endgame.

[Not 37.Kh1?? Nf5 38.Qg2 Qe1+ 39.Kh2 Ndxe3, when the combined attacking force of two knights and queen is just too much for White.]

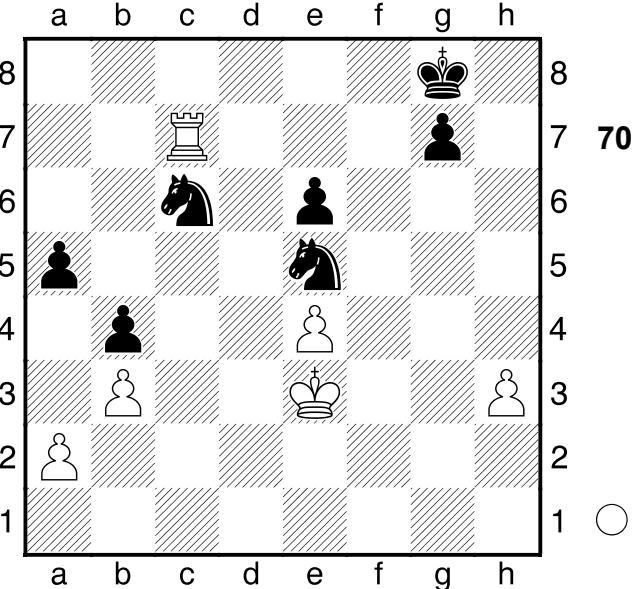
**37...Qxg2+ 38.Kxg2 fxe6** A material imbalance of rook vs. two knights and pawn would normally be very unfavourable for the rook. The difficulty for Black here is all his weak queenside pawns. White quickly wins one pawn

back and Black's need to defend the others soon leaves his knights immobile. In the end a draw is a reasonable result.

**39.e4 Nf4+ 40.Kf3 Nd3**

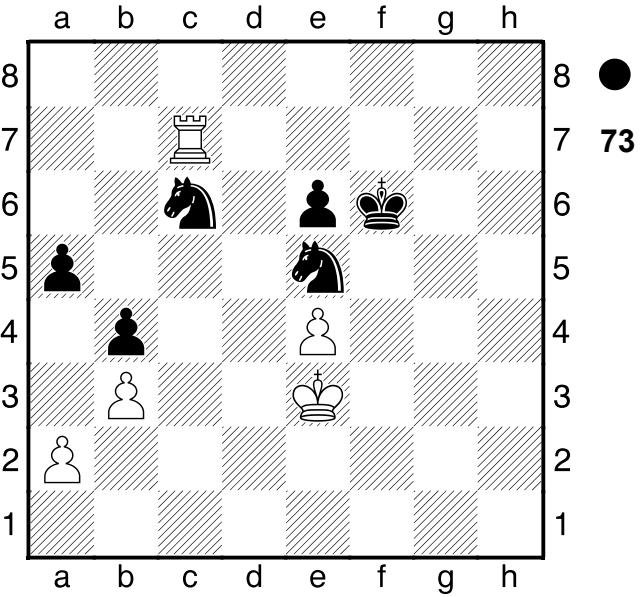
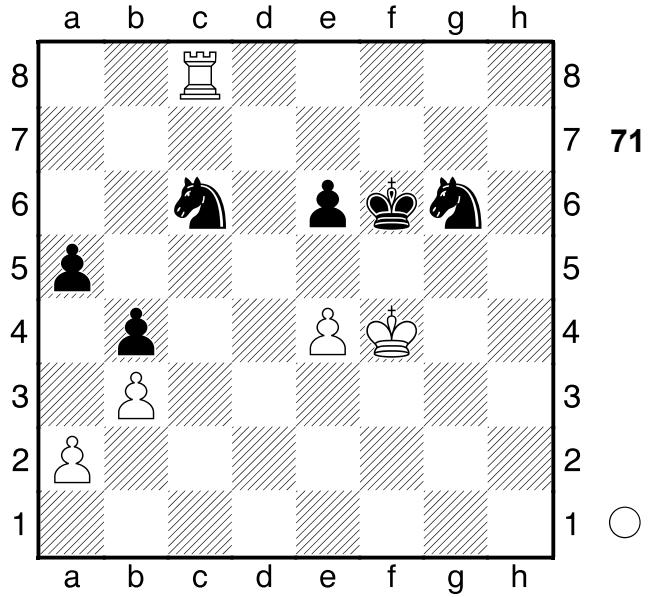


**41.Rxc7 Ng6? 42.b3 a5 43.Ra7? Nde5+ 44.Ke3 Nc6 45.Rc7 Nge5**



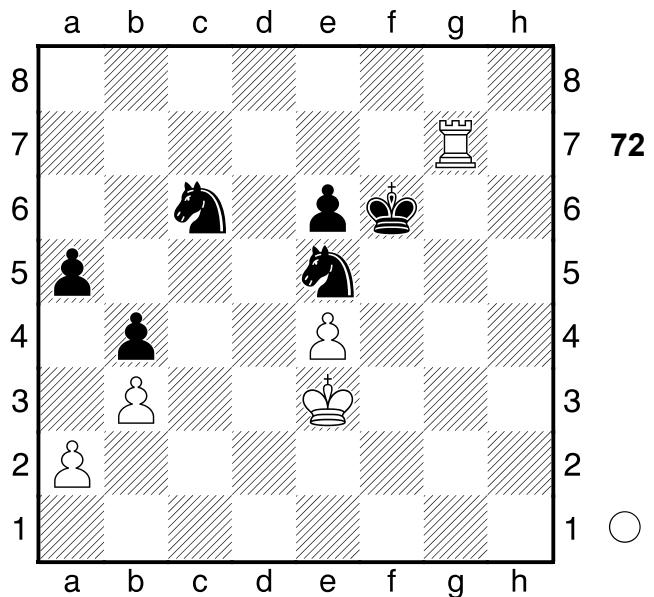
**46.Kf4 Kh7 47.Rc8 Kg6 48.h4 Kf6 49.h5 g5+ 50.hxg6 Nxg6+**

(Diagram 71)



**51.Ke3 Nge5 52.Rc7! Kg6 53.Kf4 Kf6  
54.Ke3 Kg5 55.Rg7+ Kf6**

½-½



**56.Rc7**

(Diagram 73)

Polak,T  
 Pakleza,Z  
25: Czech League  
[Jimmy Liew]

D07

2017

### 1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nc3 dxc4 4.Nf3

[This simple developing move avoids the tactical melee of 4.d5 (Games 21-23). The f3-knight defends the d4-pawn, prevents the ...e7-e5 break (as in Game 24), and threatens to push with 5 d5 again, now that the e5-square has been ruled out for the c6-knight.]

#### 4...Nf6 The only reasonable reply.

[4...Bg4? 5.d5 Bxf3 6.exf3 Ne5 7.Bf4 is very good for White, since Ng6 8.Bxc4! Nxf4? loses to 9.Bb5+ etc; ]

[while 4...a6 5.d5 Nb8 6.e4 b5 7.a4 b4 8.Na2 Nf6 9.Bxc4 Nxe4 (or 9...e6 10.Bg5) 10.0-0 looks very dodgy for Black, even if there's no obvious forced win.]

So we come at last to the tabiya of the 3 Nc3 variation, which also arises via 3... Nf6 4 Nf3 dxc4. Here White has four primary options: 5 d5, 5 e3, 5 Bg5, and 5 e4 (the main line). We will examine each of these in turn.

#### 5.d5 This is both consistent and a critical test of Black's opening.

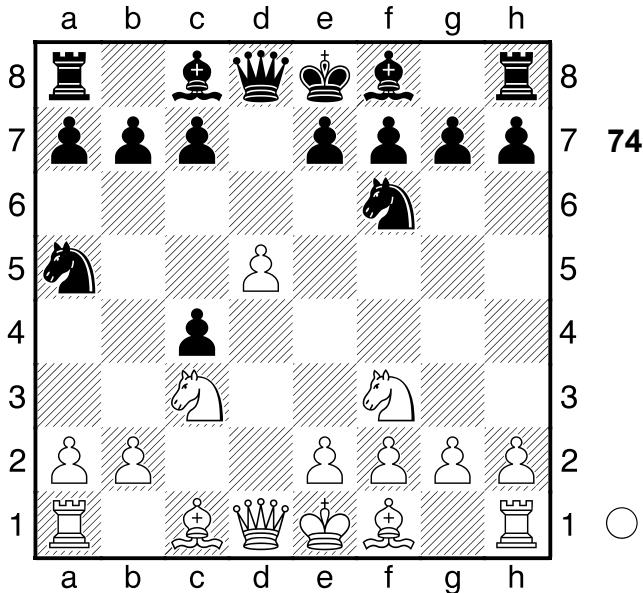
[Other moves are only seen occasionally:

a) 5.h3 e6!? (aiming for a later ...e6-e5) (if 5...e5 6.dxe5 Qxd1+ 7.Kxd1 Nd7 then 8.Nd5 and things start to get tricky) 6.e3 (6.e4 Bb4 7.Bg5 h6 8.Bxf6 Qxf6 9.Bxc4 0-0 was solid enough for Black in V.Shinkevich-D. Vorobjev, Izhevsk 2011) 6...Bd6 7.Bxc4 0-0 8.0-0 e5 9.d5 Ne7 10.e4 a6 11.a3 Ng6, M.Abatino-I.

Miladinovic, Cutro 2000, can be compared with 4 e3 e5 lines in the previous game. White's extra h2-h3 doesn't really help him.]  
[b) 5.Bf4 makes a6!? , and ...b7-b5 more attractive, since 6.d5 can now be met by e5! 7.Bg3 (or 7.Nxe5 Nxe5 8.Bxe5 b5) 7...Na5 8.Nxe5 (or 8.e4 b5) 8...b5 9.e4 Bd6 with an active position for Black.]  
[c) 5.Qa4 transposes to a line of the Queen's Gambit Accepted (2...dxc4 3 Nf3 Nf6 4 Qa4+ Nc6 5 Nc3), where Nd5! is the standard solution. For example, 6.Qxc4 (White doesn't get anything from 6.Ne5 Nb6 7.Nxc6 Qd6 8.Qc2 Qxc6 9.e4 e5 10.dxe5 Bc5 11.Be2 0-0 , as in H.Nakamura-J.Sarkar, Philadelphia 2006; or 6.e4 Nb6 7.Qd1 Bg4 8.d5 Ne5 9.Bf4 Bxf3 10.gxf3 Ng6 11.Bg3 e5 12.dxe6 fxe6 13.Qxd8+ Rxd8 14.Bxc7 Rc8 15.Bg3 Bb4 16.0-0-0 Bxc3 17.bxc3 Rf8 , when the knights are better than the bishops, J. Grünenwald-A.Raetsky, Swiss Championship, Scuol 2001 ) 6...Ndb4 (safer than 6...Nb6 7.Qb3 e5 8.dxe5 Be6 9.Qc2 Nd4 10.Qd3 Bc5 11.e3 Nxf3+ 12.gxf3 Qxd3 13.Bxd3 0-0-0 , V.Ivanchuk-R.Ponomariov, Linares 2002, when Huzman's 14.Bc2!? might offer White a little something) 7.Qb3 Be6! (after 7...Nxd4 8.Nxd4 Qxd4 , White can avoid the draw with 9.a3!? Na6 10.e4 and has a decent initiative for the pawn) 8.Qa4 (not 8.Qd1? Nxd4) 8...Bd7 9.Qd1 (otherwise 9.Qb3 Be6 repeats for a draw) 9...e5 10.a3 (or 10.dxe5 Bf5) 10...exd4 11.axb4 dxc3 12.bxc3 Qf6 13.Bd2 Ne5 and Black is fine, O.Mudra-C.Bennett, correspondence 2012.)

#### 5...Na5!

[ 5...Ne5 is not possible; ]  
[ while 5...Nb8 6.e4 e6 7.Bxc4 exd5  
8.exd5 gives White a clear  
advantage. ]



Black has nothing else. After the text play copies that in Game 21.

**QUESTION:** Wasn't that supposed to be good for White?

**ANSWER:** Yes, but the addition of the two king's knight moves (Nf3 and ...Nf6) alters the assessment somewhat.

### 6.Qa4+

[ Other moves fail to challenge Black, who will put rapid pressure on the centre:

a) 6.Bf4 e6 7.Qa4+ c6 8.dxc6 Nxc6 9.Ne5 Bd7 10.Nxd7 Nxd7 11.0-0-0 a6 12.Qxc4 Rc8 13.Kb1 Bb4 14.Ne4 0-0 15.e3 Qa5 and Black is fine, G.Kamsky-A.Stripunsky, US League 2014. ]

[b) 6.Bg5 h6! 7.Bxf6 (or 7.Bh4 c6) 7...exf6 8.e3 Bd7 9.Be2 b5 10.0-0 Bb4 11.Nd4 a6 and Black is just a pawn up, B.Züger-Ye Rongguang, World Team Championship, Lucerne 1989. ]

[c) 6.e4 c6 (this also eliminates

tactics on the a4-e8 diagonal) 7.Ne5 e6 8.dxc6 Qxd1+ 9.Kxd1 Bb4!? (or just 9...Nxc6 10.Nxc6 bxc6 11.Bxc4 Ng4 12.Ke1 Bc5 13.Be2 e5 with equality, U.Adianto-W. Arencibia Rodriguez, Cap d'Agde rapid 1998, since the c6-pawn is not a serious weakness ) 10.f3 (or 10.cxb7 Bxb7 11.f3 Rc8) 10...0-0 11.Kc2 b6 12.Bxc4 Nxc4 13.Nxc4 Ba6 14.Ne5 Rfc8 15.Rd1 Ne8 and Black regains the pawn with a good position, O.Vives Jaume-E. Ibanez Terradellas, Catalan League 2013. ]

**6...c6 7.b4 b5! 8.Qxa5 Qxa5 9.bxa5 b4 10.Na4** White has also tried:

[a) 10.dxc6 bxc3 11.e3 Ba6 12.Ne5 e6 13.Rb1 is well met by 0-0-0!, G.Meins-S.Lorenz, Bad Wiessee 2012, since 14.Nxf7?? loses to c2 and ...Rd1+. ]

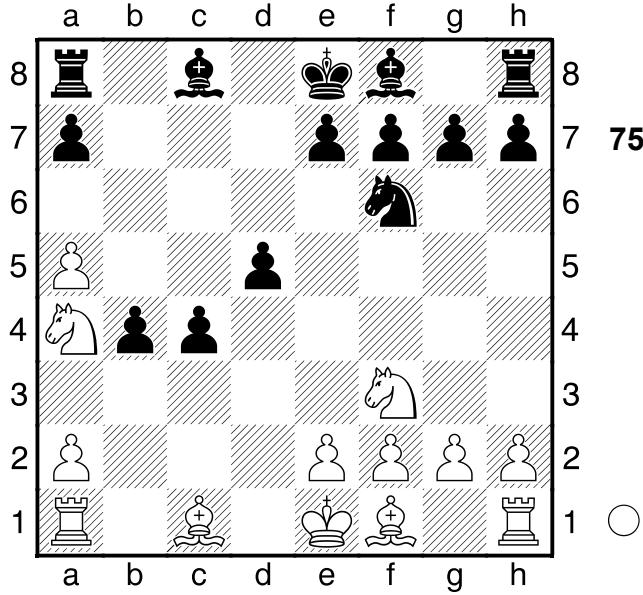
[b) 10.Nd1 cxd5 11.g3 e6 12.Bg2 Rb8 13.Be3 Rb5! (the a7-pawn is unimportant) 14.Bxa7 Rxa5 15.Bd4 Bd7 16.Ne5 Bb5 17.0-0 was C.Ward-J.Fries Nielsen, Copenhagen 1998;

**A)** and now Black should have played 17...Bd6, followed by ...0-0 or ...Ke7, bringing the h8-rook into the game. 18.-- ( 18.-- );

**B)** Instead, 17...Be7? allowed 18.a3! and Black was suddenly in difficulties, in view of b3 (if 18...c3 then 19.Ne3! Rxa3 20.Rxa3 bxa3 21.Rb1! Bxe2 22.Rb8+ wins – 17... Bd6 controls the b8-square ) 19.Nc3 Bd7 20.e4 and White achieved his desired break with a big advantage. ]

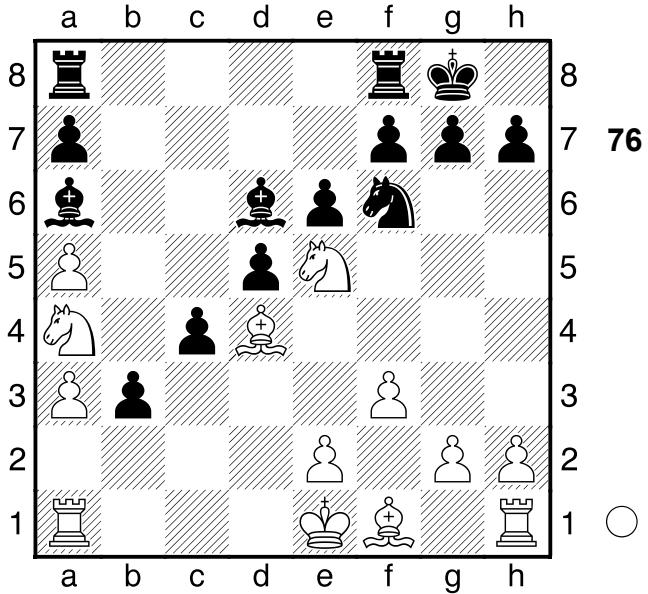
**10...cxd5**

(Diagram 75)



mind again)  $Bxf2$   $17.exd5$   $exd5$   $18.a6$   $Bxa6$   $19.Nxd5$   $Nxd5$   $20.Rxd5$ , and now Morozevich writes that  $Be3+!$  would have won for Black; e.g.  $21.Kb1$  (or  $21.Nd2 Rfd8 22.Rxd8+$   $Rxd8$   $23.Bc3 Bxd2+$   $24.Bxd2 b2+$  etc)  $21...Rad8 22.Rxd8 Rxd8$   $23.Be2 c3 24.Bxa6 Rd1+!$   $25.Rxd1 c2+ 26.Ka1 cxd1Q+$  and mates. ]

### **13...Bd6 14.f3 Ba6 15.Bd4 0-0**



Now we notice the difference: White is unable to play an immediate  $e2-e4$  which, as we saw in Game 21, is a crucial part of his plan to neutralize the enemy pawn mass. By the time White manages to prepare it, Black will have consolidated his position with sufficient compensation for the piece.

**11.a3** Aiming fix the black pawns and set up a blockade on the dark squares;

[whereas  $11.Bf4 e6 12.e3 Bd7$   $13.Nb2 Rc8 14.Ne5 Bb5 15.Rc1$   $Be7 16.Be2 Ne4$  allowed them free rein in M.Percivaldi-D.Semcesen, Borup 2014.]

**11...b3 12.Bb2 e6** Black has a splendid-looking pawn chain from  $f7$  to  $b3$ , even if it's not going anywhere at the moment.

**13.Ne5?!**

[Preparing  $e2-e4$  with  $13.Nc3$  looks better. Then A.Rychagov-A. Morozevich, Moscow (blitz) 2001, continued  $Bc5 14.e3?$ !]

(White should play  $14.e4$  as intended, though Black seems okay anyway after  $0-0 15.exd5$   $exd5 16.Be2 Be6$   $17.0-0 Rfc8$  with ideas of ... $Bd6$  and ... $Rc5$ , picking up a third pawn)  $14...0-0$   $15.0-0-0 Bb7 16.e4?!$  (changing his

**16.e3** Although  $e2-e4$  may have been planned, White is wise to refrain from it here since opening the centre favours Black as the better developed player.

[After  $16.e4?!$   $Rac8 17.Be2$  (exchanging on  $d5$  gives White problems on the  $e$ -file)  $Rfd8 18.0-0$ , Black can safely play  $dxe4 19.Rfd1$   $exf3 20.Bxf3 Nd5$  and has three pawns for the piece, with  $a5$  likely to fall as well.]

### **16...Rfc8 17.Be2 Bc7 18.0-0-0?!**

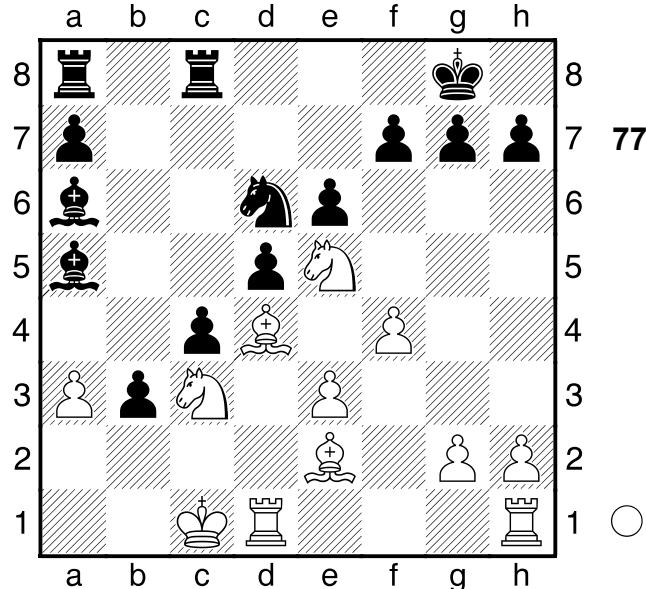
There is no need to give up the  $a5$ -pawn.

[Instead,  $18.Nc6$  is a useful irritant, defending  $a5$  and threatening  $Ne7+.$  ]

[Another idea was  $18.Kf2?!$ , intending  $Bxa5 19.Nc5! Rxc5$   $20.Bxc5 Bc3 21.Bd4 Bxa1 22.Rxa1$  and White's blockade holds firm.]

**18...Bxa5 19.Nc3 Ne8** Threatening to kick the e5-knight away with ...f7-f6, which prompts White to play f3-f4, weakening his central light squares.

**20.f4 Nd6**



**21.Kb2 f6?!**

[It was better to defer this move for the moment in favour of 21...Rab8. The drawback to playing ...f7-f6 is that it weakens the pawn chain, which can now be undermined by f4-f5.]

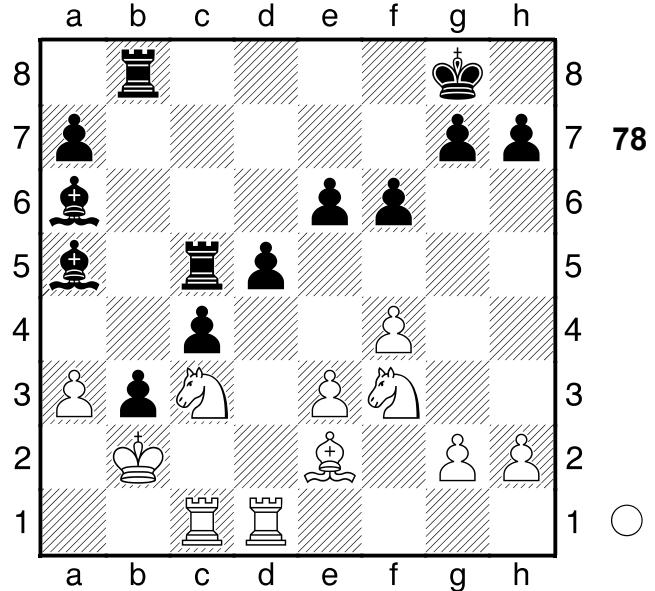
**22.Nf3**

[White could also have exploited Black's previous move with 22.Bg4!? Re8 (or 22...fxe5 23.Bxe6+ Kh8 24.fxe5 Bxc3+ 25.Bxc3 Ne4 26.Bxd5) 23.Nc6 Bxc3+ 24.Bxc3 Ne4 25.f5 exf5 26.Bf3 and the pawn chain is set to be reduced.]

**22...Ne4 23.Rc1 Nc5 24.Rhd1 Rab8**

Threatening ...Bxc3+ and ...Na4+, so White removes the dangerous knight and targets e6 again. **25.Bxc5 Rxc5**

(Diagram 78)



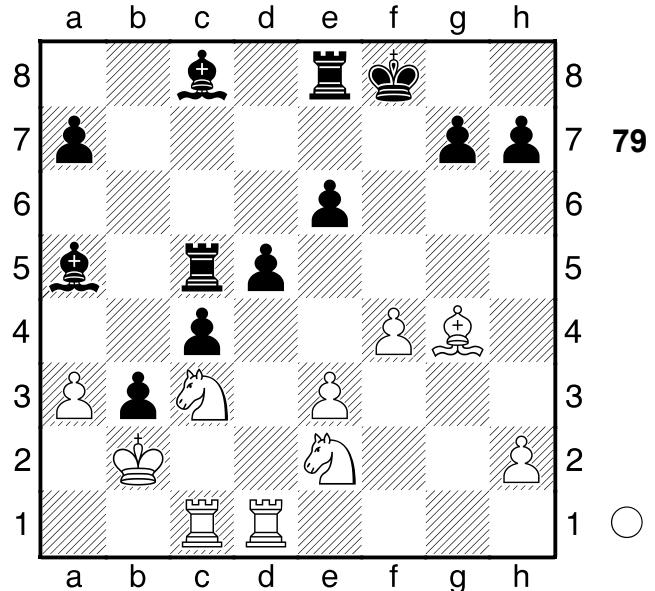
**26.Nd4 Re8 27.Bf3 Kf8**

[There was no time for 27...f5? because of 28.Na4! Rc7 29.Nxe6! Rxе6 30.Bxd5 Kf7 31.e4 g6 32.exf5 gxf5 33.g4 and White is winning.]

**28.Nde2?!**

[I'm not sure why White refrained from 28.f5!, which looks to give him a clear advantage. Now Black gets to prevent that move.]

**28...f5 29.g4 fxg4 30.Bxg4 Bc8**



**31.e4** Twenty moves behind schedule  
White finally achieves his thematic

break.

### 31...Bd8?!

[The engine shows a remarkable resource in 31...d4! 32.Nxd4 (or 32.Na4 e5!) 32...e5! 33.Nf5 g6 34.Ne3 exf4 35.Bxc8 fxe3 and Black is still in the game.]

**32.e5?** Having worked so hard to apply pressure on the pawn chain White suddenly releases it again voluntarily.

[If he was worried about 32.Nd4 e5, there was no need. After 33.Bxc8 exd4 34.Rxd4 Rxc8 35.Nxd5, Black's pawn chain is eviscerated, and White has the better of the endgame.]

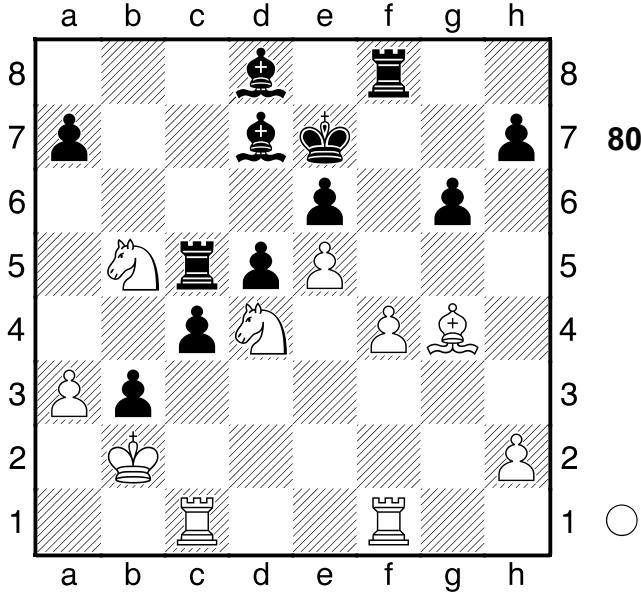
**32...Ke7 33.Nd4 Rf8?** It is likely both players were in time trouble.

[Here 33...g6 is correct, securing Black's position.]

### 34.Rf1?

[Missing a great opportunity in 34.Na4 Rc7 35.f5 exf5 36.Bf3 and the pawn chain collapses. Now Black corrects his error.]

**34...g6 35.Ncb5?!** This is just a waste of time. **35...Bd7**



**36.Nc3** Back again;

[since 36.Nd6? Ba5 is much worse.]

**36...Bb6 37.Rcd1 Ra5 38.Nce2 Bc5?!**

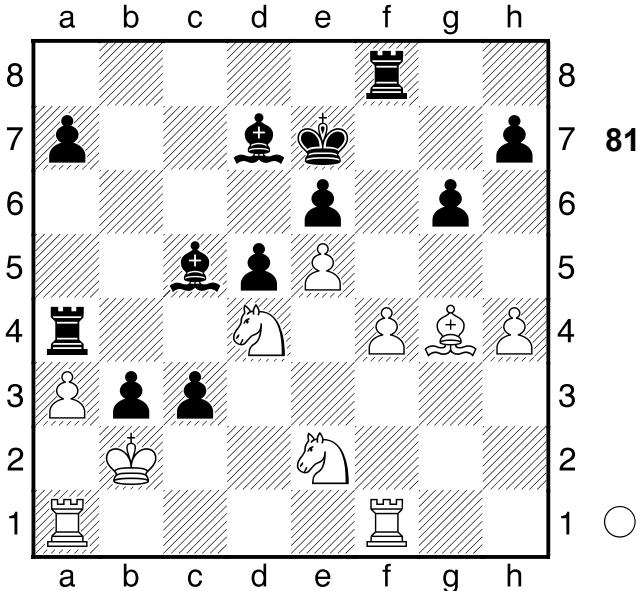
This allows White one last chance.

[38...Ra6 first was more precise.]

### 39.Ra1?

[He had to find 39.Bxe6! Bxa3+ 40.Kb1 Bxe6 41.Nc6+ and Nxa5, when White is still fighting.]

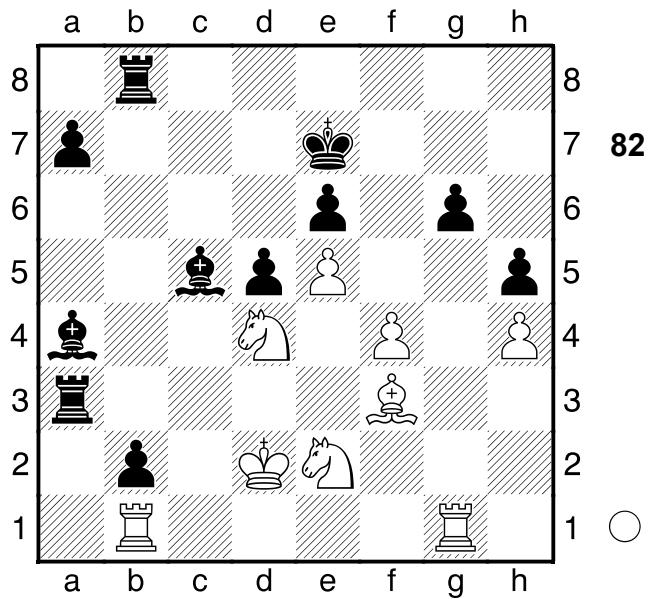
**39...Ra4 40.h4 c3+!**



Breaking the blockade, after which Black's pieces pour in and White's position can no longer be defended.

**41.Kxc3 b2 42.Rab1** Taking the b-pawn drops the knight on d4. **42...h5 43.Bf3 Rb8 44.Rg1 Rxa3+ 45.Kd2 Ba4**

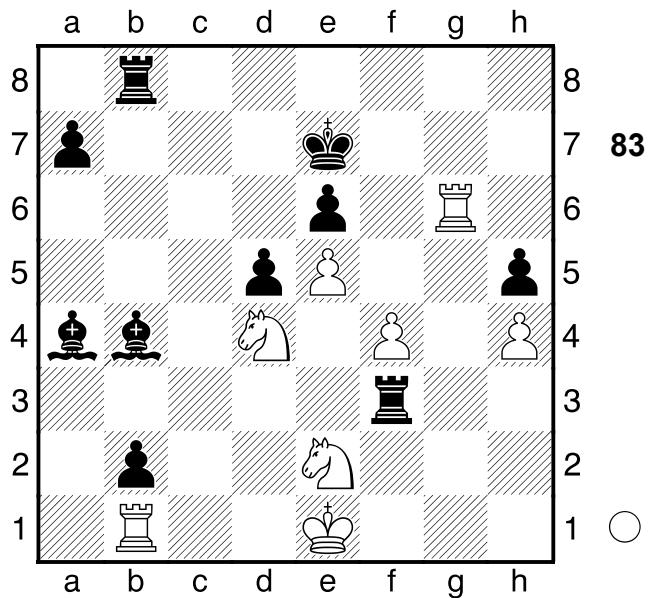
(Diagram 82)



**46.Ke1 Rx f3 47.Rxg6**

[Or 47.Nxf3 Bxg1 48.Nfxg1 Bc2 and wins.]

**47...Bb4+**



**0-1**

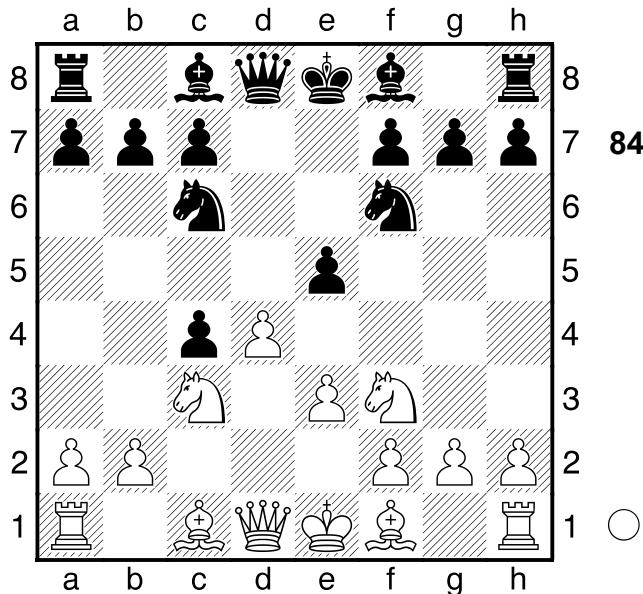
Teh,A  
 Barbot,P

26: World Junior Championships, Al Ain [Jimmy Liew]

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nc3 Nf6 4.Nf3 dxc4 5.e3** This quiet-looking move is not as harmless as it seems, because Black must be wary of ending up in an inferior Queen's Gambit Accepted.

[For instance, 5.e3 Bg4 6.Bxc4 transposes to the 3 Nf3 Nf6 4 e3 Bg4 variation where White is considered to have a slight edge, and here Black's knight is committed to c6 as well. Fortunately, the standard Chigorin riposte still works.]

**5...e5!**



**6.dxe5?!** As usual taking the e5-pawn fails to pose any problems for Black. Instead:

- [a) 6.d5 is examined in the next game.]
- [b) 6.Nxe5 Nxe5 7.dxe5 Qxd1+ 8.Nxd1 Nd7 9.Bxc4 (White has the option of supporting the e-pawn with 9.f4, but then 9...Nb6 defends the c4-

pawn in turn and I prefer Black, who has a clearer plan of development: the queen's bishop can go to d7 and c6, castling queenside is an option, as well as attacking the white centre with ...f7-f6) 9...Nxe5 transposes to the main game.]

[c) 6.Bxc4 exd4. Morozevich also mentions the possibility of 7.Qb3?! (7.exd4 Bd6 reaches an equal QGA position, which we looked at briefly in the notes to Game 24 (see 5 Nf3 there)]

- A)** 7...dxc3 8.Bxf7+ Ke7 9.bxc3 Ne4, when 10.Bd5 gives White some play for the piece; (10.--);
- B)** but simply 7...Na5! 8.Qa4+ (or 8.Bxf7+? Ke7) 8...c6 is good for Black.]

**6...Qxd1+ 7.Nxd1 Ng4**

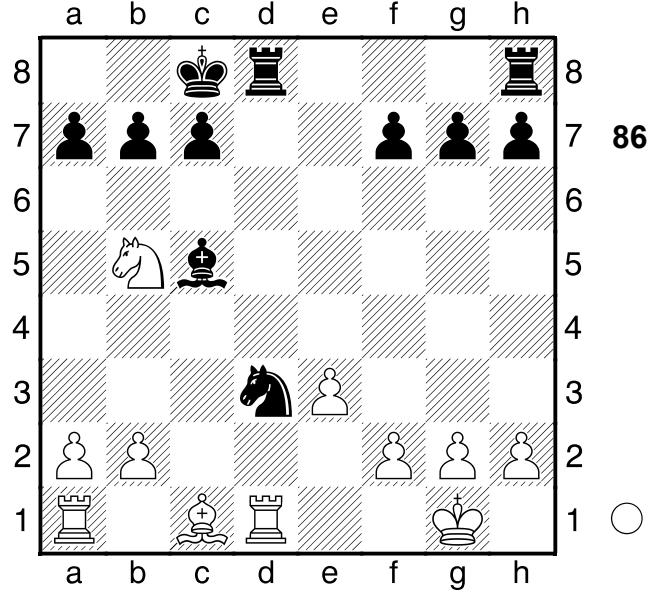
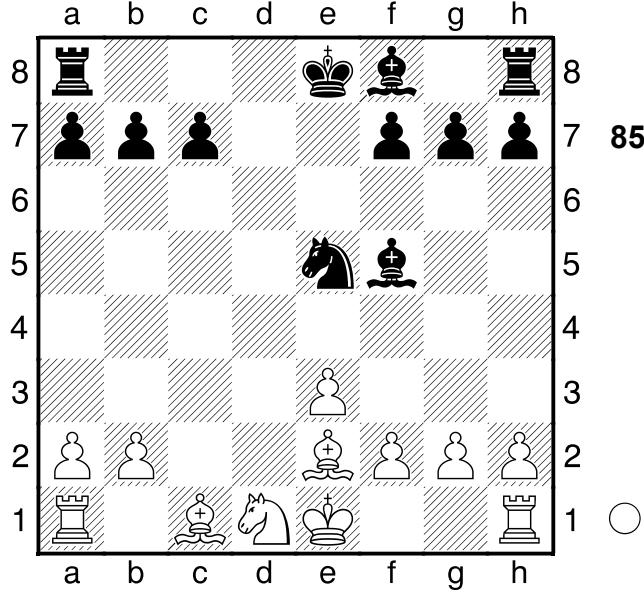
[Stronger than 7...Bb4+ 8.Bd2 Bxd2+

- A)** 9.Nxd2 Nxe5 10.Nxc4 with total equality, P.Henschel-C.A. Reiners, correspondence 1997. (10.--);

**B)** Not 9.Kxd2?! in view of 9...Ne4+!, when Black can play for more; e.g. 10.Ke1 Be6 (there is no hurry to go after the e5-pawn since it cannot be defended anyway) 11.Rc1?! 0-0-0 12.Bxc4 Rxd1+ 13.Kxd1 Bxc4 14.Rxc4 Nxf2+ 15.Ke2 Nxh1 and Black is clearly better, even without the knight in the corner.]

**8.Bxc4 Ngxe5 9.Nxe5 Nxe5 10.Be2 Bf5**

(Diagram 85)



**11.0-0 0-0-0** After just eleven moves, White's minor pieces are in passive positions and Black holds a solid initiative. Clearly this is not the way to play against the Chigorin.

### 12.Nc3 Bd3! 13.Bxd3 Nxd3

Already it's hard to find an acceptable scheme of development for White.

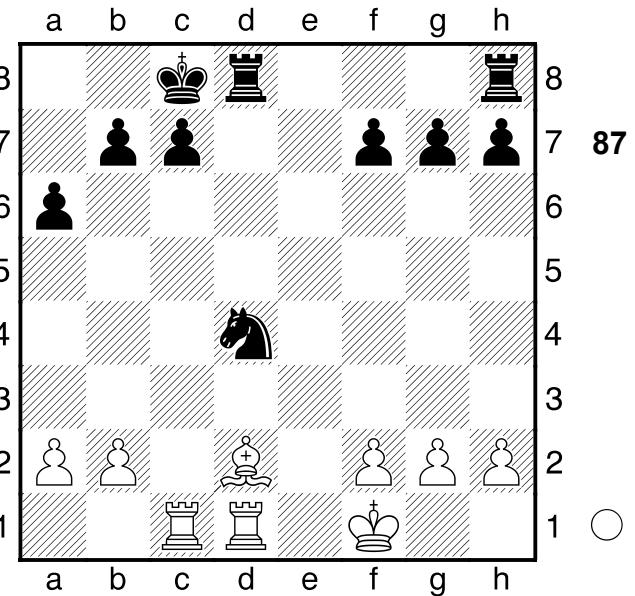
### 14.Rd1 Be7

[Another possibility is 14...Bb4!? , aiming to wreck the white queenside. If 15.Nb5 then Ne1! 16.Rxd8+ (or 16.Nd4 Nc2) 16...Rxd8 17.Kf1 Nc2 18.Rb1 a6 19.Nc3 Bxc3 20.bxc3 and Black achieves his aim, while his knight escapes after Rd1+ 21.Ke2 Rg1 22.Kd2 Na3 23.Rb4 Nb5 24.g3 Nd6 , leaving him with both the superior minor piece and structure. ]

### 15.Nb5 Bc5

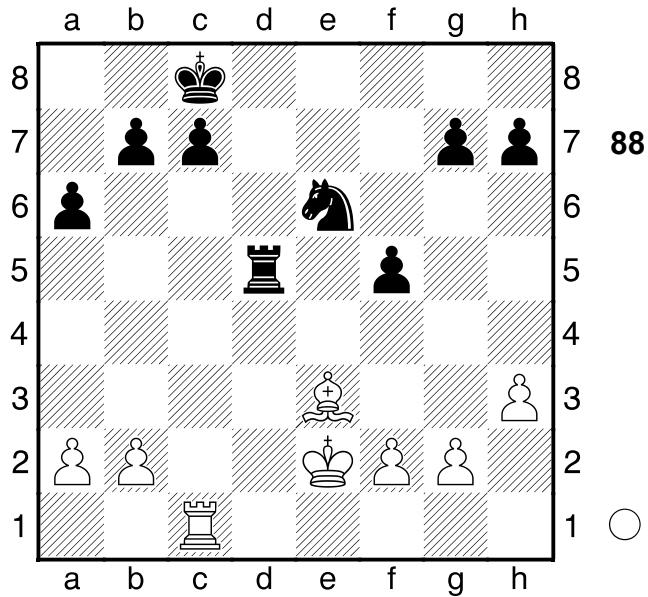
(Diagram 86)

**16.Kf1 a6 17.Nd4 Nb4 18.Bd2**  
Seeing no way to free his position, White sacrifices a pawn. **18...Bxd4 19.exd4 Nc2 20.Rac1 Nxd4**



**21.Be3 Ne6 22.Ke2 Rxd1 23.Rxd1 Rd8 24.Rc1** The minor piece ending is of course lost. **24...Rd5 25.h3 f5**

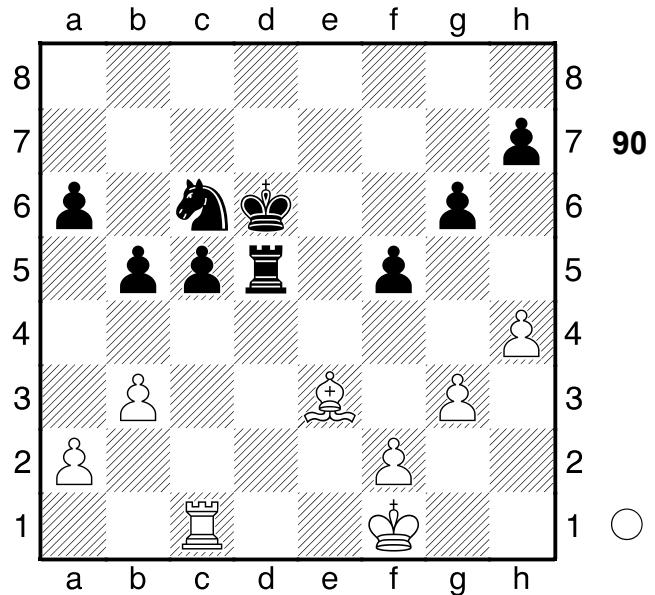
(Diagram 88)



**g6 32.Ke2** There is no constructive plan for White. He can only wait and see how Black will come at him. **32...Ke5 33.Kf3 Kd6 34.Ke2 Nd4+ 35.Kf1**

[White avoids the rook ending after 35.Bxd4 Rxd4, which is a simple win; for example, 36.Ke3 Kd5 37.f3 c4 38.bxc4+ bxc4 39.Rb1 Rd3+ 40.Ke2 Ra3 41.Rb7 Rxa2+ 42.Ke3 Ra3+ 43.Ke2 Kd4 44.Rxh7 Ra2+ 45.Kd1 a5 46.g4 a4 47.gxf5 gxf5 48.Ra7 Kd3 49.Kc1 Rh2 50.Rxa4 c3 51.Kb1 Rh1+ 52.Ka2 c2 etc.]

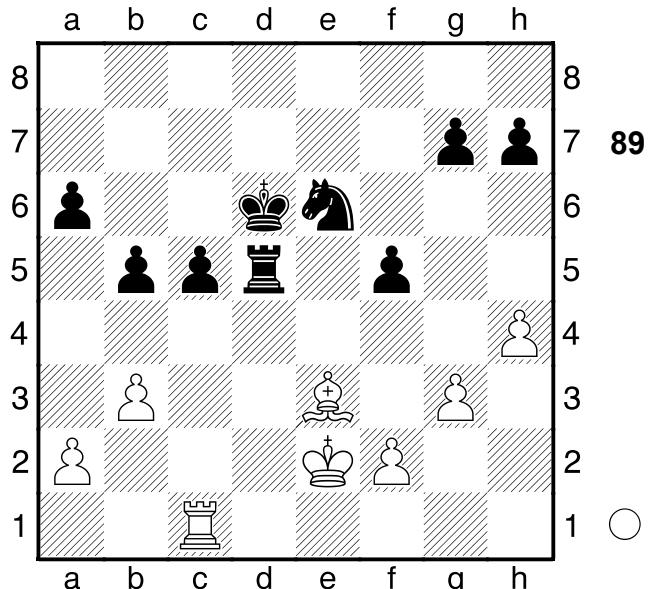
**35...Nc6**



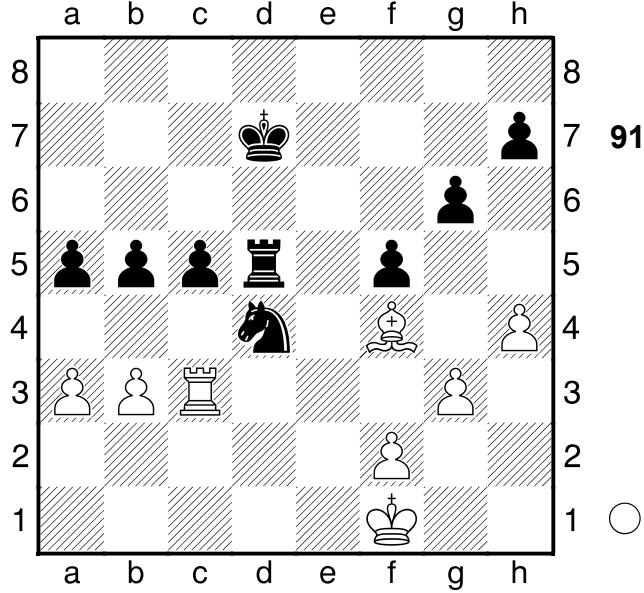
**36.Ke2 Nb4 37.a3 Nc6**

Having encouraged a white pawn forward, the knight goes back to the centre. Black can basically take all the time he likes. **38.Rc3 Nd4+ 39.Kf1 a5 40.Bf4+ Kd7**

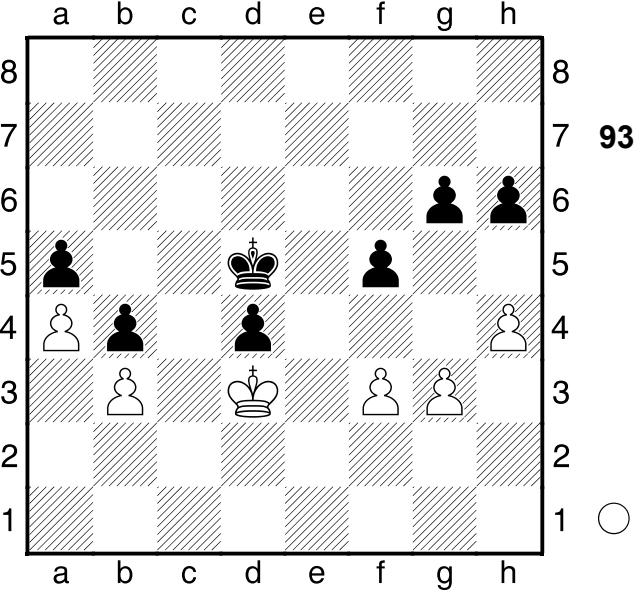
(Diagram 91)



Black has different ways to win. **31.Kf3**



91



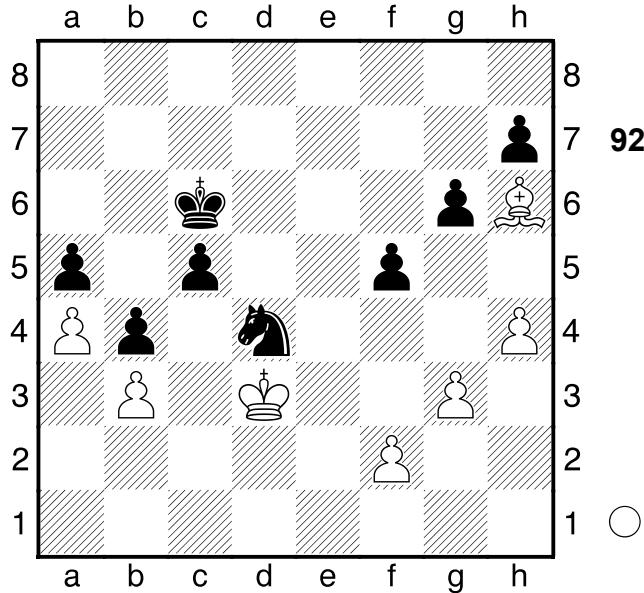
93

**41.a4 b4 42.Rd3 Kc6 43.Bh6 Nc2**

**44.Ke2**

[Keeping the rooks on is no better:  
44.Rf3 Rd1+ 45.Ke2 Re1+ 46.Kd2  
Nd4! 47.Rd3 Re2+ etc.]

**44...Rxd3 45.Kxd3 Nd4**



92

**46.Kc4 Nf3 47.Kd3 Kd5 48.Bg7 Nd4**

**49.Bxd4** Otherwise b3 falls. White is completely lost anyway. **49...cxd4 50.f3 h6**

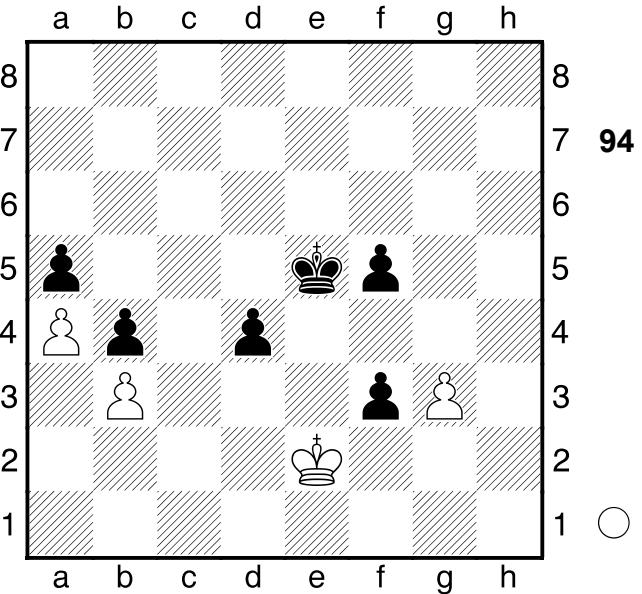
(Diagram 93)

**51.Ke2 g5 52.hxg5 hxg5 53.Kd3 Ke5**

**54.Kd2**

[Or 54.Kc4 g4! and the black king breaks through to e4.]

**54...g4 55.Ke2 gxf3+**



94

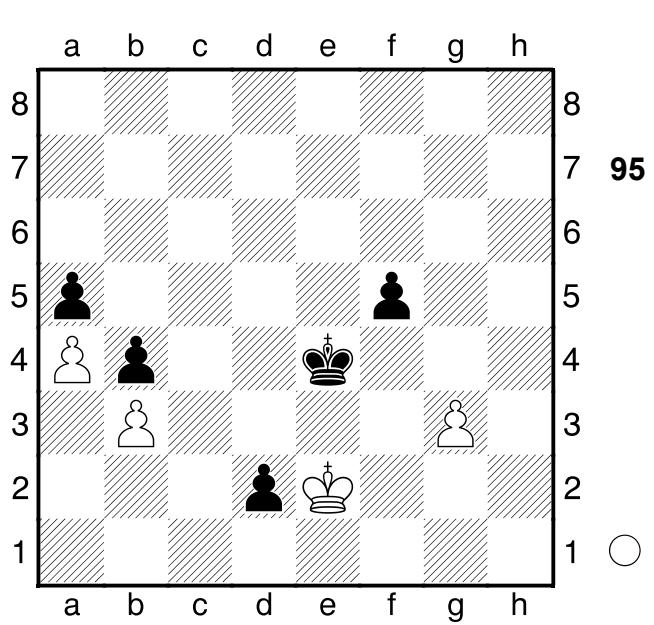
**56.Kxf3 d3 57.Ke3 d2 58.Ke2**

A last trick;

[hoping for 58.Ke2 Kd4?? 59.Kxd2, when the kings are in opposition and Black is on the move, so he cannot make any headway.]

**58...Ke4**

(Diagram 95)



0-1

Beliavsky,A  
 Morozevich,A  
 27: German League  
 [Jimmy Liew]

D07

2000

and now 0-0 11.e4 (or 11.Ba3 Re8 12.Qd4 Be6) 11...Qe7 12.Ng6 hxg6 13.exd5 Re8 14.Bf4 (or 14.Qd4 Bd7) 14...Qe4 15.Qd4 c5 , which seems okay for Black. ]

**7...Ng6** On the face it of this position is much the same as the one in Game 24 (after 4 e3 e5 5 d5 Nce7 etc). However, the inclusion of Nf3 and ...Nf6 allows White a couple of extra options.

**8.h4!?** Gaining space on the kingside and preparing to drive the g6-knight away. Note that if Black had already played ...Bd6 he could just answer with ...h7-h6. As it is, the e5-pawn needs defending.

[Alternatively:

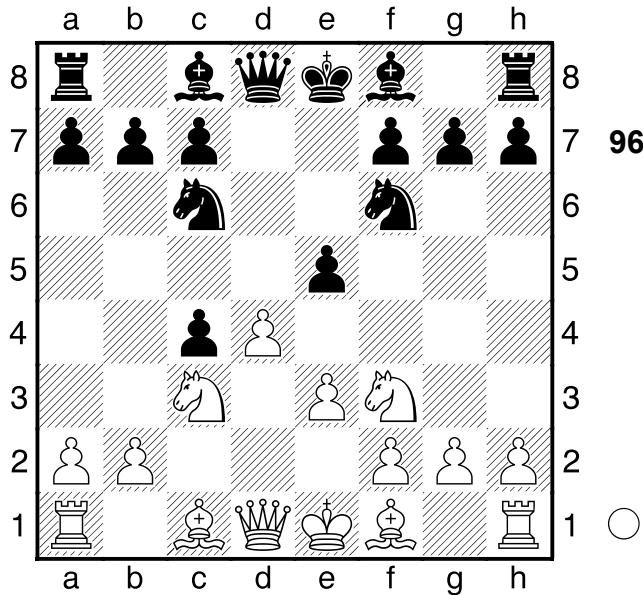
a) 8.Qa4+ Bd7 9.Qb3 threatens to open the a2-g8 diagonal with d5-d6, so Bd6 is forced, but the sacrifice of the b7 pawn is justified anyway. For example, 10.Qxb7 0-0 (or 10...Rb8 11.Qxa7 0-0 12.Bb3?? Ra8 13.Qb7 Qe7 and 0-1 since the queen is trapped, M.Düsterwald-R.Baumhus, Eupen 1995 ) 11.e4 Bg4 12.Be2 Bxf3 13.Bxf3 Nh4 14.Qa6 Nxf3+ 15.gxf3 Nh5 16.Be3 Qf6 17.Qe2 Rab8 18.0-0-0 Nf4 19.Qc2 (after 19.Bxf4 exf4 Black gets a very effective diagonal for his bishop ) 19...Ng2 20.Qe2 (defending the f3-pawn) Nf4 with a draw. ]

[b) 8.Bb5+ Bd7 9.Qb3 can also be met by Bd6 , since Black is now ready to castle. In fact it's hardly even a sacrifice as 10.Bxd7+ Qxd7 11.Qxb7 0-0 12.0-0 (or 12.e4? Qg4 ) 12...e4 13.Nd4 Qg4 14.h3 Qh5 looks extremely dodgy for White. ]

**8...Bd6**

[Blocking the h-pawn with 8...h5?! is both undesirable and risky, as the black king will then feel more

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nc3 dxc4 4.Nf3 Nf6 5.e3 e5**



**6.d5** Once again, the d-pawn push is critical. **6...Ne7** This time the knight must retreat.

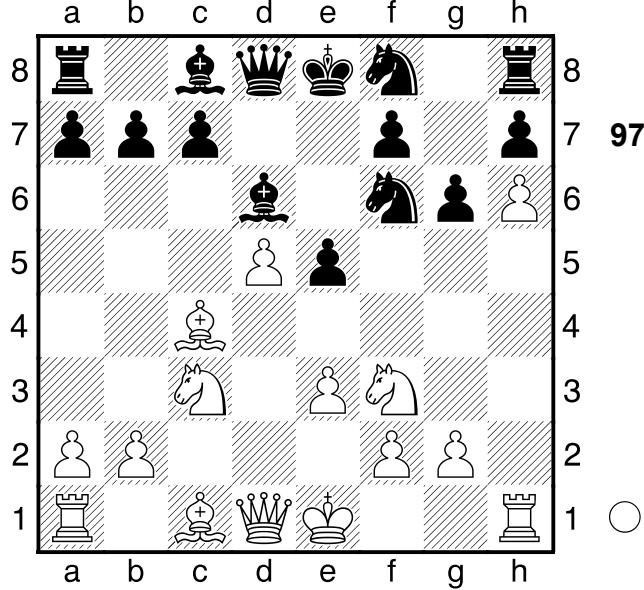
[ 6...Na5? is just bad because of 7.Qa4+ c6 8.dxc6 Nxc6 9.Nxe5 ; ]  
 [while 6...e4?! 7.dxc6 Qxd1+ 8.Kxd1 exf3 9.gxf3 bxc6 10.Bxc4 offers White at least a slight edge. ]

**7.Bxc4**

[If instead 7.Nxe5!? Nxd5 8.Bxc4 , Black should play Bb4! ( 8...c6?! 9.e4 Qe7 10.Nxf7! is better for White; or if 8...Be6 9.Bb5+ c6 10.Nxc6 bxc6 11.Bxc6+ Ke7 12.Bxa8 Qxa8 , B.Sambuev-V.Barsky, Moscow 2004, then 13.Ne2 , followed by 0-0 and Nd4, gives White an edge ) 9.0-0 (or 9.Bd2 Be6 10.Bb5+ Kf8! ) 9...Bxc3 10.bxc3 , as in B.Sambuev-P.Tishin, Tula 2004,

vulnerable castling on the kingside, and the white knight has a nice outpost at g5.]

**9.h5 Nf8!** The knight has more scope on d7 than e7. **10.h6** Otherwise Black will play ...h7-h6 himself. **10...g6**



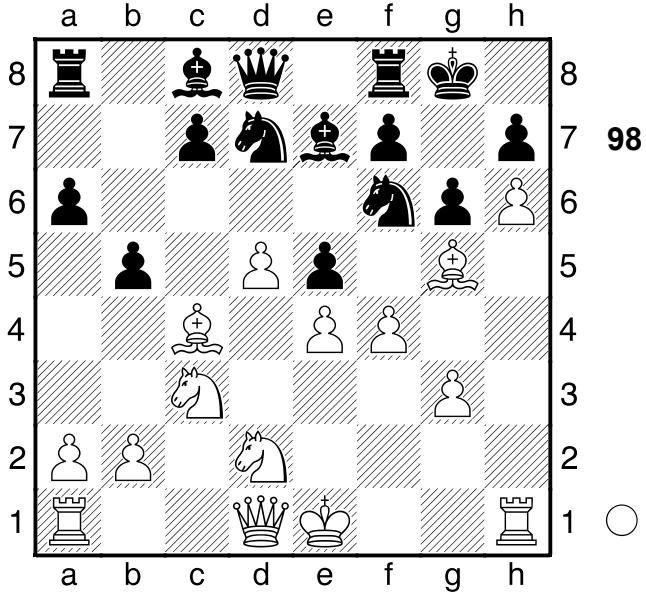
**11.e4 N8d7 12.Bg5 a6** As we have seen before, ...a7-a6 is a typical move here. It prevents an enemy knight from coming to b5 and allows Black to consider a future ...b7-b5 to gain some space on the queenside.  
White appears to have a nice position with more space on both flanks. His difficulty lies in how to improve it further while Black sorts out his jumble of pieces. Beliavsky decides to try a central breakthrough with f2-f4, putting pressure on e5.

### 13.Nd2

[In A.Khalifman-A.Morozevich, Yalta (rapid) 1995, White opted to prevent ...b7-b5 with 13.a4, but then struggled to find anything to do. After 0-0 14.Qe2 Be7! 15.Rd1 Ne8 16.Bc1 Nd6 17.Bd3 Bf6 18.Nd2 Nc5 19.Nc4 Nb3 20.Be3 Nd4 21.Bxd4 exd4 22.Nb1 Bd7 23.b3 b5, Black advantageously achieved his

break anyway and went on to win.]

**13...0-0 14.g3 Be7 15.f4 b5**



**16.Bb3 Bb7 17.Qf3 c5!** Morozevich continues his dark square strategy.

**18.0-0-0**

[White could take the pawn or castle short instead, but Beliavsky was probably not enamoured of White's position after either 18.dxc6 Bxc6 19.0-0-0 Rc8 20.Kb1 a5 21.a3]

[or 18.0-0 c4 19.Bc2 Ne8 20.Bxe7 Qxe7 and 21...Nd6.]

**18...c4**

[The immediate 18...Ne8 was also good, aiming to maintain his grip on the dark d6-square. If White tries 19.Bxe7 Qxe7 20.d6 Nxd6 21.Bd5, then c4 22.Bxb7 Nxb7 23.Nd5 Qd6 is good for Black (Morozevich).]

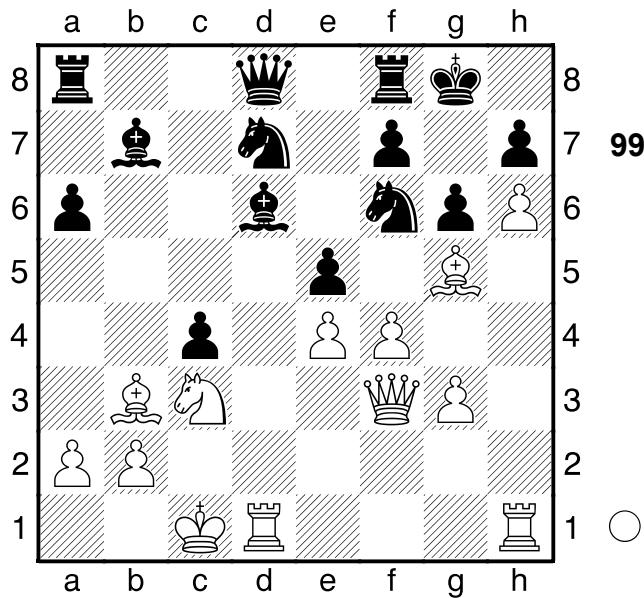
**19.d6?** Beliavsky must have miscalculated his attempted combination, since he now loses material.

[On the other hand, retreating the bishop with 19.Bc2 is met by Ne8 again with advantage to Black.]

[The engine actually wants to sacrifice a piece with 19.Nxc4!? bxc4 20.Ba4, though it struggles to justify it after Qe8! (rather than 20...Qc7?)!

21.Bxd7! Qxd7 22.fxe5 and White is probably okay. )]

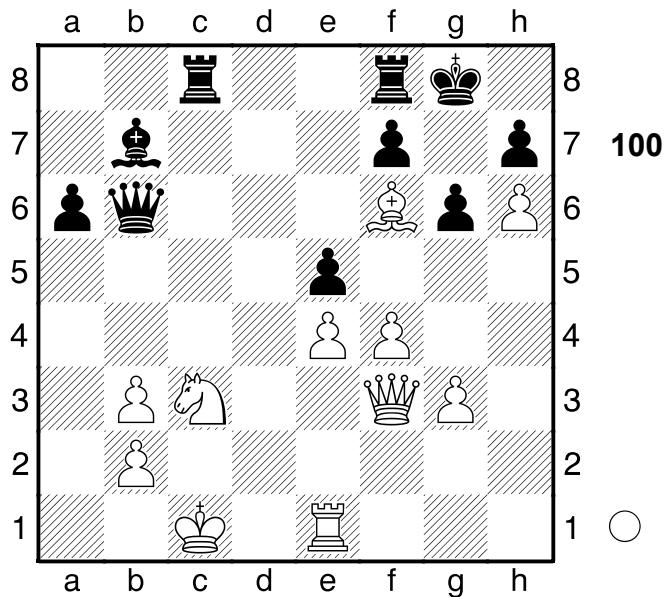
**19...Bxd6 20.Nxc4 bxc4**



**21.Rxd6 Qc7! 22.Rxf6**

[Or 22.fxe5 Nxe4 23.Rxd7 Qxd7 24.Nxe4 cxb3 25.Nf6+ Kh8 26.Nxd7 Bxf3 and wins (Morozevich). ]

**22...cxb3 23.axb3 Rac8** There's no hurry; the trapped rook on f6 is not going anywhere. **24.Re1 Nxf6 25.Bxf6 Qb6**



**26.fxe5 Qxb3 27.Be7 Rfe8 28.Bd6**

[ Playing for mate with 28.Qf6 fails to

Rxc3+! 29.bxc3 Qxc3+ 30.Kb1 Qxe1+ 31.Kb2 Qd2+ and then simply ...Qxh6 (Morozevich), whereas the engine declares mate in 15 for Black after 32.Ka3 Qc3+ 33.Ka2 Bd5+! 34.exd5 Qd2+ 35.Ka3 Qa5+ 36.Kb3 Rb8+ and so on. ]

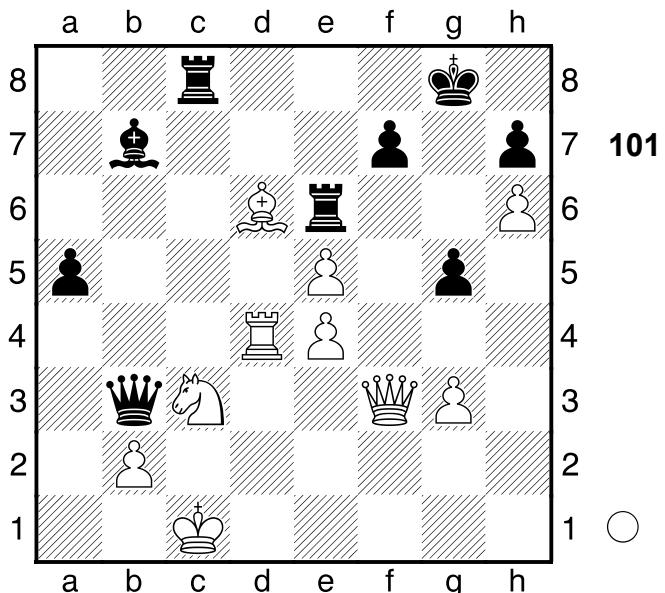
**28...Re6 29.Rd1**

[Or 29.Rf1 f5 , putting a stop to any ideas of White attacking down the f-file. ]

**29...g5** Morozevich goes for the h6-pawn, without which White has no mating threats.

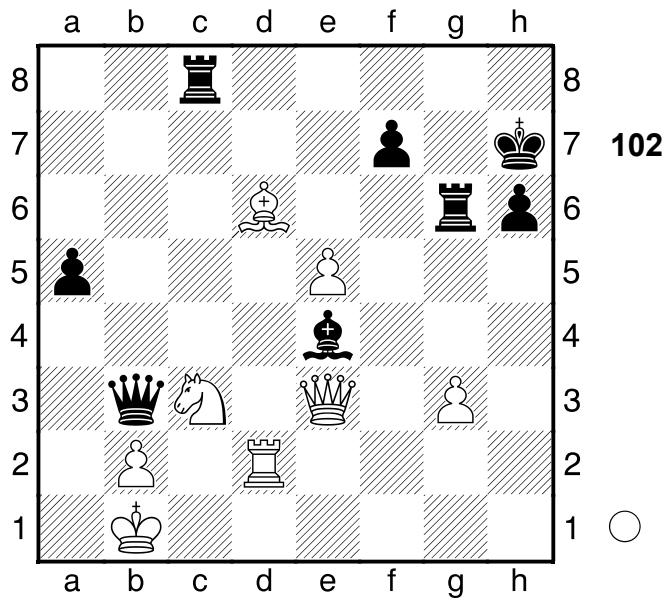
[There is no need to allow anything like 29...f5 30.exf6 Rxe4 31.Bc5!? Rxc5 32.f7+ Qxf7 33.Rd8+ Re8 34.Rxe8+ Qxe8 35.Qxb7 , even if Black is still winning. ]

**30.Rd4 a5**



**31.Qe3 Rxh6 32.Qxg5+ Rg6 33.Qe3 h6 34.Kb1 Kh7 35.Rd2 Bxe4+!**

(Diagram 102)

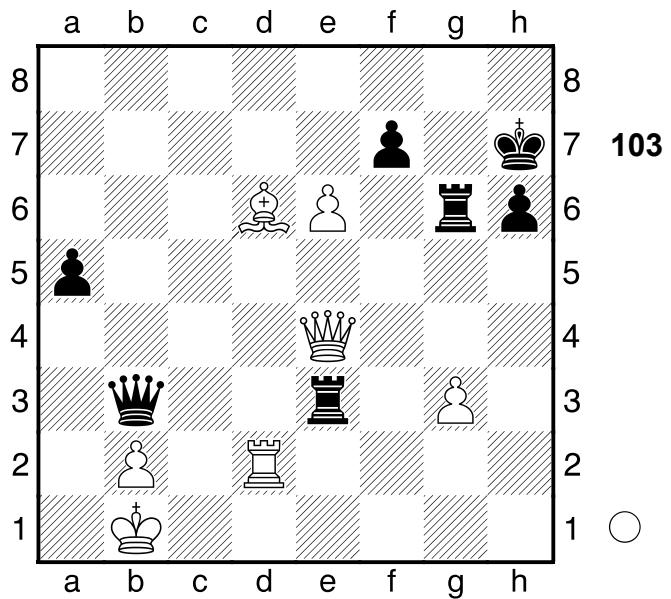


102



A final tactic ends the game. **36.Qxe4**

**Rxc3 37.e6 Re3**



103



**0-1**

□ Horvath,P  
 ■ Antal,G  
 28: Budapest  
 [Jimmy Liew]

2003

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nc3 dxc4 4.Nf3 Nf6 5.Bg5** This natural move has seen a major advance in Chigorin theory and praxis over the past decade.

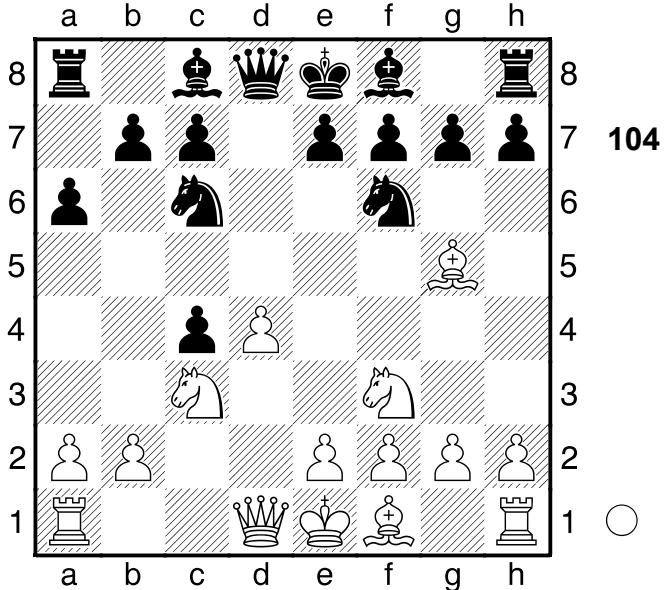
[From being a mere sideline, 5 Bg5 now rivals the traditional 5.e4 in popularity and currently scores very well for White, so it's important that Black knows what to do.]

**5...a6!?**

[Instead:

a) 5...h6 is examined in Games 30-31.]  
 [b) 5...Bg4? is bad (as on the previous move) because of 6.d5! Bxf3 (or 6...Na5 7.Ne5!) 7.exf3 Ne5 (with the c8-bishop gone 7...Na5 8.Qa4+ c6 9.b4 b5 loses to 10.Nxb5) 8.Qd4 Nd3+ 9.Bxd3 cxd3 10.0-0-0 h6 11.Bxf6 gxf6 12.Rxd3 Bg7 13.Re1 0-0 14.f4 and White is much better, Y.Drozdovskij-L.Babujian, Tromsø 2010.]

[c) 5...Nd5!? 6.e4 Nxc3 7.bxc3 Na5 is a fairly safe option; for example, 8.Bxc4 (otherwise ...b7-b5 follows; e.g. 8.Nd2 b5!, C.Di Caro-I.Miladinovic, Rome 2005; or 8.Be2 c6 9.0-0 g6 10.h4 Bg7 11.h5 h6 12.Be3 g5 13.g3, M.Flores Rios-I.Miladinovic, US League 2017, and now b5!?; either way Black seems okay) 8...Nxc4 9.Qa4+ Qd7! 10.Qxc4 f6 11.Bd2 Qg4 12.0-0 Qxe4 13.Rfe1 Qc6 14.Qb3 Bd7 15.d5 Qb5 16.Nd4 Qxb3 17.axb3 g5 18.c4 and White has enough for the pawn but no more than that, K.Reinhart-T.Klauner,



Black intends simply to keep his c4-pawn with ...b7-b5. **6.d5** The only worthwhile reply.

[6.e4?! is met by Bg4, when White has to push the d-pawn anyway, and 7.d5 Ne5 8.Be2 Bxf3 9.gxf3 g6! is fine for Black.]

**6...Na5**

[Black has a strange-looking alternative in 6...Na7?!, which we will examine in the next game.]

**7.Qa4+!** As usual, this check followed by b2-b4 is critical.

[Instead, 7.e4 h6! 8.Bh4 transposes to Game 30, (while 8.Bf4 can be met by e6!, which also sets the trap 9.Qa4+? Bd7! 10.Qxa5?? b6 and the queen is lost.)]

**7...c6 8.b4 cxb3** As we'll see, Black has several ways to give up a piece.

[Here both 8...b5 9.Qxa5 Qxa5 10.bxa5 Nxd5 (10...b4? loses to 11.Na4 cxd5 12.Bxf6 loses to) 11.Bd2!, as in S.Lukey-G.Spain, New Zealand Championship, Dunedin 1992; ]  
 [and 8...Nxd5 9.Nxd5 b5 10.Nc7+!

**Qxc7** 11.Qxa5 Qxa5 12.bxa5 , followed by a2-a3, seem inferior as Black's doubled c-pawns render his pawn mass less dangerous. ]

**9.axb3 e6 10.Bd2** Now White threatens to take on a5.

[Not yet 10.Qxa5?? Qxa5 11.Rxa5 Bb4 and Black wins.]

[Nor 10.b4? because of Nc4 11.dxc6 b5!]

**A)** when 12.Nxb5? fails to axb5! (or just 12...Nb6) 13.Qxa8 Bxb4+ 14.Bd2 Bxd2+ 15.Kd1 Ne4 and Black is winning.;

**B)** Instead, C.Gervais-O.Renet, French League 2001, continued

12.c7 Qd7 13.Qb3 Qxc7 14.Nxb5? Qb7! (probably a surprise for White) 15.Qxc4 (this allows Black to unleash some devastating tactical blows) axb5 16.Qd4 Bxb4+! 17.Bd2 Bxd2+ 18.Nxd2 Qd5 19.Qb2 and White resigned, since her position after Rxa1+ 20.Qxa1 0-0 is hopeless.]

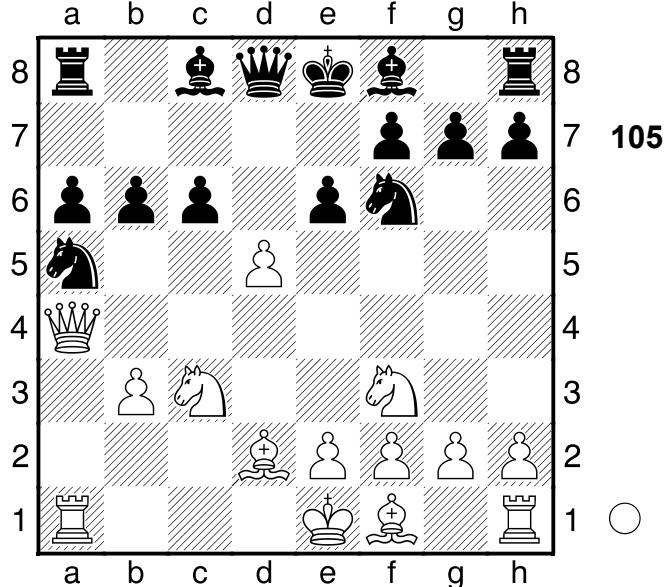
**10...b6**

[Instead, L.Ftacnik-C.Mann, German League 2015, saw 10...Nxd5!? 11.Nxd5 Nxb3 12.Qxb3 exd5 13.Ba5 Qd6

**A)** 14.e3 b5 15.Be2 Be7 16.0-0 0-0 17.Rfd1 Be6 18.Qc2 c5 , when Black's pawns were strong enough to hold the game. ( 18...-- );

**B)** But White's play was too passive: 14.e4! Be7 (not 14...dxe4? 15.Rd1; or 14...d4? 15.Bc4 ) 15.Bd3 would have given Black more problems.]

(Diagram 105)



**11.b4 Bxb4?!** Giving up the bishop creates an impressive pawn frontage, and if Black can get his pawns moving he will have an excellent game; but that only happens because White goes wrong.

[The final and probably best option was 11...exd5 12.bxa5 b5 , when Black only has two pawns for the piece but they're rather more secure. For example, 13.Qc2 c5 14.e4!? (or 14.Bg5 Be7 15.e4 b4) 14...dxe4 (not 14...d4? 15.Nxb5! axb5 16.Bxb5+ Bd7 17.Bc4 Be7 18.Ng5 0-0 19.e5 and White wins) 15.Ng5 Bf5 16.Rd1 (not 16.Ngxe4?? Nxe4 17.Nxe4 Qd4) 16...Qd7 17.Ngxe4 (or 17.Be3 Qc6) 17...Nxe4 18.Nxe4 Qe6 19.f3 Be7 20.Be2 0-0 21.0-0 c4 and Black has reasonable practical chances.]

**12.Qxb4 exd5 13.e3 c5 14.Qa3?**

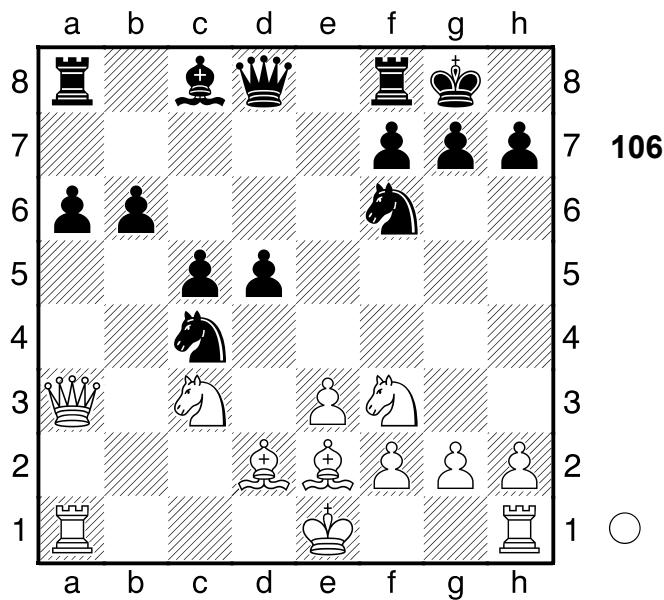
This allows Black to castle safely, after which he stands well.

[White should have played 14.Qb2! , keeping the b6-pawn under observation, so that 15.Na4 will attack both that pawn and the a5-knight; e.g. 0-0 (or 14...Nc6 15.Na4 Rb8

16.Ne5! and White is clearly better )

15.Na4 (Bronznik). ]

14...0-0 15.Be2 Nc4



21.Qxc4 bxc3 22.Qxc3 h6 23.e5 Nd5 24.Qd3 hxg5 25.Qxd5 and try to draw with the opposite-coloured bishops. ]

21...Bb5 22.Nxf6+ Qxf6 23.Be3 c3

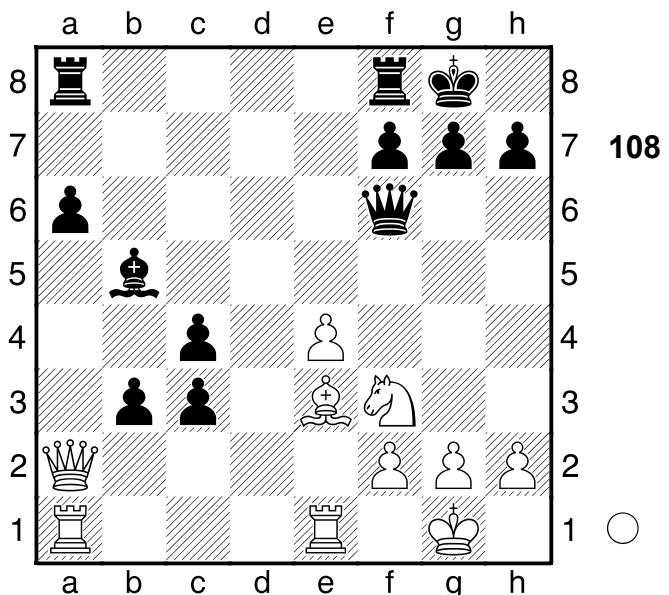
24.Rfe1 c4? A slip.

[ 24...a5 was correct, when White's extra piece is no match for the mass of pawns. ]

25.Nf3?

[ Missing his chance in 25.e5! Qxe5 (or 25...Qg6 26.Qa5 b3 27.Qxc3 and White is back in the game) 26.Qb1!, hitting b4 and h7. ]

25...b3



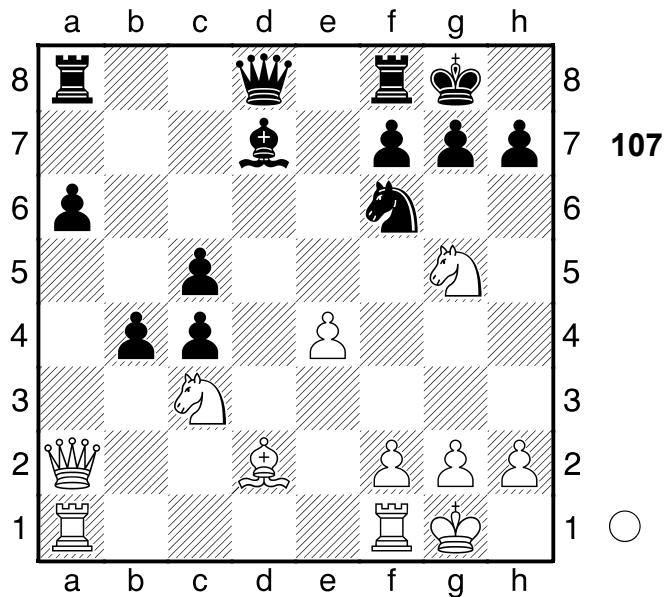
Now the pawns are fully the equal of White's knight, so Black can hardly be considered to have sacrificed at all.

16.Qa2

[Or 16.Bxc4 dxc4 17.0-0 Bg4 18.Rfd1 Qc8 with fine play for Black. ]

16...Be6 17.0-0 b5 18.Bxc4 dxc4

19.Ng5 Bd7 20.e4 b4



21.Nd5

[Perhaps White should resort to

26.Qa3 Rfd8 QUESTION: Is this not a blunder?

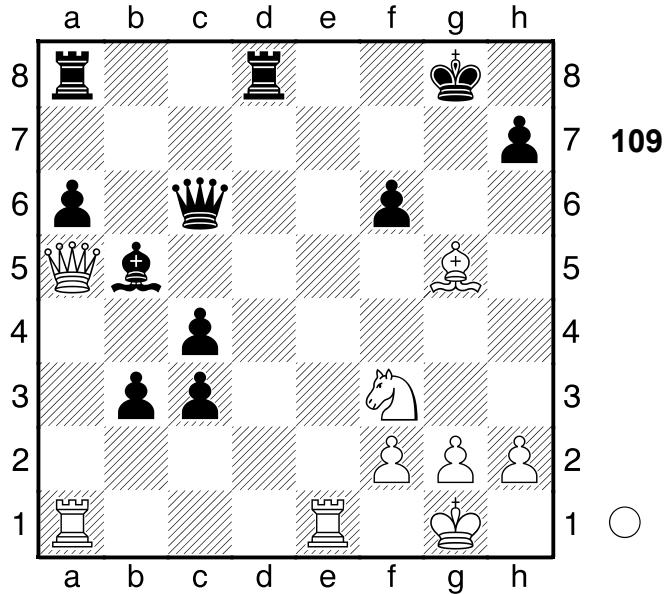
27.Bg5 Qd6 28.Qa5

[ANSWER: The rook is immune, as after 28.Bxd8 Qxa3 29.Rxa3 Rxd8 Black wins easily with his four queenside pawns; e.g. 30.Raa1 c2 31.Rac1 Ba4 and White will have to return a whole rook. ]

28...f6!? Antal is not ready to cash in.

[Otherwise Black could recoup all his material with 28...b2 29.Bxd8 (29.Rab1 Qd3 30.Qa2 Re8 is worse) 29...bxa1Q 30.Rxa1 Rxd8

31.Qxc3 Qd3 and should win. ]  
**29.e5 Qc6 30.exf6 gxf6**

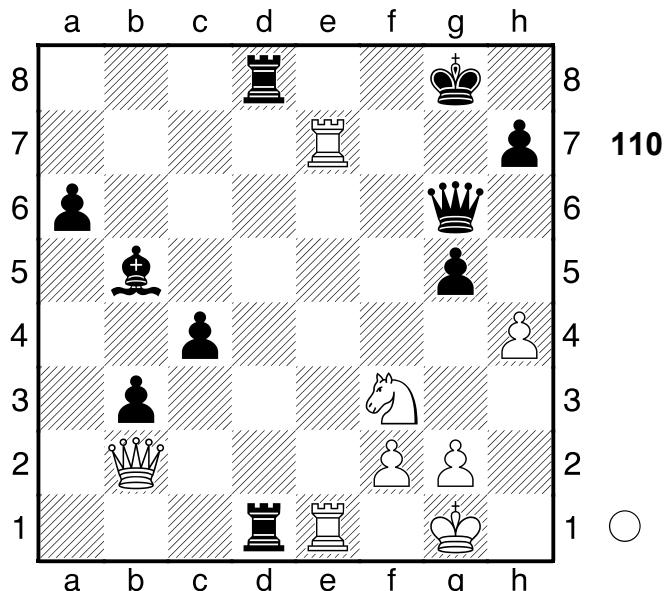


**31.Qxc3** White decides to return the piece anyway.

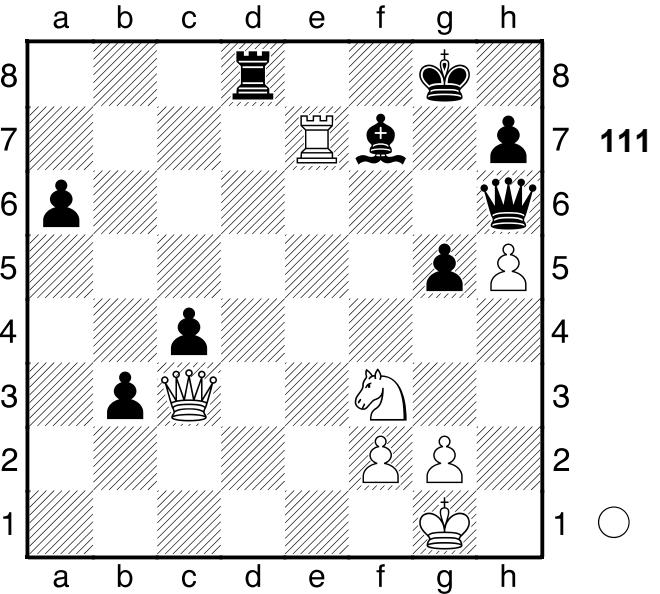
[ 31.Be3 Rd3 32.Rac1 c2 33.Nd4 Qd5 34.Nxc2 bxc2 35.Rxc2 doesn't offer much hope either. ]

**31...fxg5 32.Re7 Qg6** Dashing any hopes of counterplay. Now the queenside will decide the game in Black's favour.

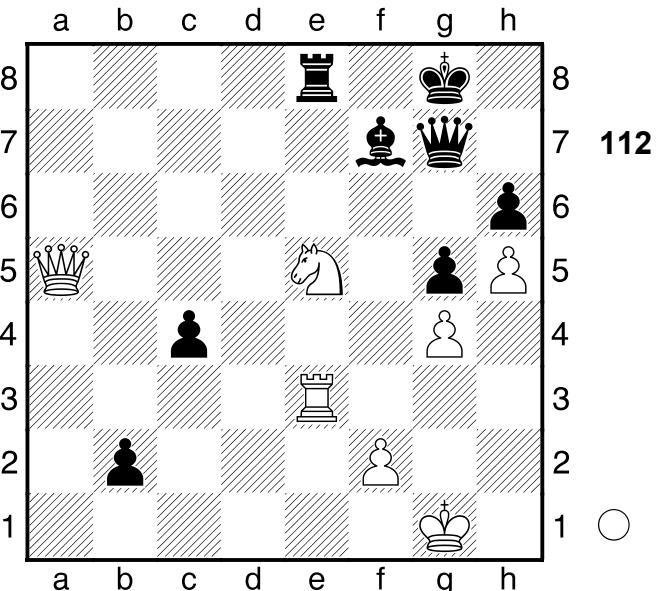
**33.h4 Rd3 34.Qb2 Rad8 35.Rae1 Rd1**



**36.h5 Qh6 37.Qe5 Bc6 38.Qc3 Rxе1+ 39.Nxe1 Bd5 40.Nf3 Bf7**

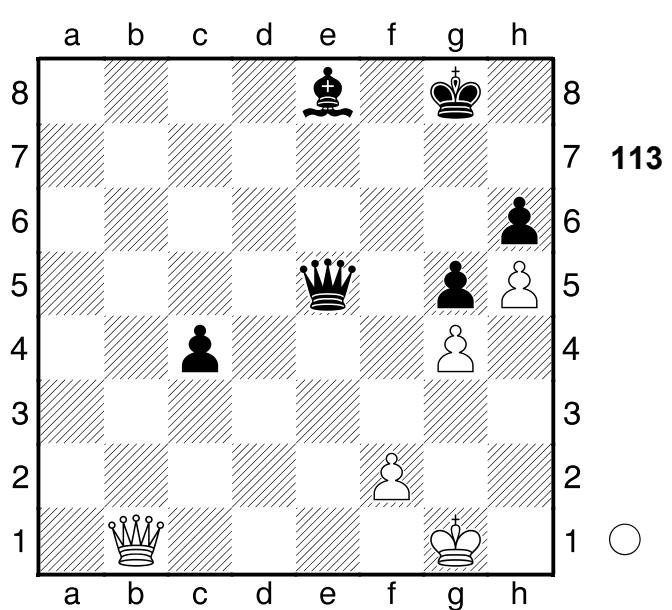


**41.Re1 Qg7 42.Ne5 Re8 43.g4 h6 44.Re3 a5 45.Qxa5 b2**



**46.Qb5 Rxе5 47.Qb8+ Be8 48.Rxe5 b1Q+ 49.Qxb1 Qxe5**

(Diagram 113)



113



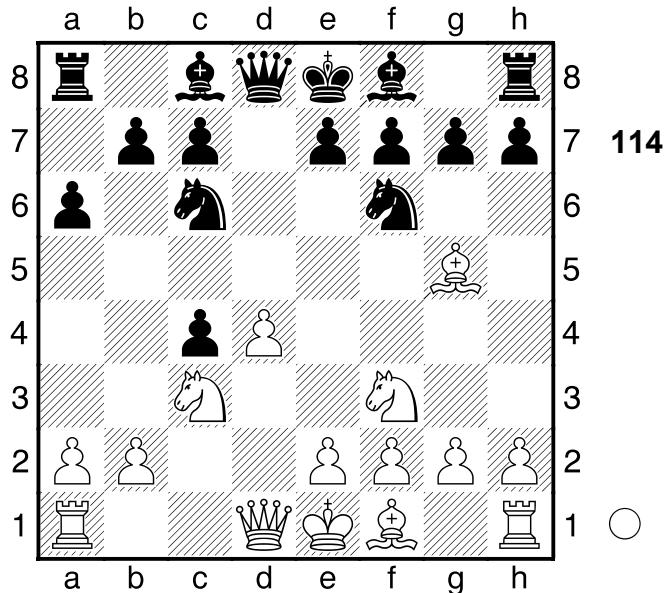
0-1

D07

□ Ivanchuk,V  
 ■ Arencibia Rodriguez,W  
 29: Havana  
 [Jimmy Liew]

2005

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nc3 dxc4 4.Nf3 Nf6 5.Bg5 a6**



**6.d5 Na7!?** An unusual retreat square! It looks like the knight is misplaced but, no, all is well. It will go to b5 to exchange the c3-knight, increasing Black's control over e4 and d5.

**7.e4 Nb5**

[No one has cared to try 7...b5!? 8.e5 Nd7 , which seems extremely dodgy for Black.]

**8.Qa4** Two pins in one move!

[White has also tried:

a) 8.Qc2 Nxc3 9.bxc3 b5 10.a4 Bb7 11.Nd4 , G.Pieterse-P.Boersma, Amsterdam 1986, and now e5! 12.dxe6 Bc5 gives Black good play.]

[b) 8.Bxc4 Nxc3 9.bxc3 Nxe4 10.0-0 is another critical line. White has a powerful initiative for the pawn as it's very difficult for Black to develop his kingside.

**A)** For example, 10...Bg4 11.Bf4 Qd7 12.Re1 Nd6 13.Be2 h5 14.h3 Bxf3 15.Bxf3 g6 was M.Van der Werf-M.Peek, Leeuwarden 2004, and now 16.c4 Bg7 17.c5 Nb5 18.Be5 0-0 19.Bxg7 Kxg7 20.a4 Na7 21.Qe2 looks very strong. ( 21.-- );  
**B)** Or 10...Nxd4 11.Nxd4 h6 12.Ne6! .;  
**C)** In view of that, Black should perhaps opt for 10...g6!? 11.Qd4 Nxd4 12.Nxd4 ( 12.Qxh8 Nxf3+ 13.gxf3 Bh3 14.Rfe1 e6! , threatening ...Qg5+ and mates, is the tactical justification, when 15.Qe5 Bd6 16.Qh8+ Bf8 is a draw ) 12...Rg8 13.Rad1 ( or 13.Qe3 Bh6 14.f4 Qd6 15.Rae1 Qb6 ) 13...h6 14.Ne4 Bg7 15.Qe3 Kf8 16.Qf4 Bf5 and Black managed to survive in H.Ingersol-G. Keller, correspondence 2014. ]

**8...Bd7** The threat of Nxb5 leaves Black only one good reply.

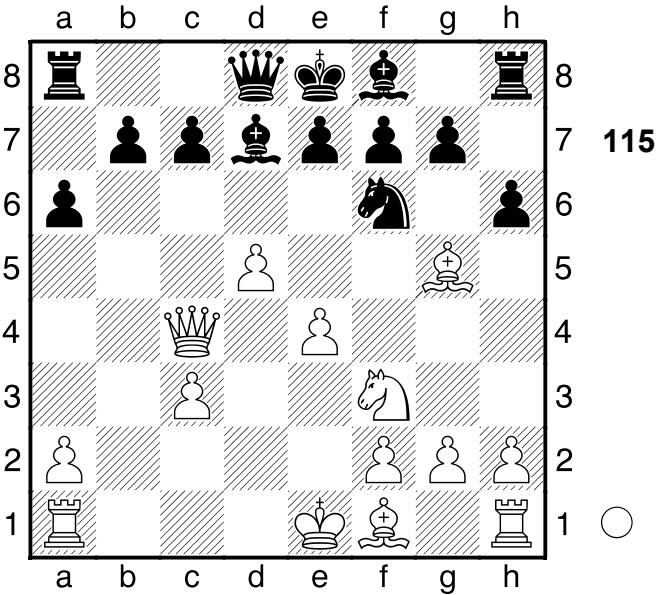
[Not 8...c6? 9.dxc6 bxc6 10.Bxc4 Bd7 11.Ne5 e6 12.Rd1 and White is already winning; e.g. Ra7 13.Nxb5 cxb5 14.Bxb5 etc. ]

**9.Qxc4 Nxc3 10.bxc3** Black now has to contend with the white centre while trying to unravel his kingside. The path to equality is quite narrow. **10...h6**

[If 10...e6?! 11.e5 h6 12.Bh4 g5 13.exf6 gxh4 14.Qxh4 , Black will be wondering where his king will find shelter; ]

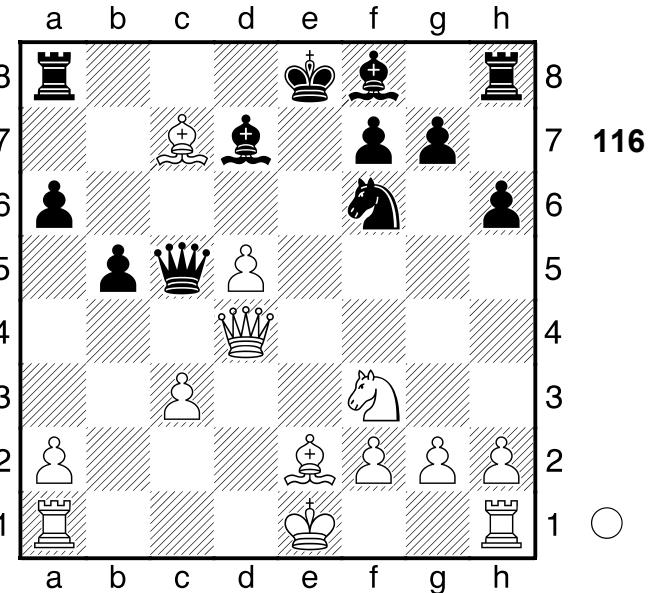
[and 10...Bb5?! 11.Qd4 Bxf1 12.Kxf1 , as in Vi.Zakhartsov-H. Nachtkamp, Bad Wiessee 2011, doesn't solve his problems either. ]

(Diagram 115)



and only now saw the reply 15.d6! Qxe2+ (or 15...Bxc4 16.dxe7 Bxe7 17.Bxc4 Rc8 18.Ne5) 16.Qxe2+ Bxe2 17.Kxe2 Nd5 18.Rab1! with advantage to White; for example, Nxc3+ (or 18...b5 19.c4!) 19.Kd3 Nxb1 20.Re1+ Kd7 21.Ne5+ Ke6 22.Ng6+ Kd7 23.Nxh8 (Dautov) Bxd6 24.Bxd6 Rxh8 25.Bb4 a5 26.Bxa5 Na3 27.Bb4 Nb5 28.Re7+ Kc6 29.Rxf7 and the endgame is lost for Black. All the same he should have tried his luck in this line, since avoiding it is even worse.]

**15.Qd4** With his king caught in the centre, Black is pretty much losing by force. **15...Qc5**



**16.Qe5+ Be7 17.d6!** White's attack is not reduced by the exchange of queens.

**17...Qxe5 18.Nxe5 Nd5**

[If 18...Bd8 19.0-0-0 0-0 20.Bf3 Rc8 21.Nxd7 Nxd7 22.Bb7 wins at least an exchange.]

**19.dxe7 Nxc7 20.Bf3 Rc8**

(Diagram 117)

### 11.Bf4

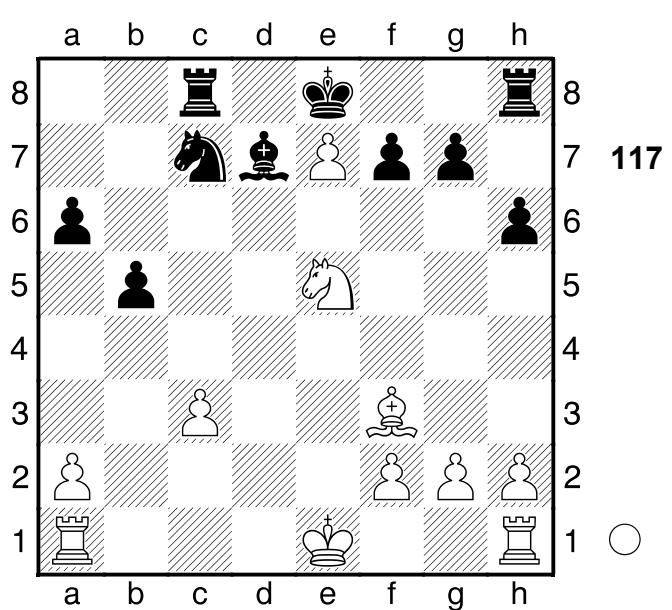
[After 11.Bh4 g5 12.Bg3 Bg7 13.e5 Nh5 14.Rd1 0-0 15.Bd3 Bb5 16.Qe4 Bxd3 17.Rxd3 f5! 18.exf6 exf6 19.Qf5 Re8+ 20.Re3 Nxg3 21.hxg3 Rxe3+ 22.fxe3 Qe7 23.Kf2 Re8 24.Re1 Qe4, Black defended successfully in B.J.Jorgensen-D. Hernandez Molina, correspondence 2016.]

**11...e6?** Black must have miscalculated the subsequent variations, otherwise he would never give up the c7-pawn.

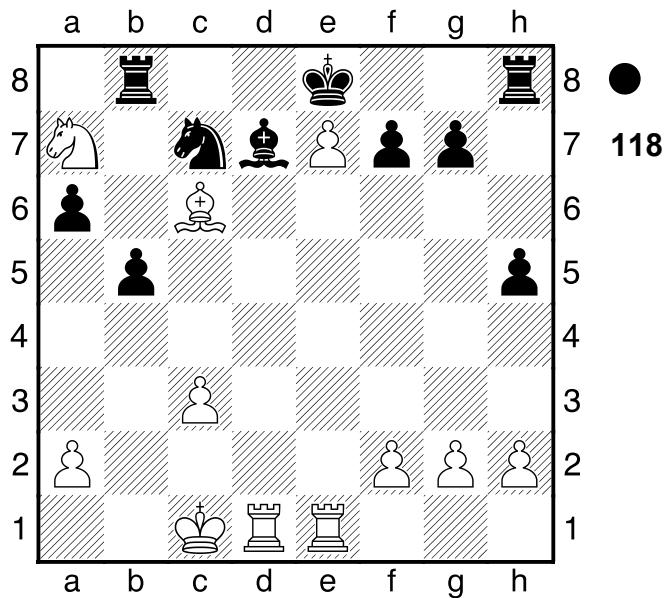
[He should have inserted 11...b5, utilizing the fact that the white queen needs to defend the e4-pawn. After 12.Qd4 (or similarly 12.Qd3 e6 – Dautov; not 12.Qxc7?! Qxc7 13.Bxc7 Nxe4 and Black stands better with his superior structure) 12...e6 13.Be2 exd5 14.exd5 Bd6 15.Ne5 0-0 16.Bf3 Re8 17.0-0 Qe7 18.Rae1 Qf8, Black eventually solved his problems in Mag. Andersson-P.Roques, correspondence 2012.]

**12.Bxc7 exd5 13.exd5 Qe7+ 14.Be2 b5?**

[Arencribia perhaps intended 14...Bb5



**21.0-0-0 Be6 22.Nc6** White has achieved a winning position with simple moves. Black could resign here.  
**22...Bd7 23.Rhe1 h5 24.Na7 Rb8 25.Bc6**



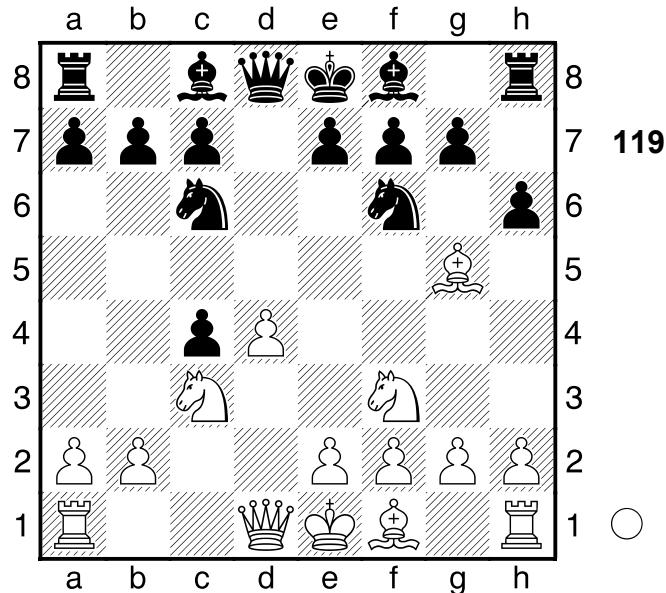
**1-0**

**Milov,V**  
 **Morozevich,A**  
 30: Tilburg  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

**D07**

1994

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nc3 dxc4 4.Nf3 Nf6 5.Bg5 h6**



This appears to be Black's most reliable move. **6.Bh4** White can also just take the knight (see the next game);

[whereas 6.Bf4 is much the same as 5.Bf4 in the notes to Game 25, since Black's extra ...h7-h6 doesn't harm his position at all.]

**6...a6!** A novelty at the time. Black returns to Game 28 paths, claiming that the inclusion of ...h7-h6 and Bh4 is in his favour.

[Instead, 6...Bg4? 7.d5 is no better for Black than on the previous move;] [while 6...e6 7.e3 and 8.Bxc4, or Na5 8.Ne5, leaves Black slightly worse with a rather passive position, even if he managed to defend it in A.Dreev-A.Morozevich, Alusta 1994.]

**7.d5**

[If White starts with 7.e4, rather than

7...b5?! 8.d5 Na5 transposing to the main game, Black can play Bg4! again. But note that 8.d5 Ne5 is not quite the same as in the 5...a6 line, because White now has 9.Bg3! Nfd7 10.Be2 Bxf3 11.gxf3 and with the dark-squared bishop further back f3-f4 is already a threat. After g5 12.f4 Ng6 13.fxg5 hxg5 14.Qd4

**A)** 14...b5 15.a4 Rg8 16.axb5 axb5 17.Rxa8 Qxa8 18.Nxb5 Qa5+ 19.Nc3 Bg7 20.Qxc4, Black didn't have quite enough for the pawn in I.Krush-A.Marshall, US Women's Championship, St. Louis 2010. ( 20.-- );  
**B)** So perhaps 14...Rc8? should be tried, intending ...c7-c5, or 15.Qe3 Nf4 16.Bxf4 gxf4 17.Qxf4 c6 . ]

**7...Na5**

[Here too 7...Na7!? is an option; for example, 8.e4 Nb5 9.Bxc4 (or 9.Qa4 Bd7 10.Qxc4 Nxc3 11.bxc3 g5 , which was covered via 11.Bh4 in the previous game ) 9...Nxc3 10.bxc3 Nxe4 11.Qd4 (or 11.0-0 g5 12.Qd4 Rg8 ) 11...Nd6 12.Bb3?! Nf5 13.Qe4 , A.Musson-M.Lyell, Budapest 2012, and now Qd6 , followed by ...g7-g6, looks better for Black. ]

**8.e4**

[The main point of 5...h6 is seen if White proceeds with 8.Qa4+? c6 9.b4 cxb3 10.axb3 , as in Game 28. The fact that his bishop is now on h4 means it is unable to retreat to d2 to defend the queenside, giving Black a free hand there. For example, e5! (even stronger than 10...e6 , as we will soon see ) 11.b4? (White has to try 11.d6! Bxd6 12.Qxa5 Qxa5 13.Rxa5 , but then Nd7! threatens ...Bb4, as well as ...f7-

f5-f4 and ...g7-g5 to trap the h4-bishop ) 11...Nc4 12.dxc6 b5 13.Qb3 Be6 (the benefit of pushing the e-pawn two squares – the bishop is excellent here and continues to harass the white queen) 14.Qb1? g5 15.Bg3 e4 16.Nxe4 (the f3-knight cannot move) Nxe4 17.Qxe4 Bxb4+ with mate to follow. ]

**8...b5?!** Defending the c4-pawn at this point allows White to seize the initiative.

[Black does better to challenge the white centre straight away with

8...c6!? 9.dxc6 Qxd1+ 10.Rxd1  
**A)** 10...b5 11.e5 (not 11.Nd5? Nxd5 12.exd5 e6) 11...g5 12.exf6 (12.Bg3 Nh5 eliminates the bishop) 12...gxh4 13.Nd5 Ra7 with an unclear position (Morozhevich).;

**B)** In this line 10...Nxc6

seems okay too, and if 11.Bxc4 (or 11.e5 Nd7 12.Nd5 Ra7! 13.Bxc4 b5 14.Bb3 e6 and White is going backwards, J.Maiwald-C.Mann, German League 2014), then 11...Bg4 12.Bxf6 gxf6 13.Nd5 0-0-0 14.Nb6+ Kc7 15.Rxd8 Kxd8 16.Bxf7 e6 17.Nd2 Rh7 18.h3 (18.Bg8 Rc7 19.f3 Nd4 20.Kf2 Bh5) 18...Bxh3 19.Rxh3 ]

[Another possibility is 8...g5!? 9.Bg3 Bg7, with the idea of 10.b4 (or if 10.Qc2, as in M.Galyas-M.Lyell, Budapest 2008, then b5! looks quite unclear) 10...cxb3 11.axb3 c5!. ]

**9.e5! b4?!**

[Another option is 9...Nh5!? , after which 10.e6! Qd6 11.Be2 g6 12.g4 Nf4 13.Bg3 Bg7 14.Qd2 g5 15.h4 gave White a strong initiative for the pawn in W.Rohde-E.Gibney, correspondence 2006, but there is clearly plenty of scope for investigation here. ]

[Not 9...g5? 10.Bg3 Nh5 11.e6! Nxg3 12.Ne5 Bg7, as in V.Kramnik-A.Morozhevich, Moscow (blitz) 2002, because of 13.Qf3! 0-0 14.exf7+ Kh7 15.hxg3 Bxe5 16.Qe4+ Kg7 17.Qxe5+ Kg6 18.Be2 and Black has a terrible position. ]

**10.exf6?!**

[White does better to throw in

10.Qa4+! c6 11.dxc6

**A)** and if 11...bxc3? (Morozhevich) then 12.c7+ Qd7 13.Rd1! cxb2 14.Rxd7 Bxd7 15.Qc2 wins (Bronznik). ( 15-- );

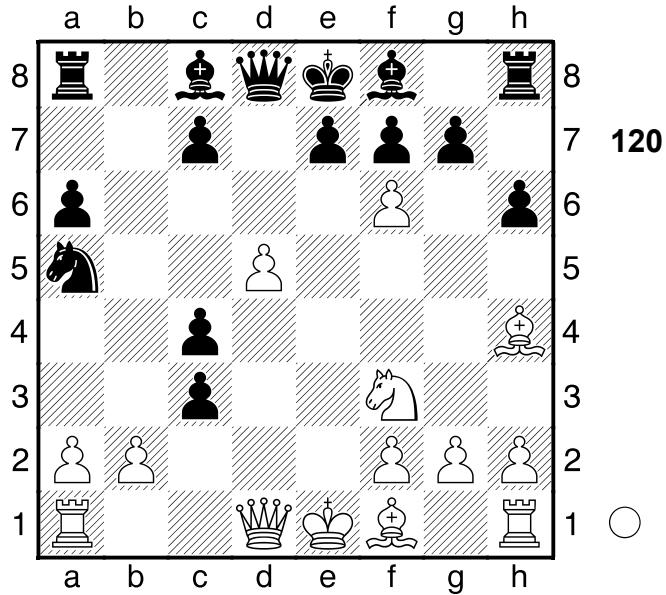
**B)** On the ChessPublishing forum Stefan Bücker therefore proposed that Black try 11...Qc7! 12.Qxb4 e6 13.Qa4 Nd5, which leads to an incredible mess;

**B1)** e.g. 14.0-0-0 Nxc3 15.bxc3 g5 16.Bg3 Nxc6 17.Nd2 Rb8 18.h4 Bd7 19.Ne4 Be7 20.Nf6+ (or 20.Qxa6 0-0) 20...Bxf6 21.exf6 e5 22.Bxc4 Bf5 23.hxg5 0-0 (Bücker);

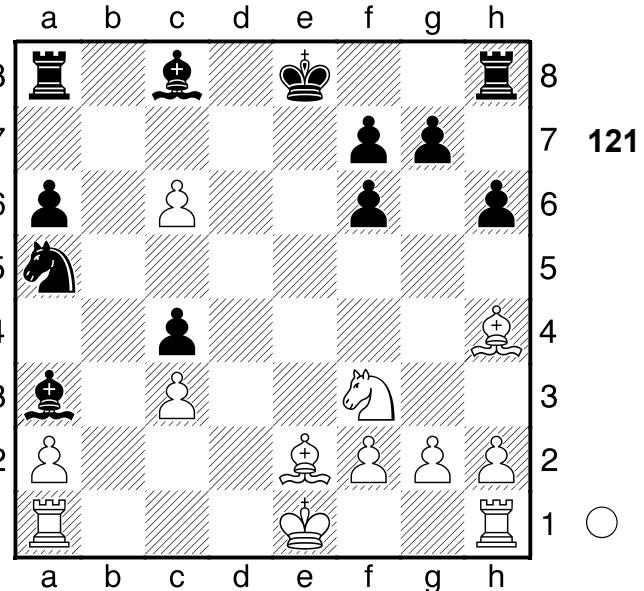
**B2)** or if 14.Bxc4 Nxc3 15.bxc3 Nxc4 16.Qxc4 a5! 17.Rd1 g5 18.Bg3 Ba6 19.Qe4 Qb6 . In either case Black has strong counterplay against the white king, though the total lack of practical tests makes a definitive assessment difficult. ]

**10...bxc3**

(Diagram 120)



**15...Bxa3**



**11.bxc3 exf6 12.Qa4+** This move is not so strong any more;

[but if 12.Bxc4? then simply Nxc4! 13.Qa4+ Bd7 14.Qxc4 Qe7+ 15.Qe2 (or 15.Kd2 Bb5) 15...Qxe2+ 16.Kxe2 Bb5+ and 17...0-0-0 gives Black a clear advantage.]

**12...c6 13.dxc6**

[Both 13.0-0-0 Bd6! (Avrukh) ]  
[and 13.Bxc4 Qe7+! 14.Be2 (or 14.Kd2 Qc5) 14...Qa3 are good for Black.]

**13...Qe7+?** This idea no longer works.

[He had to find 13...Qb6! 14.Rd1 (or 14.Bxc4 Nxc4 15.Qxc4 Be6) 14...Qb5! 15.Qxb5 axb5 16.Nd4 Bc5! 17.Nxb5 0-0 18.c7 Nb7 and Black is okay, since 19.Bxc4?? runs into Ra4 (Avrukh), skewering the bishops.]

**14.Be2 Qa3 15.Qxa3**

[Not 15.Qc2 Bf5 16.Qxf5?? Qxc3+ 17.Kf1 Qxa1+ 18.Ne1 Bb4 (Morozevich) and Black is winning; e.g. 19.Qd7+ Kf8 20.f4 g6 21.f5 g5 22.Bh5 Rh7 23.c7 gxh4 24.c8Q+ Rxc8 25.Qxc8+ Kg7 26.Qe8 Qe5 27.Qxe5 fxe5 and Black emerges two pawns up.]

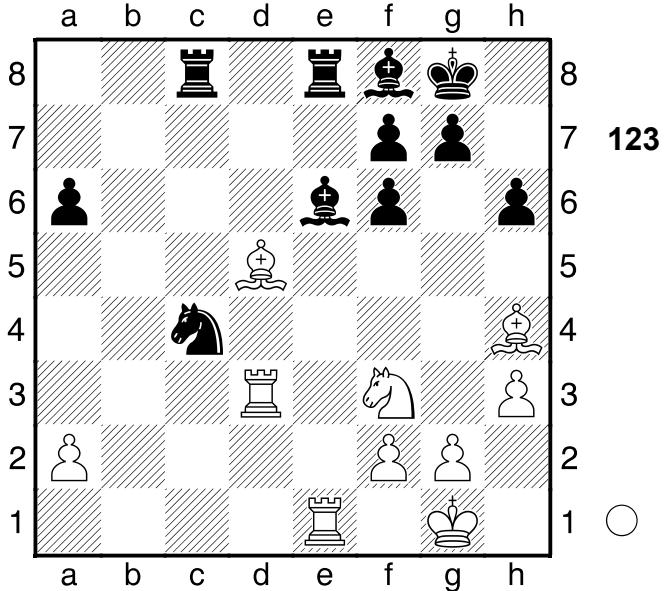
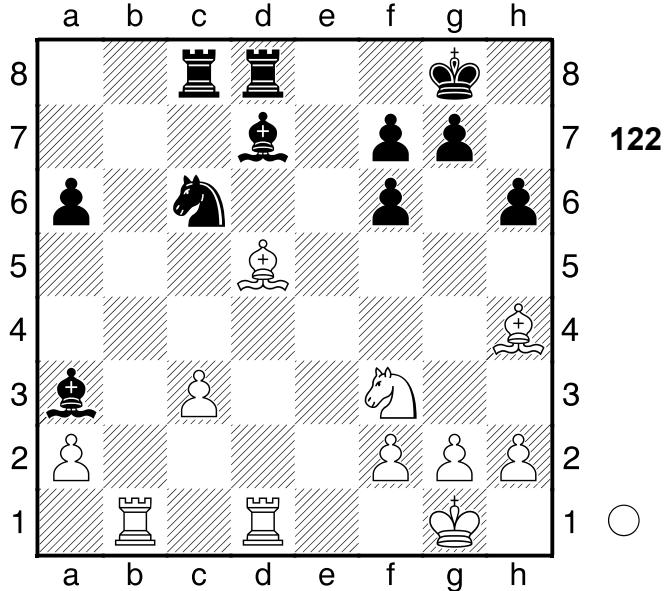
**16.0-0?** This natural move allows Black to remove the dangerous c6-pawn, bringing his knight back into the game, and then castle with a good position.

[In his book, Morozevich notes that White missed a strong exchange sacrifice here: 16.Nd4! Bb2 17.Kd2 Bxa1 18.Rxa1, when the c6-pawn, two bishops, open b-file for the rook, plus the weak black knight add up to a clear advantage. This was later demonstrated in B.Avrukh-I.Porat, Israeli Championship, Haifa 2008, which continued Be6 19.Bf3 Ke7 20.Bg3 Rac8 21.Rb1 Rhd8 22.Rb6 and White was already winning.]

**16...Nxc6 17.Bxc4 0-0** Despite equal material and the doubled f-pawns, Black has a definite edge here since his pieces are more active, whereas White has the weak c-pawn to worry about, and his dark-squared bishop is doing nothing.

**18.Bd5 Bd7 19.Rfd1 Rac8 20.Rab1 Rfd8**

(Diagram 122)



**21.h3** Ruling out back rank tactics;  
[such as 21.Rb6 Be6 22.Rxa6 Bb2  
23.c4 Nb4 24.Rb6 Rxc4! . ]

**21...Be6 22.c4** He does not want to straighten out Black's pawns by exchanging on e6. **22...Na5!?**  
[Objectively, 22...Nb4 23.Rb3 Rxc4! is stronger, though after 24.Rxa3 Rxd5 25.Rxd5 Bxd5 26.Bg3 Nxa2 27.Rxa6 , it would be hard for Black to win with a doubled f-pawn as his only advantage. ]

**23.Rd3 Bf8**  
[Not 23...Nxc4?? 24.Bxc4 and Black loses a piece; ]  
[nor 23...Bf5? 24.Rxa3 Nxc4 25.Bxc4 Bxb1 26.Bb3 , which leaves White with the edge. ]

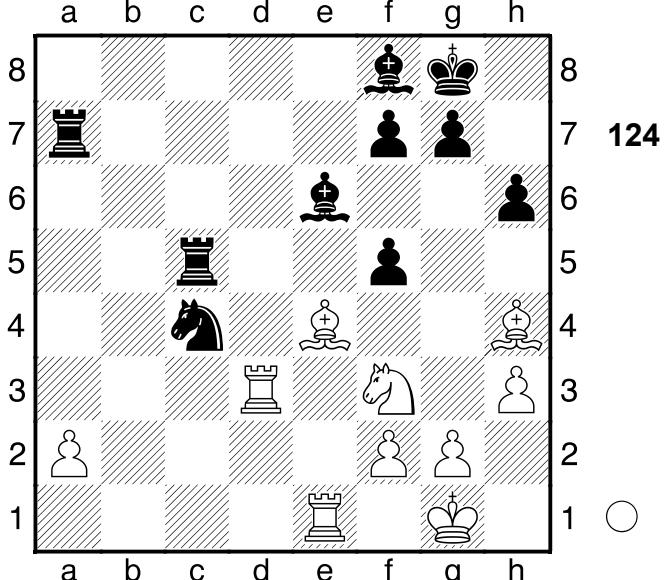
**24.Rbd1 Re8** Again threatening c4.  
**25.Re1?!** Seeing as White is bound to lose the c-pawn,  
[it was better to go for 25.Nd4 Nxc4 26.Nxe6 fxe6 27.Bb7 , and if Rb8 then 28.Bc6! , when he at least has the bishop pair. ]

**25...Nxc4**

(Diagram 123)

**26.Bb7 Rc5 27.Bxa6 Ra8 28.Bb7??**  
In time trouble White finally blunders.  
[He had to play 28.Bxc4 Rxc4 29.Bg3 and try to draw the endgame with all the pawns on one side (after a2 falls as well), though this time Black's bishop pair means he has more winning chances. ]

**28...Ra7! 29.Be4 f5**



. The bishop has no retreat.

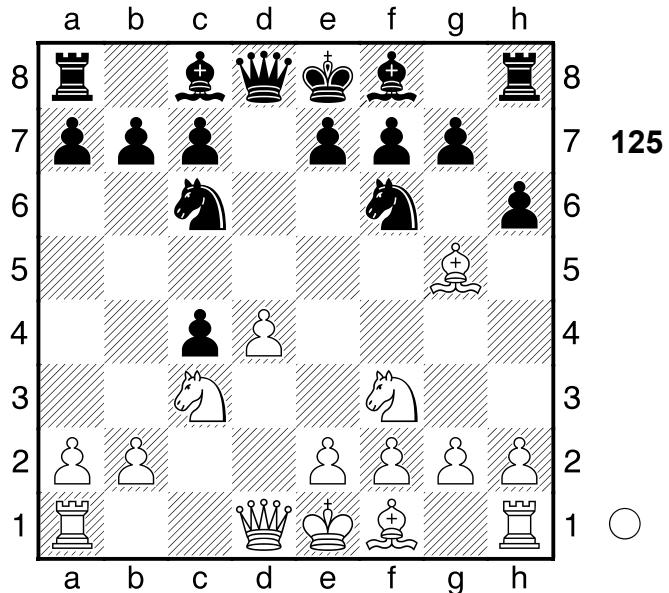
**0-1**

Schreiner,P  
 Bukal,V  
31: Oberwart  
[Jimmy Liew]

D07

2011

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nc3 dxc4 4.Nf3 Nf6 5.Bg5 h6**



**6.Bxf6** White avoids the complications of the previous game, aiming simply to regain the c4-pawn and mess up Black's kingside a little, albeit at the cost of the bishop pair.

**6...exf6** Taking with the g-pawn would make no sense. **7.e3 Bd6**

[Black has tried 7...Na5!? as well. After 8.Qa4+! (both 8.Nd2 c6 9.Nxc4 Nxc4 10.Bxc4 Bd6 11.0-0 0-0 , E.Gausel-P.H.Nielsen, Reykjavik 2000; and 8.Bxc4 Nxc4 9.Qa4+ c6 10.Qxc4 Be6 11.Qe2 Be7 12.0-0 0-0 , S.Halkias-I.Zaragatski, Bad Wörishofen 2006, are fine for Black, unless you prefer knights perhaps ) 8...c6 9.b4 cxb3 (not 9...b5? 10.Qxa5 Qxa5 11.bxa5 Bb4 12.Kd2 Bxa5 13.Kc2 , when Black only has two pawns for the piece ) 10.axb3 b5

(not 10...Qb6? 11.Qxa5 Qxa5 12.Rxa5 Bb4 13.Rc5! Be6 14.Nd2 Bxc5 15.dxc5 and White is clearly better, Z.Gyimesi-Z.Korpics, Hungarian League 1999 ) 11.Nxb5 Rb8! 12.Nd2 a6 13.Na7 Qc7 14.Qxa5 Qxa7 15.Bc4 Bb4 16.Qa2 0-0 17.0-0 a5 , Black didn't stand too badly in F.Vareille-H.Tirard, St. Lorain 2000. ]

**8.Bxc4 0-0 9.Qc2** White more often castles first, though it makes little difference. Both sides' moves are fairly interchangeable in these early stages.

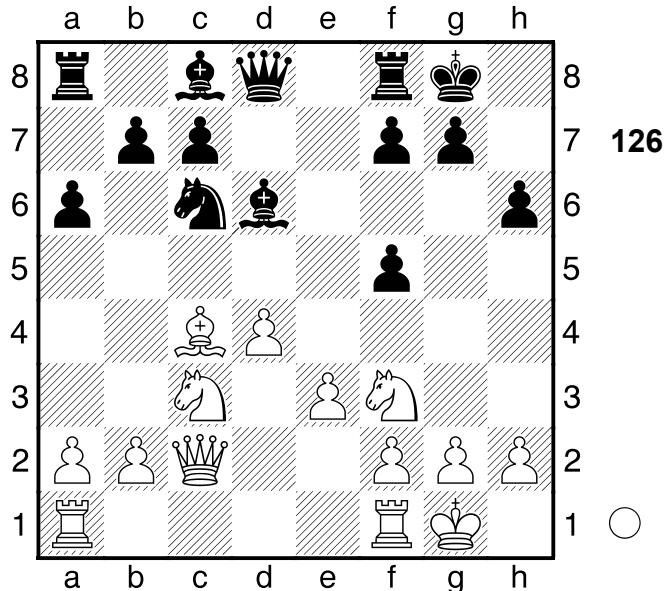
[For White, a2-a3, Qc2 and 0-0 are all standard; while after 9.0-0 , Black might play 9...f5, 9...a6 or 9...Ne7. A recent game, T.Nguyen-V. Kotronias, Budapest 2017, went a6 ( 9...f5; 9...Ne7 ) 10.Ne4 Be7 11.Rc1 f5 12.Nc3 Bd6 13.a3 Ne7 14.Qc2 c6 15.h3 b5 16.Bd3 Be6 17.e4 fxe4 18.Nxe4 Bd5 19.Nxd6 Qxd6 and a draw was soon agreed, since Black's backward c-pawn is solidly defended. ]

**9...a6** Preserving the dark-squared bishop by keeping the white knight out of the b5-square. Black could in fact play this as early as move seven. His next move will control the e4-square too.

[Another option is to reorganize the queenside with ...Ne7 and ...c7-c6. A top-level blitz game, Ma.Carlsen-V. Ivanchuk, World Blitz Championship, Moscow 2009, saw 9...Ne7 10.0-0 c6 11.h3 Bf5 12.e4 Bg6 13.a4 a5 14.Rad1 Qb6 15.Rfe1 Rad8 , when White has a nice-looking centre but Black has managed to prevent it from advancing without leaving any weaknesses behind. Ivanchuk won just nine moves later after Carlsen unexpectedly blundered ]

## 10.0-0 f5

[ Ivanchuk's set-up with 10...Ne7 11.h3 Bf5 12.e4 Bg6 is still possible, though Black would then rather have ...c7-c6 than ...a7-a6. ]



**11.a3 g6!?** A strange move with an unusual idea: creating a retreat on g7 for the black queen after ...Qf6.

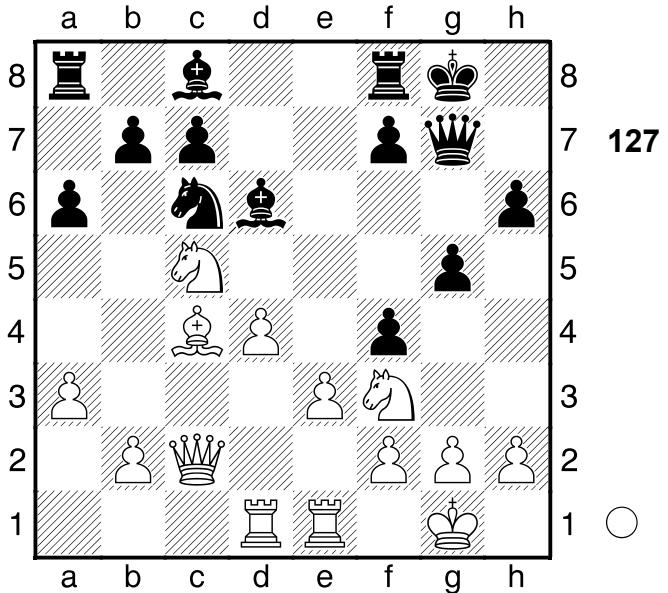
Probably IM Bukal was just trying to mix it up against his (at that time) lower-rated and untitled opponent.

[ Instead, 11...Ne7 12.Rad1 c6 leads to a position where Black has few chances. After the further 13.Ba2 Qc7 14.Na4 b6 15.Rc1 Rb8 16.b4 Be6?! 17.Bxe6 fxe6 18.Nc5!, White was clearly better in P.H. Nielsen-S.Brynell, Stockholm 2000. ]

**12.Rad1 Qf6 13.Rfe1 Qg7** White has a solid centre and well-developed pieces. But what to do next? **14.Na4**

Heading for c5 to pressure the b7- and d7-squares. **14...g5 15.Nc5 f4!?**

(Diagram 127)



Black continues to take risks. **16.Bd5 g4**

[ After 16...fxe3 17.Rxe3 Bg4 18.Nxb7 Bxf3 19.gxf3 Ne7 (not 19...Nxd4? 20.Qd3 Ne6 21.Nxd6 cxd6 22.Bxe6 fxe6 23.Rxe6 and White has threats everywhere ) 20.Nxd6 Nxd5 21.Re5 cxd6 22.Rxd5 Qf6 23.Kg2 , White is clearly better since all Black's pawns are weak. ]

**17.Ne5!?** White starts to go wrong.

[ 17.Bxc6! bxc6 18.Ne5 was stronger, and if Bxe5 19.dxe5 Qxe5 (or 19...f3 20.Qe4 with a big advantage ) , then 20.Nd3 . ]

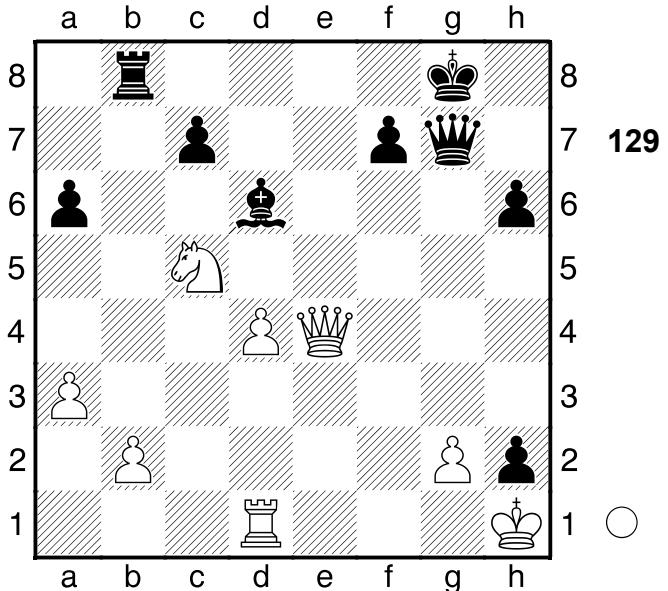
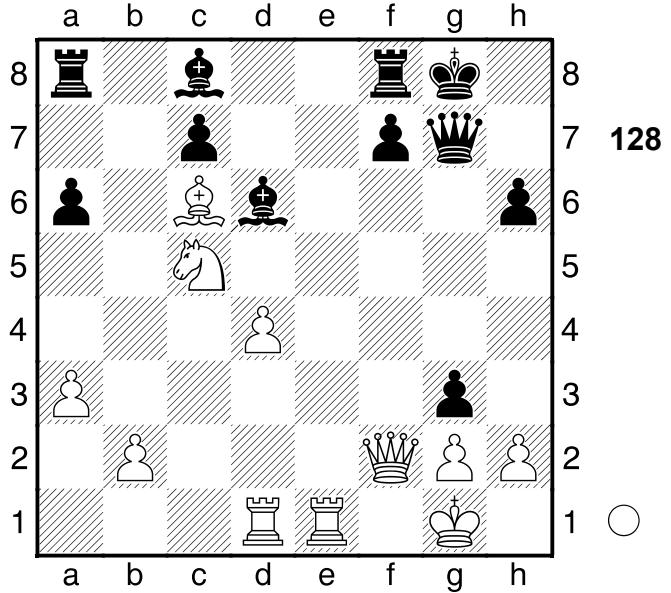
**17...fxe3?!**

[ Black had a chance to bail out with 17...Nxe5 18.dxe5 Qxe5 , if only to an inferior endgame after 19.exf4 Qxf4 20.g3 Qf5 21.Qxf5 Bxf5 22.Nxb7 . ]

**18.Nxc6?** This is a definite mistake.

[ Capturing with the bishop was still correct: 18.Bxc6 exf2+ 19.Qxf2 bxc6 20.Ne4 , when White will quickly win his pawn back and Black will be left with a collection of other weak pawns. ]

**18...bxc6 19.Bxc6 exf2+ 20.Qxf2 g3**  
(Diagram 128)



**21.Qc2**

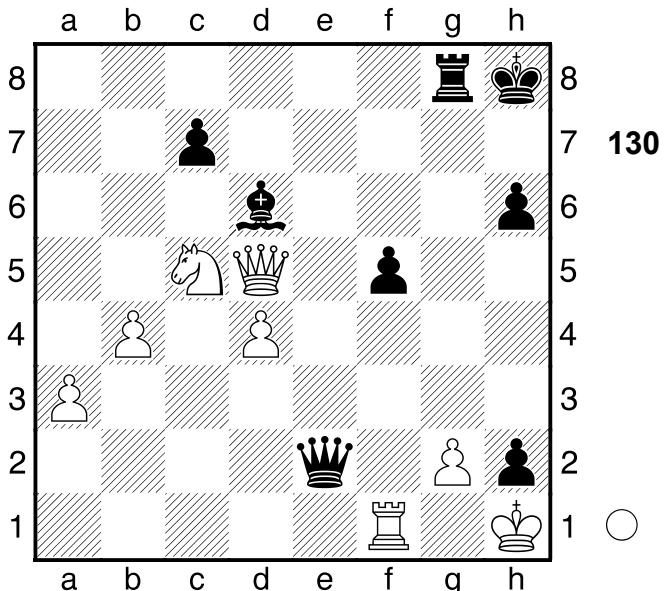
[After 21.hxg3 Bxg3 22.Qe3 Bxe1 23.Bxa8 Bh4 , Black's bishops compensate for his slightly weaker pawn structure. ]

**21...Bg4 22.Bxa8 Bxd1 23.Rxd1 gxh2+ 24.Kh1 Rxa8** Despite Bukal's best efforts, the position is equal again. Black may have the somewhat safer king, but his a6-pawn is too weak to be defended.

**25.Qe4 Rb8**

[Here 25...Rf8 seems more accurate. Black wants to advance the f-pawn to open up the white king: 26.Nxa6 f5 27.Qe6+ Kh8 28.Nc5 f4 29.Ne4 f3 30.gxf3 Rxf3 31.Nxd6 cxd6 32.Rc1 Rf6 33.Rc8+ Kh7 34.Qe4+ Rg6 and Black has sufficient counterchances to draw. A further sample line demonstrates this: 35.a4 (or 35.Rc2 Kh8 ) 35...Qf7 36.Rc1 h5 37.Qe2 Qd5+ 38.Kxh2 Qxd4 39.Qxh5+ Rh6 40.Rc7+ Kg8 41.Qxh6 Qf2+ 42.Kh3 Qf3+ 43.Kh4 Qh1+ 44.Kg5 Qd5+ 45.Kf6 Qe5+ 46.Kg6 Qe4+ 47.Kg5 Qd5+ 48.Kg4 Qg2+ 49.Kf5 Qd5+ and the king cannot escape the perpetual. ]

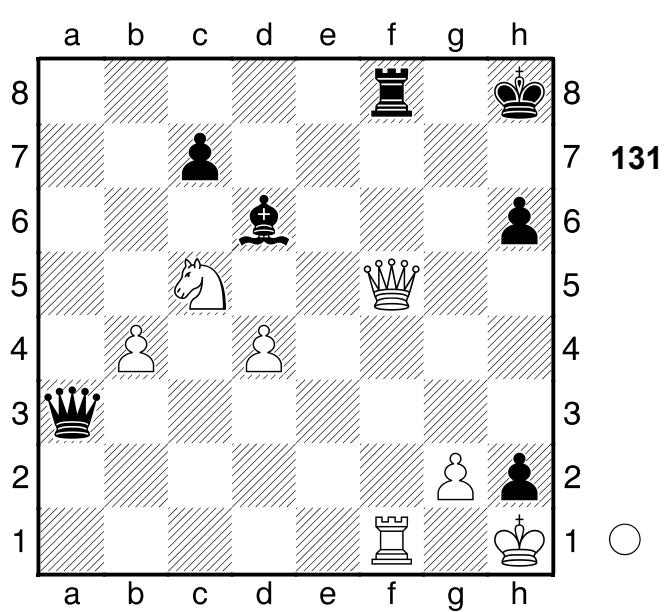
**26.b4 Kh8 27.Rf1 Rg8 28.Nxa6 f5  
29.Qd5 Qg4 30.Nc5 Qe2**



**31.Qf3 Qb2 32.Qf2 Qxa3 33.Qxf5 Rf8**

[After 33...Rf8 34.Qb1 Rxf1+ 35.Qxf1 Qxb4 36.Qf6+ , the draw is inevitable. ]

(Diagram 131)



½-½

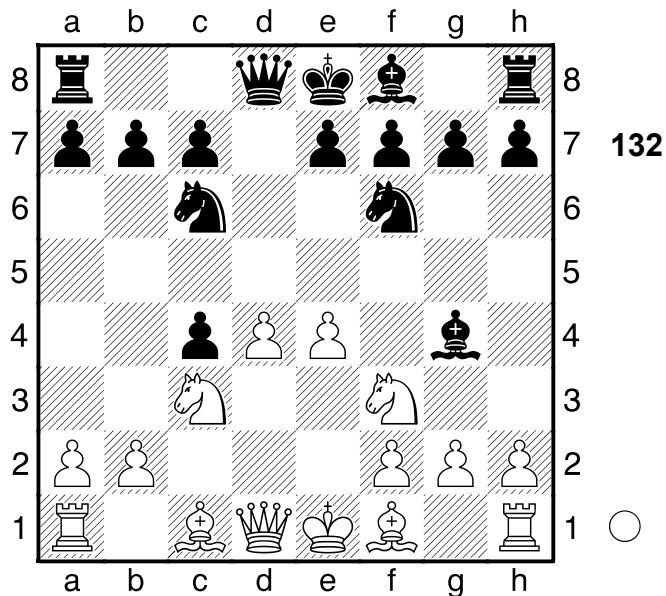
Lim,HR  
 Liew,J  
 32: Kuala Lumpur  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

D07

2013

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nc3 Nf6 4.Nf3 dxc4 5.e4** This is the second of our main lines to feature the key theme mentioned in the Introduction: White has a strong-looking pawn centre, which Black hopes to neutralize by active piece play after rapid development.

**5...Bg4**



Black posts his queen's bishop actively, putting immediate pressure on the white d-pawn.

**6.d5** Pushing on shouldn't give White any advantage, now that Black once again has the e5-square for his knight.

[The usual move here is 6.Be3, defending the centre, as seen in the remaining games of this chapter.] [Surprisingly, White can also sacrifice the d-pawn with 6.Bxc4!?, which was analysed by GM Dragan Solak in 'Chess Informant'.]

**A)** One point is that 6...e6

effectively leaves Black a tempo down on the main lines, as White can then do without Be3. For example, 7.Bb5! Bb4 (or 7...Bxf3 8.gxf3 a6 9.Bxc6+ bxc6 10.Qa4 Qd7 11.Be3 Be7 12.0-0 0-0 13.Rfd1 and White has at least a slight advantage, S.Vega Gutierrez-M.Arabitze, European Women's Championship, Riga 2017) 8.Bxc6+ bxc6 9.Qa4 Bxf3 10.Qxc6+ Ke7 11.gxf3 Qxd4 12.Qxc7+ Nd7? (but after 12...Qd7 13.Qxd7+ Nxd7 14.Bd2 White is just a pawn up) 13.Bg5+ f6 14.Rd1 Bxc3+ 15.bxc3 Rhc8 16.Qg3 Qe5 17.Bf4 Qxc3+ 18.Bd2 Qc4 19.Qxg7+ and White soon won, E.Can-M. Erdogan, Turkish League 2018.;

**B)** So the critical line runs 6...Bxf3 7.gxf3 Qxd4 (not 7...Nxd4? 8.e5) 8.Qb3 Ne5 (Solak showed that 8...0-0-0?! can be met by 9.Be3! Na5 10.Be6+! fxe6 11.Qb5 Qc4 12.Qxa5 Qa6 13.Qxa6 bxa6 14.Rc1 with a clear advantage in view of Black's wrecked structure)

**B1)** Now 9.Qxb7 leads to a forced draw: Qxc4 10.Qxa8+ Kd7 11.Be3 Qd3 12.Ne2 Nxf3+ 13.Kf1 and now e6! (not 13...Nxe4? 14.Rc1 e5 15.Qc6+ Ke7 16.h4 Nfd2+, H.Grunberg-C.Scheerer, German League 2008, because of 17.Bxd2! Nxd2+ 18.Kg2 and White wins) 14.Rc1 (or 14.Qxa7 Nxe4 15.Qa4+ Kc8) 14...Bc5! 15.Qxh8 (or 15.Qb7 Rc8 16.Bxc5 Nd2+) 15...Bxe3 16.fxe3 Nxe4 17.Qxg7 Nfd2+ 18.Ke1 Nf3+ etc.;

**B2)** 9.Be2! Qb6

**B2a)** 10.Qa4+ c6 11.f4 was Solak's improvement,

after which things get very tricky: Ng6 12.f5 (instead, 12.Be3 Qxb2 13.0-0 e5! 14.Rab1 Qa3 works out okay for Black; but 12.e5 Nd7 13.e6 fxe6 14.0-0 is worth considering) 12...Ne5 13.Bf4 Nfd7 (now if 13...Qxb2?! 14.Rc1 Nfd7 15.Rc2 Qb6 then 16.0-0! e6 17.Rb1 Qc7 18.fxe6 fxe6 19.Bg3 and White looks much better despite currently being two pawns down; note that 0-0-0?? loses at once to 20.Nb5) 14.0-0-0 Qxf2 15.Rhf1 Qb6 16.Bxe5 Nxe5 17.Nd5 Qd8 18.Kb1. Solak stopped here, considering White to have a clear advantage, but Dean from the ChessPublishing forum suggested g6! 19.Nf6+ exf6 20.Rxd8+ Rxd8 21.Qxa7 b5 22.fxg6 hxg6 23.Rxf6 Be7 24.Rf2 Rh4 25.Qe3 Kf8 and Black seems to be alright. It is hard to suggest how White might make progress given Black's total control of the dark squares.;

**B2b)** Whether all this holds up remains to be seen. The only game in the database to feature 9 Be2 continued 10.Bf4? Nfd7 11.Qxb6 axb6 12.0-0-0 c6, when Black was a safe pawn up and went on to win in G.Ferlito-B.Fels, correspondence 2010. ]

**6...Ne5** This position can also arise via the Queen's Gambit Accepted (2...dxc4 3 e4 Nc6 4 Nf3 Bg4 5 d5 Ne5 6 Nc3 Nf6). Objectively Black is fine, but he does need to play accurately in the early

stages, so we'll examine quite a few variations.

### 7.Bf4

[Other moves:

- a) 7.Qd4 Nxf3+ 8.gxf3 Bxf3 9.Rg1 e5! 10.Qxe5+ Qe7 11.Qxe7+ Bxe7 and White is struggling to prove compensation for the pawn, O. Touzane-A.Dunnington, Cannes 1995. ]
- [b) 7.Bxc4 Nxc4 8.Qa4+ c6! 9.Qxc4 (not 9.dxc6?? Nb6) 9...Bxf3 (or 9...Rc8) 10.gxf3 cxd5 11.exd5 g6 12.Bf4 Bg7 13.Rd1 0-0 and Black stood well at this stage, P.Zelbel-R. Frischmann, German Championship qualifier (online blitz) 2011. ]
- [c) 7.Be2 Bxf3 8.gxf3 e6 9.f4 Nd3+ 10.Bxd3 cxd3 11.Qxd3 exd5 12.e5, A.Kozak-M.Lyell, Budapest 2013, and now Nh5 13.Qb5+ c6 14.Qxb7 Qc8 15.Qxc8+ Rxc8 is fine for Black. ]
- [d) 7.Be3!? c6 8.dxc6 Qxd1+ 9.Rxd1 Nxc6 10.Bxc4 e6 11.Bb5, as in P.Michalik-S.Mannion, Gibraltar 2018, should be met by Rc8 12.Bxa7 (or if 12.Rc1 then Bxf3 13.gxf3 a6) 12...Bb4 with sufficient play for the pawn. ]

**7...Bxf3?** In hindsight this seems too extravagant, as Black both gives up his bishop and strengthens White's position in the centre.

[Retreating the knight at once was correct:

- a) 7...Ng6 8.Be3 (or 8.Bg3 e5 9.dxe6 Qxd1+ 10.Rxd1 fxe6! 11.Bxc4 Bb4 and Black is fine, P. Mladenov-A.Karpatchev, Rennes 2010) 8...e5 9.Bxc4

**A)** 9...a6, followed by ...Bd6, leads to the sort of position we considered in Games 24 and 27, albeit with ...Bg4 thrown in. 10.--

( 10.-- );

**B)** Black has tried 9...Nh4?! as well, but then 10.Bg5! Nxf3+ (not 10...Nxg2+? 11.Kf1 Bh3 12.Qa4+ Qd7 13.Bb5 Nh4+ 14.Ke2 Nxf3 15.Be3! and wins ) 11.gxf3 Bd7 12.Qb3 , threatening Qxb7 or d5-d6, is good for White, E. Inarkiev-M.Kobalia, Moscow 2016. ]

[b) 7...Nfd7! is probably best: 8.Bxe5 (all of 8.Be2 Bxf3 9.gxf3 e6 , B.Lalic-R.Kraut, Belfort 1989; and 8.Qd4 c5! 9.dxc6 Nxc6 10.Qxc4 e5!; and 8.Qa4 Nxf3+ 9.gxf3 e5 10.dxe6 Bxe6 11.Nb5 Rc8 seem okay for Black ) 8...Nxe5 9.Qd4 (or 9.Bxc4 Bxf3 10.gxf3 Nxc4 11.Qa4+ c6 12.Qxc4 cxd5 13.exd5 g6 14.Qd4 Rg8 , followed by ...Bg7, S.Soyosal-Y.Sari, Turkish Championship, Suleymanpasa 2017 ) 9...Nxf3+ 10.gxf3 Bxf3 11.Qxc4 e6 12.Qa4+ c6 13.dxc6 b5! 14.Bxb5 Qc7 15.Rg1 Bd6 16.Be2 (or 16.Rxg7 Be5 , chasing the rook ) 16...Bxe2 17.Kxe2 0-0 18.Qd4 Be5 19.Qc5 Bxh2 and now 20.Rxg7+ forced a draw in D.Wagner-M.Kvetny, Austrian League 2016. ]

### 8.gxf3

[There was one nice idea behind Black's last move, which is seen after 8.Qa4+? Qd7 9.Nb5? , as in M.Dlugy-A.Morozevich, ICC 1999.

EXERCISE: How should Black answer the threats to his e5-knight, f3-bishop and c7-pawn?

ANSWER: With the stunning Qg4!! , as Morozevich discovered later.

Despite White's numerous discovered checks, even double checks, he is now losing. For example:

**A)** 10.Nxc7+ Kd8 11.Bxe5 Qxe4+ 12.Kd2 c3+ wins the queen.;

**B)** 10.Nd4+ Nfd7 11.Bxe5 Qxe4+

12.Ne2 (or 12.Kd2 Qxe5 13.Nxf3 Qxb2+ wins a rook ) 12...Bxe2 13.Bxe2 Qxe5 and White is a piece down.;

**C)** 10.Be3 Kd8 leaves White with a wrecked position and no checks.;

**D)** 10.Bxe5 Qxe4+ 11.Kd2 c6 12.Nc7+ Kd8 13.Qa5 Qxe5 14.Ne6+ Kd7 15.dxc6+ Kxe6 16.Bxc4+ Kf5 and the black king gets away with his bounty. ]

### 8...Nfd7

[If 8...Ng6 instead, then 9.Be3! e5 10.dxe6 Qxd1+ 11.Rxd1 fxe6 12.Bxc4 e5 13.Nb5 saw White win a pawn in M.Bluebaum-R.Frischmann, Oberhof 2011. ]

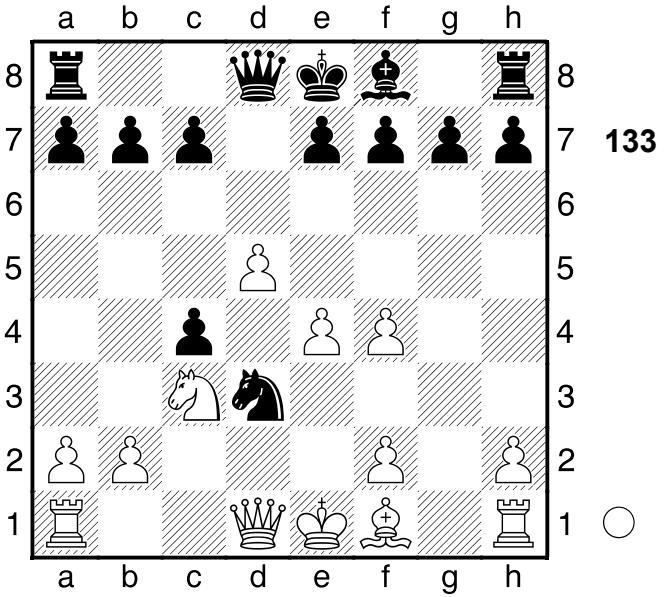
[Morozevich's idea of 8...Qd6!? doesn't look very promising either after simply 9.Bg3! . ]

### 9.Bxe5

[ 9.Be3 e6 10.f4 , as in J.Riff-I. Zaragatski, European Cup, Kemer 2007, may be even better, showing that the variation with 7...Bxf3 is close to unplayable. ]

**9...Nxe5 10.f4** Pinpointing the problem with exchanging the f3-knight on move seven: White can push an f-pawn very quickly. **10...Nd3+**

(Diagram 133)



**11.Bxd3 cxd3 12.Qxd3 Qd7 13.Qd4**

Preventing Black from castling.

[An earlier game, B.Kohlweyer-R. Kraut, German League 1992, had seen 13.0-0-0?! 0-0-0 14.e5 Kb8 15.Qe3 g6 16.Rd3 Bh6 17.Rhd1 Qf5 , when Black stood better, having successfully sorted his position out and put pressure on the f4-pawn.]

**13...Qg4?!** Targeting the f4-pawn is just wrong here.

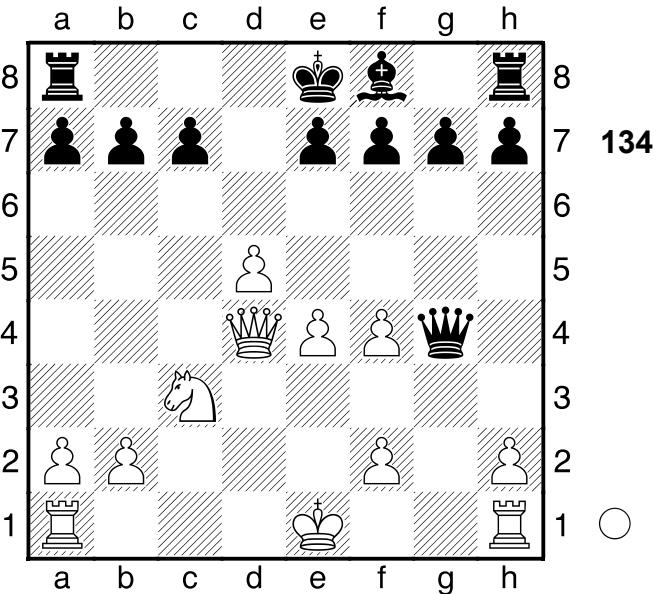
[It was better to try and continue development with 13...Qd6 , followed by ...Qa6 and ...0-0-0; for example, 14.0-0-0! (or 14.e5 Qa6 15.0-0-0 0-0-0 )

**A)** 14...Qa6 15.a4 (or 15.Qc5 Qb6) 15...0-0-0 16.Nb5 Kb8 17.Kb1 Qb6 18.Qc4 g5! 19.fxg5 Bg7 20.h4 h6 and Black still has some chances.;

**B)** Note that 14...Qxf4+? wasn't even a threat. After 15.Kb1 a6 (avoiding 15...Qd6 16.Nb5 Qd7 17.Qc4 Kd8 18.e5 and wins) 16.Qa4+ Kd8 17.Ne2! Qxf2 (but 17...Qd6 18.Nd4 Qd7 19.Qb3 Kc8 20.e5 g6 21.e6 is winning anyway) 18.Nd4 , White has a

decisive attack against the black king stuck in the centre; e.g. b5 (avoiding mate with Ne6+ etc for the moment) 19.Qa5 Qf4 (or 19...g6 20.Qc3 Rg8 21.Ne6+! fxe6 22.dxe6+ Kc8 23.Qc6 Rb8 24.Rd8+ Kxd8 25.Qd7#) 20.Nxb5 Qxe4+ 21.Ka1 Rc8 22.Nd4 g6 23.Qa4 Qg2 and now 24.Ne6+! fxe6 25.dxe6+ Qd5 26.Rxd5# . ]

**14.Qa4+ Qd7 15.Qd4 Qg4**



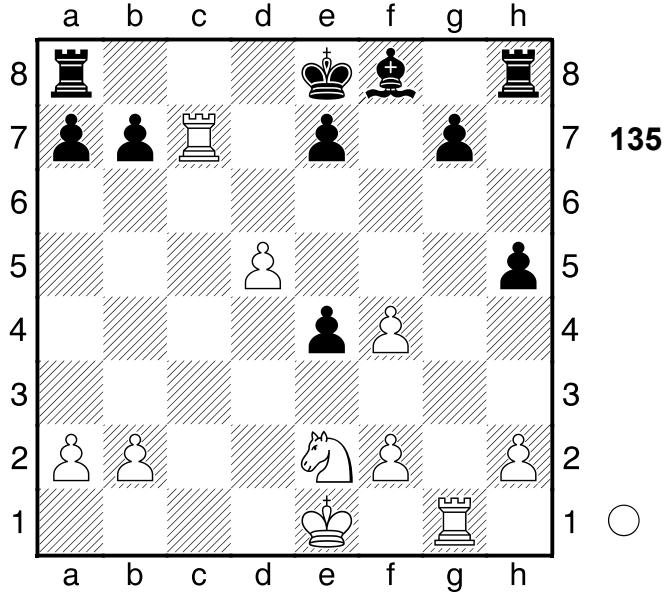
**16.Ne2!**

[White of course declines to repeat with 16.Qa4+ .]

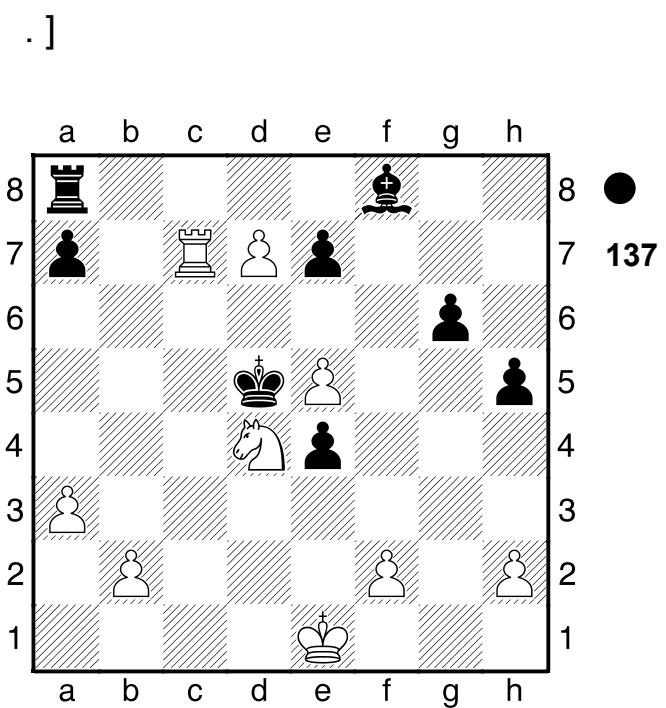
**16...h5 17.Rg1 Qf3??** The queen had to go back to d7. **18.Rc1** Threatening to trap the queen with 19 Rc3.

**18...f5 19.Rxc7 Qxe4 20.Qxe4 fxe4**

(Diagram 135)



135



137

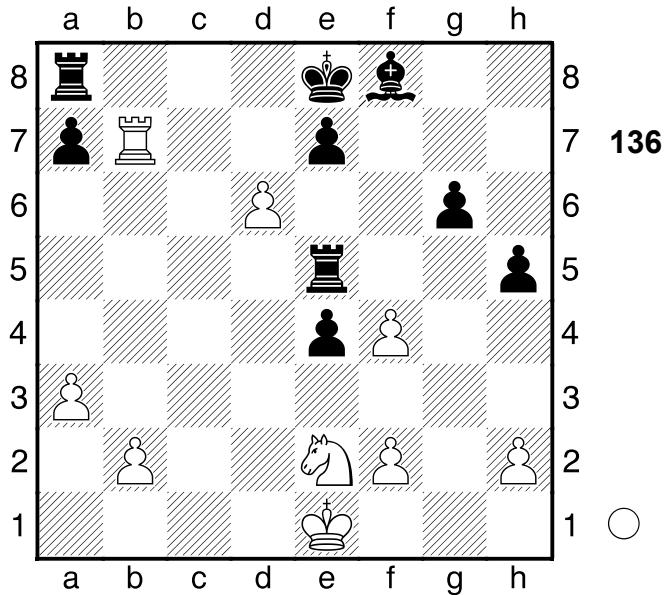
1-0

**21.Rxb7** I could have resigned here, as Black's position is hopeless. **21...Rh6**

**22.Rg5 Ra6 23.a3?!** There's no need to bother with the a-pawn.

[ 23.Nd4 is much stronger. ]

**23...g6 24.Re5 Ra5?** Black could at least have castled now. **25.d6! Rxе5**



136

**26.d7+ Kf7 27.fxe5 Ke6 28.Nd4+ Kd5**

[ 28...Kxe5 allows the small tactic  
29.d8Q Rxd8 30.Nc6+ . ]

**29.Rc7**

[ White wins after 29.Rc7 Kxd4 (or  
29...Rd8 30.e6 and 31 Rc8 ) 30.Rc8

□ Studer,N  
■ Godena,M  
 33: Plovdiv  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

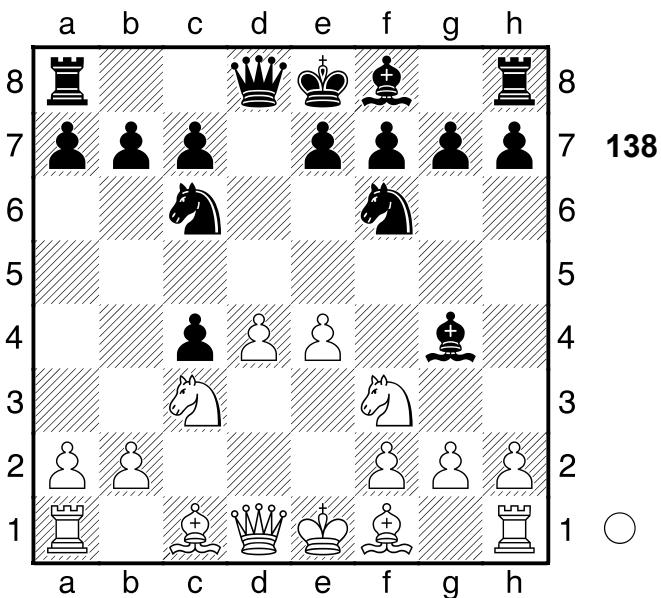
D07

2017

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 dxc4 3.e4 Nc6 4.Nf3 Nf6!?** This game takes an unusual route via the Queen's Gambit Accepted.

[In this particular variation Black usually plays 4...Bg4 here, while the text might be met by 5 e5 or 5 d5; but it seems both players were happy to transpose to the Chigorin.]

### 5.Nc3 Bg4



**6.Be3** Rather than push the d-pawn on (or give it away), White defends it solidly with the queen's bishop and prepares to regain the pawn on c4.

### 6...e6

[No one has really managed to resurrect the old line 6...Bxf3 7.gxf3 e5 8.d5

**A)** after which 8...Ne7 9.Qa4+ Nd7 10.d6! (D.Cramling) Nc6 (or 10...cxd6 11.Bxc4, G.Ligterink-G. Halldorsson, Reykjavik 1986) 11.dxc7 Qxc7 12.Nd5 Qd8

13.0-0-0 , J.Delabie-E.Van Leeuwen, correspondence 1991, is very good for White.;  
**B)** Yes, 8...Nb8 9.Bxc4 Nbd7 (and 9...Bd6 10.Qb3 Qc8 11.Rg1 0-0 12.0-0-0 , M.Mulyar-A. Stripunsky, New York 2011, is hardly attractive either ) 10.Qb3 Bc5 11.0-0-0?! (but 11.Qxb7 Rb8 12.Qa6 Bxe3 13.fxe3 Rxb2 14.Qa3 (Morozevich) is a depressing position for Black; e.g. Qb8?! 15.Bb3! Rg2 16.Kf1 Rg6 17.Ba4 ) 11...Bxe3+ 12.fxe3 Rb8 13.d6 0-0 did lead to a draw in V. Anand-A.Morozevich, Wijk aan Zee 2001.]

### 7.Bxc4

[The rare 7.Qa4 is well met by Nd7! 8.Qxc4 Nb6 9.Qd3 f5! , and if 10.Qb5? a6 11.Qb3 , as in J.Stopa-Alb.David, Bratto 2014, then f4! 12.Bxf4 Bxf3 13.Qxe6+ Be7 14.Be3 (or 14.gxf3 Nxd4 ) 14...Bh5 with a clear advantage to Black.]

**7...Bb4** In a nice parallel with his fifth move, Black now pins White's other knight and threatens to take his other centre pawn.

### 8.Qd3

[The other way to defend the e-pawn is with 8.Qc2 , which is the subject of Games 35-37.]

[Pushing either the d- or e-pawns is premature in that it commits White's structure to no gain:

a) 8.d5?! exd5 9.exd5 Bxc3+ 10.bxc3 Ne5 11.Bb5+ Kf8 12.Bc5+ Kg8 13.Qd4 Bxf3 14.Qxe5 Nd7 (or 14...Qxd5 ) 15.Bxd7 Qxd7 16.0-0 Qg4 17.Qg3 Qxg3 18.hxg3 Bxd5 and White had to rely on opposite-coloured bishops to draw, I.Nyzhnyk-D.Kadric, Dallas 2014.]

[b) 8.e5?! Nd5 9.Qd3 (if 9.0-0 Nxc3

10.bxc3 Bxc3 11.Rc1 , H.Schaufelberger-I.Zaragatski, Kemer 2007, then simply Bxd4 is possible; or if 9.Rc1 0-0 10.0-0 Bxf3 11.Qxf3 , L.Verat-K.Shirazi, Clichy 1994, then Nxe3 12.fxe3 Nxd4! 13.Qxb7 Rb8 14.Qe4 Nf5 , followed by ...Qg5, is good for Black ) 9...Na5 10.Bg5 Qd7 11.Bxd5 Qxd5 12.0-0 Bxc3 13.bxc3 was B.Gulko-I.Miladinovic, Elenite 1995, when h6 14.Bd2 Bxf3 (Gulko) gives Black the better endgame. ]

**8...Bh5!?** The point of this retreat is put more pressure on the e4-pawn by routing the bishop to g6.

[Black has far more often castled here with 8...0-0 , so we should look at that too:

**A)** 9.a3 Bxc3+ (better than 9...Ba5 10.Nd2! Bb6 11.Nb3 e5 12.d5 , which is similar to line 'c' ) 10.bxc3 Bxf3 11.gxf3 Nh5 12.Qd2 Na5 13.Ba2 .

**QUESTION:** How can Black get away with giving up not one but both bishops and then putting both knights on the edge of the board?

**ANSWER:** Because of White's compromised pawn structure: he has holes at b3, c4 and f4, his f3-pawn is weak, and his king is vulnerable in the centre. Put the f3-pawn back on g2 and White would have a big advantage with his two bishops. As it is, Black can count on good counterplay. For example, c5 14.Rb1 Qf6 15.f4 Rfd8 16.Rg1 Qh4 17.Rg5 b6 18.Ke2? (hoping for a kingside attack... which comes to nothing)

(the best option was 18.Qd1 g6 19.Qxh5 Qxh5 20.Rxh5 gxh5 21.dxc5 , when White has sufficient

compensation for the exchange ) 18...Rac8 19.d5 c4 20.Rbg1 g6 21.R1g4 Qh3 22.f5 exf5 23.exf5 h6! and Black soon won, Zs.Szabo-J.Dobos, Budapest 1994.;

**B)** 9.Bb5 Bxc3+ (Black needs to take while White is obliged to capture with the b-pawn) (after 9...Bxf3 10.gxf3 Ne7 11.a3 Bxc3+ 12.Qxc3 Ng6 13.0-0-0 White has a definite advantage, and the black knights are doing nothing on the kingside, P.Neuman-T.Vojta, Rakovnik 2011; while 9...Bh5 transposes to the next game )

10.bxc3 Bxf3 11.gxf3 Ne7 12.h4 (or 12.Bg5 Ng6 13.e5 h6 14.Bd2 Nd5 15.Rg1 a6 16.Ba4 Nde7 17.Bc2 , W.Koch-P.Treffert, German League 2007, and now c5! gives Black strong counterplay ) 12...a6 13.Ba4 c5 14.Bc2 cxd4 15.cxd4 Nh5 with mutual chances, since the white king lacks a safe home, P.Neumann-S.Brynell, Pardubice 2003.;

**C)** 9.Nd2! is the reason I prefer 8... Bh5. White secures his pawn formation, preparing both to reinforce the centre and drive the black bishops away (with f2-f3 and a2-a3). After 9...e5 (or 9...a6 10.a3! b5! 11.axb4 Nxb4 12.Qb1 bxc4 13.Nxc4 Bh5 14.h3 Bg6 15.Ne5 with an edge, A.Loginov-J. De Waard, correspondence 2011 ) 10.d5 Ne7 (after 10...Na5 11.f3 Bd7 12.a3 Nxc4 13.Nxc4 Bd6 14.0-0 , White's space advantage should also count for something, Y. Pelletier-E.Bhend, Zürich 2010 )

11.f3 Bd7 12.a3 Bd6 13.Ba2 Nh5 14.Nc4 f5 15.0-0-0! Kh8 16.Kb1 Ng6 17.Ka1 Qe7 18.exf5! Bxf5 19.Qd2 Bd7 20.Rc1 , Black had

no play at all and was crushed in A. Zhigalko-A.Karpatchev, Lille 2015. ]

**9.a3?** This natural-looking move is actually a mistake which loses a pawn.

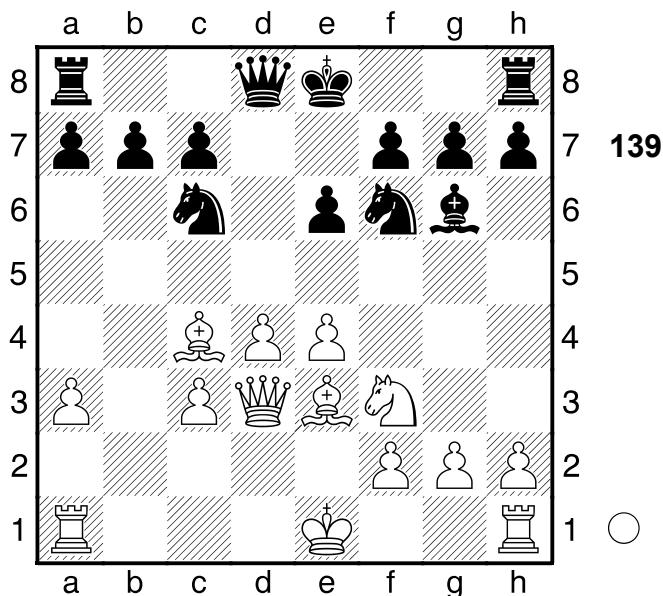
[Instead:

a) 9.Bb5 is examined in the next game.]

[b) 9.Nd2 can now be met by Ng4 , after which 10.a3 Be7 11.Ne2 e5 12.d5 Nxe3 13.fxe3 Nb8 14.Ng3 Bg6 was soon drawn in S.Sabaev-K. Reinhart, correspondence 2016. ]

[c) 9.0-0 0-0 ( 9...Bxf3 also makes sense, now that White has committed his king ) 10.a3 (safeguarding the c4-bishop against ...Na5) (again 10.Nd2 would be met by Ng4 ) 10...Ba5 11.Rfd1 Bb6 12.Rac1 Ng4!? 13.Bg5 Nce5 and here White overstepped the time limit in L.Jerkovic-J.Eman, correspondence 2016. Otherwise 14.dxe5 (both 14.Bxd8 Nxd3; and 14.Nxe5 Qxg5 are roughly equal ) 14...Nxf2 15.Qxd8 Nxd1+ 16.Kf1 Raxd8 17.Nxd1 Rd7 might have led to an interesting endgame with rook and pawn vs. two knights and a wrecked structure. ]

**9...Bxc3+ 10.bxc3 Bg6**



## 11.Bg5

[Unfortunately, 11.Nd2 fails to defend the e-pawn, since Nxe4! 12.Nxe4 Qh4 then regains the piece, after which 13.0-0 Qxe4 14.Qe2 0-0 15.Rac1 Ne7 (or 15...Na5 16.Ba2 Qd3 ) 16.Qb2 Nf5 17.Bd2 Nd6 18.Ba2 Qc6 left Black a pawn up in M. Stojanovic-I.Miladinovic, Serbian League 2017. ]

## 11...Bxe4 12.Qe3

[ 12.Bxf6 Bxd3 13.Bxd8 Bxc4 14.Bxc7 Rc8 15.Bd6 Bd5 is clearly better for Black, who has the half-open c-file and the possibility of putting a piece on c4. The seminal game M.Mädler-J.Boey, correspondence 1976, continued 16.Nd2 Kd7 17.Bf4 Ne7 18.Rc1 Rc6 19.c4 Ng6 20.Rb1 (or 20.Be3 b5 ) 20...Nxf4 21.cxd5 exd5 22.Nf3 f6 23.g3 Re8+ 24.Kf1 Nd3 25.Rxb7+ Kc8 26.Rb3 Rc1+ 27.Kg2 Rxh1 28.Kxh1 Nxf2+ 29.Kg2 Re2 should win. ]

## 12...Bd5 13.Bd3

[After 13.Bxd5 Nxd5 14.Qd3 Qd7 15.c4 Nde7 , the white d-pawn will be a target. ]

**13...Bxf3!** **QUESTION:** Why is this a good move? It doesn't inflict any damage on White's pawn structure, and bishops are better than knights, right?

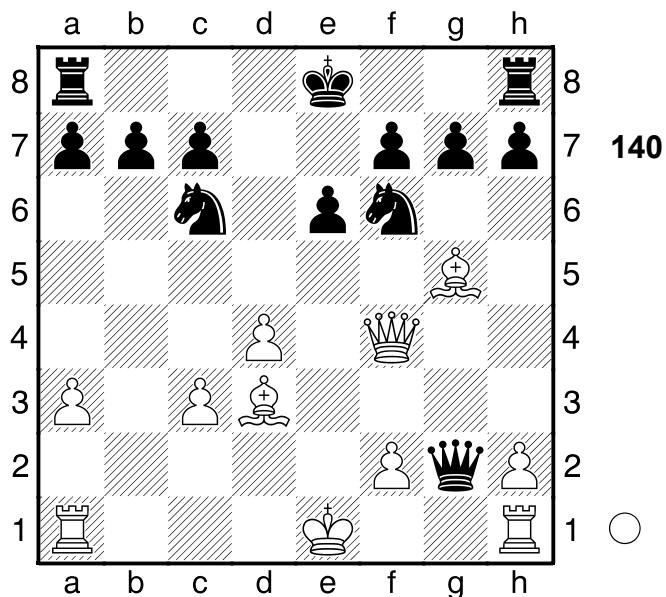
**ANSWER:** There are always exceptions and good players spot them when they occur. Here the exchange enables Black to bring out his pieces more quickly, while also challenging the white queen in the middle of the board. A pawn down, White will not be keen to trade queens, but avoiding it will allow Black's pieces to find good positions.

**14.Qxf3 Qd5 15.Qf4?** This gives another pawn away for counterplay that will never materialize.

[ 15.Qg3 was no good either, as after Ne4 16.Bxe4 Qxe4+ 17.Be3 Qd3 18.Rc1 0-0 White has lost one of his bishops and his king is stranded in the middle. ]

[ He probably had to play 15.Qxd5 Nxd5 16.Bd2 , even though e5 17.Be4 (or 17.dxe5 Nxe5) 17...0-0-0 18.dxe5 Nxe5 19.0-0-0 c6 20.c4 leaves the black knights standing proudly on the centre squares, while White's bishops are quite ineffective in this position. ]

**15...Qxg2**



**16.Kd2 Qg4** Now the queens come off anyway. **17.Qxg4**

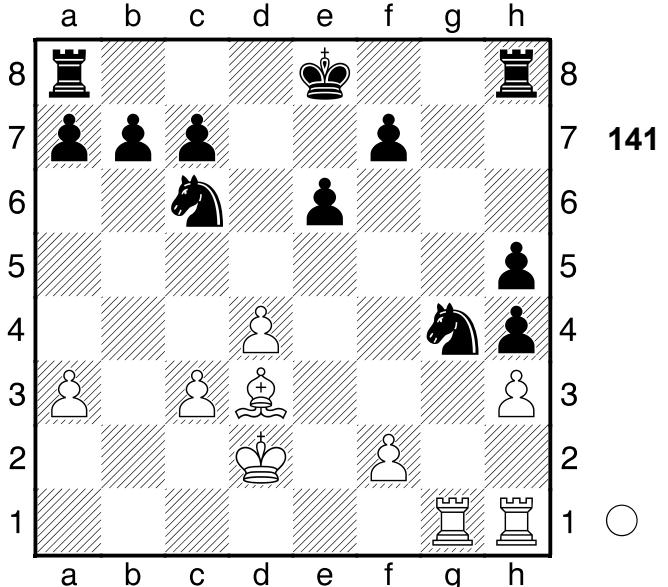
[White cannot avoid it since 17.Qe3 Nd5 forces 18.Qg3 .]

**17...Nxd3** **18.Bh4 g5** **19.Rag1**

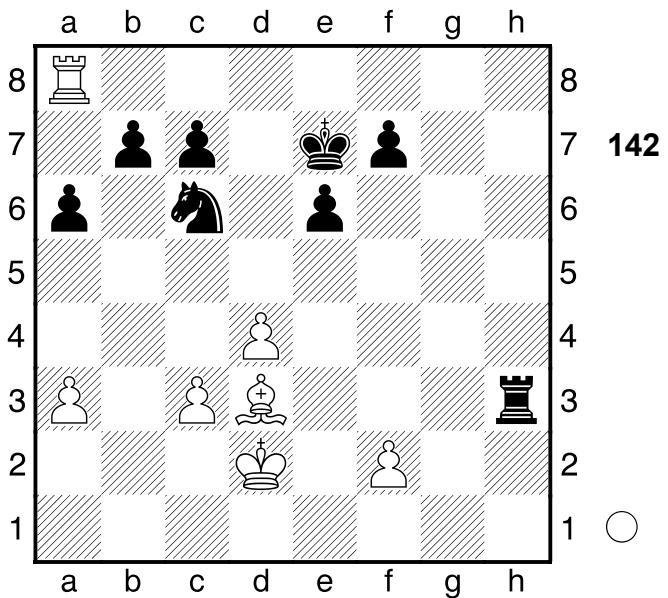
[After 19.Bxg5 Nxf2 20.Rhg1 Nxd3 21.Kxd3 Rg8 White has nothing to show for the pawns.]

**19...h5** **20.h3 gxh4**

(Diagram 141)



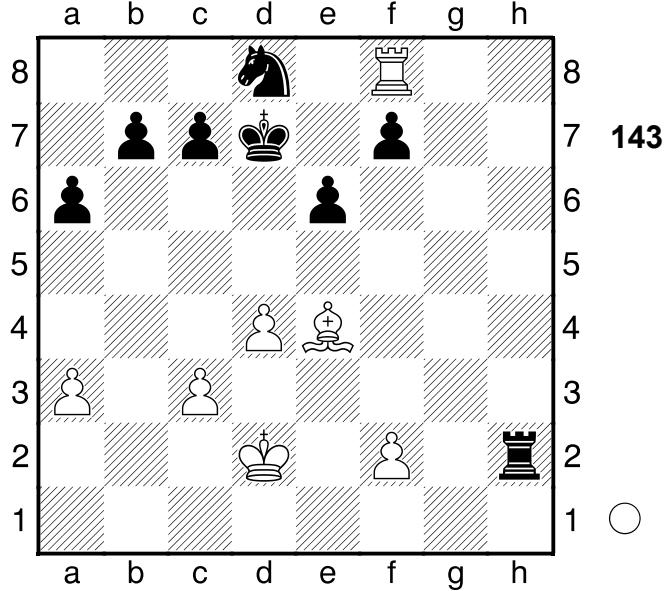
Returning one pawn to reach a winning endgame. **21.hxg4 hxg4** **22.Rxg4 h3** **23.Rxh3 Rxh3** **24.Rg8+ Ke7** **25.Rxa8 a6**



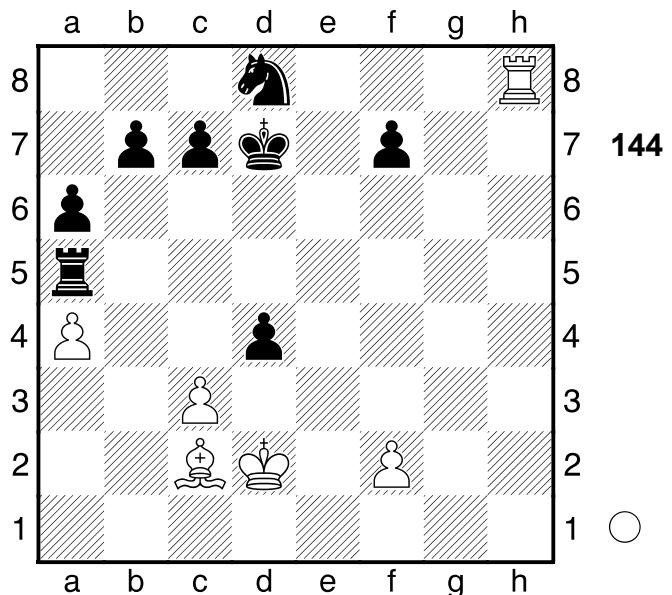
Black is a pawn up with an active rook and the superior structure. Converting these advantages should only be a matter of time.

**26.Rc8 Kd7** **27.Rf8 Ke7** **28.Rc8 Kd7** **29.Rf8 Nd8** **30.Be4 Rh2**

(Diagram 143)

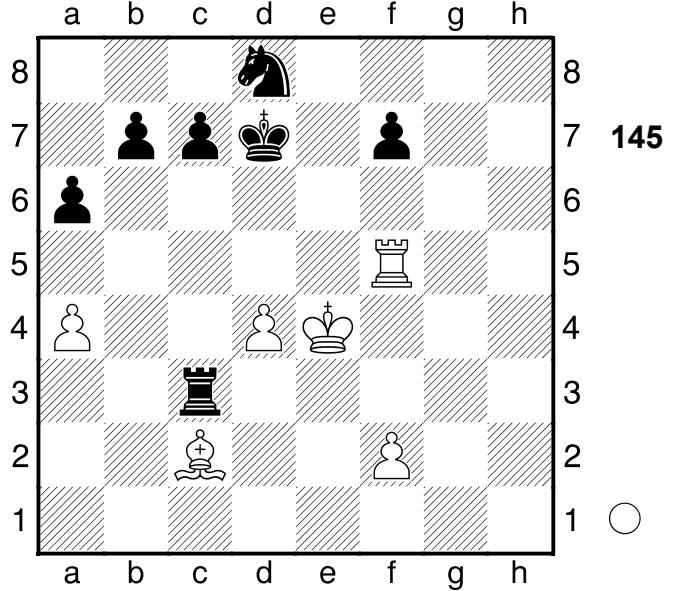


**31.Ke3 Rh3+ 32.Kd2 Rh5 33.a4 Ra5  
34.Bc2 e5 35.Rh8 exd4**

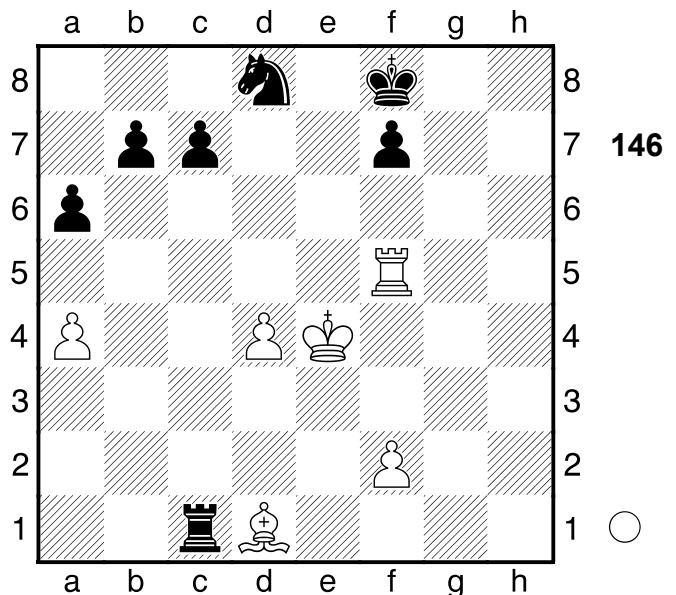


**36.cxd4 Rg5 37.Ke3 Rg1 38.Rh5  
Ra1 39.Rf5 Ra3+ 40.Ke4 Rc3**

(Diagram 145)

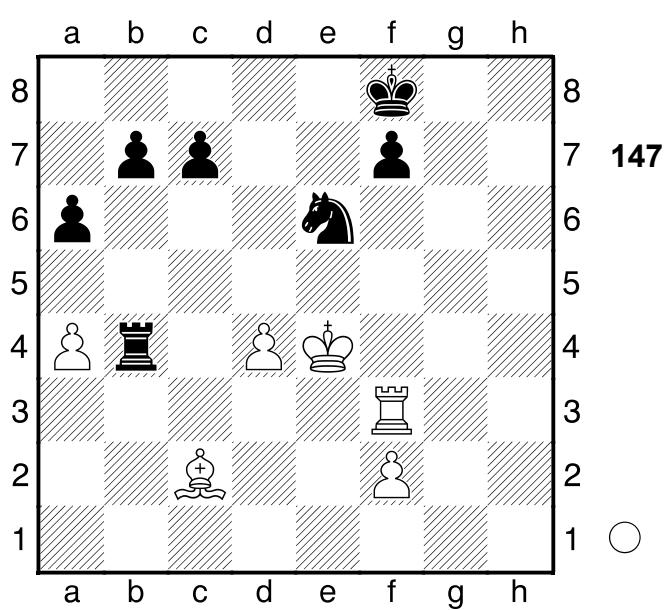


**41.Bd1 Ke7 42.Re5+ Kf8 43.Rf5 Rc1  
44.Bb3 Rc3 45.Bd1 Rc1**



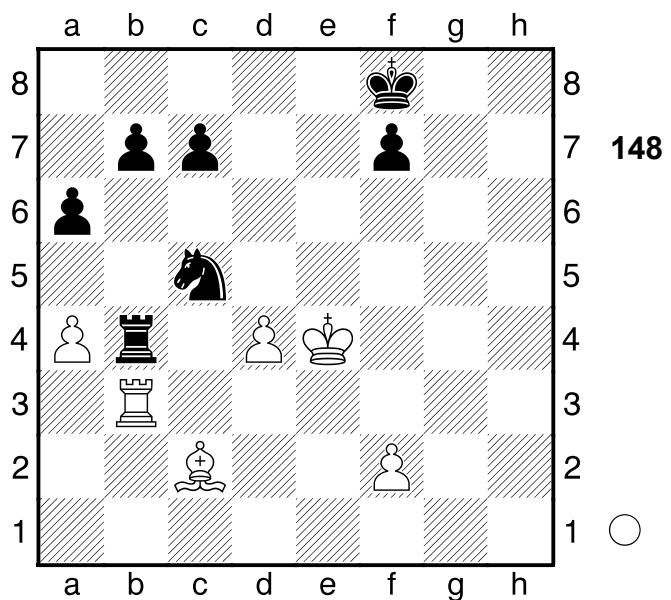
**46.Bb3 Rb1 47.Bc2 Rb2 48.Bd1 Rb1  
49.Bc2 Rb4! 50.Rf3 Ne6**

(Diagram 147)



51.Rb3?? A blunder in a lost position.

51...Nc5+



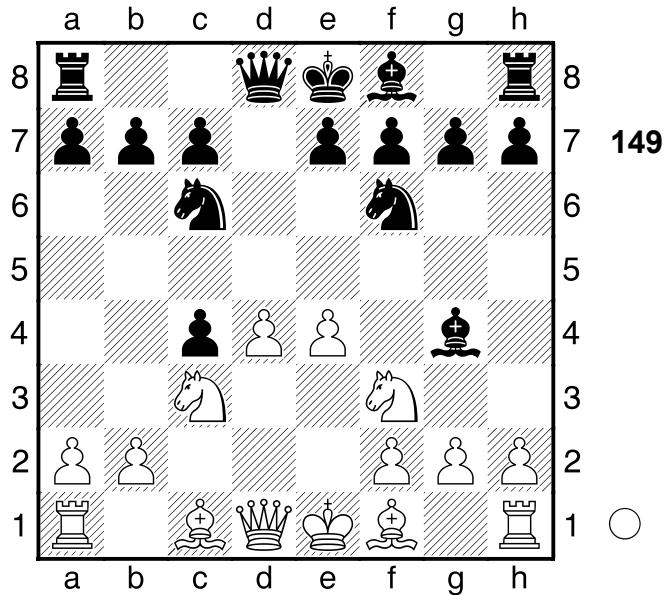
0-1

Koch,WM  
 Bronznik,V  
 34: German League  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

D07

2000

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nc3 dxc4 4.Nf3 Nf6 5.e4 Bg4**



**6.Be3 e6 7.Bxc4 Bb4 8.Qd3 Bh5**

**9.Bb5!**

[This is certainly better than losing a pawn with 9.a3? . In fact IM Bronznik wrote that he had “no desire to play 8... Bh5 again” after this game.]

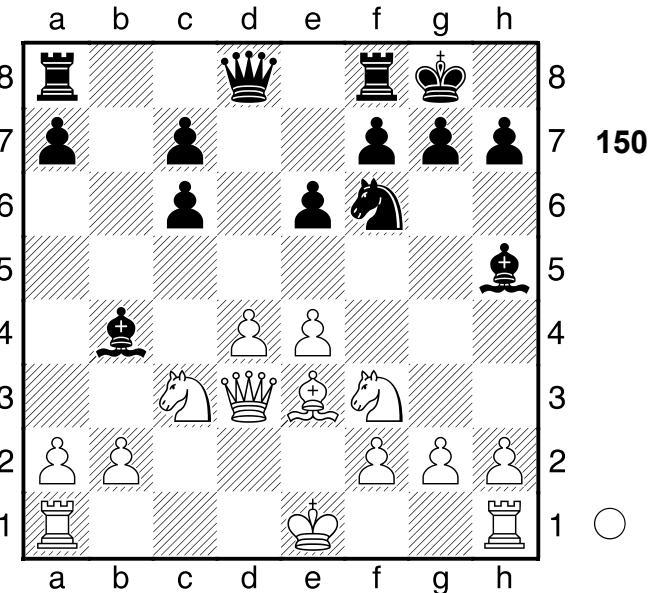
**9...0-0?!**

[Changing his mind about 9...Bg6 , as this can now be met by 10.Nd2 and the tricks with ...Nxe4 no longer work. Nevertheless, I think he should have played this anyway and then just castled. Bronznik was gloomy about his chances after 10...0-0 11.0-0 (not 11.Bxc6?! bxc6 12.0-0 c5! “and Black develops good counterplay” – Bronznik; e.g. 13.a3 cxd4 14.axb4 dxc3 15.Qxc3 Bxe4 and if 16.Rxa7? Rxa7 17.Bxa7 then Bxg2! 18.Kxg2 Qa8+ etc )

**A) 11...Qd7 12.f3 a6 13.Bxc6 Qxc6 14.Rac1** “and Black’s position is slightly worse in view of his passive g6-bishop.” ( 14.-- );  
**B) However 11...Ne7!?** doesn’t seem so bad, with various ideas of ...a7-a6 (and ...b7-b5), ...c7-c5, and ...Ned5.

A few sample lines: 12.a3 (or 12.f3 a6 13.Ba4 c5 14.Bc2 cxd4 15.Qxd4 ) 12...Bxc3 13.bxc3 a6 14.Bc4 (or 14.Ba4 c5 15.f3 b5 16.Bd1 Nc6 17.Bf2 Nd5 18.g3 c4 19.Qc2 Qa5 20.Nb1 Nb6 21.a4 Nxa4 22.Qa2 f5 ) 14...b5 15.Ba2 c5 16.f3 Ned5 17.dxc5 (or 17.Bf2 c4 18.Qc2 Qa5 19.Nb1 Nf4 ) 17...Nxe3 18.Qxe3 Nd7 19.Nb3 Qe7 . Black looks okay in all of these and, significantly, has rather more counterplay than after 8...0-0 9 Nd2! in the notes to Game 33. ]

**10.Bxc6 bxc6**



**11.Ne5!** The strategy is to leave Black with a useless bishop on h5. This is very similar to variations of the Slav Defence.  
**11...c5 12.f3** Black needs to bring his stranded light-squared bishop back into play with moves like ...f7-f6 and ...Bf7 or

...Be8. Right now he has some tactical issues to take care of.

### 12...cxd4

[ 12...Nd7 13.0-0-0 (and 13.Nc6! Qe8 14.0-0 looks even better ) 13...cxd4 14.Qxd4 Nxe5 15.Qxe5 , H.Teske-II.Schneider, German League 2006, Qh4! 16.Nb5 Bg6 17.Kb1 also gives White an edge. ]

### 13.Qxd4 c5

[ Swapping queens with 13...Qxd4 14.Bxd4 does not help Black, as he still has the problem of his stranded bishop and weak c-pawn. For example, c5 15.Be3 Rfc8 16.g4 Bg6 17.h4 (threatening to trap the bishop) h5 18.g5 Bxc3+ 19.bxc3 Nh7 20.Ke2 Nf8 21.Rab1 Rc7 (trying to keep the white rook from the seventh rank) ( 21...Rab8 22.Rxb8 Rxb8 23.Bxc5 Rb2+ 24.Ke3 Rxa2 loses to 25.Rb1 and Rb8 ) 22.Bf4 Re7 23.Nc6 Rd7 24.Nb8 Rd8 (or 24...Re7 25.Bd6 Re8 26.Nc6 and Rb7 ) 25.Rhd1 Rc8 26.Rb7 . Clearly this is not the sort of thing Black wants to go in for. ]

### 14.Qc4?

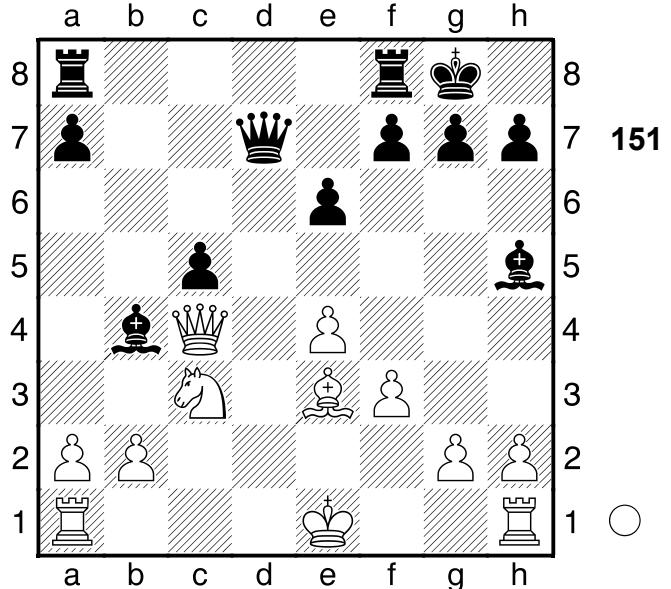
[ White should have swapped queens himself with 14.Qxd8 Rfxd8 , when 15.Kf2 Bxc3 16.bxc3 Ne8 17.g4 Bg6 18.Rhd1 leaves him in control. ]

### 14...Nd7? The engines find resources in all kinds of positions.

[ Here there was a way for Black to equalize with 14...Nd5! 15.exd5 (or 15.0-0-0 Nxe3 16.Rxd8 Nxc4 17.Rxf8+ Kxf8 18.Nxc4 Bxc3 19.bxc3 f6 and ...Be8 ) 15...exd5 16.Qf4 f6 17.0-0 (if 17.Nc6 then Bxc3+ 18.bxc3 Qe8; or 17.Ng4 d4 18.0-0 dxe3 19.Nxe3 Qd4 ) 17...fxe5 18.Qxe5 Bf7 and Black is fine. ]

### 15.Nxd7 Qxd7

(Diagram 151)

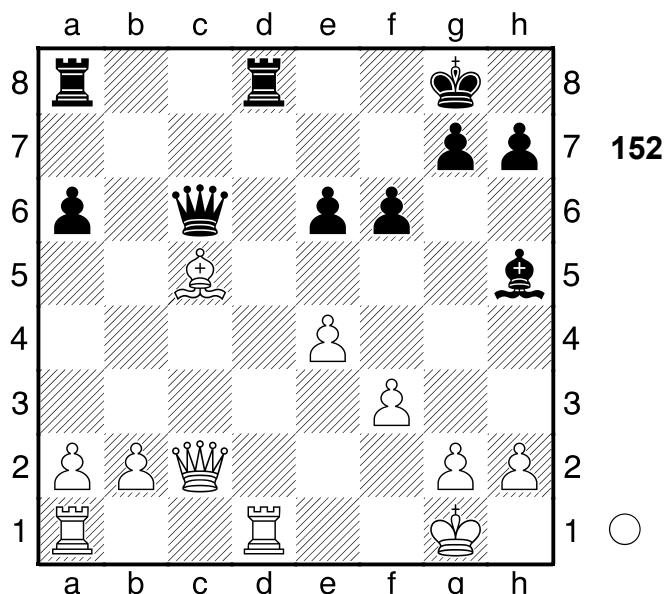


**16.Bxc5?!** This seems too hasty. White could just castle and aim to win the pawn under more favourable circumstances, since Black has no way to defend it.

**16...Bxc3+!** White may have won a pawn, but Black will have his chances due to the opposite-coloured bishops.

**17.Qxc3 Rfd8 18.0-0 f6** Preparing to bring the queen's bishop back into play.

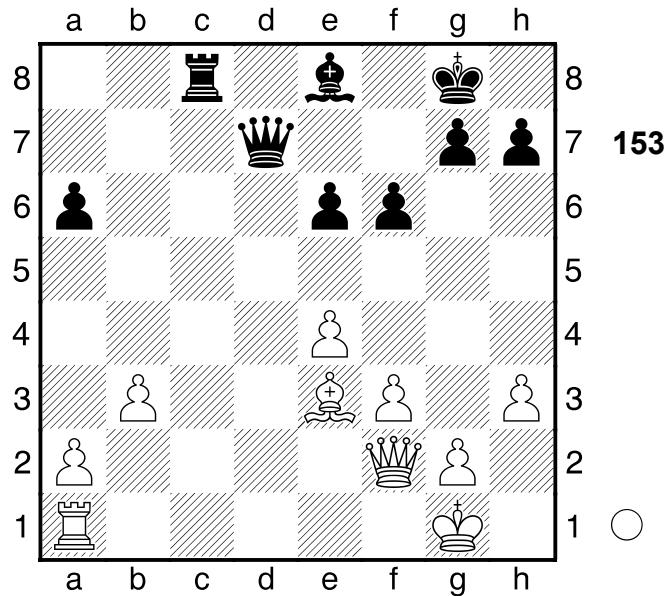
**19.Qc2 a6 20.Rfd1 Qc6**



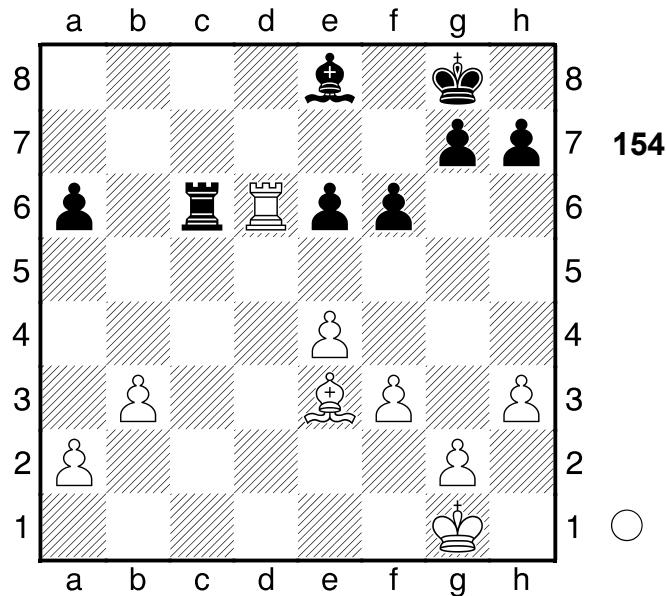
**21.Qf2 Be8** Bronznik stops his own notes here, conceding White's slight

advantage, while saying that “in the end Black managed to achieve a draw”. He did this by keeping active, offering to swap major pieces off at every opportunity, and then halving out in a pawn race.

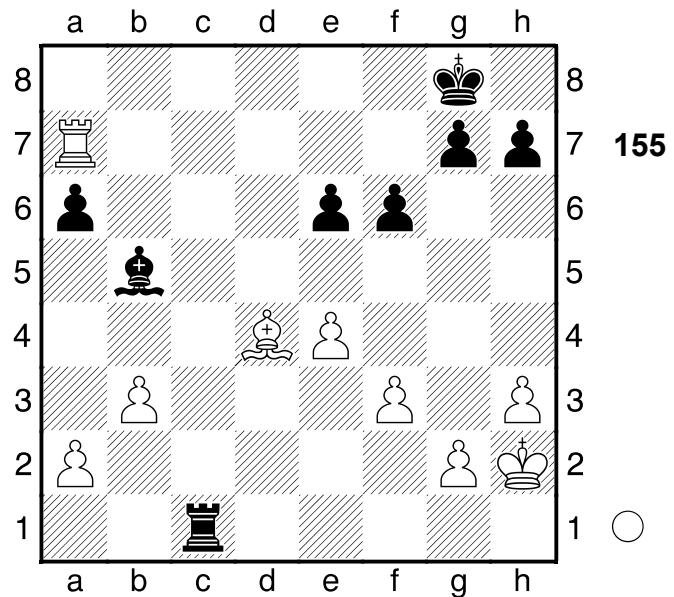
**22.b3 Rd7 23.Be3 Rad8 24.Rxd7 Qxd7 25.h3 Rc8**



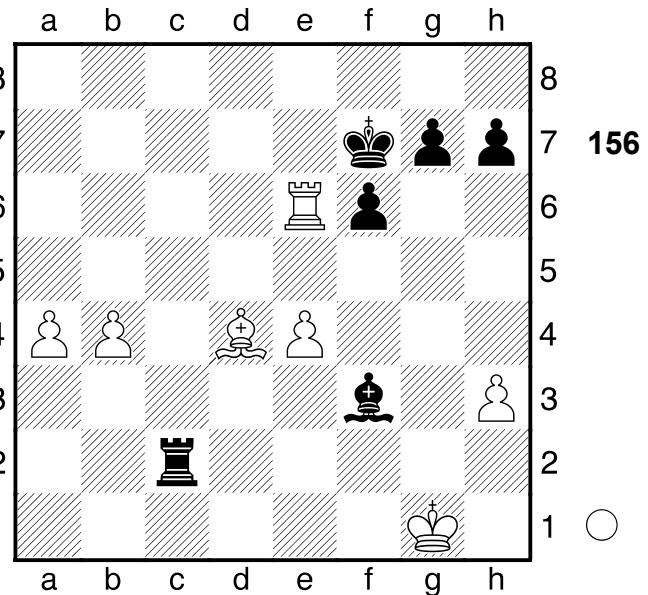
**26.Qe2 Qb5 27.Qd2 Qd7 28.Qxd7 Bxd7 29.Rd1 Be8 30.Rd6 Rc6**



**31.Rd8 Kf7 32.Ra8 Rc3 33.Ra7+ Kg8  
34.Bd4 Rc1+ 35.Kh2 Bb5**  
(Diagram 155)

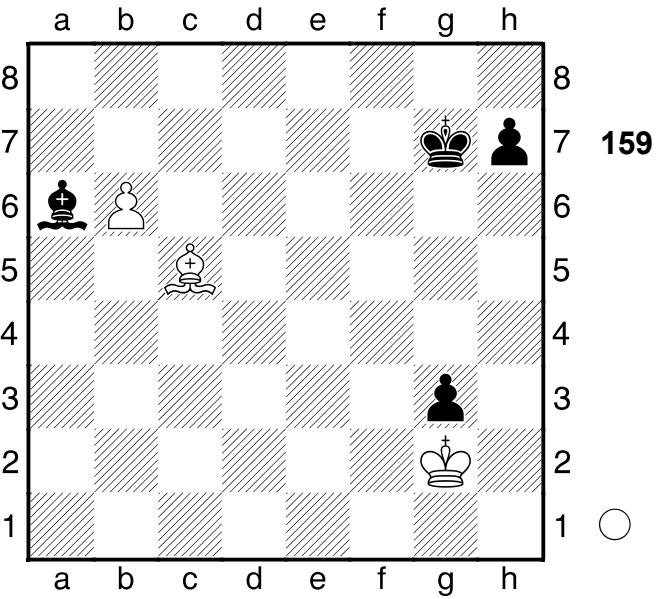
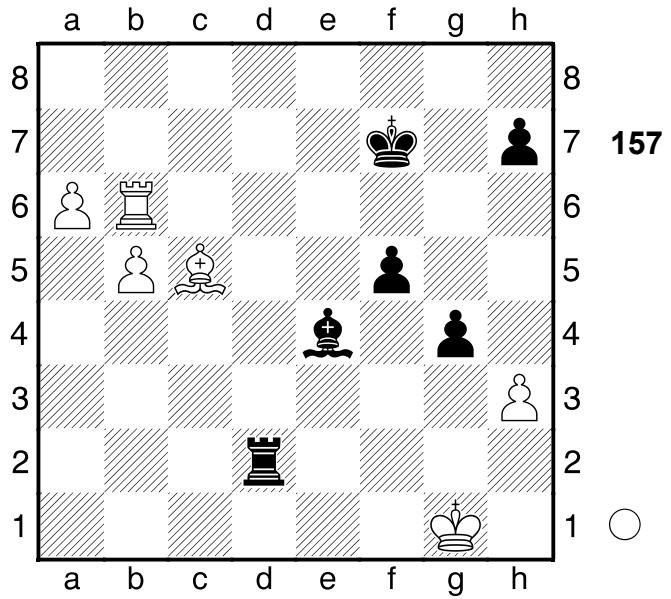


**36.a4 Bf1 37.b4 Rc2 38.Kg1 Bxg2  
39.Rxa6 Bxf3 40.Rxe6 Kf7**



**41.Rb6 Bxe4 42.a5 f5 43.a6 g5  
44.b5 Rd2 45.Bc5 g4**

(Diagram 157)

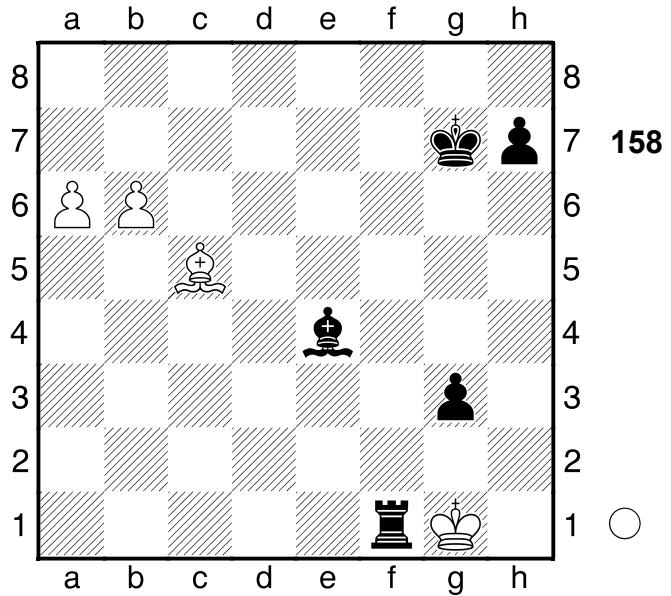


**46.hxg4 fxg4 47.Rb8**

[White might have tried 47.Rb7+! Bxb7 (otherwise 48.Re7 wins) 48.axb7 Rd8 49.Bd6 Ke6 50.b8Q Rxb8 51.Bxb8, winning a piece, but it's a draw anyway, as the endgame tablebases confirm.]

**47...g3 48.Rf8+ Kg7 49.b6 Rd1+**

**50.Rf1 Rxg1+**



**51.Kxf1 Bd3+ 52.Kg2 Bxa6**

(Diagram 159)

$\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}$

Georgiev,Ki  
 Morozevich,A  
 35: Tilburg  
 [Jimmy Liew]

D07

1994

[The immediate 8...Qe7?! worked out very well in an early game with this line:

**A)** 9.0-0-0?! Bxc3 10.bxc3 Qa3+ ( 10...Nxe4? is good too ) 11.Kd2 e5 12.d5 Na5 13.Be2 0-0 14.Nxe5?? ( 14.Ke1 is roughly equal ) 14...Nxe4+ 0-1 H.Bouwmeester-J.Boey, correspondence 1976, in view of 15.Ke1 (or 15.Qxe4 Qxa2+ 16.Qc2 Nb3+) 15...Bxe2 16.Qxe2 (or 16.Kxe2 Nxc3+) 16...Qxc3+ 17.Kf1 Qxe5 .;

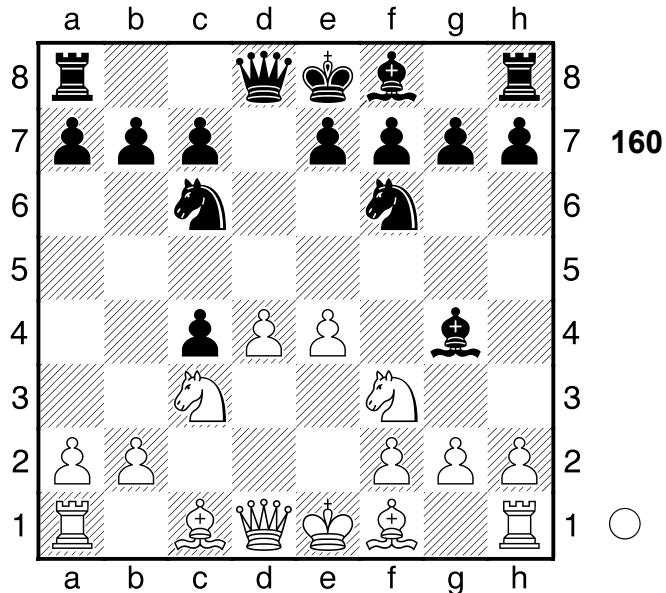
**B)** Instead, 9.Rd1 0-0 transposes to the main game;

**C)** but IM Watson's move 9.Bb5! is the main reason Black should castle first. B.Finegold-H.Denefle, Paris 1989, continued 9...0-0 10.Bxc6 bxc6 11.Ne5 c5 12.f3 Bh5 13.Nc6 Qd7 14.Nxb4 cxb4 15.Ne2 and White was clearly better. Notice that Black suffers from the same problem as in Game 34: his light-squared bishop is doing absolutely nothing. ]

**9.Rd1** The d-pawn was now under threat.

[Defending it by castling is less popular as 9.0-0-0 Bxc3! 10.bxc3 then opens the white king up a little. After Qe7 ( 10...Na5 , followed by ...c7-c5, also comes into consideration ) 11.h3 (or if 11.Bd3 e5 12.d5 Na5 13.Kb2 c6 14.Qa4 b6 15.c4 , R.Bakic-S.Zakic, Yugoslav Team Championship 1994, then Bh5! , intending ...Bg6 or ...Ng4 with good play for Black ) 11...Bxf3 12.gxf3 Rfb8 13.Bd3 b5 14.e5 (or if 14.Rdg1 e5 15.Rg5 , as in B.Culp-A.Fester, correspondence 1997, then b4 16.Rhg1 g6 17.d5 bxc3 18.Qxc3 Nd4! – Bronznik ) 14...Nd5 15.Bxh7+

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nc3 dxc4 4.Nf3 Nf6 5.e4 Bg4**



**6.Be3 e6 7.Bxc4 Bb4 8.Qc2**

This move, intending Rd1 or 0-0-0, was the suggestion of the fifth world champion, Max Euwe, who assessed the position as being clearly better for White. The queen defends the e-pawn and makes way for the a1-rook to come across and defend the d-pawn, after which White will have secured his strong centre.

[Tactics prevent Black from taking it in the meantime: 8.Qc2 Bxf3?! 9.gxf3 Nxd4? 10.Bxd4 Qxd4 11.Qa4+. On the face of it, White does appear to stand very well; but in the concrete world of modern chess, matters are rarely so simple.]

**8...0-0** Castling is the best reply, as well as the most flexible, keeping Black's options open.

*Kh8 16.Be4 b4 17.Bxd5 (or 17.c4?! b3 18.axb3 Na5!) 17...exd5 18.Kd2 Na5 19.Ke2 Nc4 20.Bd2 , and now the engine suggests Qe6! (rather 20...c5 21.Rhg1 Rb6 22.Rg5 g6 23.dxc5 Nxd2 24.Qxd2 bxc3 25.Qxc3 and White was better in A. Shirov-A.Morozevich, Amsterdam 1995 ), intending 21.cxb4 (or 21.Rhg1 Qa6!) 21...a5 , when Black has fully sufficient counterplay. ]*

**9...Qe7** Black connects his rooks and prepares to seize the initiative with ...e6-e5 and ...Nd4.

[Of Black's other possibilities, the current preference is for 9...Bxf3 10.gxf3 Nh5 , which is examined in the next two games. ]

[A third option is 9...Ne7 , intending a classical strike against the centre with ...c7-c5, but Black struggles to make a real impact after 10.Be2

. For example:

**A) 10...Qc8 11.0-0**

**A1) 11...Ng6** sets the trap 12.a3? (but simply 12.h3 Bxf3 13.Bxf3 c5 14.d5 is good for White, V.Baikov-V.Barsky, Moscow 1995 ) 12...Bxc3 13.bxc3 Nxe4 14.Qxe4? Bf5 , winning the queen.;

**A2) 11...c5** 12.dxc5 Bxc5 13.e5 Bf5 (or 13...Nd7 14.Bxc5 Nxc5 15.Nb5 – Gavrilov ) 14.Bd3 Bxd3 15.Qxd3 Ne8 16.Bxc5 Qxc5 17.Ne4 Qb6 18.Neg5 g6 19.Qa3! Qc7 20.Rc1 Qd7 21.Rfd1 Rc8 22.Qxa7 and White has a big advantage, J.Soberano-O.Vodep, correspondence 1998.;

**B) 10...Bxc3+** 11.bxc3 c5 12.0-0 Qc7

**B1) 13.dxc5?!** Ng6 and ...Nd7 is okay for Black; (not 13...Nd7?

*14.Rxd7! Qxd7 15.Ne5 etc );*

**B2)** **13.Qb1** b6?! ( 13...Rfd8 was somewhat better – Morozevich ) 14.h3 Bh5 15.g4 Bg6 16.Bd3 Rfd8?! (and here 16...Nc6 ) 17.Ne5! Qb7 18.f3 cxd4 (or 18...Rac8 19.Qb2 ) 19.cxd4 Rac8 , L.Van Wely-A. Morozevich, Amsterdam 1995, and now 20.Qb2! again looks very good for White with his bishops and centre, since Black has no counterplay; e.g. Nd7 (or 20...Nc6 21.h4 ) 21.Qa3 , threatening Ba6. ]

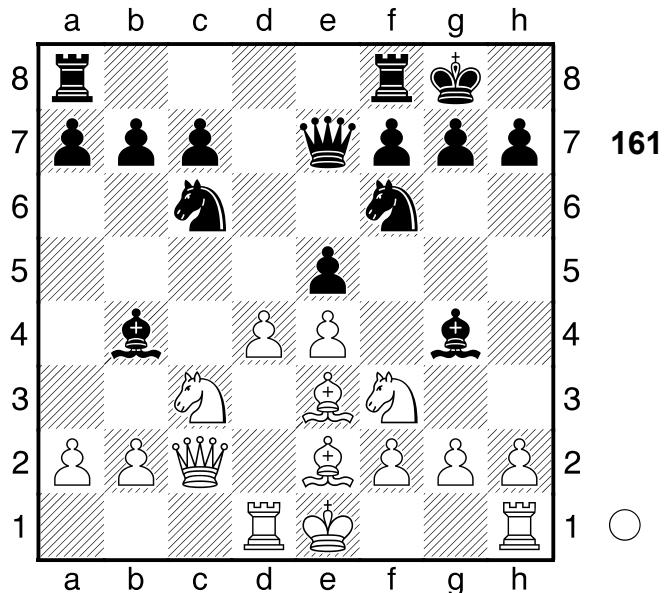
**10.Be2** Black will not get a second chance to disrupt the white kingside.

[The alternative 10.Bb5 is also met by e5! 11.Bxc6 (not 11.d5? Bxf3 12.gxf3 Nd4 13.Bxd4 exd4 14.Rxd4 Rad8 and Black has more than enough for the pawn, with threats of ...Nxd5 and ...c7-c6 ) 11...bxc6 12.dxe5 ( 12.0-0 exd4 13.Rxd4 Bxc3 14.Qxc3 Nxe4 15.Qxc6 Bxf3 16.gxf3 Nc5 is level ) 12...Nd7 13.a3 (not yet 13.Bf4? Bxf3 14.gxf3 Nxe5 15.Bxe5 Qxe5 , as in M.Lacrosse-I.Miladinovic, Saint Vincent 1998, since 16.0-0? then loses to Bd6 ) 13...Ba5 14.Bf4 Bxf3 15.gxf3 Nxe5 16.Bxe5 Qxe5 17.0-0 Rae8 18.Ne2 Re6 19.Ng3 Qf4 20.Qc5 Bb6 21.Qf5 Qh6 with mutual chances, J.Piket-A. Morozevich, London (rapid) 1995. Black cannot easily attack the white king, and his pawn weaknesses will only ever be an issue if he goes wrong. ]

[Note that playing 10.e5?! to prevent ...e6-e5 is not a good idea. After Bxf3 11.gxf3 Nd5 , Black already stands well; e.g. 12.Bd3?! Qh4 13.0-0 Nxd4 14.Bxd4 Bxc3 15.Bxc3 Nf4 (Morozevich). ]

## 10...e5

[After 10...Rad8?! 11.0-0 Ba5 12.Na4 Bb6 13.Nxb6 axb6 14.a3, White had a safe edge in G.Forintos-M.Benoit, Monte Carlo 1969. ]



Black is ready to sacrifice a pawn to keep the white king in the middle. Trying to target the d4-pawn with ...Rd8 and ...Ba5-b6 is too slow. **11.d5**

[Obviously 11.dxe5 Nxe5 gives White nothing, and a draw was agreed three moves later in Z.Sturua-I.Miladinovic, European Team Championship, Pula 1997. ]

## 11...Nd4!

[Retreating the knight with 11...Nb8 merely allows White a space advantage with no risks. ]

**12.Nxd4** White needs to play precisely to have any chance of an advantage.

[After 12.Bxd4?! exd4 13.Rxd4 Rae8 14.0-0 Bxc3 15.bxc3 Nxe4, Black regained the pawn and equalized easily in P.Lukacs-R. Bigaliev, Budapest 1995. ]

## 12...exd4 13.Rxd4!

[Here too 13.Bxd4?! gives White nothing: Bxe2 14.Qxe2 Nxe4 15.0-0

Nxc3 16.Qxe7 Bxe7 17.bxc3 Rfd8, when Black has no more problems and a draw was agreed in Pr.Nikolic-I.Miladinovic, Serbian League 2016. ]

## 13...Bxe2 14.Kxe2 Bc5?!

[It is better to throw in 14...Ng4! first.

### A) Then 15.Nd1

**A1) 15...Bc5 16.Rc4 Nxe3?!**  
17.Nxe3 Bxe3?! 18.Kxe3 Rae8 19.f4 was good for White in Ki. Georgiev-I.Miladinovic, Niksic (rapid) 2008. (19.--);

**A2) However, Black can improve on this with 15...Rad8**, as in B.Zlender-E.Gibney, correspondence 2002, which continued 16.f3 (or 16.h3 c5!) 16...Nxe3 17.Nxe3 Bc5 18.Rc4 (or 18.Rd3 f5!) 18...Bxe3 and the players agreed a draw, presumably in view of 19.Kxe3 Rxd5 20.Rxc7 Qe6 21.Rc1 Rdd8 with geometric threats.;

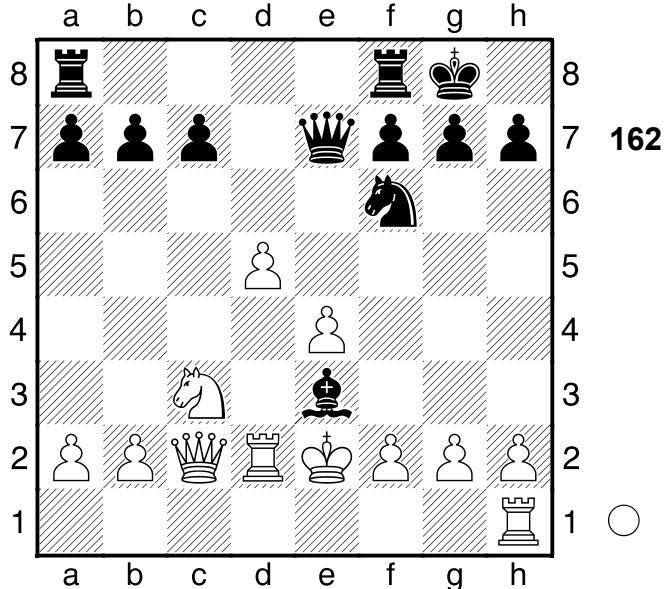
### B) Alternatively, 15.Bf4 Qf6!

(15...Bc5?! 16.Rc4 f5 17.f3 fxe4 18.Rxe4 Qd7 19.Qa4! is good for White) 16.Rxb4?! (but if 16.Qd2! Bc5 17.Rc4 Bd6 18.g3 then g5! 19.h3 gxf4 20.hxg4 fxg3 21.fxg3 Bxg3 and Black regains the pawn) 16...Qxf4 17.Ke1 f5 18.f3 Qe3+ 19.Qe2 Qc1+ 20.Nd1?! (White should accept the draw) Nf6 gave Black very good play in M. Jedrzejowski-J.Kuiper, correspondence 2002. ]

**15.Rd2!** Facing this variation for the first time, GM Kiril Georgiev has conducted the White side with great accuracy so far.

[The natural 15.Rd3 is answered by Ng4! 16.Bxc5 (or 16.Nd1 Nxe3 17.Nxe3 f5) 16...Qxc5 17.Rf3 Rae8 and Black has sufficient counterplay.]

## 15...Bxe3



### **16.Kxe3! Ng4+ 17.Ke2**

For the sacrificed pawn, Black now only has vague counterplay. White will aim to secure his king by running to the queenside with Kd1-c1-b1, so Black needs to hurry to open the position in order to create some threats.

### **17...Qg5**

[The immediate 17...f5 is met by 18.f3, hitting the knight.

**A)** After 18...Ne5 19.Kd1 Nc4 20.Re2 c6 21.Kc1 Rac8 22.Kb1, White has brought his king back to safety, while Black has not generated sufficient threats, P. Genov-I.Miladinovic, Perpignan 2005. (22.--);

**B)** Or 18...fxe4 19.Nxe4 (but not 19.fxg4?? e3 and the threat of ... Rf2+ wins material) 19...Nf6 20.Kd1.]

### **18.Kd1 f5**

[The alternative is to try and open the queenside, as per Miladinovic, with 18...c6!?.

**A)** 19.dxc6? bxc6 20.Re1 Ne5 21.f3 Nc4 22.Rd3 Rfd8 is an example of how quickly the game can turn if White plays

without purpose. His king is denied the c1-square and the immediate threat of ...Rxd3+ followed by ...Nxb2 is impossible to meet.

(22....);

**B)** 19.d6? is also a mistake, since the passed pawn is more of a liability than an asset; e.g. Rad8 20.g3 b5 21.f4 Qc5 22.Kc1? Ne3 23.Qd3 b4 24.Re2 Ng4 and Black wins material.;

**C)** 19.Qd3 is therefore best, when 19...cxd5 20.Nxd5 Nf6 (not 20...Rac8? 21.Qg3 and h2-h3) 21.f3 (and not 21.Nxf6+? Qxf6 22.Kc1 Rad8) 21...Nxd5 22.exd5 Rad8 23.Kc2 Rd6 24.Rhd1 leaves White a safe pawn up, though it won't be a simple matter to convert it with all the minor pieces off the board.]

### **19.exf5**

[Clearly 19.f3?? is not possible due to Ne3+ ;]

[but White could have prepared it with 19.Re1! Rae8 (not 19...Nxh2? 20.f3) 20.Qb3. After Kh8 21.f3 (21.h3 Ne5 22.f3) 21...Ne3+ (not 21...Nf6? 22.e5; or 21...Ne5? 22.Nb5) 22.Kc1 (the black knight risks not getting out alive so Black has to resort to some tactical tricks) fxe4 23.Nxe4 Rxe4 24.fxe4 Rf1 25.Qd1! (25.Rxf1 Nxf1 leads to a more difficult queen ending) 25...Nxd1 26.Rxf1 Kg8 27.Kxd1 Qe5 28.Re1, White's rooks should win the endgame, since the black queen is reduced to blockading duty.]

### **19...Rae8**

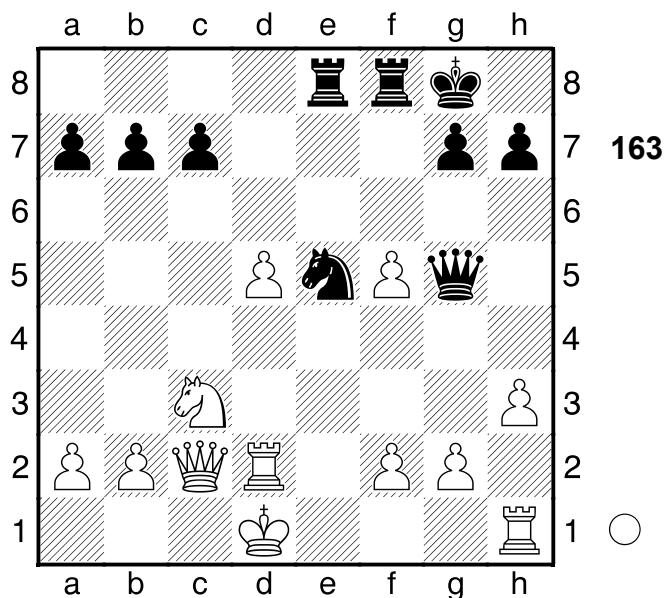
[Morozevich prefers to set his strong grandmaster opponent practical problems than technical problems, as after either 19...Qxf5 20.Qxf5 Rxf5 21.f3 Ne3+ 22.Kc1]

[or 19...Rxf5 20.Ne4 Qf4 21.h3 Nf6 22.Nxf6+ Rxf6 23.Re1 , as in J.Vigus-T.Bromann, Witley 2001, when White remains a good pawn up (even if Bromann managed to draw his game). ]

## 20.h3!

[Not 20.Ne4? Qxf5 21.Re1 Rxe4! (these are the kind of threats White has to watch out for) 22.Rxe4 Nxf2+ 23.Rxf2 Qxf2 24.Qxf2 Rxf2 and the rook ending is drawn. ]

## 20...Ne5



## 21.Re1? QUESTION: Is it really necessary to give up the g-pawn?

[ANSWER: No, but then White has to consider the consequences of 21.g4 h5!? , which is more easily done away from the board. For instance, he has to find 22.d6! for a start, followed by Nc4 (or if 22...hxg4 23.Qb3+ Rf7 24.dxc7 Qxf5 25.Rd8 Qf3+ 26.Kc2 Qf5+ (Ftacnik), then 27.Kc1 Qg5+ 28.Kb1 Rxd8 29.Ne4! Qe7 30.cxd8Q+ Qxd8 31.Rd1 Qe7 32.Nd6 and wins; finally, 22...cxd6 23.Qb3+ Kh7 24.Qxb7 Nc4 25.Rd4 Rb8 (Bronznik) fails to 26.Qd5! Nxb2+ 27.Ke2 Rfe8+ 28.Kf3 Qe7

29.Ne4 and Black resigned in P. Makovsky-Marc.Hansen, correspondence 2004 ) 23.d7! Nxd2 24.dxe8Q Rxe8 25.Qxd2 Rd8 26.Nd5 Qxd2+ 27.Kxd2 Rxd5+ 28.Ke3 with a winning rook endgame. ]

## 21...Qxg2 22.Rde2 Qf3 23.Qe4 Qh5!

After this move Black is back in the game.

[Grabbing another pawn with 23...Qxh3?? would be a blunder because of 24.d6! (rather than 24.f4? Nf3! ) 24...cxd6 25.f4 (Bronznik) and White wins, as all knight moves now fail to 26 Qd5+ (apart from Nf7 26.Qxe8! ). ]

## 24.f3

[Both 24.Kc1 Rxf5 ]

[and 24.Nb5 Nf3 are level. The text move sets a little trap. ]

## 24...h6!

[Giving the king some luft, and not falling for 24...Nxf3?? 25.Qxe8 Rxe8 26.Rxe8+ Kf7 27.R1e7+ Kf6 28.Ne4+ Kxf5 29.Ng3+ and wins; (or 29.Rf8+! Kg6 30.Re6# . )]

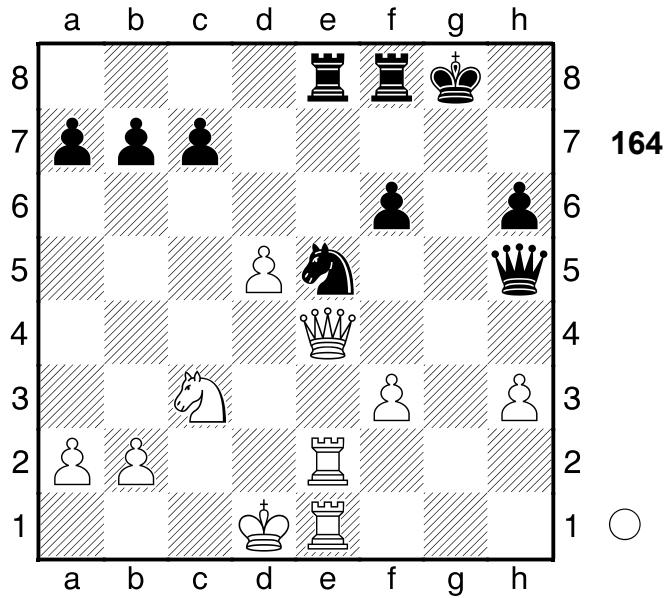
## 25.f6 White opts to jettison his front f-pawn.

[Not now 25.f4? Nf3! 26.Qxe8 Rxe8 27.Rxe8+ Kh7! and Black is clearly better. The queen is boss in this position since she has a whole board of weak pawns to attack. ]

## 25...gxf6

[Obviously not 25...Rxf6?? 26.f4 and wins. ]

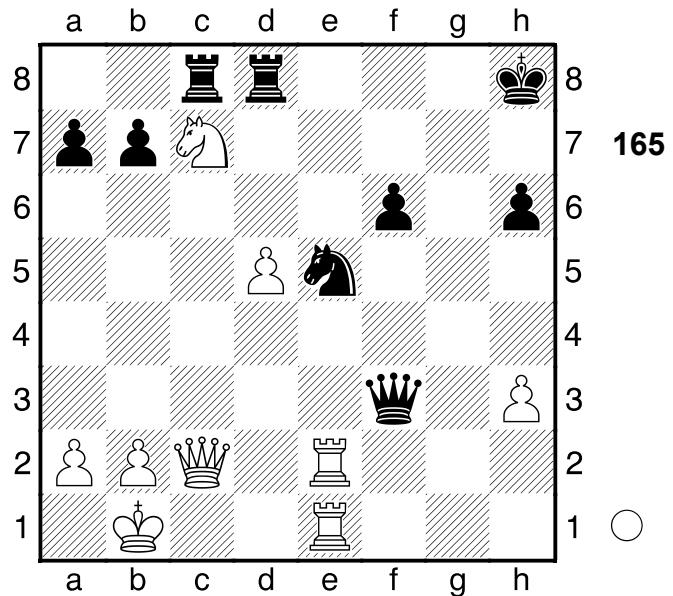
[But on this turn 25...Nxf3! worked again: 26.Qxe8 Rxe8 27.Rxe8+ Kf7 28.R8e7+ (or 28.R1e7+?! Kxf6! – Dunnington ) 28...Kg6! 29.Rxg7+ (or 29.R1e4 Ng5+ ) 29...Kxf6 30.Ree7 Ne5+ 31.Kc1 Qf3 and Black draws, according to the engine. ]



[ 29...c6 30.Nc7 Re7 31.d6 Rd7 had to be played, when Black is still in the drawing zone; e.g. 32.Ne6 Rg8 33.Rf2 Qd3 34.Qxd3 Nxd3 35.Rxf6!? Nxe1 36.Rxh6+ Rh7 37.Rxh7+ Kxh7 38.d7 c5 39.d8Q Rxd8 40.Nxd8 b5 and the knight endgame is drawn. ]

### 30.Nxc7! Rfd8

[ 30...Nd3? fails to 31.Re7 , since Nxe1 32.Qh7# is mate. ]



**31.Re3 Qh5 32.Rc3 Qg6** Black has nothing better than to exchange queens, even though the passed d-pawn will now decide the game. **33.Qxg6 Nxg6**

### 34.Re6 Rd7 35.d6 Rf8?!

[ But if 35...Rcd8 then 36.Rxf6 Rxd6 37.Ne6! Re8 38.Rxg6 Rxde6 39.Rxe6 Rxe6 40.Rc8+ Kg7 41.Rc7+ Kg6 42.Rxb7 with a winning rook endgame. ]

(Diagram 166)

### 26.Kc1 Kg7

[ Now 26...Nxf3?? fails again: 27.Qxe8 Rxe8 28.Rxe8+ Kf7 29.R1e7+ Kg6 30.Rg8+ Kf5 31.Ne2 Qxh3 32.Ng3+ Kf4 33.Re4# . ]

### 27.Qc2

[ Not 27.d6?? because of Nxf3! 28.Qxe8 Rxe8 29.Rxe8 Nxe1 30.d7 Qf5 (Bronznik) and the threat of mate on c2 means that Black picks up the d7-pawn. ]

### 27...Qxf3?! To and fro.

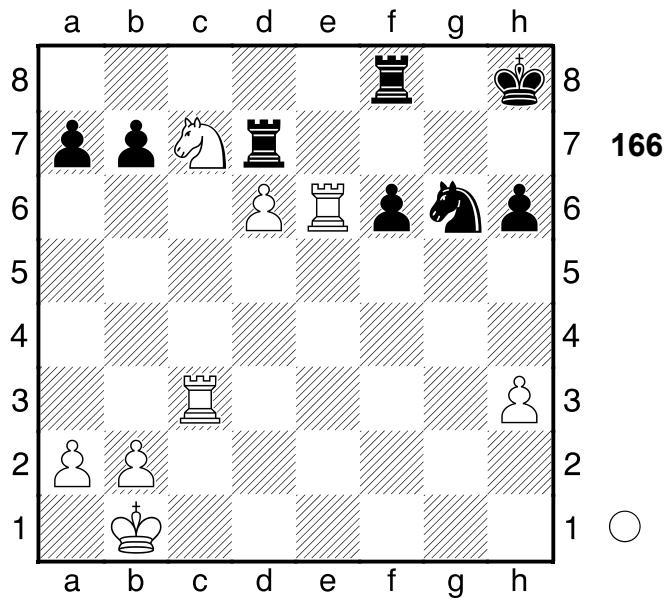
[ After 27...Nxf3! 28.Re7+ Rxe7 29.Rxe7+ Rf7 30.Rxf7+ Kxf7 31.Qh7+ Kf8 32.Qxc7 Qxh3 , the engine says "draw" once more. But you can quite see why a human would reject this at the board. ]

### 28.Kb1! Now that the white king has scurried away, things begin to get more tricky for Black.

### 28...Kh8

[ Not 28...Qxh3?? 29.Rg1+ Kh8 30.Rh2 Qe3 31.Rg6! Nxg6 32.Qxg6 and Black has to shed ruinous material to avoid mate. ]

### 29.Nb5 Rc8? Morozhevich overestimates the pin and goes down.



166



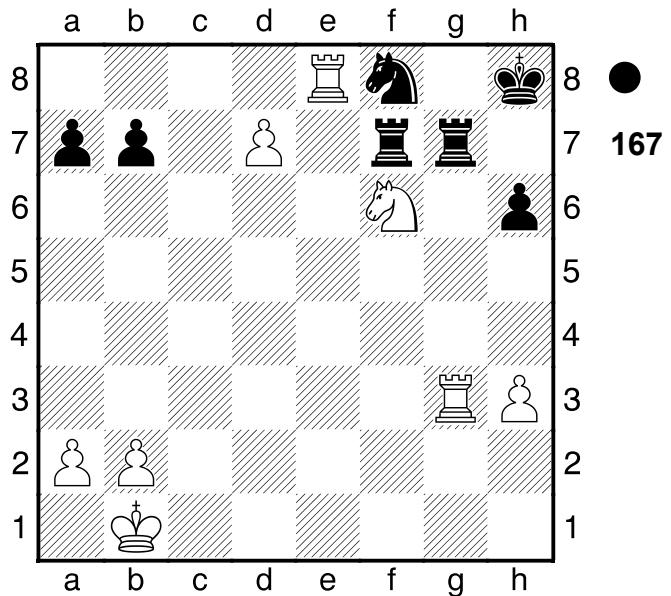
**36.Nd5 Rff7 37.Nxf6 Nf8**

[Or 37...Rd8 38.Rc7 Ne5 39.Rce7  
Rdf8 40.Rxe5 Rxf6 41.d7 Rd6  
42.Rc5 etc. ]

**38.Rg3 Rg7 39.Re8 Rdf7**

[Or 39...Rxg3 40.Rxf8+ Kg7  
41.Nxd7 . ]

**40.d7**



167



**1-0**

**Schaufelberger,H**  
 **Nemeth,M**  
 36: Balatonlelle  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

D07

2004

databases. After damaging the opposing pawn structure he logically moves his pieces across to target the weakened squares on the kingside. Black is also now threatening to play ...e6-e5, which explains White's next move.

**11.e5** Preventing ...e6-e5, opening the a2-h7 diagonal, and giving his pieces the e4-square. The downside is that it renders his centre immobile, while Black now has access to both d5 and f5.

[But what can White do instead?

a) 11.0-0 is rather castling into it:  
 $Qh4!$  12.Ne2 (not 12.Kh1?  $Bd6!$   
 13.e5  $Bxe5!$  14.dxe5  $Qxc4$  15.Rg1  
 $Qh4$  16.Rg4  $Qh3$  17.Qe4 f5 18.Rh4  
 $fxe4$  19.Rxh3 Nf4 and White has no  
 compensation for the pawn, G.Van  
 der Stricht-I.Zaragatski, Belgian  
 League 2006 ) 12...e5 13.d5 Nd4

**A)** both 14.Bxd4 exd4 15.Nxd4

(and 15.Ng3 Rae6!) 15...Bd6  
 are very good for Black;

**B)** 14.Nxd4 exd4 15.Rxd4 Bc5  
 16.Rfd1 , H.Zöbisch-G.Kuba, Graz  
 2004, and now Black should refuse  
 the exchange in favour of Nf4  
 17.Bf1 Bd6 18.e5  $Bxe5$  19.Bxf4  
 $Bxf4$  20.h3 Qg5+ 21.Bg2 Rad8  
 with a clear advantage.]

[b) 11.h4 prevents ...Qh4, but Black  
 can play Qf6! instead, hitting the f3-  
 pawn and intending variously ...Nf4,  
 ...Rad8, and ...e6-e5.]

[c) 11.a3!? is logical,

**A)** since 11...Bxc3+? 12.Qxc3 Qh4  
 13.d5 is good for White ( 13.-- );

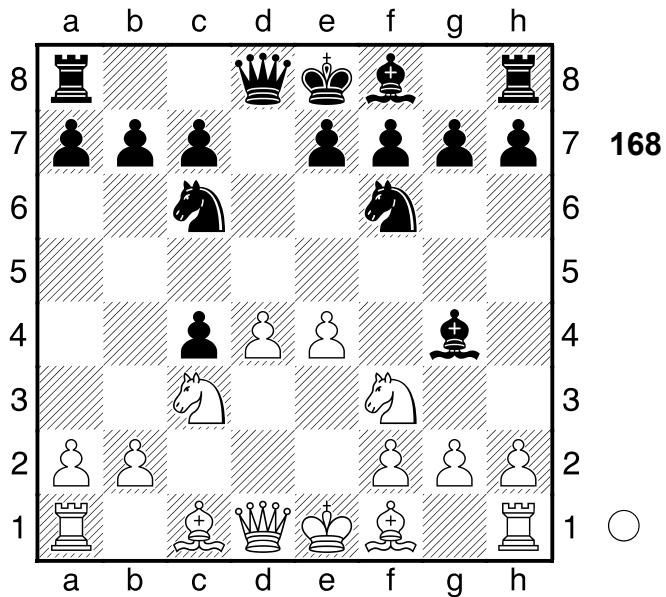
**B)** while 11...Ba5 gives him the  
 option of b2-b4.

**B1)** For example, 12.e5

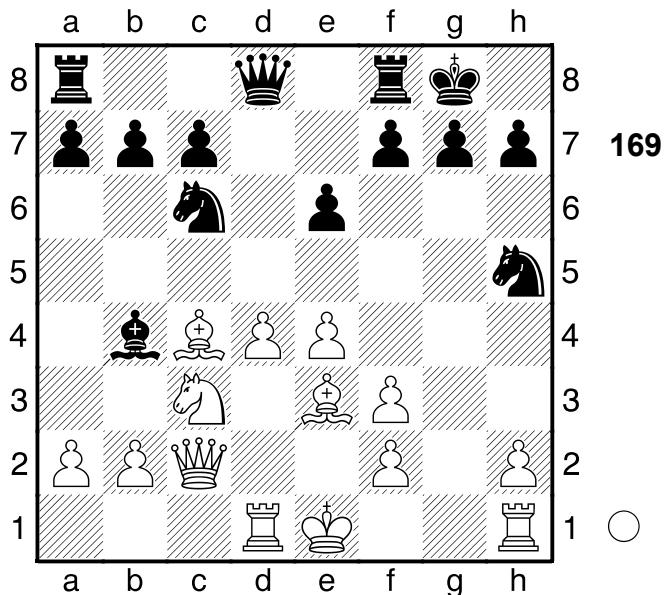
**B1a)** 12...Ne7 13.b4 Bb6  
 14.Qe4

**B1a1)** and now 14...Nd5??  
 (as after 12 Qe4 below) just  
 loses a pawn;

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nc3 dxc4 4.Nf3  
 Nf6 5.e4 Bg4**



**6.Be3 e6 7.Bxc4 Bb4 8.Qc2 0-0  
 9.Rd1 Bxf3 10.gxf3 Nh5**



This is currently Black's favoured option  
 and the one with the best score in the

**B1a2)** while 14...Nf5

15.Ne2 g6 16.Ng3 Nhg7  
17.h4 gives also White something (such as h5  
18.Qxb7). ( 18.-- );

**B1a3)** But 14...c6!

seems playable, intending  
15.Qg4 (or 15.Qh4 Nd5!  
16.Bg5 f6) 15...g6 16.Bh6  
Nf5 17.Bxf8 Qxf8 18.Ne2  
a5 with good compensation for the exchange.;

**B1b)** If Black doesn't like that then 12...Bxc3+ 13.bxc3 Ne7 is much the same as the main game.;

**B2)** Note that playing 12.b4 Bb6 first doesn't force this line, as 13.e5 (while 13.d5? Ne5 14.dxe6? Qh4 15.e7 Bxe3 16.exf8Q+ Rxf8 was catastrophic for White in A. Lupor-I.Zaragatski, Bad Wörishofen 2006 ), can be answered by 13...Nxd4! 14.Qe4 f5 15.exf6 Nxf6 16.Rxd4 Nxe4 17.Rxd8 Nxc3 18.Bxe6+ Kh8 19.Rd3 Nb5 with equality, D. Secchi-G.Perini, correspondence 2008. ]

**11...Ne7** Black immediately drops his knight back, aiming for the holes on the weak light squares.

[Further significance of White's 11 e5 is seen after 11...Qh4?! 12.Qe4!, challenging the black queen and regaining control over the f4-square.]  
[Other moves may be playable, but if White then just castles, Black will be committed to a less optimal move in a version of the main lines; for instance, after 11...Kh8?! 12.0-0! (rather than 12.Qe4 f5! and ½-½ F.Levin-M. Breutigam, German Championship, Altenkirchen 2001 )]

[or 11...g6!? 12.0-0! (rather than 12.Qe4 Na5 13.Be2 f5! 14.exf6 Qxf6 15.0-0 Bxc3 16.bxc3 c6 , when the white bishops are contained and Black potentially has both c4 and f4 for his knights. )]

**12.0-0**

[Other moves fail to achieve anything for White:

a) 12.Qe4 Nd5 (or 12...c6 first) 13.Qg4 (or 13.Bd2 c6 14.Rg1 Bxc3 15.bxc3 f5 16.exf6 Qxf6 17.Bd3 g6 and Black is clearly better, B.Latzke-M.Breutigam, German Championship, Höckendorf 2004 ) 13...g6 14.Bg5 Qd7 15.0-0 Bxc3 16.bxc3 f5 17.exf6 Nhxf6 18.Bxf6 Rxf6 with a good position for Black, J.Eslon-V.Gallego Jimenez, Zaragoza 1996. ]

[b) 12.Bg5 Qd7 13.Qe4 Nd5 14.Qg4 f6!? (or 14...g6) 15.Bxd5?! Qxd5 16.Bh6 , R.Bigaliev-A. Karpatchev, Istanbul 2010, and now Qxa2! 17.0-0 (or 17.Rg1? Qxb2) 17...Bxc3 18.bxc3 fxe5 19.dxe5 Qe2 is good for Black. ]

**12...Bxc3** Black gives up his second bishop to eliminate the c3-knight before it moves away to e4 or e2. The drawback is that it gives White a new c-pawn to fight for the d5-square.

[The more common alternative is for Black to claim that square as his own with 12...c6 , which we will look at in the next game. ]

[It's important to realize that the white king is safe from attack for the time being. After 12...Nf5?! 13.Kh1 Qh4?! 14.Rg1 Rad8? 15.Ne4 (or 15.Rg4! Qh3 16.Qe4) 15...Be7? 16.Rg4 Qh3 17.Nd2 c5 18.Bf1 , White won easily in P.Van der Sterren-E.Lobron, Munich 1994. ]

**13.bxc3**

[After 13.Qxc3 Nd5 White is left

without a pawn break, and I much prefer the knights in this position. Going for the queenside pawns with 14.Qb3 c6! 15.Qxb7? Rb8 16.Qxc6? would be a big mistake in view of Nxe3 17.fxe3 Qg5+ 18.Kh1 Ng3+! 19.hxg3 Rxb2 and White gets mated.]

**13...c6** Nemeth keeps his options with his e7-knight.

[More usually 13...Nd5 is played straight away, when 14.Kh1 c6 15.Rg1 f5

**A)** 16.Bg5 Qe8 17.Bf1 b5 18.c4 bxc4 19.Bxc4 Kh8 leads to a mostly blocked position where Black has a nominal weakness on c6, but it is hard to see how White might bring serious pressure to bear. ( 19....-- );

**B)** And it is possible for White to lose as well; for example, 16.Qc1 Kh8 17.Bd2 Rc8 18.Bb3?! Qh4! 19.Bg5 Qh3 20.Rd3 f4 (now the g5-bishop is in danger) 21.Bxd5?! (or 21.c4?! Ne3!; so 21.Qd1 was necessary, and if h6 then 22.c4) 21...cxd5 22.Be7 Rf7 23.Bd6 Qf5 and Black stood very well, A.Fernandes-C.Köpke, European Championship, Dresden 2007.;

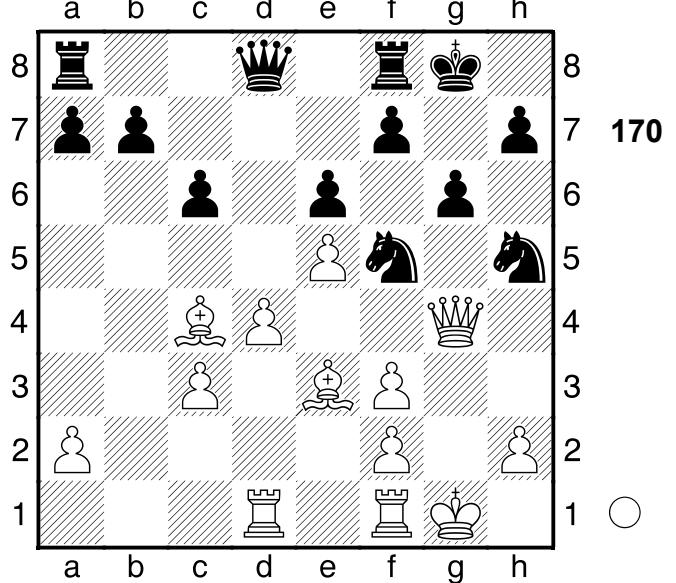
**C)** Not 16.exf6?! Qxf6 . ]

**14.Qe4**

[Instead, 14.Kh1 Nd5 would transpose to the previous note. Now Nemeth takes the chance to post his knight on a different square.]

**14...Nf5?!** 15.Qg4 g6

(Diagram 170)



**16.Kh1**

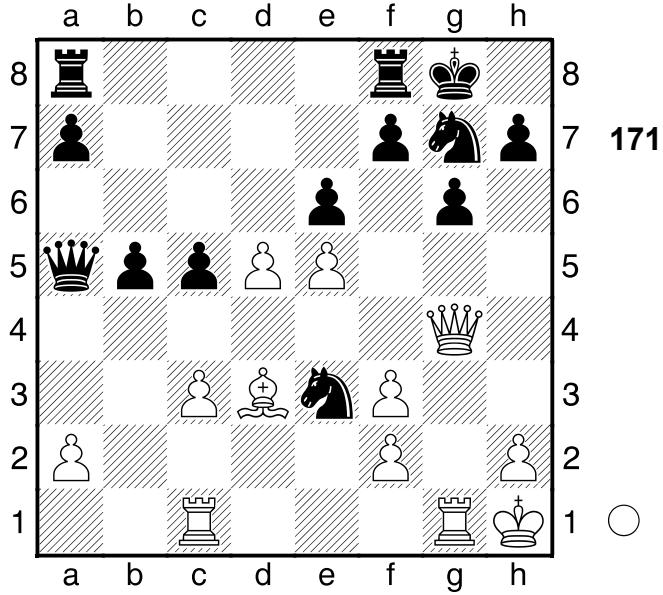
[White can try and push his centre, but Black has a clear plan to counter this: 16.Bb3 Qa5 (sitting tight with 16...b5 also possible) 17.c4 Nh7 18.d5 Nxe3! 19.fxe3 Rad8 20.Qe4 cxd5 21.cxd5 exd5 22.Bxd5 Rd7 and the game will likely end in a draw; e.g. 23.e6 (or 23.Bxb7 Rfd8 24.Rxd7 Rxd7 25.Bc6 Rd2 26.f4 Ne6 27.f5? Ng5 and the e5-pawn falls since 28.Qf4 loses to Nh3+) 23...Nxe6 24.Bxe6 Rxd1 25.Bxf7+ Rxf7 26.Rxd1 Qxa2 27.Rd8+ Rf8 28.Rxf8+ Kxf8 29.Qxb7 Kg8 and so on.]

**16...Qa5 17.Rc1?!** The rook was better placed on the d-file.

[17.Bd2 was correct, when c5 can be met by 18.Rg1 .]

**17...c5 18.Rg1 Nh7 19.d5?**  
Evidently a miscalculation. **19...b5**  
**20.Bd3 Nxe3**

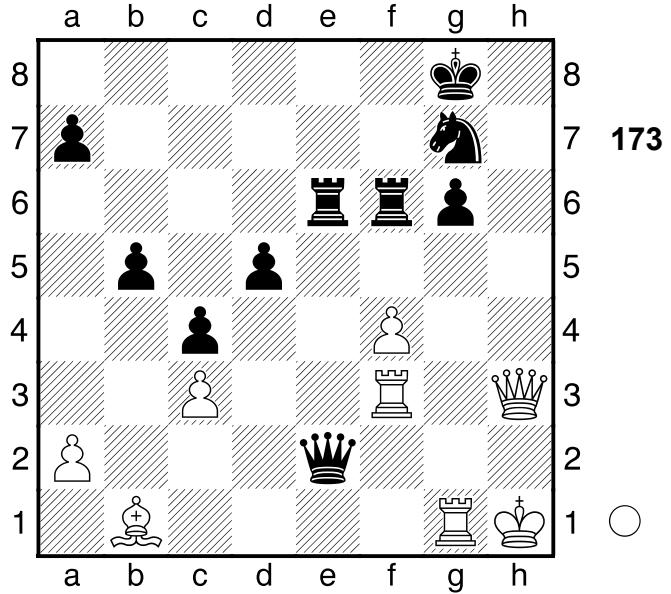
(Diagram 171)



**Qe2 30.Qh3**

[Not 30.Bxg6?? Rxg6 31.Qxg6 Qxf3+, winning a piece, or if 32.Rg2 then Qh3+ 33.Kg1 Re1+ 34.Kf2 Qe3# is mate.]

**30...Ree6**



**31.Rfg3 Qh5 32.Qxh5 Nxh5  
33.Rxg6+ Rxg6 34.Bxg6 Ng7**

[Saving the knight and blocking the discovered check, though it was even better to allow it: 34...Nxf4! 35.Bf5+ Kf7 36.Bxe6+ Kxe6, when White's offside king has no chance against the knight and pawns; e.g. 37.Re1+ (or 37.Rf1 Nd3 38.Kg2 d4 39.cxd4 c3 etc) 37...Kd6 38.Kg1 b4 39.cxb4 c3 40.Kf1 Nd3 41.Re2 d4 42.a3 Kd5 and so on.]

**35.f5 Rf6**

(Diagram 174)

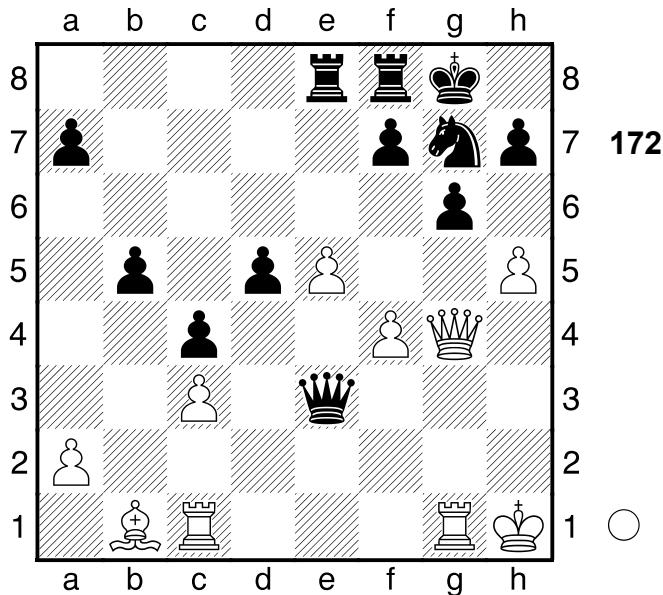
Black is now two pawns up, and White's attempted attack comes to nothing.

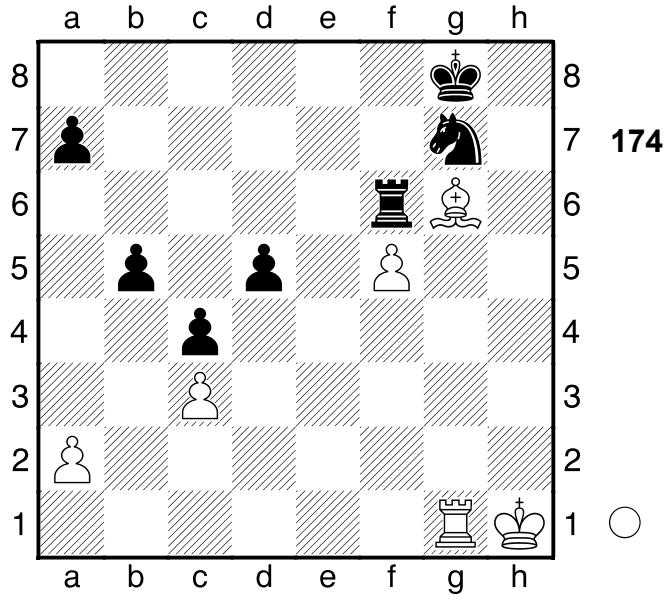
**26.Rcf1 f5!?** Black could take the c3-pawn as well.

[ 26...Qxc3 27.f5 appears really scary but appearances are all White has.

After Kh8 28.fxg6 fxg6 29.hxg6 Rxf1 30.Rxf1 Qxe5, Black is perfectly safe and his extra pawns will decide.]

**27.exf6 Rxf6 28.hxg6 hxg6 29.Rf3**





**36.Rf1 b4?!** Very tempting since it creates two passed pawns.

[But if was simpler to push the d-pawn: 36...d4 37.cxd4 Ne6 , and if 38.d5 ( 38.Kg2 Nxd4 39.Kg3 c3 40.Kf4 c2 41.Ke3 Rd6 42.Rc1 Kg7 ) , then 38...Nd4! (not 38...Nc7 39.Rd1 Rd6 40.f6 Rxd5?? 41.Re1 , when the need to prevent both Re7 and Re8+ immobilizes Black completely ) 39.Rd1 c3 40.Kg2 (or 40.Rxd4 c2) 40...Ne2! and the c-pawn promotes. ]

**37.cxb4 d4??** Two connected passed pawns, what's not to like? Just the unfortunate position of the black king on the back rank which now enables White to draw.

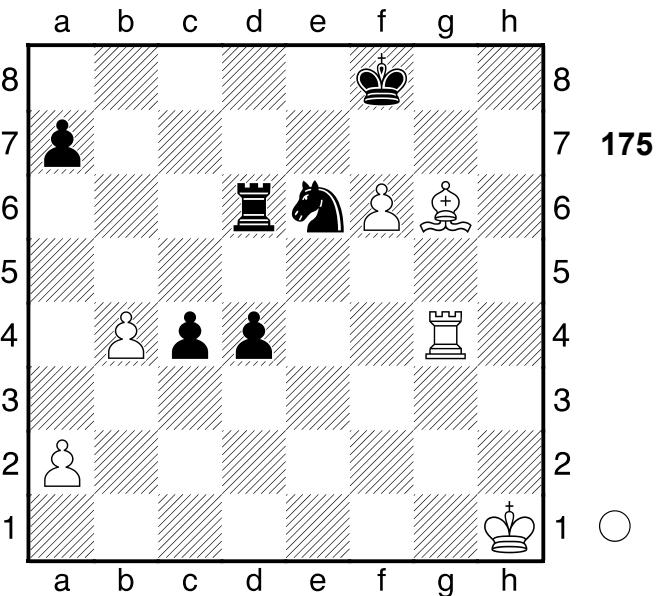
[This time he should have pushed the c-pawn: 37...c3! 38.Rd1 Rd6 39.Kg2 d4 40.Kf2 d3 , when White's only chance is 41.f6! Rxf6+ 42.Ke3 Rxg6 43.Kxd3 , but after Rd6+ 44.Kc2 Rxd1 45.Kxd1 Kf7 46.Kc2 Ke6 47.Kxc3 Kd5 Black extra piece and remaining pawn are enough to win, if only by a single tempo. Give White a move to play 49 Kc4 and the endgame database says "draw". ]

### 38.Rf4! Rd6 39.f6 Ne6

[Or 39...d3 40.Rxc4 Rd8 41.Rc7 Ne6 42.Bf7+ Kf8 43.Bxe6 d2 44.Bg4 d1Q+ 45.Bxd1 Rxd1+ 46.Kg2 Rd2+ 47.Kf3 Rxa2 and the rook ending can be held. ]

### 40.Rg4!! Kf8

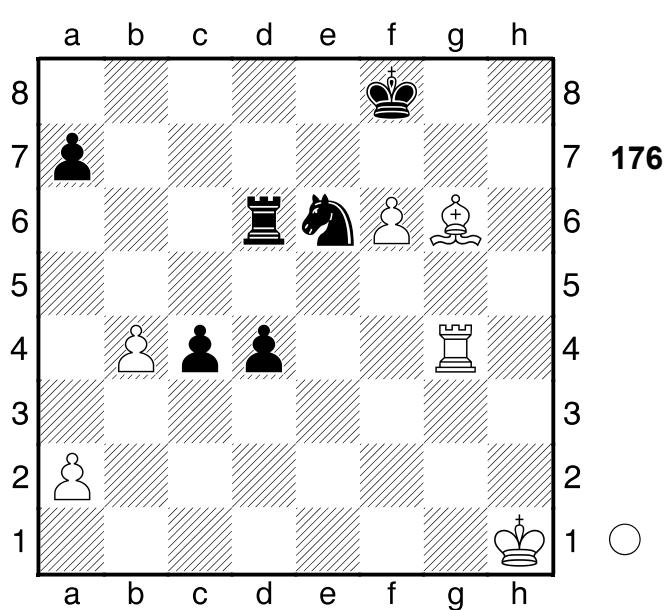
[Due to the discovered check Black has no way of pushing his passed pawns; for example, 40...c3 41.Kg2 and if Nd8!? then 42.Bh5+! Kh7 (or 42...Kf8 43.f7 Nxh7 44.Rf4 Rd7 45.Bxf7 Rxf7 46.Rxd4 Rc7 47.Rd1 ) 43.Rh4 Rxf6 44.Bd1+ (but not 44.Rxd4?? c2 45.Rc4 Rc6 ) 44...Kg7 45.Rxd4 and draws. ]



**41.Rh4** Threatening mate on h8, so the black king has to come back. **41...Kg8**

**42.Rg4 Kf8**

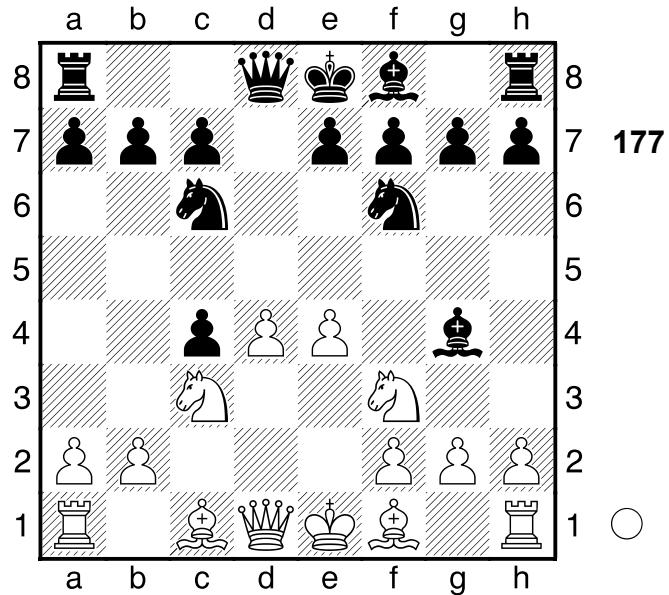
(Diagram 176)



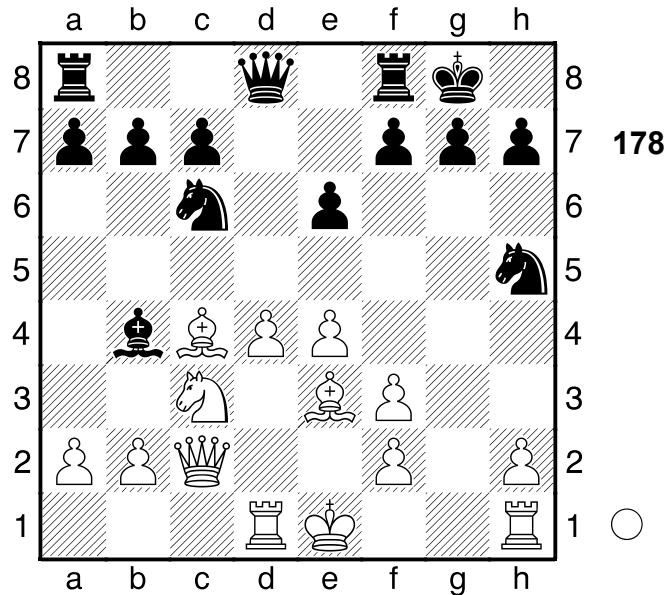
½-½

Megerramov,E  
 Al Modiahki,M  
 37: Dubai  
 [Jimmy Liew]

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nc3 dxc4 4.Nf3 Nf6 5.e4 Bg4**



**6.Be3 e6 7.Bxc4 Bb4 8.Qc2 0-0  
9.Rd1 Bxf3 10.gxf3 Nh5**



**11.e5 Ne7 12.0-0 c6** Black avoids capturing on c3 as in the previous game,

D07

2000

preferring to hang on to his dark-squared bishop, at least for the time being. **13.Bg5** White safeguards his own bishop from capture, after first encouraging ...h7-h6 in the hope that it will make attacking the black kingside easier later on – but he never really gets an attack.

[Instead:

a) 13.Kh1 is more common:

**A)** when Black has the choice between 13...Bxc3 14.bxc3 Nd5 (returning to the note with 13...Nd5 in the previous game) ( 14.... );  
**B)** or just 13...Nd5 , allowing White to exchange himself. Either way the position looks very equal; e.g.  
14.Nxd5!? (or 14.Rg1 f5 15.Ne2 g6 ) 14...cxd5 15.Bd3 g6 16.Qb3 Qb6 17.Rc1 Rfc8 18.a3 Ba5 19.Qa4 Qd8 20.Rg1 Bb6 21.Qb4 Rxc1 22.Rxc1 Rc8 23.Rxc8 and the players agreed a draw in S. Olsson-M.Rüfenacht, correspondence 2004. ]

[Given that one of the reasons for taking on c3 was to prevent the white knight from moving, we should look at what happens if it does. It seems there's nothing for Black to worry about:

b) 13.Ne2 Nd5 14.a3 Ba5 15.Kh1 Qh4 16.Qe4 Bd8 forces White to work harder to remove the black queen, and after 17.Rg1 g6 18.Rg4 , apart from retreating it to e7, as in F. Lorin-G.Hervet, correspondence 2009, Black might even have left it there and played f5!? 19.Rxh4 fxe4 20.Rxh5 (or 20.Rxe4 Rxf3 ) 20...exf3 with equality. ]

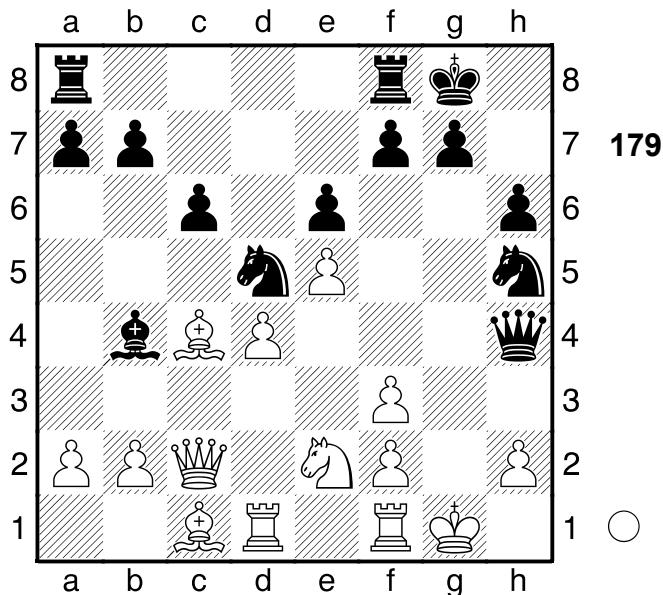
[c) 13.Ne4 Nd5 14.Ng3 (or if 14.a3 Be7 15.Kh1 , Black might consider Nhf4 16.Rg1 Ng6!? , blocking the open-file with a comfortable position )

14...Nhf4 15.Kh1 was M.Kopylov-C. Scheerer, German League 2003, and here Kh8 would have been useful preparation for ...f7-f5, according to Scheerer; (another option is 15...Qh4 again. )]

**13...h6 14.Bc1** Retreating the other way is inferior, as the bishop is liable to be shut out of the game.

[After 14.Bh4 Bxc3 15.bxc3 Nf4 16.Kh1 g5 17.Rg1 Neg6 18.Bg3, Black has a good grip on the kingside dark squares. ]

**14...Nd5 15.Ne2 Qh4**



**16.Qe4 Be7** With his dark-squared bishop still on the board, Black is able to maintain the queen on her post in the heart of White's kingside. **17.Bd3 f5!**

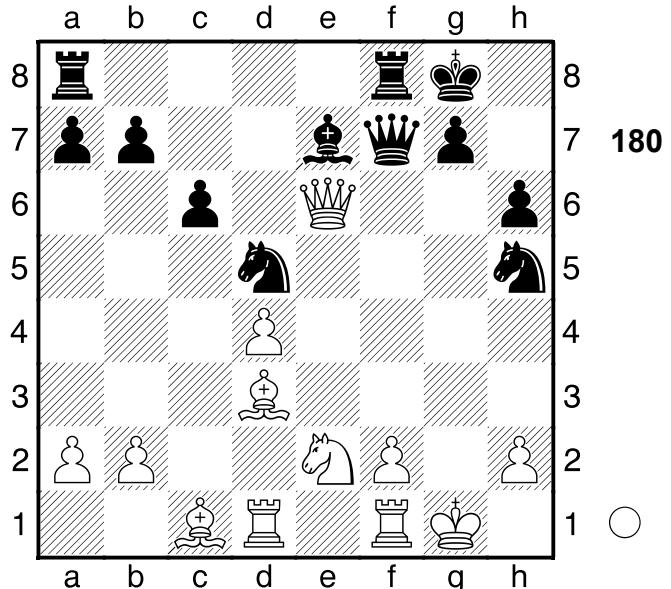
**18.exf6**

[Swapping queens with 18.Qxh4 Bxh4 just leaves White with weak pawns and no counterplay.]

**18...Qxf6 19.Qg4** The f3-pawn is starting to be a cause for concern, so White exchanges it for the e6-pawn. Checking on h7 would achieve nothing.

**19...Qxf3 20.Qxe6+ Qf7**

(Diagram 180)

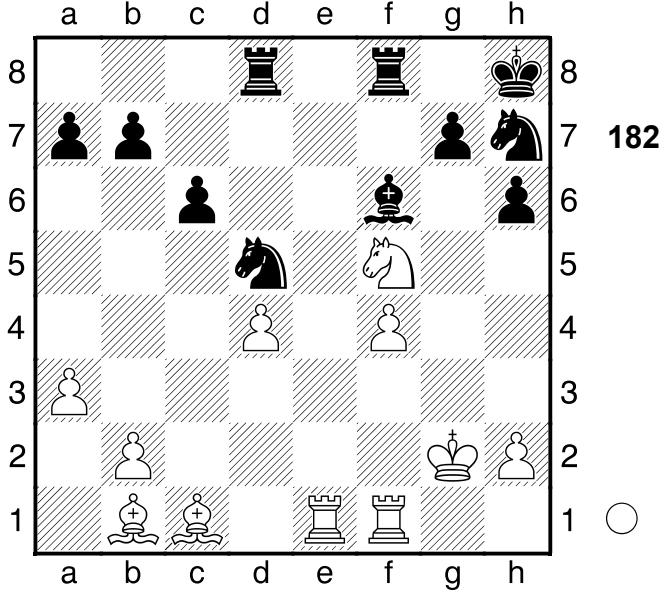
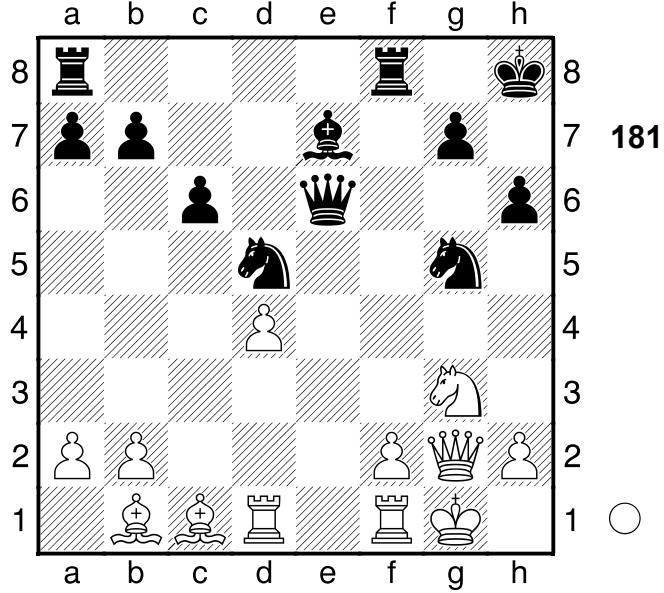


**21.Qe4** Interestingly, Morozevich gave this position a “+=” sign in his book, but it was a sideline at the time so it's unlikely he looked at it very deeply. At first sight it does indeed seem rather good for White, who has queen and two bishops pointing towards the black king, control of the b1-h7 diagonal and an open g-file as well. And yet it turns out that he can't really do anything with any of them.

**21...Nhf6 22.Qg2 Kh8 23.Bg6 Qe6**

Black is more than alright here. He has a nice blockade on d5 with the prospect of targeting the isolated d4-pawn later on. **24.Ng3 Nh7 25.Bb1 Ng5**

(Diagram 181)



**26.Rde1 Qh3**

[Better than 26...Qg4 27.f4

**A)** 27...Nh7 28.h3 , when Black is going backwards. ( 28.-- );

**B)** while 27...Nh3+ 28.Kh1 Nhxf4?! runs into 29.Qe4 g6 30.Qe5+ Bf6 31.Rxf4 Nxf4 32.Qxf4 Qxf4 33.Bxf4 and White has a slight edge in the endgame. ]

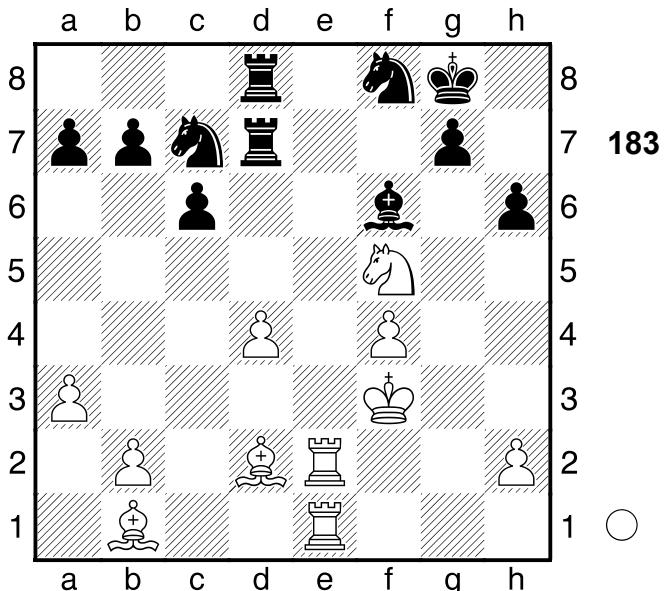
**27.f4 Qxg2+ 28.Kxg2 Nh7** Now Black appears to have an advantage in view of the opponent's scattered pawns, but White's activity proves sufficient to hold the balance.

**29.a3 Bf6 30.Nf5 Rad8**

(Diagram 182)

**31.Kg3 Rd7 32.Re2 Rfd8 33.Rfe1**

**Nf8 34.Bd2 Kg8 35.Kf3 Nc7?!**



This is a waste of time, since Black can't take the d-pawn after White's next move.

**36.Bb4! Nd5**

[Not 36...Bxd4? because 37.Ne7+ Kf7 38.Bf5 then traps the d7-rook. ]

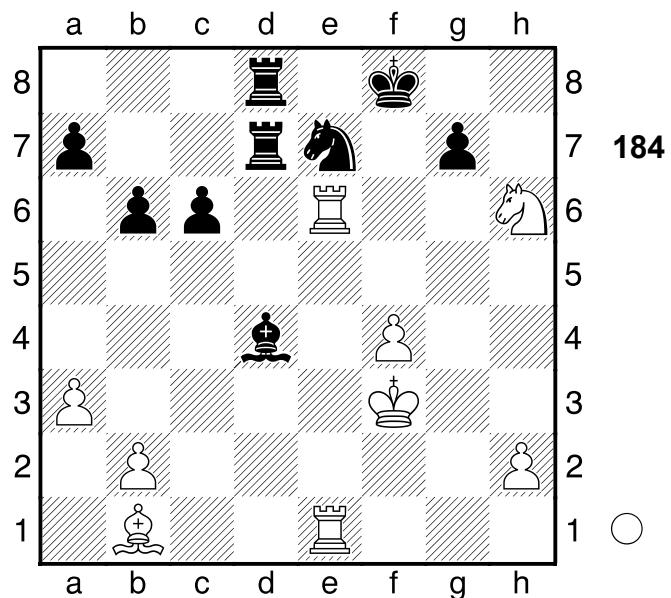
**37.Bc5 b6 38.Bxf8?!**

[White actually had a chance to seize the initiative here with 38.Be7! Nxe7 39.Nxe7+ Bxe7 40.Rxe7 Rxe7 41.Rxe7 Rxd4 and now the switchback 42.Ba2+! Kh7 43.Re8

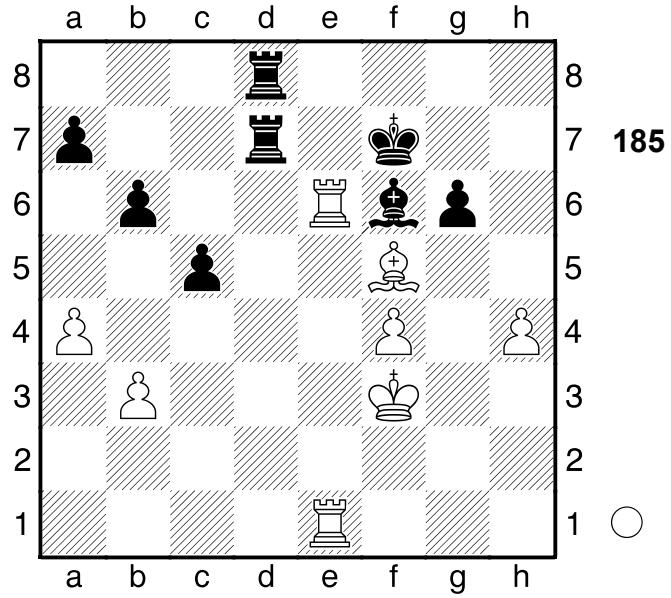
**Nd7** (not 43...Ng6? 44.Bg8+ )  
**44.Bb1+!** g6 45.Re7+ Kg8 46.Bxg6  
, though Black should still expect to draw. ]

**38...Kxf8 39.Re6 Ne7 40.Nxh6**  
[After 40.Nxe7 Rxe7 41.Rxe7 Bxe7  
42.Re6 Rxd4 43.Rxc6 Bd6 44.Be4  
, a truce is already indicated. ]

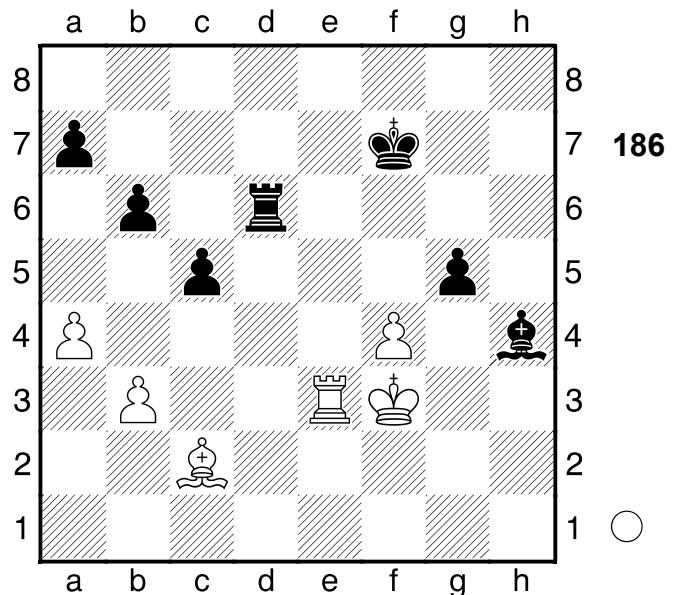
**40...Bxd4**



**41.Nf5 Bf6 42.b3 c5 43.a4 Kf7 44.h4  
Nxf5 45.Bxf5 g6**



**46.Bb1 Rd1 47.R6e2 Bxh4 48.Rxd1  
Rxd1 49.Bc2 Rd6 50.Re3 g5**



. The ending is drawn thanks to the opposite-coloured bishops. Black was very comfortable from the opening to the ending, so this variation needs to be rethought from the White side.

**½-½**

# Chapter Three

## The Solid 3 Nf3

After 3 Nf3 the fight for d4 and e5 begins ([view in Game format](#)). By reinforcing his d-pawn, White threatens to take on d5 and then gain time on the queen with Nc3, so Black must react vigorously. In the late nineteenth century, Chigorin came up with the idea of 3...Bg4, challenging the f3-knight.



If White now continues with 4 cxd5, then 4...Bxf3 5 gxf3 Qxd5 forces him to defend the d-pawn again before playing Nc3, by which time Black will be ready with ...Bb4. The consequences of this sequence are examined in Games [48-54](#).

As it happens, Chigorin only faced 5 gxf3 once (vs. Steinitz) and he drew that game. Pillsbury, Teichmann, and others, all went for 5 bxc6 Bxc6, when Black gets to keep his bishop after all. If White builds a centre with 6 Nc3 e6 7 e4, rapid development gives Black more than enough counterplay, as we'll see in [Game 47](#).

If White refrains from taking the d5-pawn straight away, Black can defend it with ...e7-e6, having already developed the queen's bishop outside the pawn chain. Nowadays this mostly occurs after 4 Nc3, where White aims for a small but nagging edge (see Games [41-46](#)). Older tries, such as 4 Qa4 and 4 e3, are covered in Games [38-40](#).

Although the 3 Nf3 lines are not usually as sharp as either 3 cxd5 or 3 Nc3, they still represent an important test of Black's opening. On the other hand, it is worth noting that grandmasters Nigel Short and Alexander Raetsky generally play the Chigorin only when White is committed to Nf3; i.e. when White has played Nf3 and d2-d4 on the first two moves. Clearly they feel that Black has less to worry about here.

[38: S.Vanderwaeren-J.Furhoff, Stockholm 1996](#)

[39: H.Pillsbury-M.Chigorin, St. Petersburg 1896](#)

[40: L.Rosko-T.Vojta, Zdar nad Sazavou 2009](#)

[41: U.Von Herman-C.Scheerer, Lübeck 2011](#)

[42: V.Kramnik-Ma.Carlsen, London 2010](#)

[43: K.Aseev-A.Morozevich, Russian Championship, Elista 1995](#)

[44: V.Kramnik-V.Ivanchuk, Linares 1998](#)

45: R.Akesson-A.Morozevich, London Lloyds Bank 1994

46: H.Schussler-J.Hector, Swedish Championship, Malmo 1986

47: M.Chetverik-G.Veltkamp, Budapest 1996

48: N.Gaprindashvili-M.Al Modiahki, Groningen 1999

49: I.Nester-Sa.Martinovic, Bad Gleichenberg 2014

50: N.Anand-R.Praggnanandhaa, Heraklion 2018

51: P.Lukacs-N.Pinal, Havana 1986

52: N.Pert-K.Sasikiran, British Championship, Torquay 2002

53: A.Volodin-D.Sklyarov, Finnish League 2010

54: H.Nakamura-R.Rapport, FIDE Grand Prix, Sharjah 2017

## Summary

The king's knight development with 3 Nf3 is both natural and flexible. White reinforces his d4-pawn, discourages the ...e7-e5 break (though doesn't prevent it entirely as we'll see in the next chapter) and keeps his options open on whether to capture on d5 or not. In response Black usually plays 3...Bg4, so that 4 cxd5 can be met by 4...Bxf3 5 gxf3 Qxd5, when White has to defend d4 again before playing Nc3, enabling Black to maintain his queen in the centre.

If White does not take on d5 immediately, Black can support his central pawn with ...e7-e6, steering the game into normal-looking structures where he has developed his queen's bishop outside the pawn chain.

White can avoid theoretical battles by playing less common

White can avoid theoretical battles by playing less common lines, but these should not pose as many problems to Black, who can look forward to equality if not more.

## Chapter Three: Intro [Jimmy Liew]

After **1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nf3**, the fight for d4 and e5 begins. By reinforcing his d-pawn, White threatens to take on d5 and then gain time on the queen with Nc3, so Black must react vigorously.

In the late nineteenth century, Chigorin came up with the idea of **3...Bg4**, challenging the f3-knight. **4...**

[If White now continues with **4.cxd5**, then **Bxf3**

**A)** **5.gxf3** Qxd5 forces him to defend the d-pawn again before playing Nc3, by which time Black will be ready with ...Bb4. The consequences of this sequence are examined in Games 48-54. ( **5...--** );

**B)** As it happens, Chigorin only faced 5 gxf3 once (vs. Steinitz) and he drew that game. Pillsbury, Teichmann, and others, all went for **5.dxc6 Bxc6**, when Black gets to keep his bishop after all. If White builds a centre with **6.Nc3 e6 7.e4**, rapid development gives Black more than enough counterplay, as we'll see in Game 47. ]

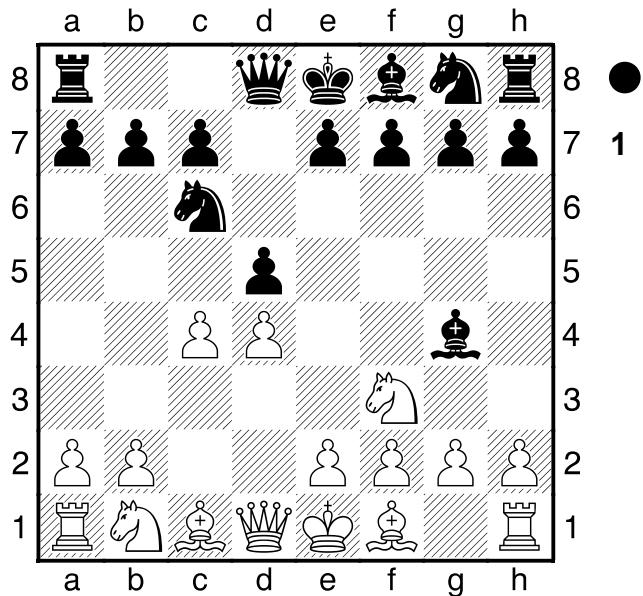
[If White refrains from taking the d5-pawn straight away, Black can defend it with ...e7-e6, having already developed the queen's bishop outside the pawn chain. Nowadays this mostly occurs after **4.Nc3**, where White aims for a small but nagging edge (see Games 41-46). ]

[Older tries, such as **4.Qa4** ]

[and **4.e3**, are covered in Games 38-40.

Although the 3 Nf3 lines are not usually as sharp as either 3 cxd5 or 3

Nc3, they still represent an important test of Black's opening. On the other hand, it is worth noting that grandmasters Nigel Short and Alexander Raetsky generally play the Chigorin only when White is committed to Nf3; i.e. when White has played Nf3 and d2-d4 on the first two moves. Clearly they feel that Black has less to worry about here. ]



Vanderwaeren,S  
 Furhoff,J  
38: Stockholm  
[Jimmy Liew]

D07

1996

**1.Nf3 Nc6** White's first prevented ...e7-e5 and Black's first threatens it again. As long as you're not fazed by the prospect of 2 e4, then 1...Nc6 is perfectly good.

**2.d4 d5 3.c4 Bg4** This is the only move we will consider in this chapter.

[As usual 3...e6 is playable but passive.]

[If you're in a reckless mood then 3...e5!? is just about possible (see Game 57 in Chapter Four).]

**4.Qa4** Pinning the c6-knight and "threatening" Ne5.

[The main moves here are 4.cxd5]

[4.Nc3]

[and 4.e3, which are all examined in subsequent games.]

[White has a few other options too:  
a) 4.Bf4 transposes to 4 Nc3 lines after e6 5.Nc3 (or 5.e3 Bb4+ 6.Nc3 .)]

[b) 4.Nbd2 is not as harmless as it looks.

**A)** For instance, Black should avoid 4...dxc4?! 5.e3 e5?! 6.Bxc4 Qd7 (or 6...exd4 7.Qb3!) 7.d5 Na5 8.Nxe5 Bxd1 9.Nxd7 Kxd7 10.Kxd1 Nxc4 11.Nxc4 Nf6 12.Ke2 Nxd5 13.Rd1 Ke6 14.e4 Nf6 15.f3 and White is better, A. Van Elst-P.Brochet, Saint Affrique 2002.;

**B)** Instead 4...e6 5.e3 transposes to 4 e3 e6 5.Nbd2 in the notes to the next game; (while after 5.Qa4 Bxf3 6.Nxf3 Bb4+; or 5.a3 dxc4 6.e3 b5!? 7.b3 c3, Black is fine. )]

[c) 4.Bg5!? aims to provoke a weakening of Black's kingside, but I don't think he should mind being provoked: f6!

**A)** if 5.Bf4, T.Polak-U.Staudner, Austrian League 2002, then e5! 6.dxe5 d4 with a nice Albin;

**B)** similarly 5.Bh4 Bxf3 6.exf3 (or 6.gxf3 e5 7.dxe5 Bb4+) 6...e5;

**C)** 5.cxd5 Bxf3 6.exf3 (or if 6.gxf3 Qxd5 7.Be3, K.Miton-M.Thejkumar, Doha 2014, then e6 8.Nc3 Qc4!) 6...Qxd5 7.Be3 e5 8.Nc3 Bb4 9.Qa4 exd4 10.Qxb4 Nxb4 11.Nxd5 Nxd5 12.Bxd4 Nge7 and the centralized knights are the equal of the bishops, D.Mason-J. Wager, British Championship, Aberystwyth 2014.]

[d) 4.Ne5 Nxe5 5.dxe5 can be met by d4!? (more interesting than 5...dxc4 6.Qa4+ etc) 6.Qb3 and now Bd7! (Miladinovic).

It turns out there's no need to defend the b-pawn because Black obtains strong counterplay if White takes it; for example, 7.Qxb7 (7.e4 c5 8.Qg3 e6 9.Be2 Qc7 10.Nd2 Ne7 11.0-0 Nc6 12.f4 0-0-0 gave Black a good position in D.Milanovic-I.Miladinovic, Zupanja 2008, with ideas of ...h7-h6, ...g7-g5 and/or ...f7-f6 to open the kingside) 7...e6 8.g3 (or 8.Qe4 c5 9.e3 Ne7 10.exd4 cxd4 11.Qxd4 Nf5 with excellent compensation) 8...Rb8 9.Qe4 (not 9.Qxa7?? Bc6, threatening both ...Bxh1 and ...Ra8) 9...Bb4+ 10.Nd2 c5 11.Bg2 (or 11.Qc2 Bc6) 11...Bxd2+ 12.Bxd2 Rxb2 and Black regains the pawn with equality.)

**4...Nf6** Black ignores the "threat" and goes about his business.

The more popular course is to exchange on f3 and follow up with ...e7-e6. This

line can also arise via 4.Nc3 e6 5.Qa4 Bxf3 (not 5...Nf6?? 6.Ne5), so we should look at this too.

[After 4...Bxf3, White can capture with either pawn:

**A) 5.exf3 e6 6.Nc3 Nge7!**

(the best square for the knight in this formation, defending c6 and d5; the f8-bishop will go to g7 and apply pressure on the white d-pawn) 7.cxd5 (or 7.Be3 g6!, G.Fuster-D.Bronstein, Budapest 1949; or if 7.Bg5 then Qd7) 7...exd5 8.Bb5 (or 8.Be3 g6 9.Bb5 Bg7, M.Meyer-H.Langrock, German League 1999) 8...a6 9.Be2 (or 9.Bxc6+ Nxc6 10.0-0 Qd7 11.Re1+ Be7 – Minev) 9...g6 10.Bg5 Bg7 11.Bxe7 Kxe7 12.Qa3+ Qd6 13.Nxd5+ Kd7 14.Qxd6+ Kxd6 15.Nc3 Nxd4 16.Ne4+ Ke7 17.Rc1 c6 with a definite edge for Black, M. Khuseinkhodzhaev-V.Moiseenko, St. Petersburg (blitz) 2013.;

**B) 5.gxf3 can be met in similar fashion: 5...e6 (5...e5!? 6.Nc3! looks good for White) 6.Nc3**

**B1)** Morozевич suggests 6...dxc4 7.e3 Qh4!? (or 7...a6 8.Qxc4 Qh4) 8.Bxc4 0-0-0, though no one has tried these as yet; (but not 8...Bd6??, as in Z.Kozul-G.Mohr, Ljubljana 1994, because of 9.Ba6! and wins);

**B2)** 6...Qd7 7.e3 Nge7 8.Bd2 g6; for instance, 9.Bh3 (or if 9.b4 Bg7 10.b5 Nb8 11.Rc1 0-0 12.Qb3, Wl.Schmidt-D. Bischof, Dortmund 1992, then a6 and Black seems solid enough on the queenside) 9...Bg7 10.cxd5 Nxd5 11.Nxd5 Qxd5 12.Bg2 e5 13.dxe5 0-0-0

14.Bc3 Bxe5 15.0-0 Bxc3 16.bxc3 Qa5 17.Qb3, I.Novikov-S.Danailov, Alicante 1992, and now Qf5 18.Rab1 Na5 is roughly equal.]

**5.Ne5?!** White carries out his “threat” and gets nowhere.

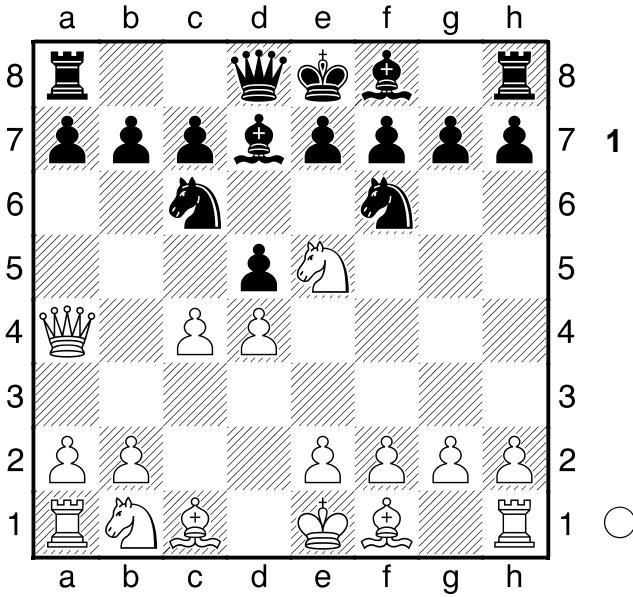
[The critical move is 5.Nc3!

, which sets Black a slight problem because he would prefer to have the king’s knight on e7 if he takes on f3. Still, there’s no hurry to do so.

**A)** After 5...Qd7 6.e3 (if 6.Ne5 Nxe5 7.dxe5 then d4!; or 6.cxd5 Nxd5 7.Nxd5 Qxd5 8.e3 Bxf3 9.gxf3 e5! – Watson) 6...e6 7.Bd2 Bxf3 8.gxf3 Be7 9.f4 0-0 10.Bg2 Rfd8 11.0-0 Bf8 12.Rac1, J.Borges Mateos-E.Vianello, Calvia 2006, and now a6, Black is only a little worse.;  
**B)** Another, more active option is 5...dxc4? 6.e3 (or 6.Ne5 Bd7 7.Qxc4 Be6 8.Qb5 a6 9.Nxc6 axb5 10.Nxd8 Kxd8 11.Nxb5 Rxa2 12.Rxa2 Bxa2 with equality, A.Alekhine-E.Böök, Warsaw Olympiad 1935) 6...Bxf3 7.gxf3 a6 8.Qxc4 e5! 9.dxe5 Nxe5 10.Qe2 Bb4 11.Bd2 0-0 12.f4 Ng6 13.0-0-0, as in M.Abatino-S. Skembiris, Cutro 1999, when Qe7 looks okay for Black; e.g. 14.h4 (or 14.Rg1 Rad8; or 14.Qf3 Rfd8) 14...Rfe8 15.Qf3 Rad8.]

**5...Bd7**

(Diagram 1)



It turns out that Ne5 was not really a threat at all since Black is quite happy to give up the bishop. Furthermore, White's queen on a4 now looks suspiciously out of place, he has fallen behind in development, and his centre pawn on d4 is under attack.

### 6.Nxd7 Nxd7

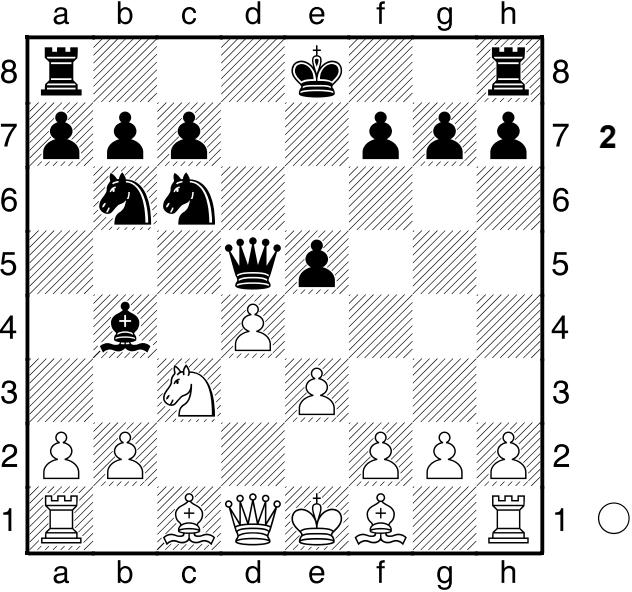
[Taking with the queen is good too:  
 6...Qxd7 7.e3 e5 8.cxd5 Nxd5  
 9.Bb5?! (9.dxe5 0-0-0 10.a3!  
 is still equal) 9...exd4 10.Bxc6 Qxc6  
 11.Qxc6+ bxc6 12.exd4 0-0-0  
 13.Nc3 Nb4 14.0-0 Nc2 15.Rb1  
 Nxd4 and Black was half a pawn up in  
 S.Gligoric-B.Milic, Yugoslav  
 Championship, Zagreb 1949.]

### 7.cxd5

[Here 7.c5 e5 8.e3 Be7 (but  
 8...Qg5! 9.Nc3 0-0-0 is good for  
 Black) 9.Bb5 Ndb8 10.0-0 0-0  
 11.Nc3 Bf6 12.Rd1 Ne7  
 , G.Fridstein-E.Terpugov, Moscow  
 1949, could have been met by  
 13.Ne4! with advantage.]

[As is 7.e3 e5 8.dxe5 (or 8.cxd5  
 Nb6) 8...Nc5 9.Qd1 dxc4 10.Bxc4  
 Qxd1+ 11.Kxd1 Nxe5, A.Gorecki-W.  
 Swic, Lodz 1998.]

**7...Nb6 8.Qd1 Qxd5 9.e3 e5 10.Nc3  
 Bb4**



### 11.a3?!

[V.Manchev-S.Mechkarov,  
 correspondence 1957, saw 11.Bd2  
 Bxc3 12.bxc3 Na5 and Black was  
 fine with his knights controlling the  
 queenside light squares.]

**11...Bxc3+ 12.bxc3** You could say this is an ideal position for the Chigorin player. His lead in development is more important than White's two bishops and centre, which aren't going anywhere. In fact with all his remaining pieces on their home squares, White will do well to get out of the opening with a playable position.

**12...0-0-0?!** Exchanging on d4 and castling long was stronger.

[White might even have to recapture with the e-pawn, since 12...exd4  
 13.cxd4?! (note that White's defence in the game is not possible 13.Rb1?  
 0-0-0 14.Rb5 Qe4 15.f3 Qe7  
 16.cxd4 fails at once to Nxd4)  
 13...0-0-0, intending ...Rhe8 and/or ...  
 f7-f5 gives Black an automatic attack.]

**13.Rb1 exd4 14.Rb5!** White finds a

nice way to secure his position;

[whereas 14.cxd4 Rae8

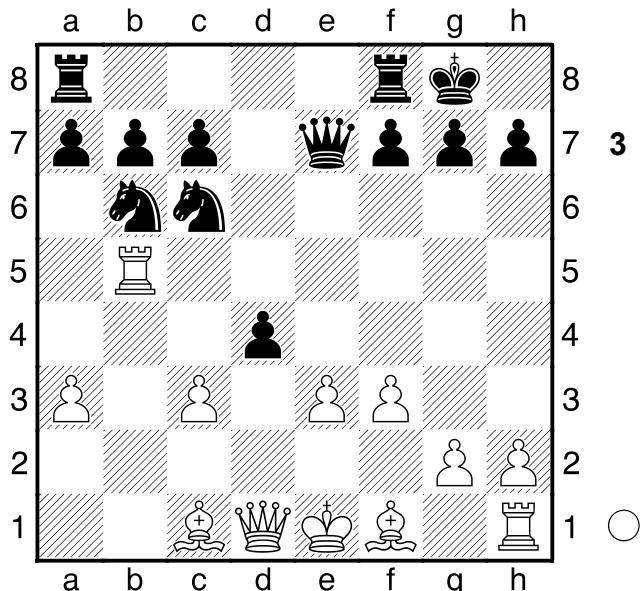
**A)** 15.Bb2? (to defend the d4-pawn) f5! shows the problems in his position: White's king is precariously placed in the centre; he can't develop his f1-bishop and castle due to the black queen eyeing the g2-pawn; and 16.Rc1 f4 17.Rc5 Qd6 followed by ...f4xe3 is devastating. ( 17...-- );

**B)** His best chance would be to let the d-pawn go with 15.f3! Qxd4 16.Qxd4 Nxd4 17.Kf2 and rely on his bishops to hold the game. ]

#### 14...Qe4 15.f3

[Better than 15.cxd4?! Rfe8 , which again asks the question of the d4-pawn. Since 16.Bb2? ( 16.Be2 Qxg2 17.Bf3 Qg6 18.Kf1 would probably be necessary, with some if not full compensation for the pawn ) 16...Rad8 doesn't help at all. ]

#### 15...Qe7



16.cxd4 Rad8 17.Kf2 The king is safe here for now.

[In any case 17.Be2 Rfe8 prevents him castling, since 18.0-0? allows Nxd4 19.exd4 Qxe2 . ]

#### 17...Rfe8 18.h4

[Preventing black queen checks on h4, as after 18.Bd3? Nxd4 19.exd4 Qh4+ 20.Kf1 Qxd4 21.Bxh7+ ( or 21.Rb3 c5 and ...c5-c4 ) 21...Kxh7 22.Qxd4 Rxd4 23.Kf2 Rc4 , when the extra passed pawn guarantees Black a big, if not winning, advantage in the endgame. ]

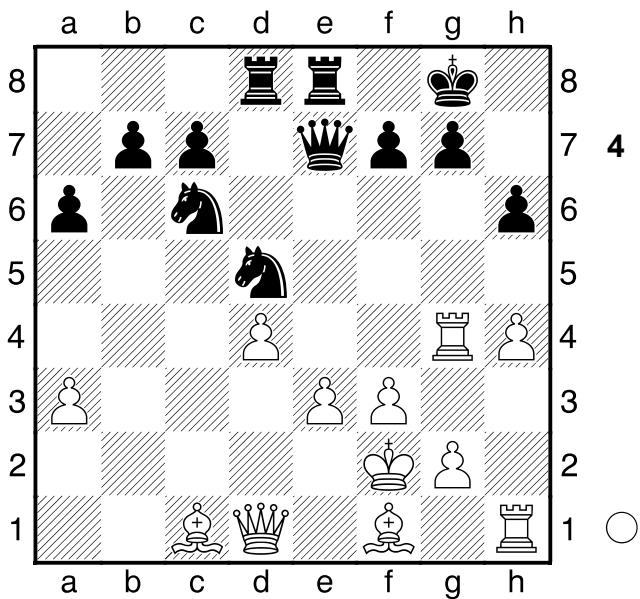
[Instead, 18.Be2 was possible, but after Nd5 19.Rb3 Na5 20.Rd3 b5 21.e4 Nb6 the c4-square is fully secured for the knights and Black stands no worse. ]

18...a6 19.Rg5?! The rook should go back down the b-file. On the kingside it will be open to tactical threats, as will soon be seen. 19...h6 20.Rg4? This gives Black a free tempo with his f-pawn.

[ 20.Rg3 was better; ]

[ or even 20.Rh5!? . ]

#### 20...Nd5



21.Qd2 f5 22.Rg3? And another one.

[ 22.Rg6 Qf7 23.Rxc6 was necessary, though White is unlikely to survive. ]

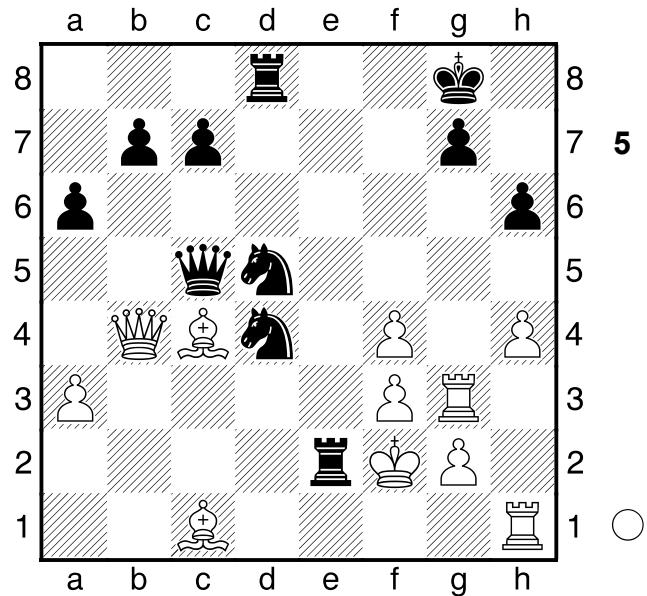
22...f4 Opening up the white king, and this time he will not escape unscathed.

23.exf4 Nxd4! 24.Bc4?!

[But if 24.Qxd4 then Qe1+ 25.Kg1 Qxg3 wins material.]

**24...Qc5** White's king and queen are both caught on open lines (h2-a7 and d1-d8) and his next move, relying on the pin on the d5-knight, doesn't save him.

**25.Qb4 Re2+!**



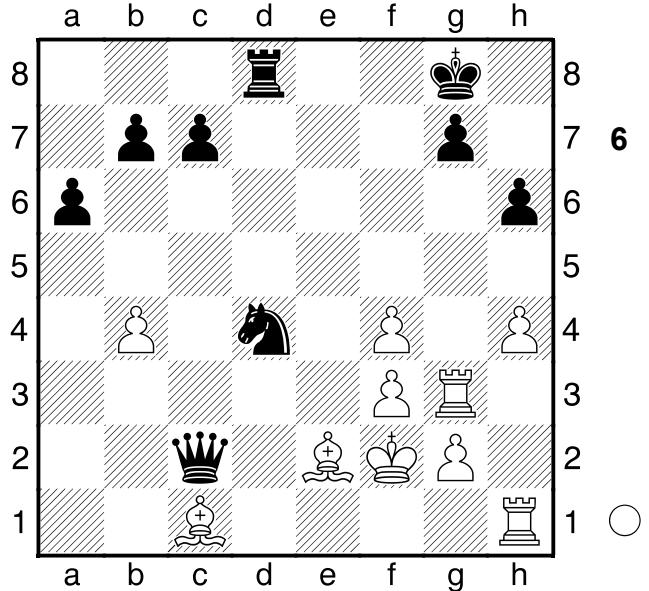
Deflection. **26.Bxe2**

[Moving the king is no better: 26.Kg1 Nxf3+ 27.Kf1 Rf2# is mate;]

[and 26.Kf1 Qxb4 27.axb4 Rc2 28.Bxd5+ Rxd5 wins a piece in view of 29.Be3 Nxf3! and ...Rd1 mate is very close.]

**26...Nxb4 27.axb4 Qc2**

[White resigned as he will lose more material after 27...Qc2 28.Re1 Nxe2 29.Rxe2 Qxc1 . ]



0-1

(Diagram 6)

Pillsbury,H  
 Chigorin,M  
39: St. Petersburg  
[Jimmy Liew]

D07

1896

### 1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nf3 Bg4 4.e3

This cautious-looking move was actually White's most popular choice in Chigorin's time, probably because Steinitz had won three games with it in their 1889 world championship match. However, Chigorin had refined his ideas since then.

#### 4...e6

[The aggressive alternative 4...e5!? will be examined in the next game.]

**5.Nc3** This position also arises via 4 Nc3 e6 5 e3.

[Via the current route (4 e3 e6), White has a few other options:

a) 5.Be2 Nf6 6.Nc3 dxc4 7.Bxc4 leaves White a tempo behind on a Queen's Gambit Accepted (2...dxc4 3 Nf3 Nf6 4 e3 Bg4 5 Bxc4 etc), having moved his bishop twice. Black can therefore play for ...e6-e5 and has no problems; e.g. a6 8.h3 Bh5 9.Be2 Bd6 10.a3 0-0 11.e4 Bxf3 12.Bxf3 e5 13.d5 Nd4 with a level position, V. Chuchelov-M.Hermann, Bad Wörishofen 1992.]

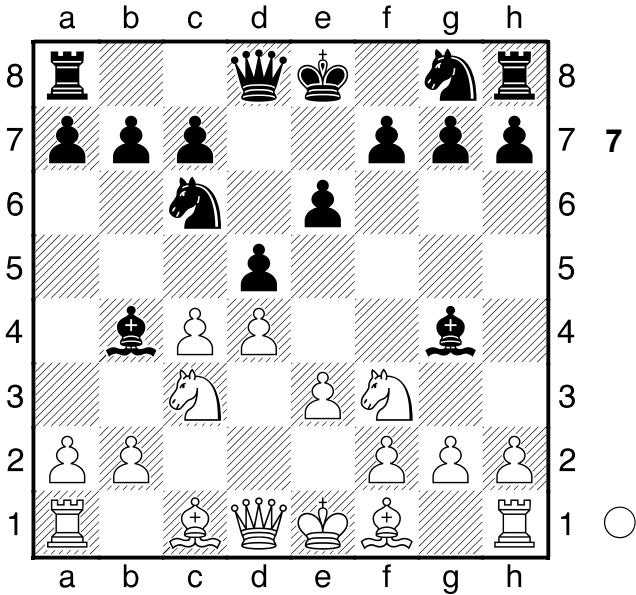
[b) 5.Nbd2 needs to be treated with more care: Nf6 6.Be2 (exchanging on d5 only helps Black: 6.cxd5?! exd5 7.Bb5 Bd6 8.Qc2 Bd7 9.a3 0-0 and Black was fine in B.Tot-Bo.Kostic, Yugoslav Championship, Zagreb 1949) 6...Be7 (here 6...Bd6 7.c5! Be7 8.b4 led to a rapid debacle in A. Ghaem Maghami-A.Thakur, New Delhi 2010: Nxb4? 9.Qa4+ Nc6 10.Rb1 Qc8? 11.Rxb7! Qxb7 12.Ba6 and wins) 7.0-0 0-0 8.b3 (or

8.Ne5 Bxe2 9.Qxe2 Nxe5 10.dxe5 Nd7 11.f4 c6 , as in G.Weinstein-M. Chigorin, St. Petersburg 1904 ) 8...h6!? 9.Bb2 Bf5 and by switching to a London formation Black seems okay; e.g. 10.Rc1 (or 10.Nh4 Bh7 11.f4? g5!) 10...Nb4 11.a3 Nd3 12.Bxd3 Bxd3 13.Re1 c6 , as in Z.Timar-M.Chetverik, Budapest 1995. ]  
[c) 5.Qb3 Bxf3 6.gxf3 Bb4+ and now White does have the option of 7.Bd2 ( 7.Nc3 transposes to the game ) 7...Bxd2+ 8.Nxd2 Nge7 9.0-0-0 0-0 10.Bd3 (or if 10.Qxb7 then Rb8 11.Qa6 Nb4 12.Qa3 Nf5 13.Rg1 Qh4 with compensation ) , as in F.Vass-S.Brandner, Austrian League 2008, but then 10...Rb8 looks reasonable, with ideas of ...Na5 and ...d5xc4. ]

#### 5...Bb4!?

[Bronznik and Scheerer both prefer 5...Nf6 , which avoids the sharp lines below. Black intends variously 6.h3 ( 6.Be2 Bb4; or 6.Bd2 Be7; 6.Qb3 Bxf3 7.gxf3 a6 (when 8.Qxb7?? Na5 traps the queen) 6...Bxf3 7.Qxf3 Bb4 8.Bd3 (or 8.Bd2 Bxc3 9.Bxc3 Ne4 , V.Raicevic-Z.Nikolic, Vrnjacka Banja 1989) 8...e5 9.cxd5 Qxd5 10.Qxd5 Nxd5 11.Bd2 0-0-0 and Black is fine, I.Sokolov-Ye Rongguang, Antwerp 1997. ]

(Diagram 7)



The move Chigorin always played here.  
**6.Qb3** White steps the pin on the f3-knight, puts pressure on the black queenside, and plans to undermine the b4-bishop with Ne5.

[Chigorin also faced 6.Bd2 several times, not least against Steinitz: Nge7 (or 6...Nf6, intending 7.a3 Bxc3 8.Bxc3 Ne4, as in R. Alvarez Ibarra-J.Armas, Matanzas 1995) 7.Bd3 (if 7.a3 Bxc3 8.Bxc3 0-0 9.h3 Bh5 10.g4 Bg6 11.h4, as in J.Showalter-M.Chigorin, Paris 1900, then dxc4 12.h5 Be4 13.Bxc4 Nd5 looks best) 7...Bf5 (not 7...0-0?? 8.Bxh7+ etc) 8.Bxf5 Nxf5 9.cxd5 exd5 10.Qb3 Bxc3 11.Bxc3 Rb8 12.0-0 0-0 13.Rac1 Re8 14.Bd2 Nce7 15.Rc2 c6 16.Rfc1 Ng6 with mutual chances in W.Steinitz-M. Chigorin, World Championship (12th matchgame), Havana 1889; but Steinitz was stronger in this sort of position and won anyway.]

**6...Bxf3** The usual response.

[ 6...Nge7 is also possible:

**A)** since 7.Ne5 Bf5 8.Nxc6 Nxc6 9.Bd2 0-0 10.cxd5 exd5 is not that frightening for Black; e.g.

11.Be2 (not 11.Nxd5?? Bxd2+ 12.Kxd2 Be6 13.e4 Bxd5 14.exd5 Nxd4 15.Qc4 Qg5+ 16.Kc3 c5! and wins) 11...Re8 12.a3 Bxc3 13.Bxc3 Be4 14.0-0 Qg5 15.g3 Rab8 is roughly equal.;  
**B)** Instead, 7.Bd2 0-0 8.cxd5 Nxd5 9.Bd3 Bxf3 10.gxf3 Rb8 11.0-0-0 transposes to the 9 Bd3 line below and was in fact the route taken in the Rubinstein-Chigorin game.]

### 7.gxf3 Nge7 8.Bd2

[White can't hope for much from 8.cxd5 Qxd5 9.Qxd5 (or 9.Qd1 e5) 9...exd5.]

**8...0-0** Chigorin defended this position seven times and his games remain crucial to the understanding of the variation.

**9.f4** White strengthens his grip on e5.

[Chigorin also faced (in chronological order):

a) 9.a3 Bxc3 10.Bxc3 Rb8 11.Rg1 Ng6 12.0-0-0 Qd6 13.Rg3 dxc4 14.Qxc4 b5 15.Qc5 b4 16.axb4 Nxb4 17.Bc4 Rb6 18.Rdg1 Rfb8 gave Black good play in A.Burn-M. Chigorin, Berlin 1897; note that 19.h4 is well met by Qd7! 20.h5 (or 20.b3 Nd3+! 21.Bxd3 Rc6) 20...Qa4 21.b3 Qa3+ 22.Kd1 Rc6.]

[b) 9.Bd3 was Pillsbury's choice in another game: Rb8 10.cxd5 Nxd5 11.0-0-0 Bxc3 12.Bxc3 (later still, 12.bxc3 b5 13.e4 Nde7 14.Rhg1 a5 15.Be3 Ng6 16.f4 Qh4 17.d5 a4 18.Qa3 exd5 19.exd5 Nce7 20.Qc5 Nxf4 was also good for Black, A. Rubinstein-M.Chigorin, Lodz 1906 )

12...b5 (Black starts his queenside storm, while White is still far behind on the kingside) 13.Bd2 Rb6 14.Rdg1 a5 15.f4 f5 (locking out the d3-bishop and allowing Black to

defend g7 with a major piece along the rank) 16.Rg3 a4 17.Qd1 Ncb4 18.Bxb4 (the reason behind ...Rb6 is now clear: White has to give up one of his bishops as 18.Bb1? Rc6+; and 18.Be2 Nxa2+ are just bad for him ) 18...Nxb4 19.Rhg1 Rf7 20.Bb1 a3 21.bxa3 Nd5 22.Qb3? ( 22.Bc2 was better ) 22...b4 (or 22...c5! at once ) 23.axb4? Rxb4 24.Qd3 c5! 25.dxc5 Qa5 and White no longer has any defence, H.Pillsbury-M.Chigorin, London 1899. ]

[c) 9.Rg1 dxc4 10.Qxc4 (or 10.Bxc4 Qd6 , intending ...Na5 ) 10...Rb8 11.f4 b5 12.Qe2 Ng6 13.Rg5 a6 14.Qg4 Be7 15.Rh5 b4?! ( 15...Nh4 is better, threatening ...g7-g6 – Watson ) 16.Na4 f5 17.Qf3?! (the queen should go to h3 straight away) Qe8 18.Qh3? Nxd4! 19.exd4 Qxa4 20.Rxh7 b3 21.a3 Qxd4 and Black won again, A.Burn-M. Chigorin, Paris 1900. ]

[d) 9.0-0-0 Rb8 10.cxd5 exd5?! (Black should have played 10...Nxd5 , when 11.Nxd5 Bxd2+ 12.Rxd2 Qxd5 13.Qxd5 exd5 14.Rc2 Rbc8 15.Bh3 f5 16.Kd2 Ne7 17.Rhc1 c6 was level in C.Leonard-T.Harding, correspondence 1989 ) 11.Bd3 b5 12.Rdg1 Bxc3 13.Qxc3 , P.Leonhardt-M.Chigorin, Ostend 1905, gave White a favourable version of the main game, since the knights were unable to participate on the queenside. ]

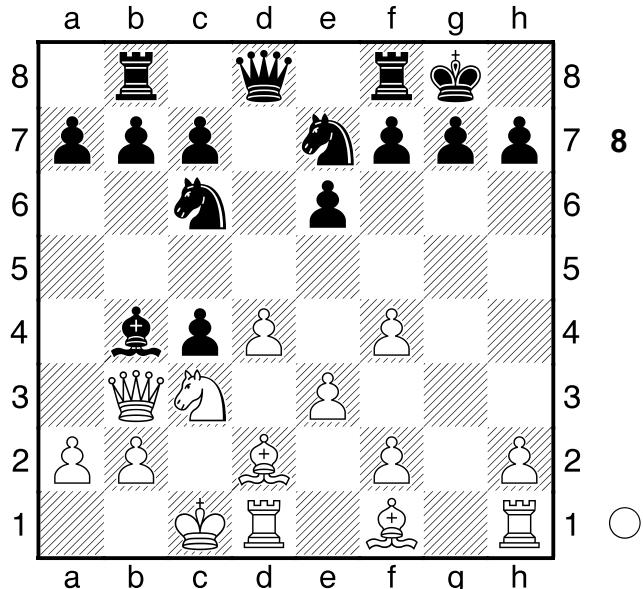
**9...Rb8** Chigorin's trademark move, supporting the advance of the b-pawn to generate queenside counterplay.

### **10.0-0-0**

[J.Showalter-M.Chigorin, Nuremberg 1896, diverged with 10.h4 Nf5?! (but it's not apparent why Chigorin deferred 10...dx<sub>c</sub>4 11.Bxc4 b5

12.Bd3 a5 with standard play ) 11.0-0-0 dx<sub>c</sub>4 12.Bxc4 Be7 13.Ne4 b5 14.Bd3 Rb6 15.Ng5 h6 , when 16.d5! would have been good for White. ]

### **10...dx<sub>c</sub>4**



### **11.Bxc4 b5!** Gaining a tempo on the bishop. **12.Bd3**

[The pawn cannot be captured since 12.Nxb5? Bxd2+ 13.Rxd2 a6 ]

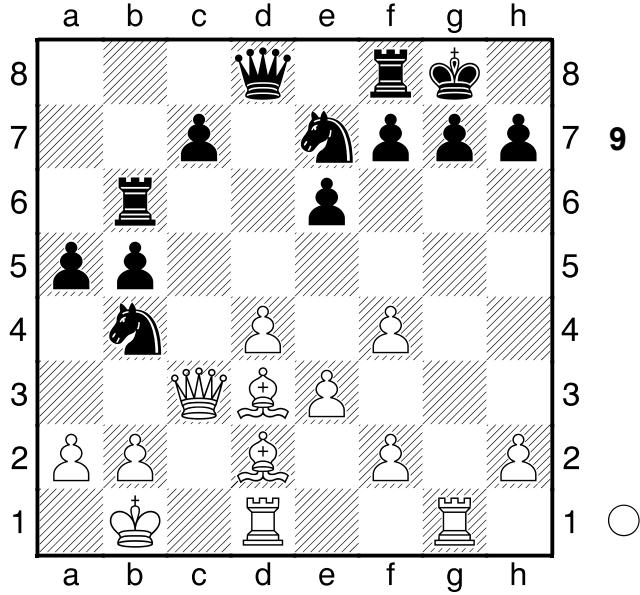
[or 12.Bxb5? Bxc3 13.Bxc3 a6 wins a piece. ]

### **12...Bxc3**

[IM Watson's 12...Rb6? , intending ... a7-a5-a4, might be more accurate. Black can always aim to take the knight later. ]

### **13.Qxc3 Rb6 14.Kb1 a5 15.Rhg1 Nb4**

(Diagram 9)



### 16.Be4

[ 16.d5? is parried by g6 , since 17.dxe6?? drops the bishop on d3. ]

### 16...Ned5

[Throwing in 16...f5!? is worth considering, as for example in Chigorin's later game with Pillsbury (see 9 Bd3 above). ]

### 17.Qc5

[Not 17.Bxd5?? Qxd5 18.b3 Rc6 19.Qb2 Qe4+ 20.Ka1 Nc2+ and wins. ]

### 17...Qa8 18.Bxb4

[Black was threatening 18... Rc6 19.Qxb5 Rb6 20.Qe2 Nc3+ 21.Bxc3 Qxe4+ 22.Ka1 Nc2+ 23.Kb1 Na3+ and draws. ]

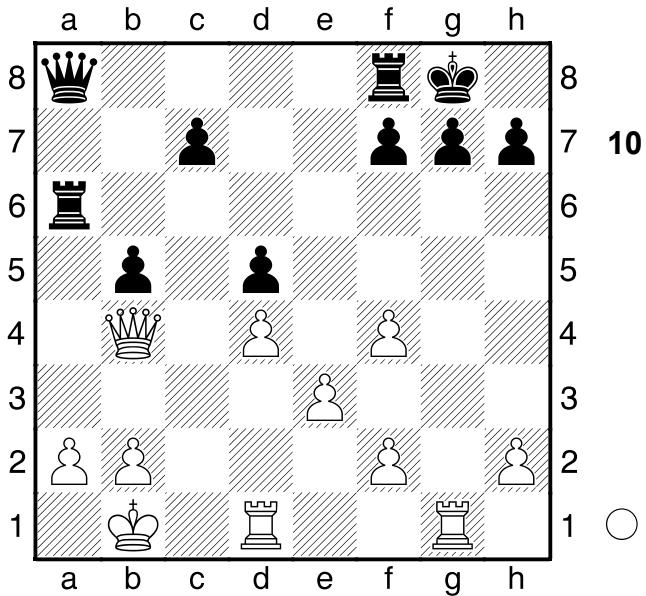
[Note that 18.Ka1 doesn't help after Rc6 19.Qxb5 Rb8 20.Qa4 Rc4 ; ]

[while 18.Rc1 runs into Nc3+! 19.bxc3 Qxe4+ 20.Ka1 Nd3 and even 21.Rxg7+! Kxg7 22.Rg1+ Qg6 23.Rxg6+ hxg6 24.Qxc7 Rfb8 is okay for Black. The knights are really great pieces when attacking, so Pillsbury sensibly decides to remove both of them. ]

### 18...axb4 19.Bxd5 exd5 20.Qxb4

White has liquidated the minor pieces

and remains a pawn up, though he hasn't stopped Black's attacking plans entirely. 20...Ra6



### 21.Qb3!

[Stronger than 21.a3 Ra4 22.Qe7 g6 (not 22...b4?? 23.Rxg7+! Kxg7 24.Rg1+ and mates ) 23.Rc1 b4 24.Rxc7 bxa3 25.b3 (a common defensive idea in such positions; White refuses to allow the opening of the a-file) a2+ (an important move, not allowing Ka2 which blocks the a-pawn and defends the white b-pawn) 26.Ka1 Ra3 27.Rb7 Qc8!

**A)** 28.Qxa3 Qxb7 29.Rc1 Qb5 (not 29...Ra8? 30.Rc7 ) 30.Qb2 Rb8 , when Black should expect to draw in view of the exposed white king.;

**B)** After 28.Kb2?! a1Q+ (and he might even try for more with 28...Qg4!?) 29.Rxa1 Rxa1 30.Kxa1 Qc2! Black has a draw in hand. ]

### 21...Rb8?!

[Here 21...c6 was better, intending 22.Rg3 f6 23.Rdg1 Rf7 , combining defence with attack; e.g. 24.e4 Ra4 25.exd5 cxd5 26.Re3 Qc6

and White only has an extra doubled f-pawn.]

## 22.Rg5 c6 23.Rdg1 g6 24.f5 b4?

This allows White to win by force.

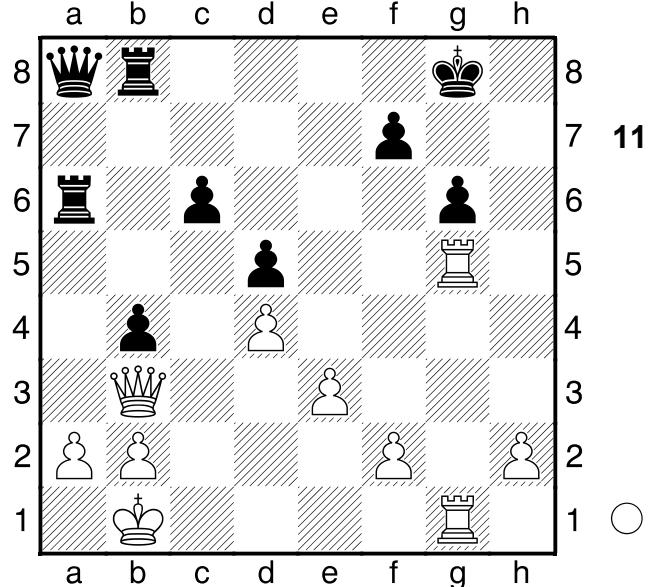
[ 24...Rb7 was necessary, with ideas like 25.fxg6 fxg6 26.h4 (or 26.Qd3 Kh8; though 26.e4! now is good for White anyway) 26...Rba7 (forming "Alekhine's Gun") 27.a3 Rxa3! 28.bxa3 Rxa3 29.Qb4 Ra4 30.Qb2 Qa5 and draws.]

Both sides have amassed their major pieces against each other's king. Although it looks like they each still require one or two moves to break through, this is not really the case.

## 25.fxg6 hxg6

[After 25...fxg6 26.Qd3 Rxa2? (the only way to stop the rook sac on g6 is with 26...c5 which loses another pawn) 27.Rxg6+ Kh8 (accepting the rook is immediate suicide: 27...hxg6 28.Qxg6+ Kf8 29.Qh6+ Ke8 30.Rg8+ Kd7 31.Rg7+ Kc8 32.Qh8#) 28.Qf5 Ra1+ 29.Kc2 b3+ 30.Kd2 Qa5+ 31.Ke2 Qa6+ 32.Kf3, Black has nothing left and White wins with a check on the a1-h8 diagonal.]

(Diagram 11)



**26.Qd3?** This time the preparatory move was not as good.

[Instead, White could have won with 26.Rxg6+! fxg6 (after 26...Kf8 27.Rg7! Black has no way to continue the attack, since Ra3 28.Qc2 Rxa2 29.Rxf7+ leads to mate) 27.Rxg6+ Kf8 (or 27...Kh7 28.Qd3) 28.Qc2!! (this quiet move, transferring the queen into the attack, was probably missed by Pillsbury) (28.Qd3 was also good) 28...Ra7 (or 28...Rb7 29.Rh6 Rg7 30.Qf5+ Kg8 31.Qe6+ Rf7 32.Qe5 Rg7 33.Qh5 etc) 29.Qf5+ Rf7 30.Qg5 Ke8 31.Qe5+ Kf8 (if 31...Kd8 32.Rg8+ Kd7 33.Rxb8; or 31...Kd7 32.Qe6+ Kc7 33.Qxf7+ Kb6 34.Qxd5, White wins) 32.Rh6! and despite an extra rook, Black cannot avoid being mated; e.g. Rg7 (or 32...Rxf2 33.Rh8+ Kf7 34.Rh7+ Kg6 35.Rg7+ Kh6 36.Qg5#) 33.Rh8+ Kf7 34.Qc7+ Kg6 35.Qd6+ Kf7 36.Qd7+ Kg6 (or 36...Kf6 37.Rh6+) 37.Qe6+ Kg5 38.f4#. ]

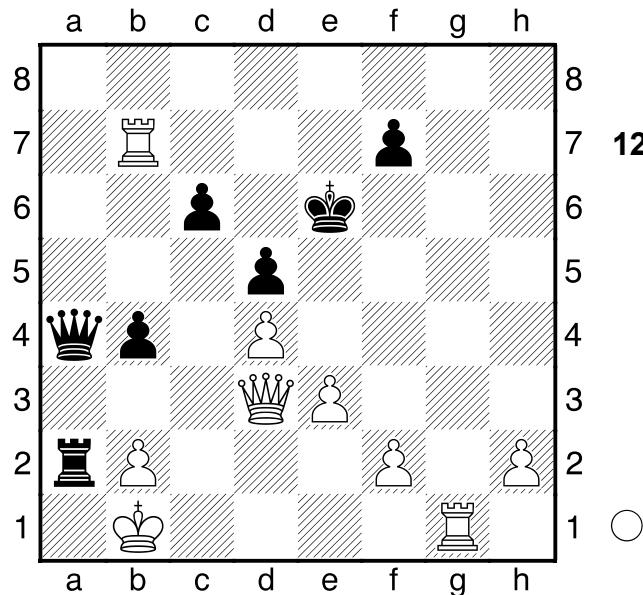
**26...Kf8!** Now Black keeps the f7-pawn as a shield. **27.Rxg6 Rxa2 28.Rg8+?!** [Here 28.Rg7 was better, threatening

Rxf7+, which forces Ra1+ 29.Kc2 Rxe1 30.Rxe1 and White has good winning chances with the extra pawn.]

**28...Ke7 29.Rxb8?** After this move Black saves the draw.

[ 29.R8g7 was still correct.]

**29...Qa4!** Suddenly we have a reversal in roles: Black is now the one a rook down with the attack. **30.Rb7+ Ke6**



**31.Kc1!**

[Here 31.Rg6+? looks decisive:

**A)** in view of 31...fxg6??

32.Qxg6# ( 32.-- );

**B)** but after 31...f6! White has no more useful checks and that is the difference between mating and getting mated! After 32.Kc1 Ra1+ 33.Qb1 ( 33.Kd2 fails to Qd1# ) 33...b3 (threatening ...Qc4+) 34.Qxa1 Qxa1+ 35.Kd2 Qxb2+ 36.Ke1 Qc1+ 37.Ke2 Qc2+ 38.Kf3 Qe4+! 39.Ke2 Qxg6

Black wins easily, since 40.Rxb3 drops the other rook to Qc2+ . ]

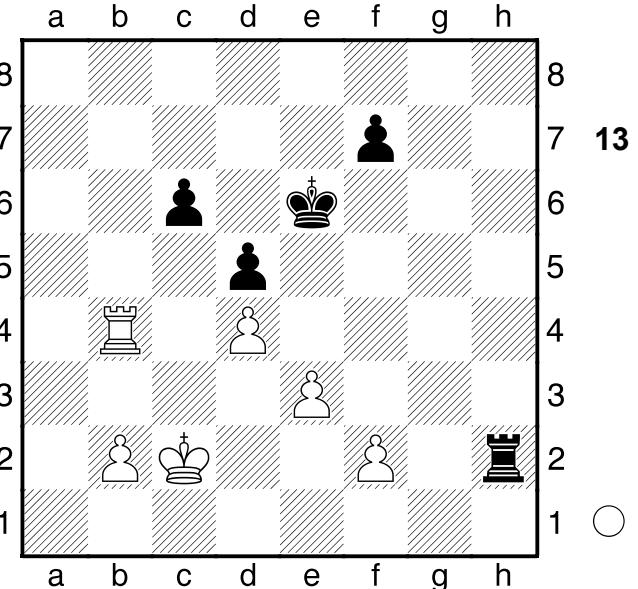
**31...Ra1+ 32.Kd2 Rxe1 33.Qc2!**

The only move to avoid immediate loss.

[Not 33.Ke2?? Qa1 34.Kf3 Qa8! 35.Rb6 Qh8 36.Rxc6+ Kd7

and the check on h5 cannot be stopped.]

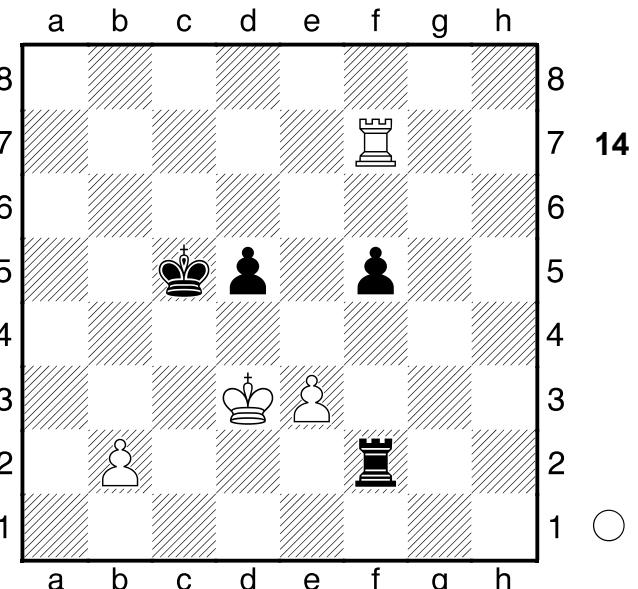
**33...Qxc2+ 34.Kxc2 Rg2 35.Rxb4 Rxh2**



**36.Rb7 Rxf2+** Black has finally regained his pawn and the rook ending is drawn.

**37.Kd3 f5 38.Rc7 Kd6 39.Rf7 c5**

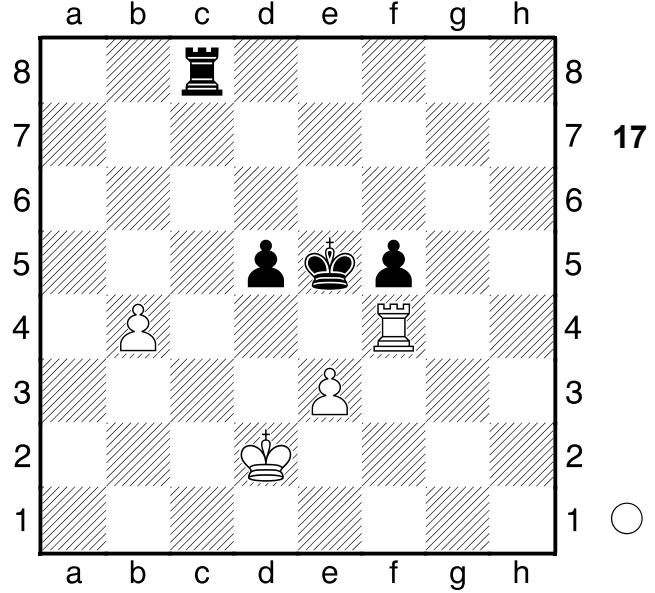
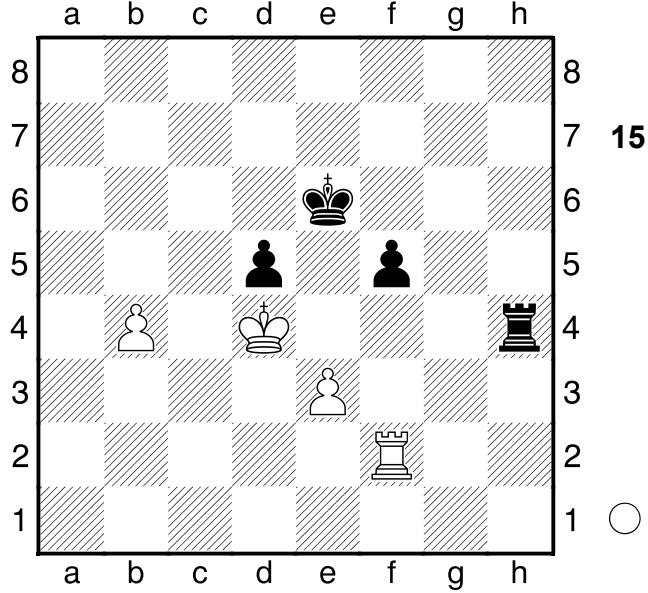
**40.dxc5+ Kxc5**



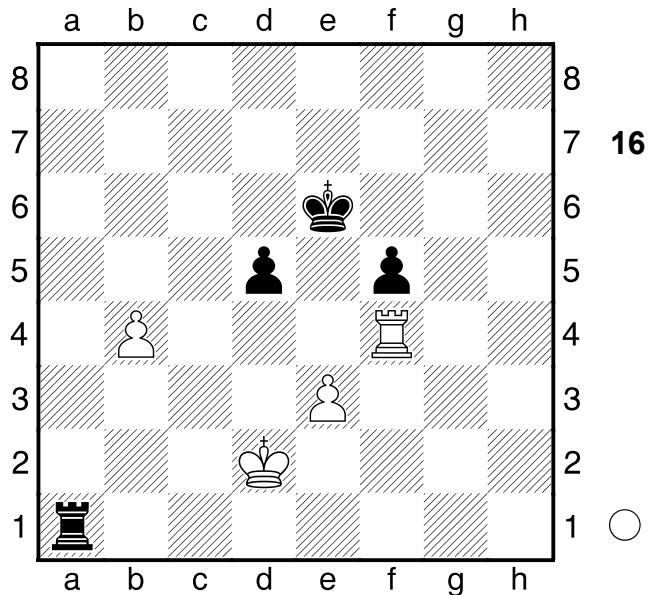
**41.Rc7+ Kd6 42.Rc2 Rf3 43.Kd4 Rh3**

**44.Rf2 Ke6 45.b4 Rh4+**

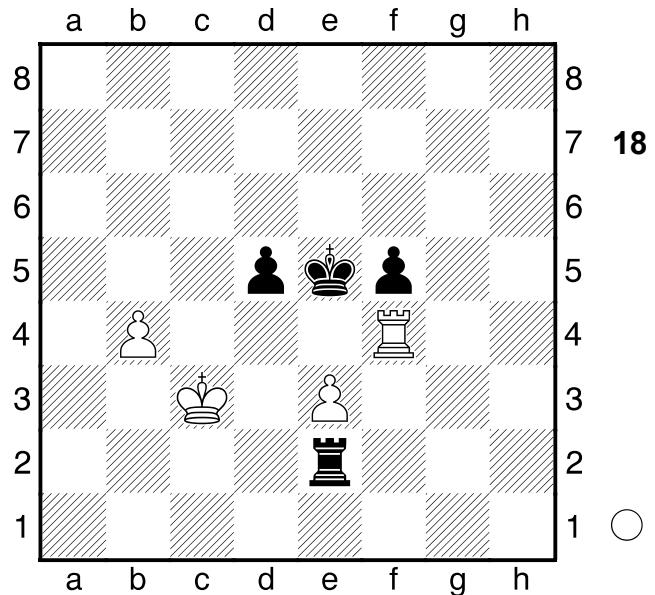
(Diagram 15)



**46.Rf4 Rh1 47.Kc5 Rc1+ 48.Kd4 Rb1  
49.Kc3 Re1 50.Kd2 Ra1**



**56.Kd3 Rc1 57.Kd2 Ra1 58.Ke2  
Ra2+ 59.Kd3 Rg2 60.Kc3 Re2**

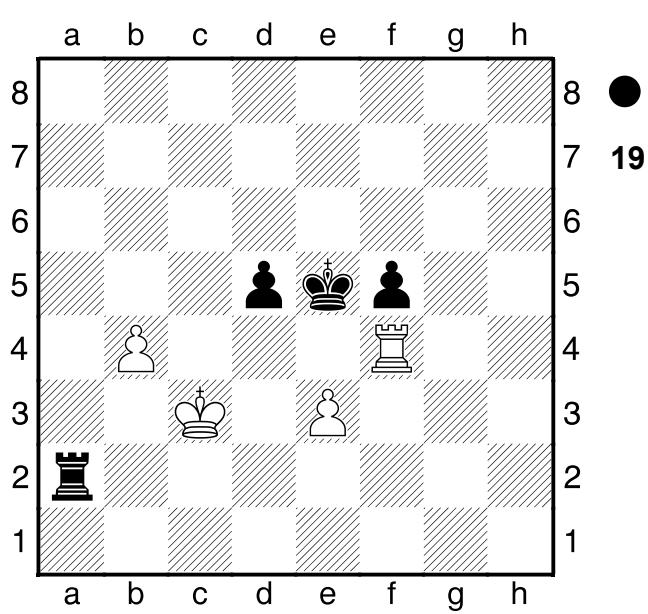


**51.Kd3 Ra3+ 52.Ke2 Ke5 53.Rd4  
Rb3 54.Rf4 Rc3 55.Kd2 Rc8**

(Diagram 17)

**61.Kd3 Ra2 62.Kc3**

(Diagram 19)



●  
19

½-½

**Rosko,L**  
 **Vojta,T**  
 40: Zdar nad Sazavou  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

**D07**

2009

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nf3 Bg4 4.e3 e5!?**

[This is a far more provocative move than 4...e6, as in the previous game.]

**5.Qb3!** The strongest reply, which secured two wins for Steinitz in his 1889 world championship match with Chigorin. White breaks the pin on his f3-knight and threatens both the d5- and b7-pawns.

[Nevertheless, the following alternatives are seen far more often:  
 a) 5.cxd5 is less testing than 3 exd5 lines, since White is committed to both e2-e3 and Nf3. After Qxd5

**A)** 6.Nc3 Bb4 7.Be2 (not 7.Nd2? Qd7! 8.f3 exd4 9.exd4 Be6 and Black is clearly better, O. Ribeiro-L.Brito, Fortaleza 2014 ) 7...exd4 8.exd4, play transposes to a harmless variation of the Göring Gambit Declined, mentioned in the notes to Game 1.

(White can avoid this with 8.0-0, but then Bxc3 9.bxc3 d3! 10.Qxd3 Qxd3 11.Bxd3 0-0-0 is equal anyway, R.Stern-V.Barsky, Polanica Zdroj 2000.);

**B)** Or 6.Be2 exd4 7.exd4 (whereas 7.0-0 0-0-0; and 7.Nc3 Qd7 8.exd4 Nf6 9.0-0 0-0-0 both leave White with a weak d-pawn ) 7...Bb4+ 8.Nc3 etc. ]

[b) 5.Be2?! is well met by e4!, intending variously 6.cxd5 (or 6.Ne5 Nxe5 7.dxe5 Bxe2 8.Qxe2 Qg5!; or 6.Nfd2 Bxe2 7.Qxe2 Nb4!) 6...exf3

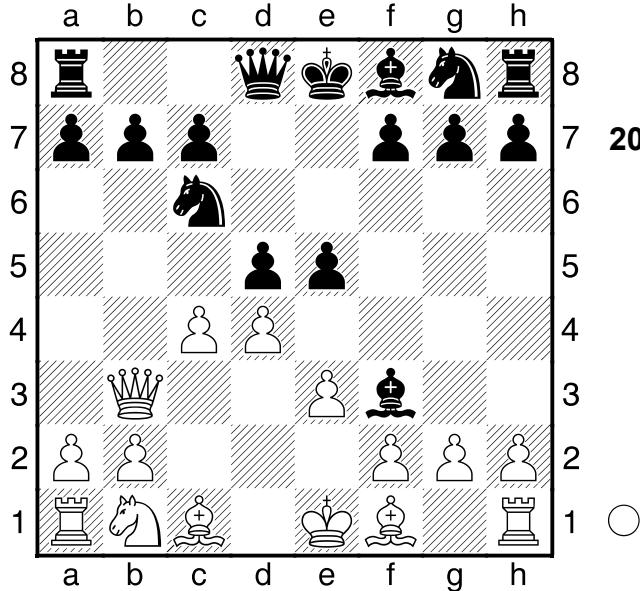
7.gxf3 Qxd5! . In these lines White is struggling right out of the opening, so he probably has to resort to 6 Ng1 with a level position. ]

[c) 5.h3?! Bxf3 6.Qxf3 gains the bishop pair but wastes time. After Nf6 7.cxd5 Qxd5 8.Qxd5 Nxd5 Black has no problems at all; e.g. 9.Nc3?! (here 9.dxe5 Ndb4 10.Na3 Nxe5 11.Ke2! 0-0-0 12.g3 is still about equal ) 9...Ndb4 10.d5 0-0-0! 11.Bb5 Ne7 12.Ke2 Nxd5 and White's bishops were not worth the pawn, A.Ahner-D.Pirrot, German League 1998. ]

[d) 5.dxe5 allows Black to push on in Albin style with d4 (I prefer this to 5...dxc4 6.Qa4 Bxf3 7.gxf3 Qd5 , when 8.Be2! causes some problems ) 6.Qb3!? (probably the best try) (whereas 6.Be2 Bb4+ followed by ...d4xe3; and 6.a3 dxe3; and 6.exd4 Bxf3 7.Qxf3 Qxd4 are all fine for Black ) 6...Bb4+ 7.Bd2 Bxf3 8.gxf3 a5! leads to unclear play. For example, 9.f4 (not 9.Bxb4 axb4 10.f4? , as in Ma.Horvath-P.Bulla, Slovakian Championship, Topolcianky 1994, because of dxe3 11.Qxe3 Qd4 , when 12.Qxd4? Nxd4 13.Bd3 fails to Nb3 ) 9...Qh4 10.Bg2 (if 10.Bxb4? then a4! 11.Qa3 Nxb4 12.Qxb4 dxe3 ) 10...Nh6 11.0-0 (or 11.Bxb4 Ng4 ) 11...0-0-0 12.Bxb4 Nxb4 13.Nd2 dxe3 14.Qxe3 Qxh2+!? 15.Kxh2 Ng4+ 16.Kg3 Nxe3 17.fxe3 Rxd2 and Black has equalized. ]

**5...Bxf3**

(Diagram 20)



## 6.gxf3

[Not 6.Qxb7?? Nb4 7.gxf3 a6! and White is in big trouble.]

**6...dxc4!** This seems to be Black's best chance in the critical position.

[Others:

a) 6...exd4?! 7.cxd5 Ne5 8.exd4 Nd7 9.Nc3 is clearly better for White with the two bishops, as in W.Steinitz-M.Chigorin, Havana (10th matchgame) 1889.]

[b) 6...Bb4+?! doesn't help either, since 7.Bd2 Bxd2+ 8.Nxd2 exd4 9.cxd5 dxe3 10.fxe3 is again good for White with his strong centre, J. Davidson-F.Sämisch, Amsterdam 1925.]

[c) 6...Nge7 7.Nc3! (Black is okay after other moves) exd4 8.Nxd5 and now:

### A) 8...Rb8

**A1)** 9.e4 was played in W. Steinitz-M.Chigorin, Havana (14th matchgame) 1889, after which Ne5! (9...Ng6?! 10.f4) 10.f4 Nd7, intending ...c7-c6, seems okay for Black; e.g. 11.Bd2 (or if 11.Qd3, M.Tratar-S.Hütte, Dos Hermanas (online

blitz) 2003, then c6 12.Nxe7

Nc5!) 11...Nc5 12.Qd1 c6

13.Nxe7 Bxe7 (Legki).;

### A2)

Unfortunately, 9.Bd2! is much stronger, when it's hard to see a reasonable move for Black. After 9...b5 10.Nxe7 Bxe7 11.cxb5 Ne5 12.exd4 Qxd4 13.0-0-0, he was just a pawn down in P.Wenninger-S. Weber, Schwäbisch Gmünd 2018.;

**B)** 8...Na5!? (sacrificing two tempi to get the white queen off the b-file) 9.Qa4+ Nac6 10.e4 (instead, 10.Qb3 repeats; while 10.Qb5 Rb8! is a big improvement on 8...Rb8, as Black gains the useful ...a7-a6 against the white queen; e.g. 11.Bd2 a6 12.Qb3 b5! now works) 10...Ng6

**B1)** 11.b4? Qd7 (or 11...Bd6 12.c5 Be5, taking control of the f4-square in view of 13.f4 Qh4!) 12.Bg5 Be7 13.Bxe7 Ngxe7 14.0-0-0 was I.Somogyi-E.

Nicolaisen, Budapest 1998, where Black should castle with 0-0 and is doing alright, since 15.b5 Ne5 16.Rxd4? Nxd5 17.Rxd5 Qe7 18.Be2 a6! leaves White with weaknesses everywhere.;

**B2)** However, there is no need for White to seek an instant refutation (11 b4?). After simply

11.Bd2 Bd6 12.0-0-0 0-0 13.f4, it is difficult to have confidence in Black's position. White has a well-established knight on d5 and the bishop pair, while the black d4-pawn will be a constant weakness and the open g-file may become an avenue of attack as well. So I cannot recommend

this way of playing the Chigorin.]

## 7.Bxc4 Now White is attacking both b7 and f7.

[Taking the b7-pawn at once is ineffective: 7.Qxb7?! Nge7! 8.dxe5 (or 8.d5 Rb8 9.Qa6 Qxd5 10.Qxc4 Qxf3 11.Rg1 g6) 8...Rb8 9.Qa6 Nxe5

- A)** 10.Bxc4?! N7c6! 11.Be2 Bb4+ 12.Bd2 0-0 and Black has excellent play for the pawn. ( 12....-- );  
**B)** Not 10.Qxa7?? Nxh3+! 11.Ke2 Qd3+! 12.Kxf3 Qd1+ 13.Be2 (while 13.Kg3 Nf5+; and 13.Kf4 g5+ both lead to mate ) 13...Qxh1+ and wins. ]

## 7...Qd7

[Black defends f7 and plans to meet 7...Qd7 8.Qxb7?! with Rb8 9.Qa6 exd4 . ]

## 8.dxe5

[Closing the centre with 8.d5? Na5 9.Qc3 Nxc4 10.Qxc4 f5 leaves Black with the advantage.]

[QUESTION: What happens if White plays 8.Bxf7+ Qxf7 9.Qxb7 , forking the knight and rook?

ANSWER: Black is saved by some nice tactics: Kd7 10.Qxa8 Qxf3

- A)** 11.Rg1 Nxd4! 12.Qxf3 Nxf3+ , regaining the material with equality;

- B)** or 11.0-0 Qg4+ with perpetual check. ( 11....-- );

- C)** In Baksa-Szimonidesz, Budapest 1960, White tried to avoid those ideas with 11.Rf1? , only to run into 11...exd4 12.exd4? Nf6 13.Nc3 Bb4 14.Qxh8 Nxd4 and Black won, as there is no defence against ...Qe2 mate. ]

## 8...Na5 Forced;

[since 8...0-0-0? is answered by 9.e6 ; ]

[or if 8...Nxe5? then 9.Qxb7 Rd8 10.Bb5 . ]

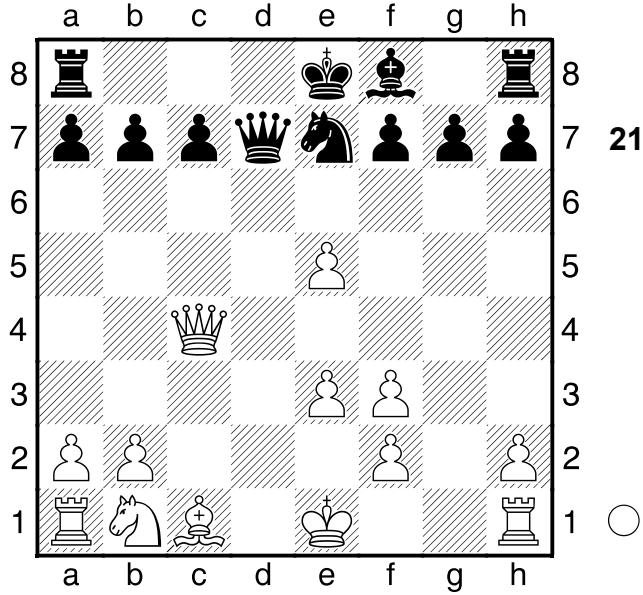
## 9.Qb5 As this doesn't work out in the game, White might examine other options.

[a) 9.Bxf7+ Qxf7 10.Qb5+ c6 11.Qxa5 Qxf3 12.Rg1 leaves White a pawn up, but Black can generate strong counterplay after Nh6! , threatening ...Ng4; for example, 13.Nd2 Qf5 14.e4 (or 14.Qc7 Ng4 f4 Nxe3 16.Qxb7 Rc8 17.Rg5 Qe6) 14...Qf4 15.e6 g6 16.Qg5 (or 16.Qc3 0-0-0 17.Qxh8? Bc5) 16...Qxg5 17.Rxg5 0-0-0 and Black should regain the front e-pawn with equality. ]

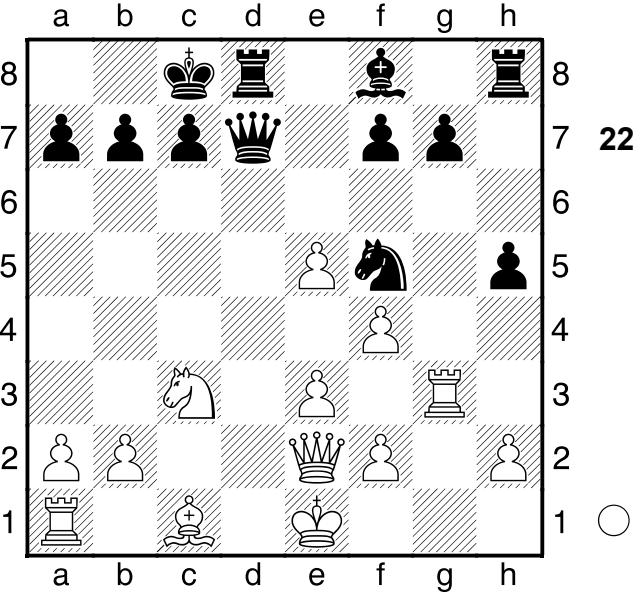
[b) 9.e6!? fxe6 10.Bxe6 Qc6 11.Qc3 Bb4! 12.Qxb4 Qxc1+ 13.Ke2 Qxh1 14.Qb5+ (or 14.Qxa5 Nf6 15.Qxc7 Rf8 and ...Rd8) 14...Nc6 15.Qxb7 Nd8 16.Qxa8 Ne7 reaches a very unclear position. Despite a two pawn deficit (so far!), Black may yet be okay as long as he keeps White from developing his queenside; e.g. 17.Qb8 Qc1 18.Bh3 Rf8 19.Qb3 Rf6 20.Qc3 Qh1 21.f4 Rc6 22.Qxg7 Ne6 23.Qxh7 Nxf4+ 24.exf4 Rd6 and the threat of ...Qd1+ means White has to take the draw. ]

## 9...Nxc4 10.Qxc4 Ne7

(Diagram 21)



21



22

Black has good counterplay here since he will castle long next, whereas it is far more difficult for the white king to find safety. **11.Nc3**

[If 11.Qg4 then Nf5 avoids the queen swap, since 12.e4?! Nd4 13.Qxd7+ Kxd7 is better for Black.]

[Or if 11.Ke2 0-0-0 12.Nc3 then Qe8!, followed by ...Nc6.]

### **11...Ng6**

[Or 11...Nc6!? 12.f4 0-0-0 with ideas of ...g7-g5.]

### **12.f4 0-0-0**

[The immediate 12...Nh4?! is answered by 13.Qd5! and White is clearly better.]

### **13.Qe2**

[Not 13.e4?! which allows Qg4!.]

### **13...Nh4 14.Rg1 h5 Preventing Qg4.**

[Another option was 14...Bb4!? 15.Qg4 f5! 16.exf6 Nf5 17.e4 Rhe8 18.fxg7 Rxe4+ 19.Be3 Rg8 20.Qh3 h6 21.Rd1 Bxc3+ 22.bxc3 Qe6 and Black has fully sufficient counterplay.]

### **15.Rg3 Nf5**

(Diagram 22)

### **16.Rg5 Be7 17.Rg1 Nh4 18.Rg3**

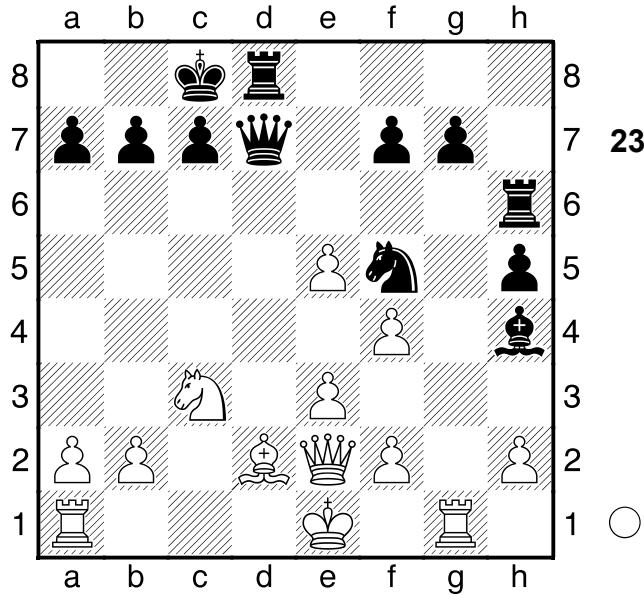
[If 18.e4 then Bb4 19.Rg3 (not 19.Bd2?? Nf3+) 19...f5 20.Bd2 fxe4 21.0-0-0 Nf3 and chances are equal; e.g. 22.Be3 Qf7 23.Nxe4 Rxd1+ 24.Qxd1 Qc4+ 25.Nc3 (or 25.Qc2 Qf1+) 25...Bxc3 26.bxc3 Qxc3+ 27.Kb1 Rd8 28.Qxf3 Qb4+ with perpetual check.]

### **18...Nf5 19.Rg1 Bh4?** This is too much.

[Black should continue the repetition with 19...Nh4.]

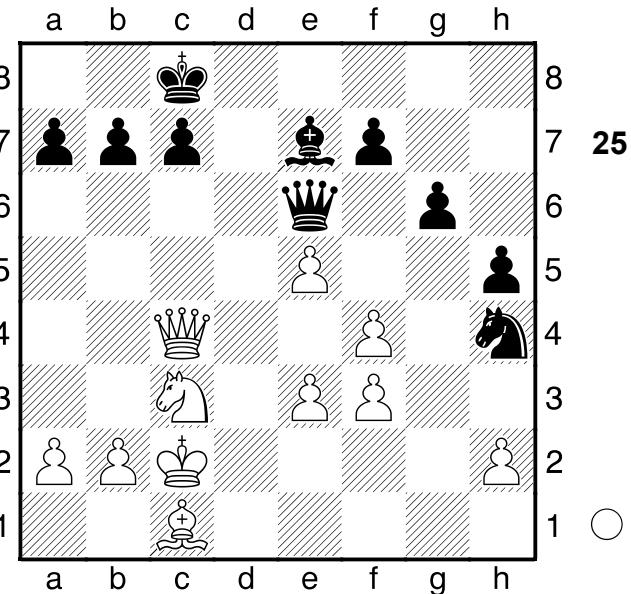
### **20.Bd2 Rh6**

(Diagram 23)



[ gives Black good play again. ]

**30.Qc4 Qe6**



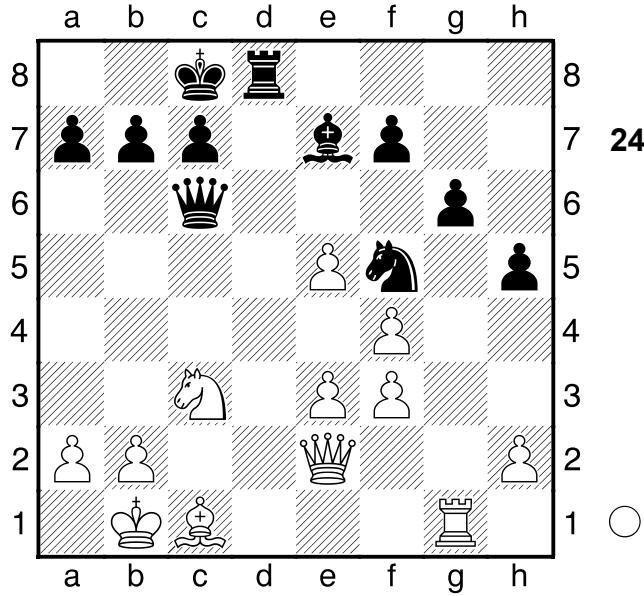
**21.0-0-0** Having managed to castle, White is now just a pawn up. **21...Qc6**

**22.Kb1 Rhh8 23.Bc1 g6 24.f3?!**

I'm not sure what this was for.

[ 24.e4! and Be3 is winning for White. ]

**24...Be7 25.Rxd8+ Rxd8**



**26.Rd1?!** Swapping all the rooks off doesn't ease White's task, as the black queen has more freedom. **26...Rxd1**

**27.Qxd1 Qd7 28.Kc2 Nh4 29.Qe2?!**

**Qh3?!**

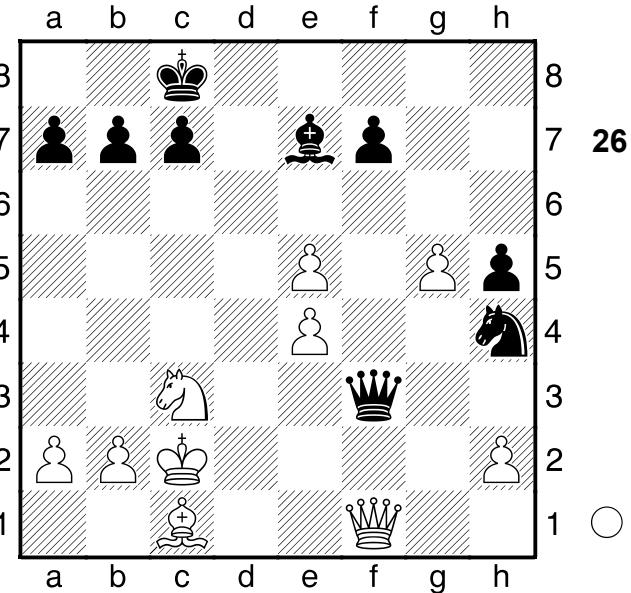
[ Instead, 29...Qf5+ 30.Kd1 g5

**31.Qf1 Nf5 32.Qd3 Nh4 33.Qf1 g5?**

Black needs the queen already on f5 for this to work.

[ 33...Bb4 is better, aiming to remove the defensive knight and leave himself with the superior minor piece; e.g. 34.Bd2 Bxc3 35.Bxc3 Nf5 36.Qd3 Qxa2 and the game is level. ]

**34.fxg5 Qf5+ 35.e4! Qxf3**



**36.Qc4 Qf2+ 37.Kb1** The white king makes it to safety. **37...Nf3 38.e6 Ne5**

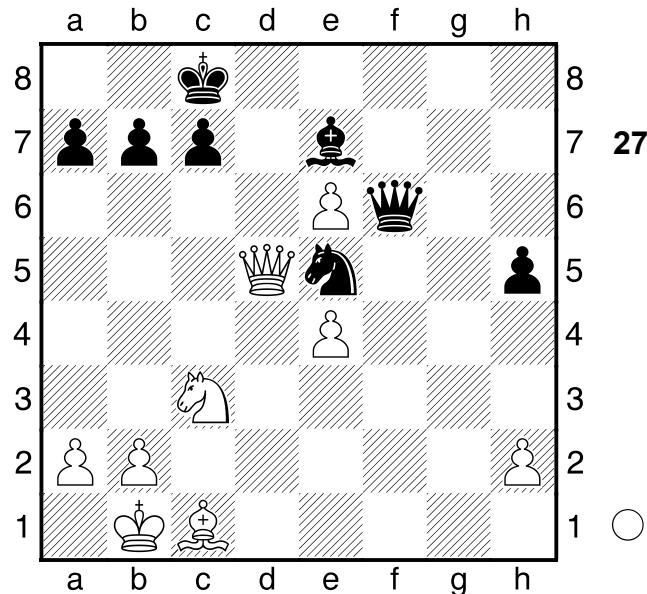
**39.Qd5**

[Here 39.Qb5! Nc6 40.exf7 Qxf7  
41.Qf5+ wins.]

**39...f6 40.gxf6?**

[And now 40.Qd1 fxe5 41.Qxh5  
was correct.]

**40...Qxf6**

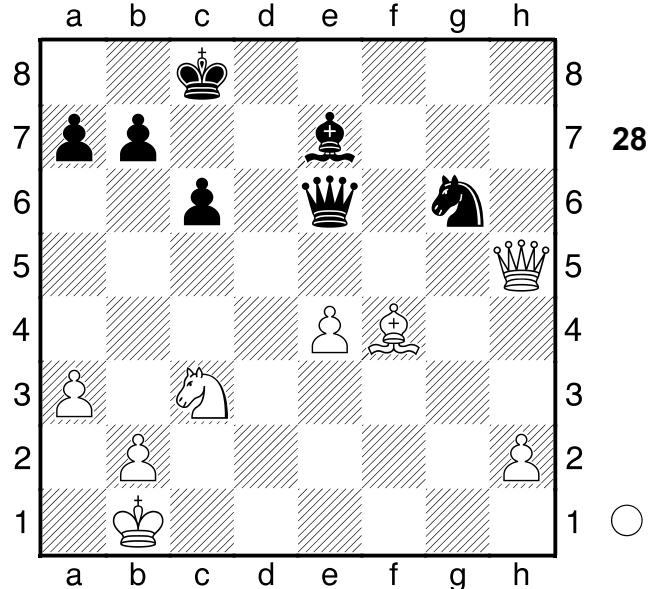


**41.Qb3 c6 42.a3 Qf1** Black is back in  
the game again. **43.Qd1 Qh3 44.Bf4**  
**Qxe6?**

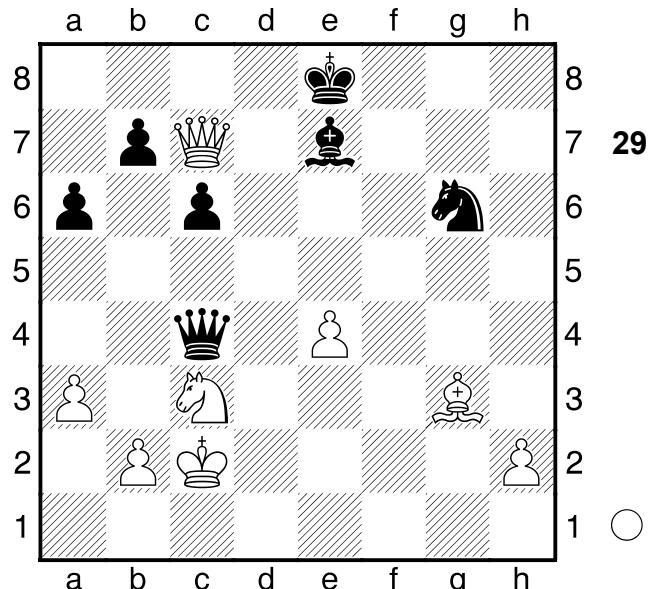
[The queenless endgame after  
44...Qd3+ 45.Qxd3 (or 45.Qc2  
Qf1+) 45...Nxd3 is okay for Black, who  
will quickly pick up the e6-pawn  
anyway.]

**45.Qxh5 Ng6**

(Diagram 28)

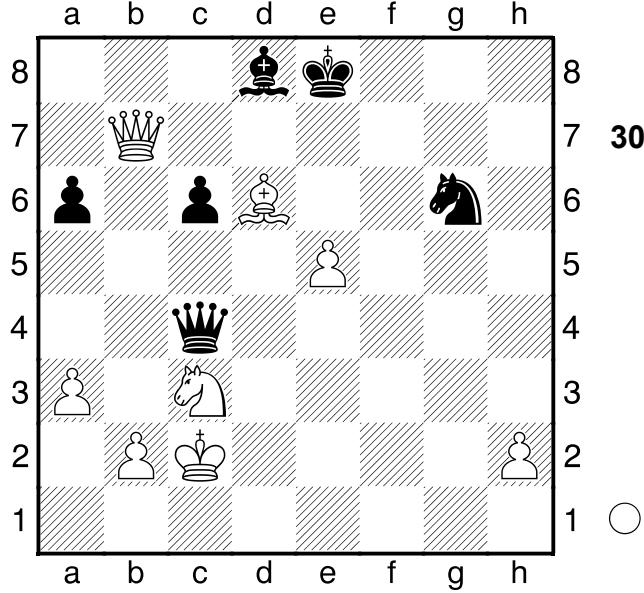


**46.Bg3 Kd8 47.Qf5 Qg8 48.Kc2 a6**  
**49.Qa5+ Ke8 50.Qc7 Qc4**

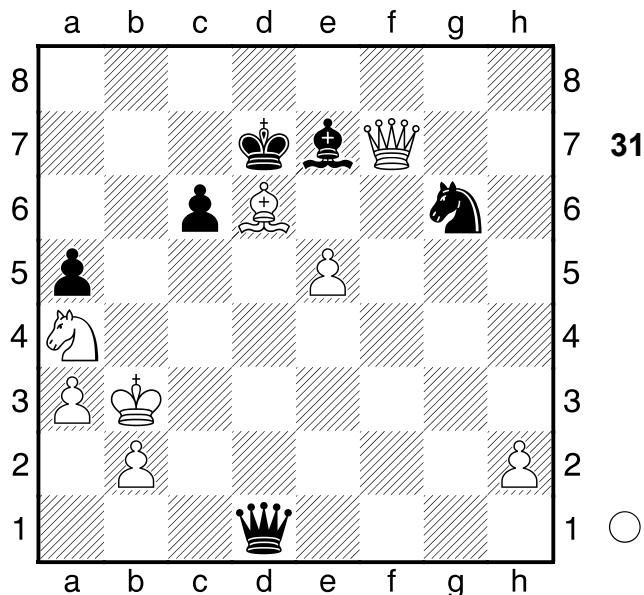


**51.Qxb7 Bf6 52.Qb8+ Ke7 53.Bd6+**  
**Kd7 54.e5 Bd8 55.Qb7+ Ke8**

(Diagram 30)

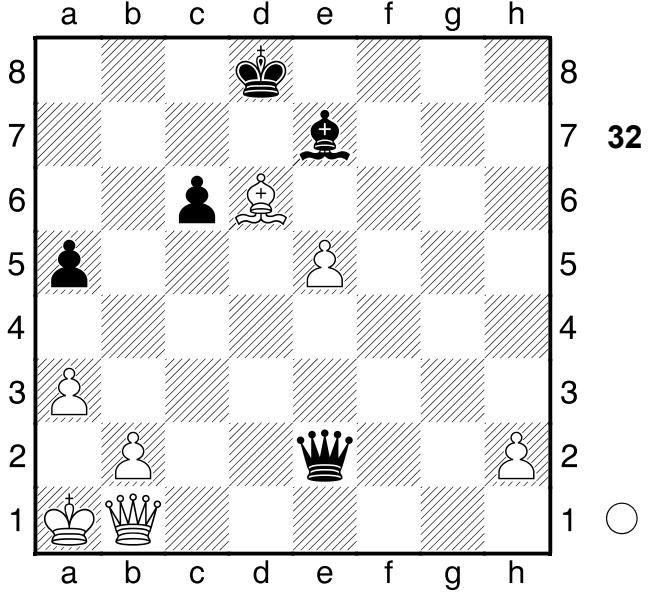


**56.Qb3 Qg4 57.Qg8+ Kd7 58.Qf7+ Be7 59.Kb3 a5 60.Na4 Qd1+**



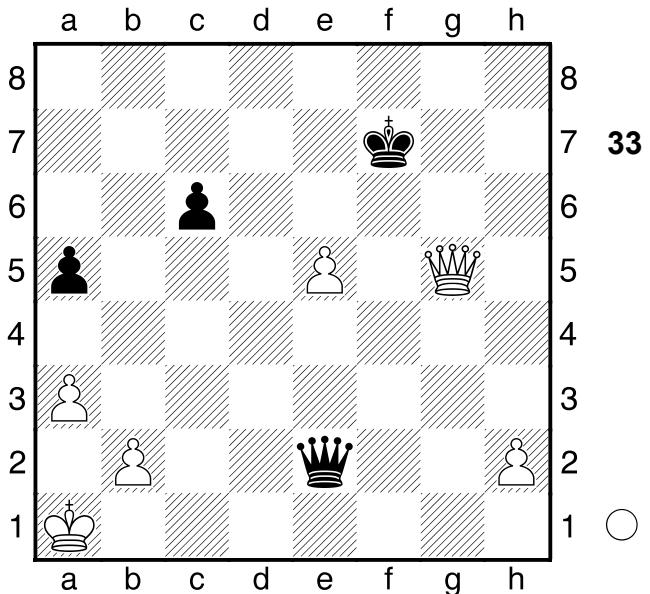
**61.Ka2 Qxa4 62.Qf5+ Kd8 63.Qxg6 Qc4+ 64.Ka1 Qf1+ 65.Qb1 Qe2**

(Diagram 32)



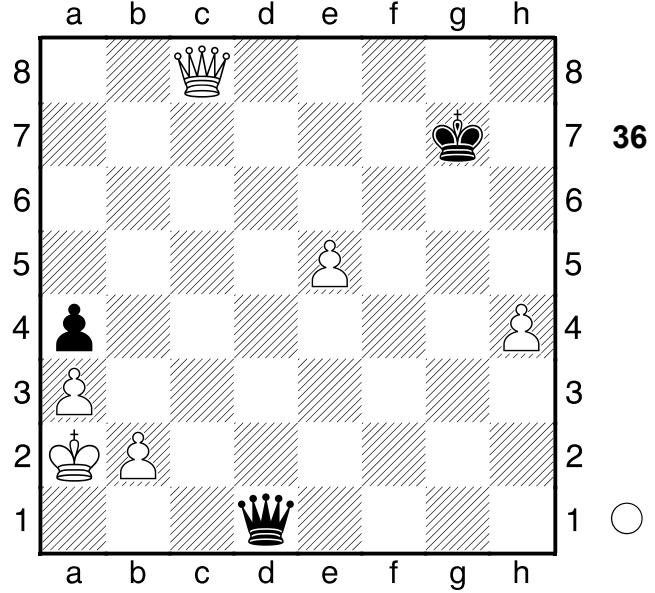
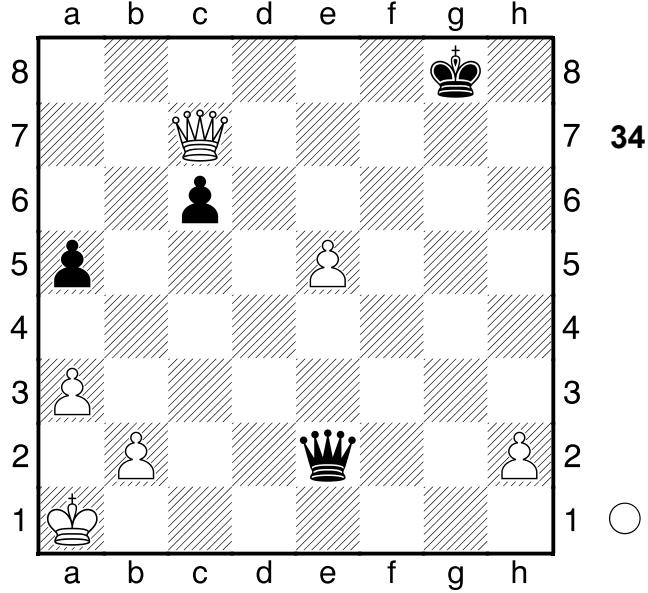
**66.Bxe7+ Kxe7** Whereas the queen ending is won for White, and he makes no more mistakes.

**67.Qh7+ Ke8 68.Qg6+ Kf8 69.Qf6+ Kg8 70.Qg5+ Kf7**

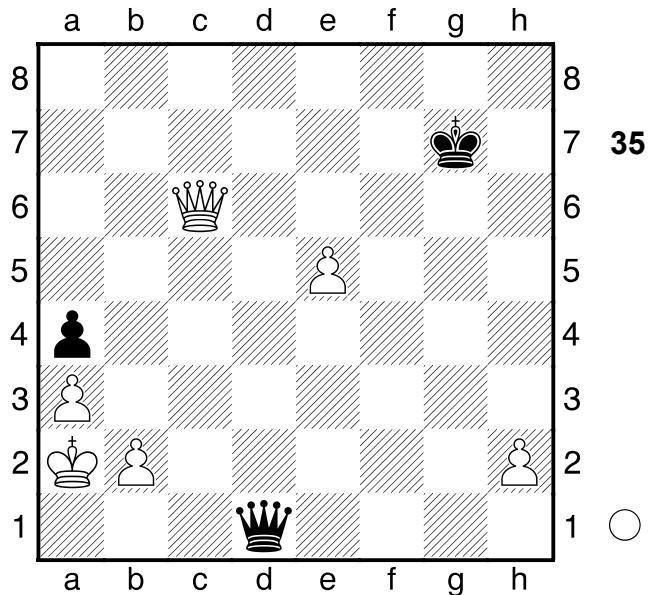


**71.Qf6+ Kg8 72.Qg6+ Kf8 73.Qd6+ Kg8 74.Qb8+ Kg7 75.Qc7+ Kg8**

(Diagram 34)



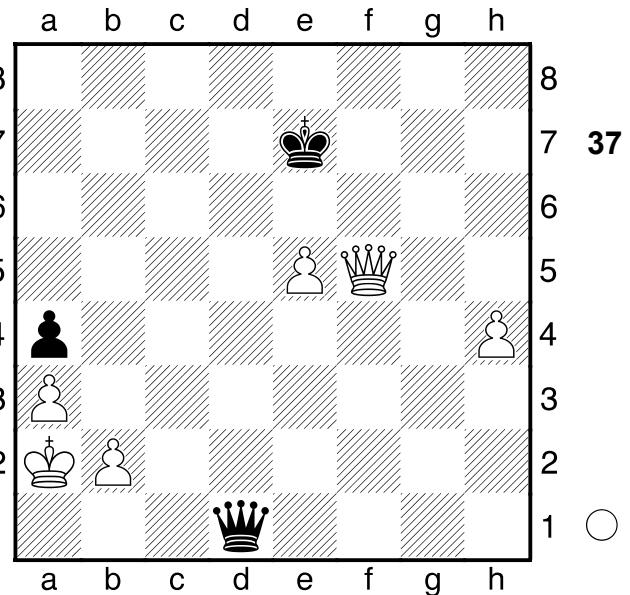
**76.Qc8+ Kg7 77.Qd7+ Kf8 78.Qc8+  
Kg7 79.Qxc6 Qd1+ 80.Ka2 a4**



**81.Qc7+ Kg8 82.Qc4+ Kf8 83.h4 Kg7  
84.Qc7+ Kg8 85.Qc8+ Kg7**

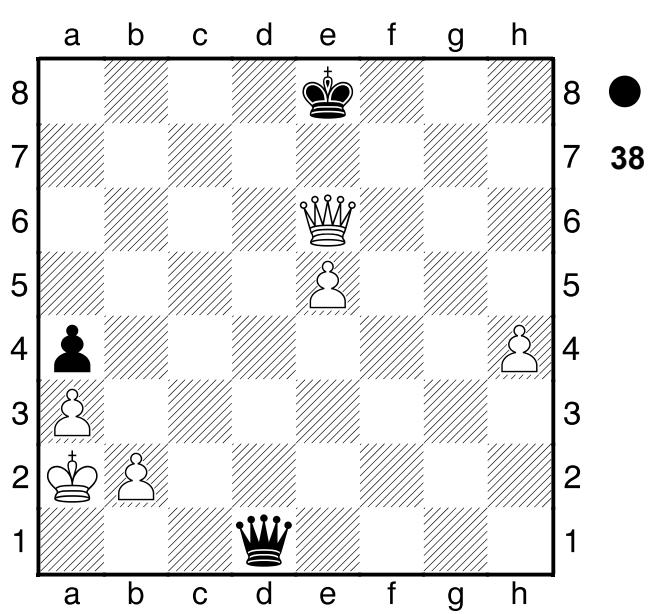
(Diagram 36)

**86.Qb7+ Kg6 87.Qe4+ Kf7 88.Qc4+  
Kg6 89.Qe4+ Kf7 90.Qf5+ Ke7**



**91.Qf6+ Ke8 92.Qe6+**

(Diagram 38)



**1-0**

Von Herman,U  
 Scheerer,C  
41: Lübeck  
[Jimmy Liew]

D07

2011

### 1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nf3 Bg4 4.Nc3

This natural developing move avoids the complications of 4.cxd5 (Games 47-54), at the cost of allowing Black to defend the d5-pawn with ...e7-e6 and then develop freely. On the face of it, 4 Nc3 seems fairly harmless, but it's important that Black plays with purpose in the early stages, as otherwise White can gain a nagging edge. More than anything it's an attempt to take the fun out of Black's position, claiming that the c6-knight is then misplaced.

**4...e6** The fact that Black has his bishop outside the pawn chain should be a victory of sorts.

[Note that 4...Nf6?! ]

[and 4...dxc4? both transpose to bad lines in Chapter Two (see the notes to Games 20 and 25 respectively); ]

[while 4...Bxf3 leaves Black in an unpleasant position after 5.exf3!]

**A)** 5...e6 6.cxd5 exd5 7.Bb5

. White has a 70% score from here in the databases.;

**B)** Both 5...dxc4? 6.d5 Ne5 7.Bf4

Nd3+ (and 7...Ng6 8.Bxc4! )

8.Bxd3 cxd3 9.Qxd3 are even worse;

**C)** or if 5...Nf6 then 6.Bg5 . ]

### 5.cxd5

[Instead:

a) 5.Bf4 is examined in Games 42-46. ]

[b) 5.e3 transposes to 4 e3 e6 5 Nc3 in Game 39. ]

[c) 5.Qa4

**A)** 5...Bxf3 returns to 4 Qa4 Bxf3

lines in the notes to Game 38. 6--

( 6-- );

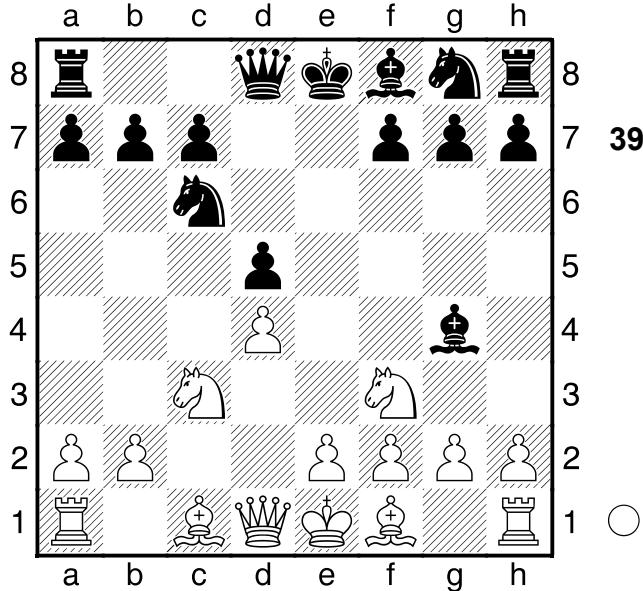
**B)** If Black wishes to avoid those, then 5...Qd7!? is possible.

Morozevich dislikes this because of 6.cxd5 exd5 7.Bf4 Nf6 8.e3 , as in P.Romanovsky-E.Terugov, Moscow 1951, but Bd6 doesn't seem so bad, intending 9.Bxd6 (or 9.Ne5 Nxe5 10.dxe5 Qxa4 11.Nxa4 Bb4+ 12.Nc3 Ne4 ) 9...Qxd6 10.Ne5 0-0 11.Nxg4 (or 11.Nxc6 Bd7 ) 11...Nxg4 12.Be2 Nf6 13.0-0 a6 14.Rab1 Nd8 and so on. ]

[d) 5.Bg5 should probably be prefaced by c4xd5 (see 6 Bg5 below), as now Be7 6.Bxe7 Ngxe7 7.e3 0-0 8.cxd5 (or 8.Be2 dxc4 9.Bxc4 Nd5 10.Rc1 Nxc3 11.Rxc3 e5 12.dxe5 Nxe5 , O.Hole-S.Agdestein, Norwegian Championship, Moss 2006 ) 8...Nxd5!? 9.Be2 Nxc3 10.bxc3 Na5 sorts out the problem of the c6-knight; e.g. 11.0-0 c5 12.Qa4 Bh5 13.Rfd1 Rc8 14.Rac1 a6 and Black was fine, S.Baumegger-F. Volkmann, Austrian Championship, Gmunden 2005. ]

### 5...exd5

(Diagram 39)



**6.Qb3!?** A sharp idea from GM Jonathan Levitt. White targets d5 and b7, seemingly abandoning the d4-pawn to its fate.

[Others:

a) 6.Bg5 aims to prompt a slight weakness with ...f7-f6 or reduce Black's activity further by exchanging dark-squared bishops. The latter is probably the safest course. After Be7 7.Bxe7 Ngxe7 8.e3 0-0, White may think he's playing for two results, but a draw is by far the most likely, and a loss is always possible. For example, 9.Be2 Qd6 (or 9...Nc8 10.0-0 Bxf3!? 11.Bxf3 Nb6 12.Na4 Nxa4 13.Qxa4 Qd6 14.Rfc1 Ne7 15.b4 a6 16.Qc2 c6 and White's minority attack can only create a single weakness which Black has well defended, K.Arkell-N.Short, British League 2016) 10.Rc1 Rae8 11.0-0 Nc8 12.b4 Nb6 13.a3 Re6!? 14.h3 Bxf3 15.Bxf3 Ne7 16.e4 c6 17.e5 Qd8 18.Be2 Rh6 19.b5 f6 with a double-edged game where Black eventually came out on top, I. Sokolov-R.Rapport, Isle of Man 2017.]

[b) 6.Bf4 is the most common move. The advantage to having exchanged on d5 first is that ideas of ...d5xc4, or (e4xd5) ...Nxd5 hitting the bishop, are ruled out. On the other hand, the central clarification makes things simpler for Black. For example, Bd6 7.Bg3 (exchanging bishops with 7.Bxd6 Qxd6 doesn't offer White anything: 8.e3 Nf6 9.Be2 0-0 10.0-0 Bxf3 11.Bxf3 Ne7 12.Qc2 c6 with equality in B.Abramovic-I. Miladinovic, Montenegrin League 2007, as Black has little reason to fear a minority attack here; while 7.Nxd5 Bxf4 8.Nxf4 Bxf3 9.gxf3 Qxd4 10.Qxd4 Nxd4 11.0-0-0 Rd8 12.e3 Ne6 13.Rxd8+ Kxd8 14.Nxe6+ fxe6 is a level endgame, T.Henrichs-R. Rabiega, German Championship, Altenkirchen 2005) 7...Nge7 8.e3 0-0 9.a3 Qd7 10.Bd3 f5! (improving on 10...a6 11.Bxd6 Bxf3 12.Qxf3 Qxd6 13.Qg3 with an edge for White in V. Kramnik-N.Short, Dresden Olympiad 2008) 11.Bxd6 Qxd6 12.h3 Bxf3 13.Qxf3 f4 14.Qg4 Qh6 and Black had good play in R.Shetty-N.Short, Pattaya 2011.]

**6...Bb4!** Correctly refusing the challenge.

[ 6...Bxf3? 7.exf3 Nxd4 runs into 8.Qa4+! (rather than 8.Qxb7 c6!) 8...Nc6 9.Ba6! Qe7+ 10.Kf1 Qb4 11.Qxb4 Nxb4 12.Bxb7 Rb8 (or 12...Rd8 13.a3) 13.Bxd5 Nxd5 14.Nxd5 and White was a clear pawn up in R.Bator-H.Thornert, Swedish League 2014.]

**7.Ne5** This looks very strong, but Black has a tactical rejoinder.

[Instead, 7.a3 Bxc3+ 8.bxc3 (or 8.Qxc3 Nge7) 8...Na5! 9.Qa4+ c6 also seems okay for Black, who has control of the queenside light squares; ]

[or if 7.e3 Nge7 8.Be2 0-0 9.h3 Be6 10.a3 Bxc3+ 11.Qxc3 , as in A.Sumets-J.Bednarich, Luxembourg Team Championship 2012, then Nf5 12.0-0 Nd6 13.b4 Ne4 . ]

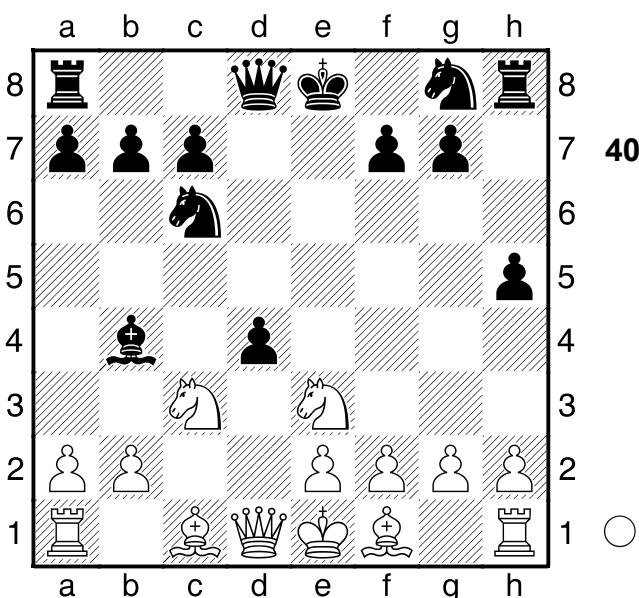
### 7...Nxd4! 8.Qd1

[Obviously not 8.Qxb4?? Nc2+ . ]

### 8...Nc6 9.Nxg4 h5

[Scheerer deviates from his own analysis in 'Play 1...Nc6!', where he gave 9...d4 10.a3 Be7 11.Ne4 h5 , regaining the piece with equality. ]

### 10.Ne3 d4



### 11.Qb3! Back again.

[If 11.a3 , Black can play more actively Ba5! ; ]

[while after 11.Qc2 h4 (grabbing more space on the kingside; there is no hurry to recapture the piece) 12.Bd2 (or 12.Nf5 dxc3 13.bxc3 Qf6 ) 12...dxe3 13.Bxe3 Qd5 14.Bd2 ( 14.Rd1?! allows Black to grab a pawn with Qxa2 ) 14...Qe6 15.e3 0-0-0 , Black has at least equality with his superior development. ]

### 11...dxe3

[Again, there's no hurry to recapture the piece, so 11...Nge7 was quite

possible. For example, 12.a3 (or 12.Nc4 Nd5 13.Bd2 dxc3 14.bxc3 Qf6 15.Rc1 Bc5 16.e3 0-0-0 ) 12...Bxc3+ 13.bxc3 dxe3 14.Bxe3 Qd5 , and if 15.Qxb7?! then Rd8! (control of the d-file is more important than castling: 15...0-0 16.Rd1 forces the black queen from its excellent central post ) 16.Qb2 (note that grabbing another pawn would be suicidal: 16.Qxc7? Nf5! 17.Qf4 0-0 18.Bd2 Na5 19.Rd1 Nb3 20.f3 Rfe8 21.e4 Qc5 22.Be2 Rxd2! 23.Rxd2 Ne3 and the double threat of ...Nyg2+ and ...Qxc3 ends the game ) 16...0-0 and Black has more than enough for the pawn. ]

### 12.Bxe3 Nd4?! The knight also returns for a second go, which is not the best idea.

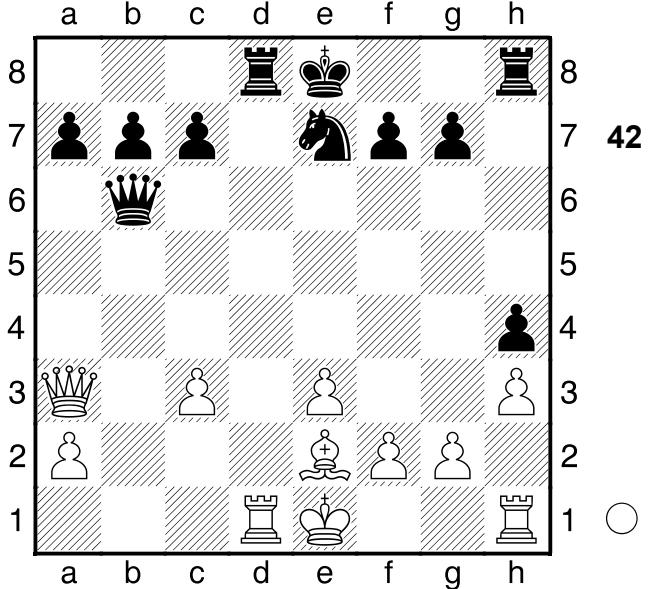
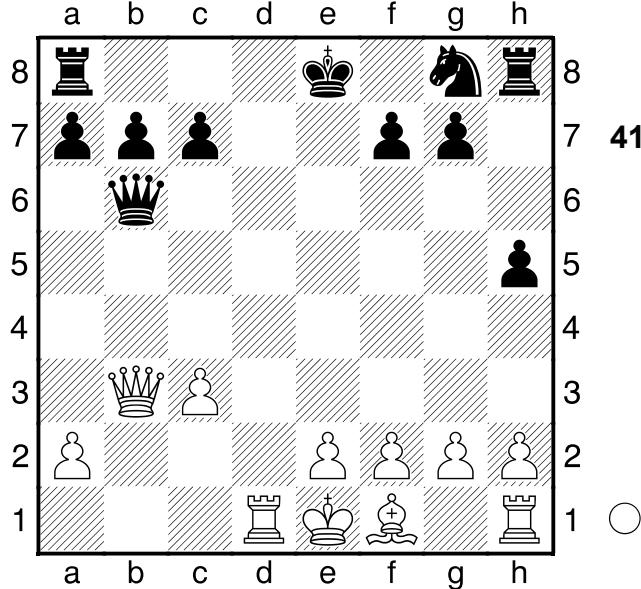
[Black should prefer 12...h4!? , directed against a likely fianchetto, when 13.a3 Bxc3+ 14.bxc3 Qf6 15.Rd1 Nge7 is roughly equal. ]

### 13.Bxd4

[Stronger was 13.Qa4+! b5 (or 13...Nc6 14.Rd1 ) 14.Qd1 c5 15.a3 Bxc3+ (or 15...Ba5 16.b4! ) 16.bxc3 Ne6 17.g3 and White has the edge with his bishops. ]

### 13...Qxd4 14.Rd1 Bxc3+ 15.bxc3 Qb6

(Diagram 41)



### **16.Qa4+ Kf8!?**

[There was nothing wrong with 16...c6  
.]

### **17.Qa3+ Ke8? A quite inexplicable move.**

[Simply 17...Ne7 is fine for Black, who can develop his king's rook via h6 and defend the knight with ...Re8 if need be.]

### **18.e3 h4 19.Be2 Preventing the black rook from swinging over to the queenside via h5. 19...Ne7**

[If 19...h3 then 20.gxh3! Ne7 (not 20...Rhx3?? 21.Bg4 and wins) 21.Rg1 Kf8 22.Rg5 and White is the one who gets to lift his rook.]

### **20.h3 White decides to rule out ...h4-h3; [though 20.0-0 h3 21.Qa4+! c6 22.g3 would also be in his favour, thanks to the insecure position of the black king.]**

**20...Rd8**

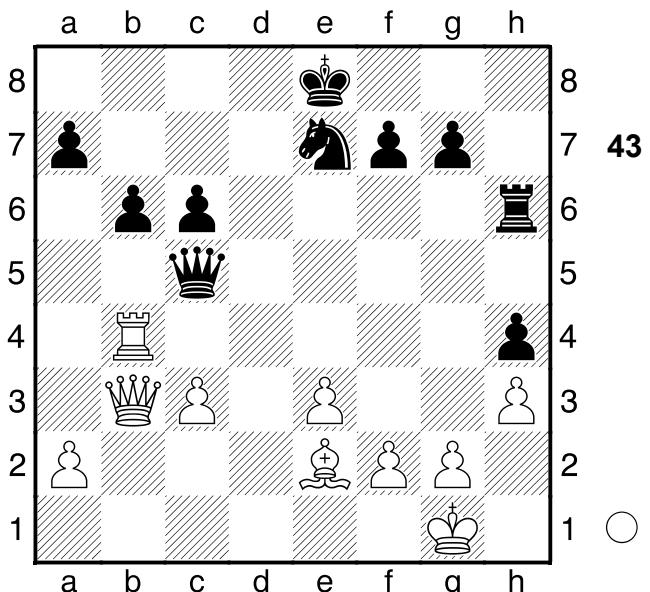
(Diagram 42)

### **21.0-0 Rxd1 22.Rxd1 Rh6 23.Rd4!?**

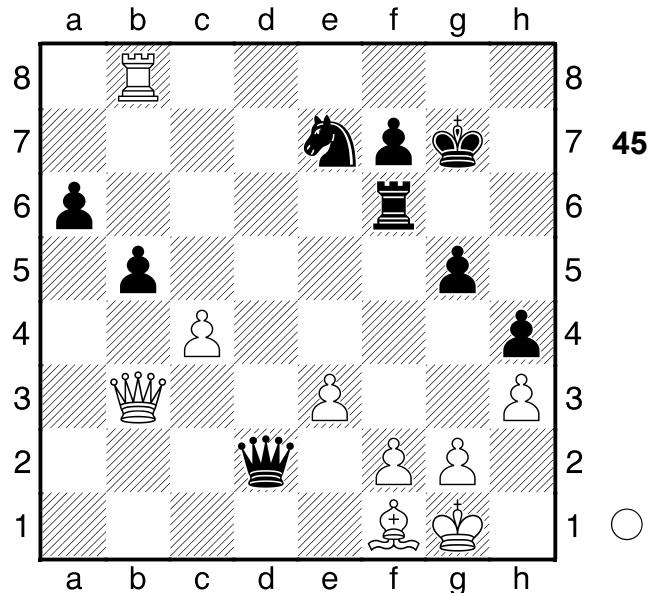
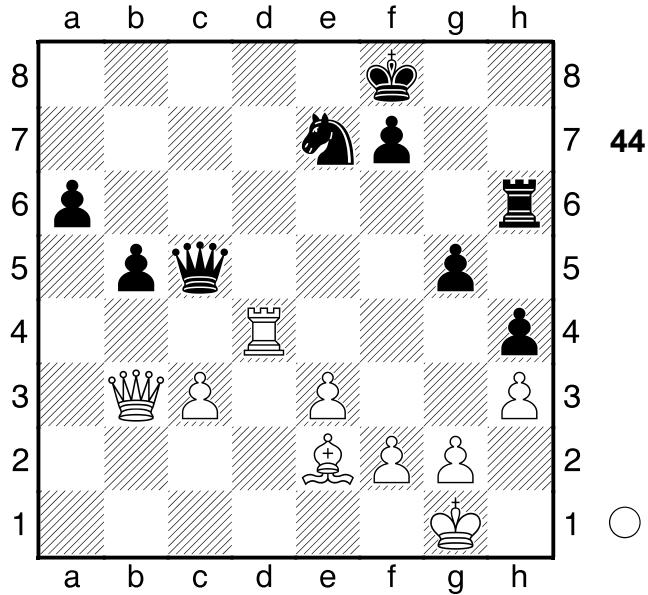
Bringing the rook to the b-file is a good plan but this is not the best way of carrying it out.

[Stronger is 23.Qa4+ Nc6 24.Qe4+! Kf8 25.Rb1 Qc5 26.Rxb7 and White is winning.]

### **23...c6 24.Rb4 Qc5 The pin on the rook gives Black time to secure his queenside. 25.Qb3 b6**



**26.Ra4 b5 27.Rg4 Kf8 28.a4 a6 29.axb5 cxb5 30.Rd4 g5**  
(Diagram 44)



Protecting the h4-pawn and allowing his rook to participate in the action. White still has a slight advantage after 31 c4, but he was winning just a few moves ago.

**31.Rd7?!** **Rd6** **32.Rb7** **Qd5** **33.Rb8+ Kg7**

**34.c4?** This is a mistake. White should exchange queens first and then play 35 c4 with a level endgame.

**34...Qd2** All of a sudden Black has a dangerous counter-attack.

**35.Bf1?**

[ Objectively, 35.Qa3 Nc6 36.Qa1+ Rf6 37.Rg8+ Kxg8 38.Qxf6 Qxe2 39.Qxc6 was perhaps the best chance to hold the draw, although defending the pawn down queen ending after Qe1+ 40.Kh2 Qxf2 41.cxb5 axb5 42.Qxb5 Qg3+ 43.Kh1 Qxe3 would not be straightforward. ]

**35...Rf6!?**

[ Black can win material with 35...Qc1 and ...Rd1. Scheerer was probably concerned about a possible fortress after 36.cxb5 Rd1 37.Qxd1! Qxd1 38.bxa6 . The rest of the game was likely played in time trouble as neither side's moves are the most accurate. ]

### **36.f3 bxc4 37.Bxc4? Nf5?**

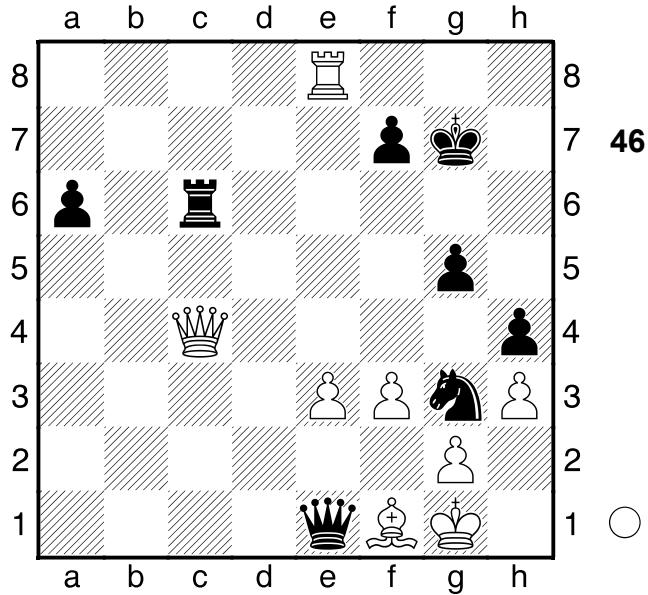
[The engine indicates a decisive breakthrough in 37...g4! 38.hxg4 (or 38.fxg4 Nc6 39.Re8 Ne5! 40.Rxe5 Qe1+ 41.Kh2 Qg3+ and ...Qxe5) 38...h3 39.gxh3 Qe1+ 40.Bf1 (after 40.Kg2 Ng6 the knight enters the fray at h4 and it is over) 40...Rxf3 41.Qb2+ f6 42.Qe2 Rxf1+ 43.Qxf1 Qg3+, followed by ...Qxb8 with an extra piece. ]

**38.Re8??**

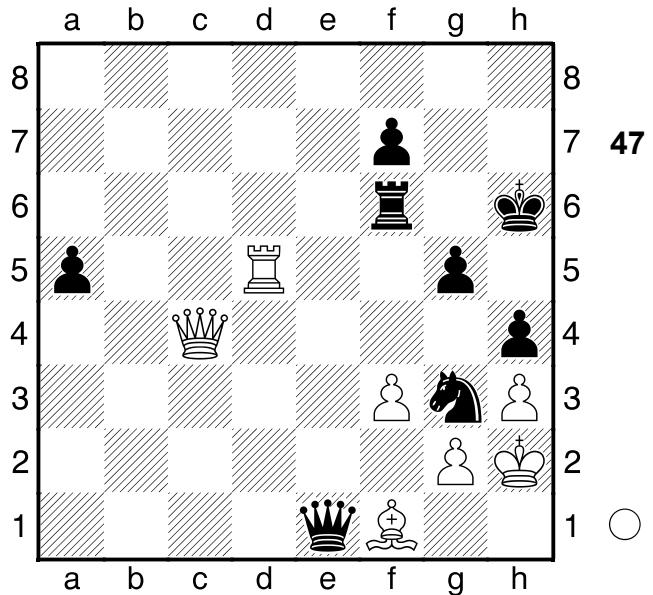
[Here 38.Qa3 would actually save the game. The text loses to Rc6! 39.Kh2 Nd6 . ]

**38...Qe1+? 39.Bf1 Ng3 40.Qc4 Rc6**

(Diagram 46)



46



47

**41.Qd4+ Rf6 42.Qc4 a5 43.Re5?**

Moving the rook off the eighth rank means the black king is quite safe, whereas the same cannot be said about White's king.

[ 43.Qb5 was better. ]

**43...Kh6 44.Rd5?**

[ Going back with 44.Re8 is no good either: a4!

**A)** 45.Qd3 Rg6 46.Rb8 Nxf1  
47.Qxf1 Qxe3+ 48.Qf2 Qc1+  
49.Qf1 Rc6 50.Qxc1 Rxc1+  
51.Kh2 a3 52.Ra8 Rc3  
 with a winning endgame. ( 52...-- );

**B)** Or 45.Ra8? Qxe3+ 46.Kh2  
Qe1 47.Kg1 Kg7! 48.Qb5 Rf5  
49.Qc4 Rc5 (the poor white queen is not up to the task of defending the bishop and keeping the black rook at bay) 50.Qd3 (or 50.Qd4+ Re5) 50...Rd5! 51.Qc4 Rd1 and wins as White has no good checks. ]

**44...Qxe3+ 45.Kh2 Qe1**

[ White either lost on time or gave up in view of 45...Qe1 46.Kg1 a4 47.Rd8 Re6 48.Qd3 Kg7, followed by ... Ne2+ etc. ]

0-1

Kramnik,V  
 Carlsen,Ma  
42: London  
[Jimmy Liew]

D02

2010

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6** Carlsen had lost a game as White against the Chigorin in 2009 (see the notes to Game 31). Now he adopts the other side. I do not believe the future World Champion, who was already top of the world rankings, would play such an opening at this level without some deep analysis, even if he might well have expected Kramnik to respond quietly, since he previously done so against Ivanchuk (Game 44), Morozevich (see 5...Bxf3 below) and Short (see the notes to Game 41).

### **3.Nf3 Bg4 4.Nc3 e6 5.Bf4**

White develops his bishop outside the pawn chain before playing e2-e3.

[Although 5 Bf4 is less popular in this exact position than 5.cxd5 (see the previous game), it has more relevance since it can also arise via 2 Nf3 Nc6 3 Bf4 in Chapter Five. This harmless-looking set-up suits Kramnik's style as it allows White to play for a win at almost no risk. On the other hand, Black will be disappointed to lose from here.]

### **5...Bd6**

[Other moves:

a) 5...Bb4 is examined in Games 43-46.]

[b) 5...dxc4 concedes the centre and lands Black with a passive version of a Queen's Gambit Accepted. After 6.e3 Bd6 7.Bg3 Nf6 8.Bxc4 0-0 9.0-0 a6 10.Be2 Bxg3 11.hxg3 Qd6 12.Rc1 Rfe8 13.Qb3 Qb4 14.Qxb4 Nxb4 15.a3 Nc6 16.Na4 , White had a definite edge in Ki.Georgiev-D.

Marholev, Bulgarian Championship,

Pleven 2015. ]

[c) 5...Nf6 is actually the most popular move. Usually it just transposes elsewhere, but it does rule out lines with ...Nge7.

**A)** Here 6.Ne5 Nxe5 7.Bxe5 (or 7.dxe5 d4 – Bronznik ) 7...c6 8.Qb3 Qb6 9.c5 Qxb3 10.axb3 Nd7 11.Bg3 e5 is fine for Black, O. Berezin-A.Sysönko, Donetsk rapid 2011.;

**B)** For instance, after 6.e3 Bd6 ( 6...Bb4 is Game 44 ) 7.Bxd6 ( 7.Bg3 is Game 44 ) 7...Qxd6 , Black is committed to ...Nf6, and 8.c5!? Qe7 9.Bb5 0-0 10.Bxc6 bxc6 11.Qa4 Bxf3 12.gxf3 e5 13.dxe5 Qxe5 14.0-0-0 may now offer White a little something. ]

[d) 5...Bxf3 prevents any ideas of Nf3-e5, at the cost of giving White an unopposed light-squared bishop, more influence in the centre, and a half-open g-file for his rooks, whereas Black has no special counterplay. After 6.gxf3 Bd6 7.Bg3 Nge7 ( 7...dxc4 8.e3 e5 9.dxe5 is also good for White ) 8.e3 , Black has tried:

**A)** 8...Qd7 9.Qc2 f5 10.Bxd6 Qxd6 11.0-0-0 0-0 12.f4 a6 13.Kb1 Nd8 14.Rg1 c6 15.Ne2 Nf7 16.Nc1 Nc8 17.Rg3 Qe7 18.c5 Qc7 19.Be2 Kh8 20.Rdg1 Rg8 21.Nd3 Ne7 22.h4

and White has a definite advantage with the g-file and more space, while the knights do not have any particularly useful squares, V.

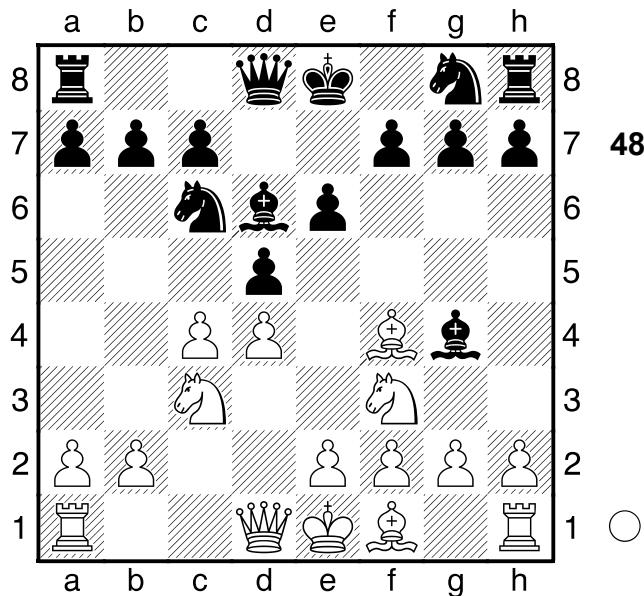
Kramnik-A.Morozevich, Frankfurt (rapid) 2000. ( 22.-- );

**B)** 8...a6 9.a3 h5?! 10.c5 Bxc5 11.dxc5 h4 12.Bf4 e5 13.Bg5 f6

14.Bh3 fxg5 , V.Akopian-R.Rapport, World Team Championship, Tsaghkadzor 2015, and now

15.Qc2 , followed by 0-0-0 and Rg1 gives White a great position for just one pawn.;

**C)** 8...0-0 9.c5 Bxg3 10.hxg3 b6 11.b4! bxc5 (not 11...Nxb4?? 12.Qb1 , threatening mate as well as the knight ) 12.bxc5 e5?! (but after 12...Qd7 13.Bd3 f5 14.f4 White can play on either side of the board ) 13.dxe5 Nxe5 14.f4 N5g6 15.Qh5 f5 16.Bd3 c6 17.g4 and White won in M.Sebenik-J. Barle, Maribor 2017. ]



The most solid and probably best response. Black neutralizes the "London" bishop and aims simply for equality. **6.Bg3**

[White doesn't get anywhere with 6.Ne5 Bxe5 7.dxe5 (or 7.Bxe5 Nxe5 8.dxe5 c6) 7...d4 8.Ne4 Nge7 9.h3 Bf5 and Black already stood well in K.De Francesco-P.Suren, Munich 2008; ]

[while 6.Bxd6 Qxd6 7.e3 can be met by Nge7 (for 7...Nf6 , see 5...Nf6

above ) 8.Be2 (or 8.Rc1 0-0 9.Bd3 f5 10.cxd5 exd5 11.h3 Bxf3 12.Qxf3 f4 13.0-0 fxe3 14.Qxe3 a6 with equal chances, A.Chueca Forcen-O.Perez Mitjans, Naval moral 2010 ) 8...0-0 9.Qa4 a6 10.0-0 b5! 11.cxb5 axb5 12.Qc2 b4 13.Nb5 Qd7 14.Rfc1 Rfb8 and the players agreed a draw in A.Frois-M.Geenen, European Team Championship, Batumi 1999. ]

**6...Nf6** Carlsen continues with natural development.

[ 6...Nge7 is possible too. ]

[There is no rush to exchange bishops: 6...Bxg3 7.hxg3 Nf6 8.e3 (not yet 8.Qb3 Bxf3 9.gxf3 Nxd4 10.Qa4+ Nc6 11.cxd5 exd5 12.Rd1 0-0 and Black has solved his opening problems ) 8...Qe7 9.Qb3 Qb4 10.Qxb4 Nxb4 11.Rc1 Bxf3 12.gxf3 0-0 was played as long ago as D. Janowski-J.Taubenhaus, Paris 1905, where White had the slightly better chances. ]

**7.e3 0-0 8.a3!?**

[Kramnik neither wants to commit his c-pawn nor waste a tempo on 8.Be2 dxc4 9.Bxc4 , so he plays a semi-useful waiting move. ]

[Instead:

a) 8.c5 is premature: Bxg3 9.hxg3 e5 10.Be2 exd4 11.Nxd4 Nxd4 12.Qxd4 Bxe2 13.Kxe2 Qd7 14.Rh4 Qf5 15.Rah1 Qc2+ 16.Ke1 Rfe8 , L.Olsen-P.Rewitz, Danish League 1996, and now White should have allowed a draw with 17.Nxd5 Nxd5 18.Rxh7 Qc1+ 19.Ke2 Qc2+ etc. ]

[b) 8.cxd5

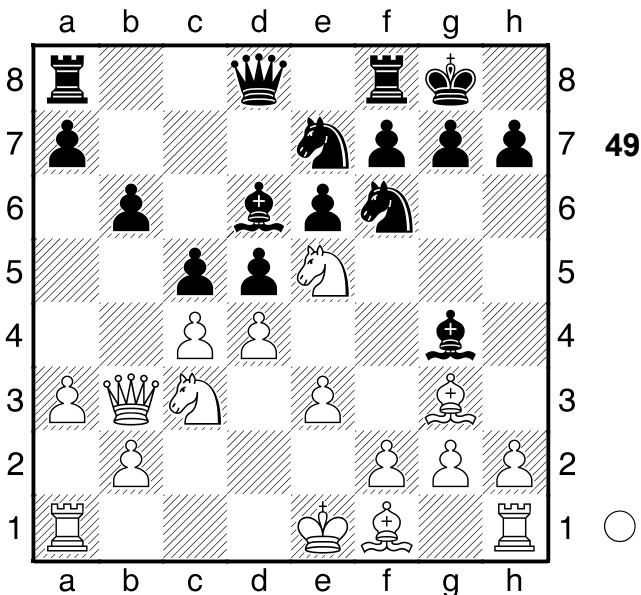
**A)** 8...exd5 does not transpose to 6 Bf4 in the previous game (where Black played ...Nge7), and 9.Bh4 Be7 reaches a Queen's Gambit Exchange-type position where

White can look to grind the minority attack; ( 9...-- );

**B)** so Black might prefer **8...Nxd5** 9.Be2 Nxc3 10.bxc3 Qf6 11.Rb1 b6 12.Nd2 Bxe2 13.Qxe2 Na5 , aiming for ...c7-c5 with a more flexible game, S.I.Martinovic-J.M. Degraeve, European Cup, Sremic Krsko 1998. ]

[c) 8.Bh4 Be7 9.cxd5 would similarly be met by Nxd5 . ]

**8...Ne7** A thematic retreat, clearing the way for the c7-pawn to defend or attack the centre. **9.Qb3 b6 10.Ne5 c5!?**



Since White has still not castled Carlsen opens things up, hoping to profit from the enemy king's position, even if it means giving up the light-squared bishop.

**11.Nxg4 Nxg4 12.Rd1 Bxg3**

[Not 12...cxd4?! 13.Rxd4 Nf6 14.cxd5 exd5 15.Be2 and Black is left with an isolated queen's pawn, which will be the focal point for White in the ensuing middlegame. ]

[But he might have played 12...Nf5! , when the tactics work out okay for Black: 13.cxd5 (or 13.dxc5 Bxg3 14.hxg3 Qg5 , threatening ...Nxf2 )

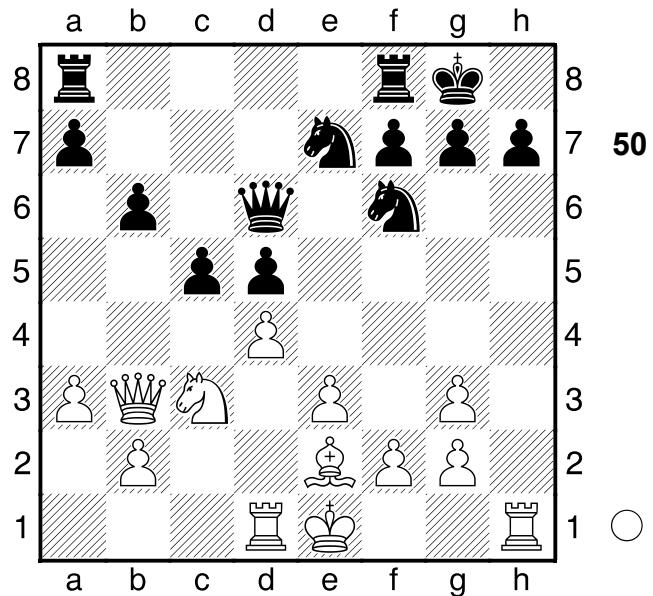
13...cxd4 14.Bxd6 (or 14.exd4 exd5 15.Qxd5 Bxg3 ) 14...Qxd6 15.Nb5 Qe7 16.Be2 dxe3 17.Bxg4 Qh4 18.0-0 Qxg4 19.fxe3 Qe4 with equality. ]

**13.hxg3 Nf6 14.cxd5 exd5 15.Be2**

Simply finishing development rather than give Black hanging pawns just yet; [as 15.dxc5 bxc5 16.Be2 Qb8 17.Qc2 Qe5 and ...Rfd8 sees them well defended. ]

**15...Qd6?!**

[If Black is going to play ...c5-c4, it is better to do so while the white king is still in the middle; i.e. 15...c4 16.Qc2 h6 17.0-0 (or 17.b3 b5 , when 18.Nxb5?? runs into Qa5+ 19.Nc3 cxb3 ) 17...Rb8 , intending 18 b3 b5, or 18.e4 Nxe4 19.Nxe4 dxe4 20.Bxc4 (or 20.Qxe4 b5 ) 20...Rc8 21.Qe2 Nf5 , and if 22.Ba6 Rb8 23.Qxe4 then Nd6 24.Qc2 b5 25.a4 bxa4 and Black is okay. ]

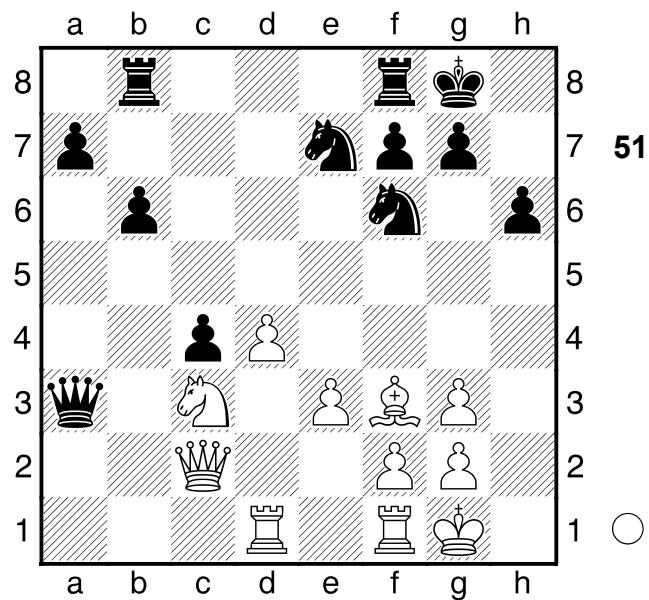


Too casual. **16.Qc2 h6 17.0-0 c4**

Pushing on before White captures on c5. If Black can get his b-pawn and a-pawn moving as well, he could even end up with a superior position.

**18.b3!** No such luck. Kramnik understands that he must attack the black c-pawn immediately. **18...Qxa3** [After 18...cxb3 19.Qxb3 the d5-pawn will remain a target forever.]

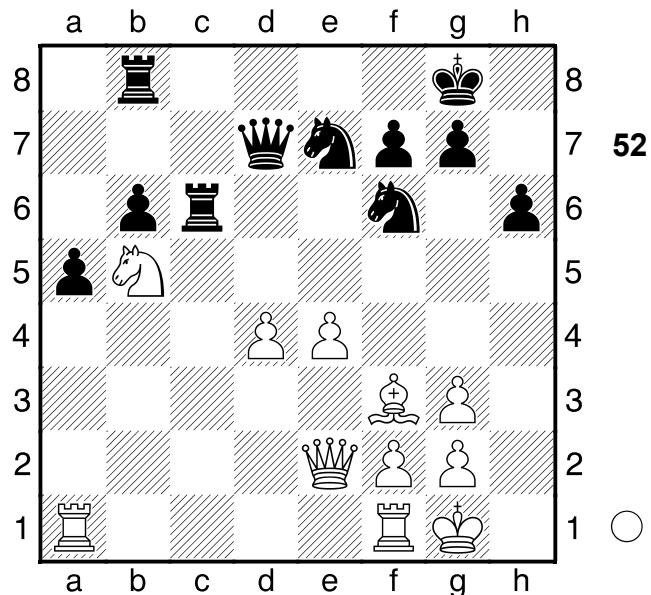
**19.bxc4 dxc4 20.Bf3** White will regain his pawn. First, he gains time to put his pieces on stronger squares. **20...Rab8**



**21.Ra1 Qd6 22.Nb5 Qd7 23.Qxc4 a5**

**24.e4** With his mobile centre pawns and the enemy queenside well under control, White now has a clear advantage, which Kramnik slowly nurtures. Theoretically, we could stop here, except that the players later reach a very interesting endgame, so it's worth carrying on.  
**24...Rfc8 25.Qe2 Rc6**

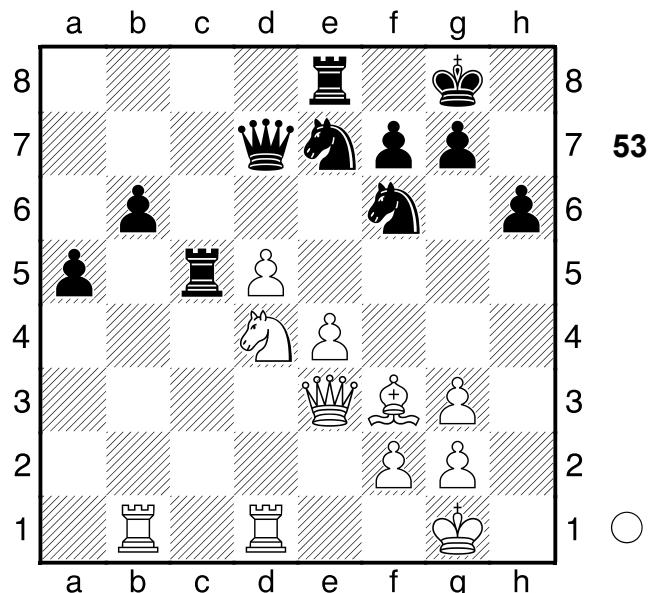
(Diagram 52)



**26.Rab1 Rd8 27.Rfd1 Rdc8 28.d5**

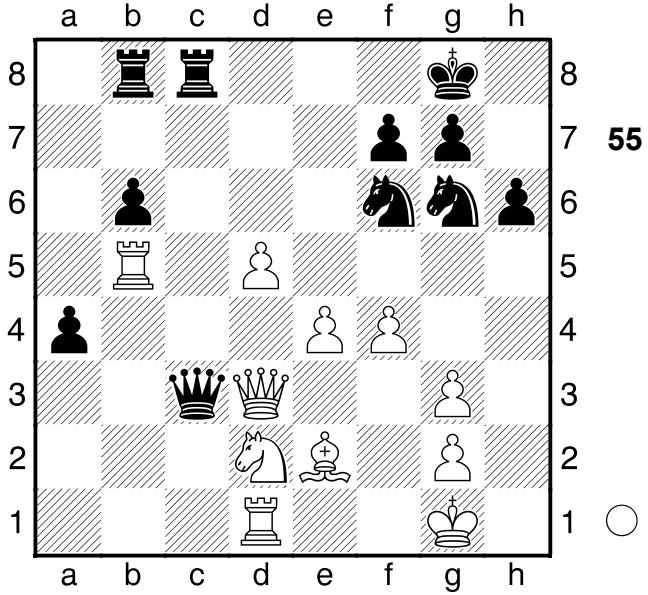
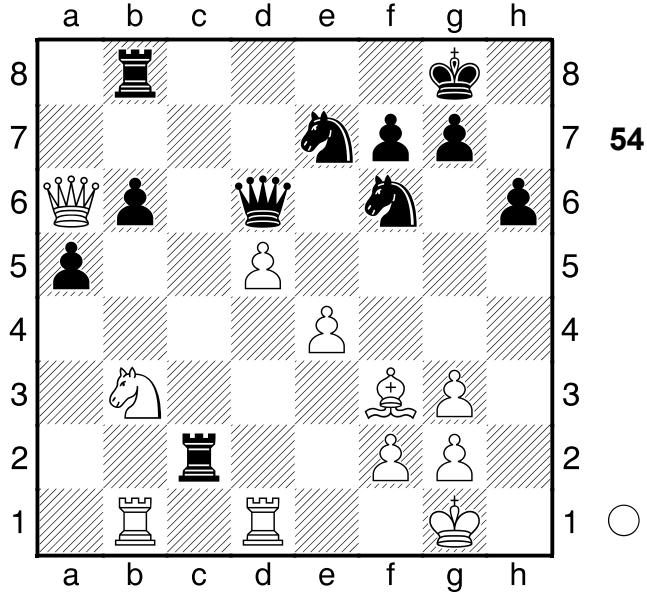
**Rc2 29.Qe3 R2c5 30.Nd4 Re8**

[Black can't play 30...b5?? because 31.Nc6 then cuts the c5-rook off from the rest of its comrades, and Rc2 (or 31...Rc4 32.Ne5) 32.e5 Nfxd5 33.Nxe7+ wins.]



**31.Qd3 Qd6 32.Qa6 Rb8 33.Nb3 Rc2**  
**34.Nd4 Rc5 35.Nb3 Rc2**

(Diagram 54)



**36.Qd3**

[ Obviously White is not interested in a draw ( 36.Nd4 Rc5 is threefold repetition) since he has very much the superior position. ]

[ Nor is there any need to force matters; for instance, after 36.Nxa5?! Qc5 37.Rf1 Ra2 38.Nb3! Qxf2+ 39.Rxf2 Rxa6 40.Nd4 the exchange of queens makes Black's defensive task easier. ]

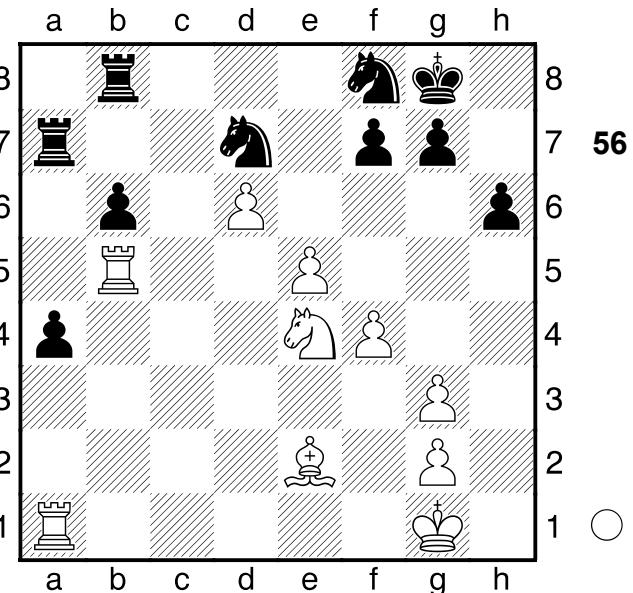
**36...Rcc8 37.Nd2 Ng6 38.Be2**

Planning to push his kingside pawns with f2-f4 and e4-e5. **38...Qc5 39.Rb5 Qc3**

**40.f4 a4**

(Diagram 55)

**41.e5 Nd7 42.Qxc3 Rxc3 43.Ne4 Rc7  
44.Ra1 Ra7 45.d6 Ngf8**

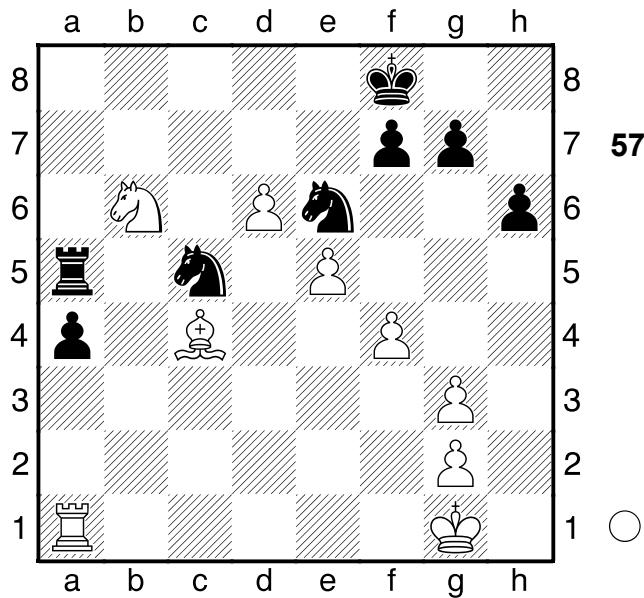


**46.Nc3 Nc5 47.Nd5 Ra5!**

Carlsen himself once said of losing positions: calculate and avoid moves that lose immediately and concentrate on those that do not. The exclamation mark is therefore not because 47...Ra5 is good, but for the understanding shown by Carlsen, who calculates or instinctively knows that his best chance is to exchange a pair of rooks, even if this means losing a pawn.

#### **48.Rxb6 Rxb6 49.Nxb6 Nfe6**

The white pawns are stopped for the time being. **50.Bc4 Kf8**



#### **51.f5 Nd8 52.Rf1 Ncb7 53.Re1**

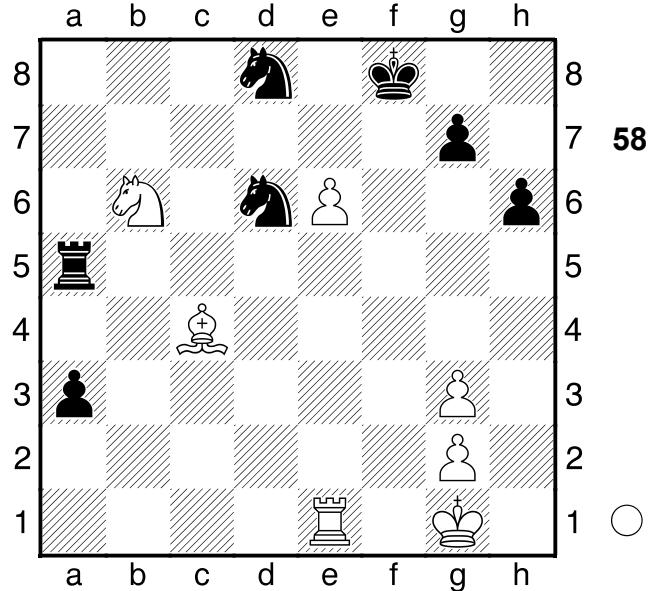
Threatening to get the pawns going again, after which it should be all over for Black. **53...a3!** **54.e6** Slightly too eager. Although this nets a piece, which most of us would certainly go for, the resulting endgame is not so easy to win.

[Carlsen's last move also defused 54.d7?! , due to a2 55.Bxa2 Rxa2 56.e6 Nc6 57.e7+ Nxe7 58.Nc8 Rd2 59.Rxe7 f6 with "a curious positional draw" (Krasenkow). ]

[However, the precautionary 54.Ba2! (Korotylev) rules this defence out, and Black will not be able hold the pawns back forever. ]

**54...fxe6 55.fxe6 Nxd6**

(Diagram 58)



#### **56.e7+ Ke8 57.exd8R+ Kxd8 58.Rd1**

**Kc7 59.Ba2** QUESTION: White is a piece up and has the black a-pawn well blockaded. Shouldn't this be an easy endgame win?

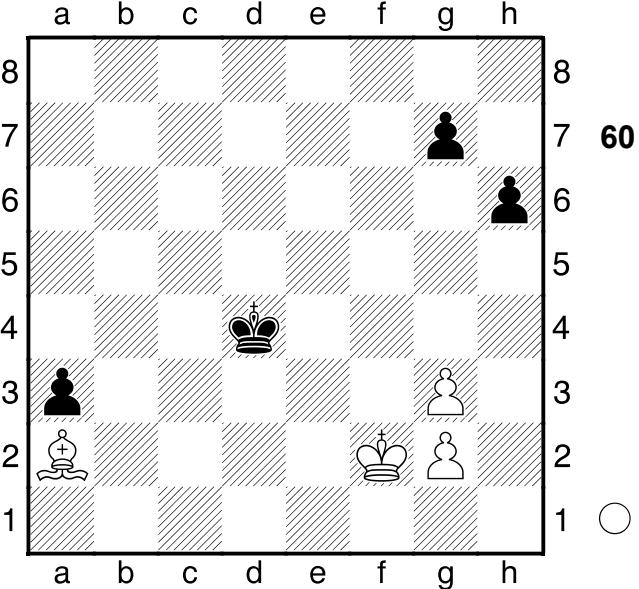
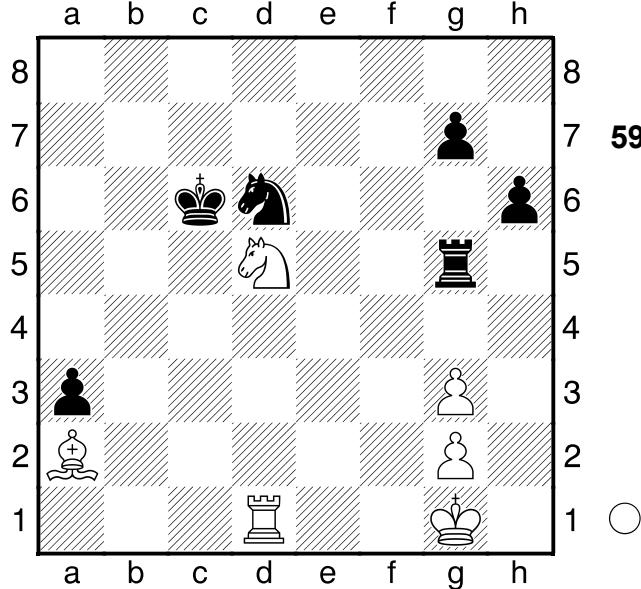
ANSWER: The material advantage certainly points that way. The problem is White has lost his passed pawns, while his remaining two are doubled and can be attacked. Combine this with Black's lurking a3-pawn and it takes some effort for White to convert the win.

**59...Rg5** In general, the side behind on material should swap pawns not pieces.

[Hence 59...Kxb6?! 60.Rxd6+ Kc5 61.Rd7 would only makes things easier for White, especially after g5? 62.Rd5+ followed by 63 Rxa5 and 64 Kf2 etc. ]

**60.Nd5+ Kc6**

(Diagram 59)



### 61.Nc3

[ 61.Rd3 Ne4 62.Ne3 Nxg3 63.Rxa3 , White still has a lot of work to do, with only one pawn left on the board. ]

**61...Rc5!?** An unexpected decision, allowing White to swap pieces off. Carlsen presumably thought the bishop ending was his best chance, and his decision proves justified.

[ Obviously not 61...Rxg3?? 62.Rxd6+ Kxd6 63.Ne4+ and White wins another piece. ]

**62.Rxd6+ Kxd6 63.Ne4+ Kc6 64.Nxc5 Kxc5 65.Kf2 Kd4**

(Diagram 60)

**66.Kf3 Kd3** If he hadn't done so before, Kramnik must have realized here that matters are not that simple. His bishop has to stay on the a2-g8 diagonal, so the rest of the game will be a joust between the two kings. Nonetheless, White is winning, as he has unlimited "passing" moves at his disposal.

**67.g4**

[ Not 67.Kf4? , which allows the black king to get to the g2-pawn: Ke2 68.Bd5 Kf2 69.g4 g6! and White cannot make progress since 70.Ke5 Kg3! is already a draw. ]

**67...Kd2**

[ If Black pushes 67...g5 , his king will quickly be forced to give way: 68.Bf7 Kd4 69.Ke2 Ke4 70.g3 Kd4 71.Kd2 Ke4 72.Kc3 a2!? 73.Kb2 (not 73.Bxa2?? Kf3 74.Be6 Kxg3 , followed by ...Kh4, ...h6-h5 and draws ) 73...Kf3 74.Bh5 and with the g4-pawn safely defended White will mop up all the black pawns. ]

**68.Be6 Kd3 69.Kg3?!**

It is incomprehensible why Kramnik allowed the black king nearer his pawns. Probably fatigue was setting in, which I know from personal experience can

make you do strange things at the board.

[The correct plan was to jettison the front g-pawn to gain room for the king:  
 69.g5! hxg5 (or 69...Kd2 70.g6!)  
 70.Kg4 Ke3 71.g3! (not 71.Kxg5??  
 Kf2 72.g4 Kg3 73.Bd5 g6!

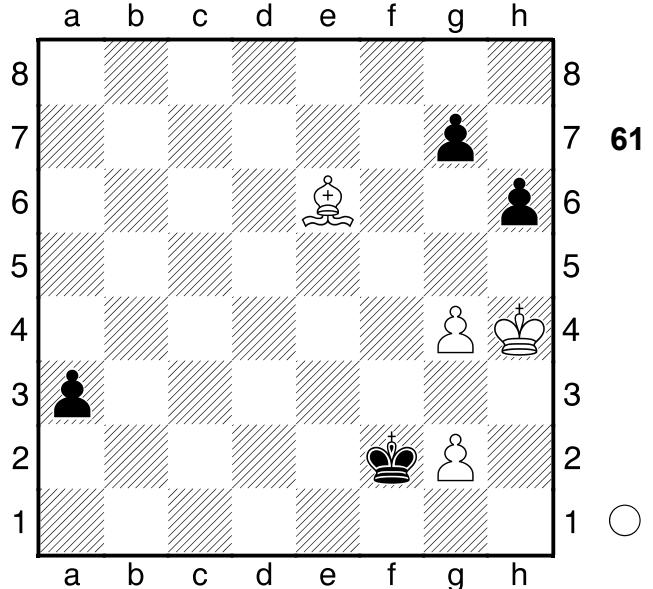
and White can no longer win ) 71...Ke4  
 (or 71...Kf2 72.Bd5 g6 73.Be6 Kg2  
 74.Bf7 Kf2 75.Bd5 and the black king  
 has to step away from the g3-pawn )  
 72.Kxg5 Kf3 73.Kh4 Kf2 74.Kg4  
 Ke3 75.Bf7 Ke4 76.Ba2 Ke3 77.Bb1  
 g6 78.Ba2 Ke4 79.Bb3 Ke3 80.Bf7  
 Kf2 81.Kf4 Kg2 82.Be6 Kh2 83.Kf3  
 Kh1 84.g4 Kh2 85.g5 , followed by  
 Kf4-e5-f6 etc (Krasenkov). ]

### 69...Ke3 70.Kh4??

[It wasn't too late for 70.g5! , and if  
 Ke4 ( 70...hxg5? loses as in the  
 previous note ) 71.Kg4 Ke3 72.Ba2  
 Ke4 73.g3 Ke3 74.Bb1 Kf2 75.g6  
 h5+ (Krasenkov) then 76.Kf4 (not  
 76.Kxh5?? a2 77.Bxa2 Kf3 78.Kg5  
 Ke4 and Black's king is heading for f8  
 from which it can never be driven  
 away ) 76...Kg2 77.Ba2 Kh2 (or  
 77...Kf2 78.Bd5 ) 78.Bd5 Kh3 79.Kf3  
 Kh2 80.g4! h4 ( 80...hxg4+ 81.Kxg4  
 is easy ) 81.Kf2 Kh3 82.Be6 Kh2  
 83.g5 Kh1 (or 83...h3 84.Bd5 )  
 84.Ba2 Kh2 85.Bd5 h3 (or 85...Kh3  
 86.Kf3 Kh2 87.Kg4 h3 88.Kh4 etc )  
 86.Ba2 Kh1 87.Bb3 Kh2 (or 87...h2  
 88.Bd5# ) 88.Bd5 and White wins by  
 zugzwang. ]

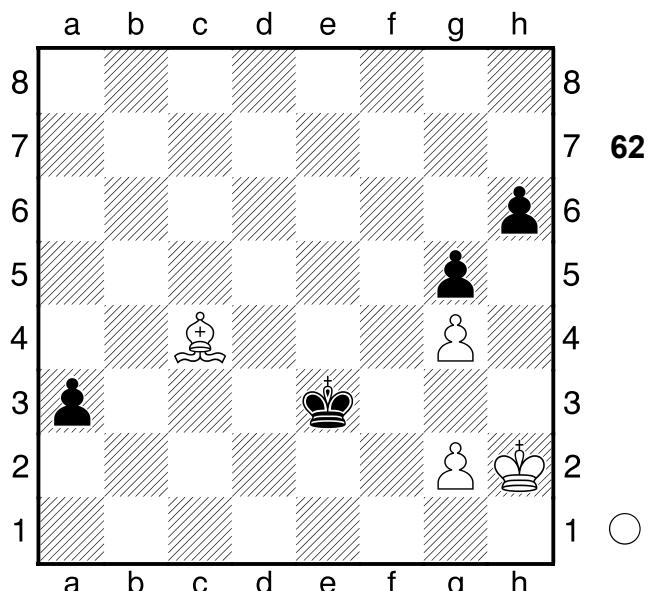
### 70...Kf2

(Diagram 61)



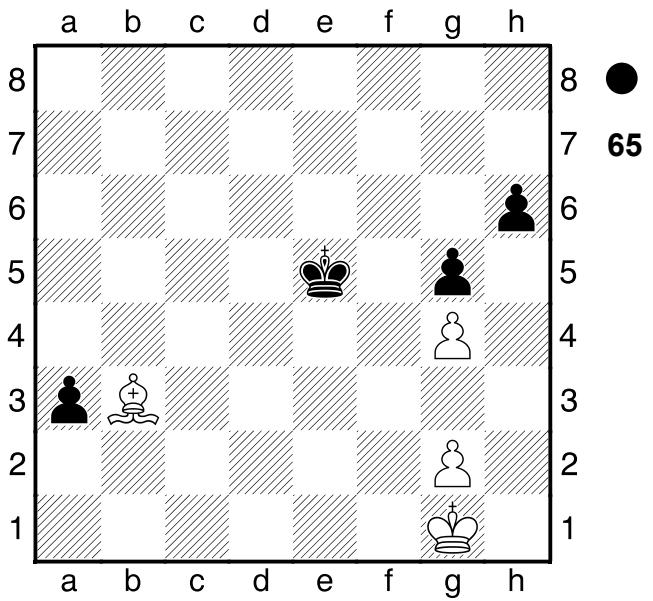
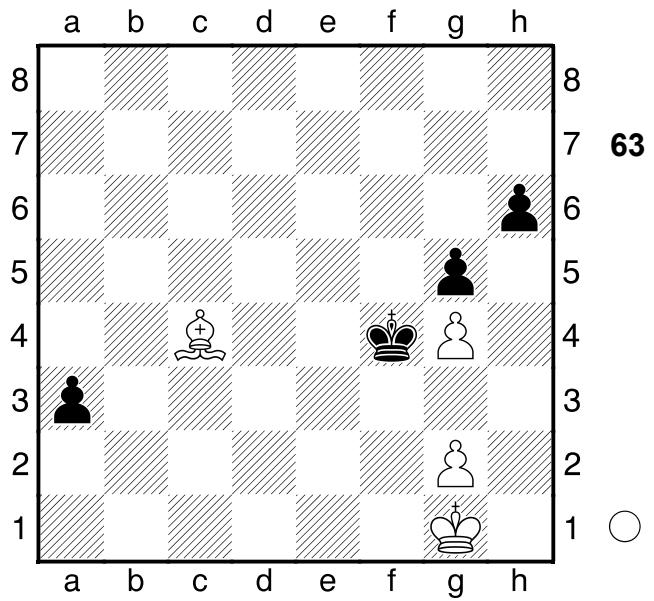
**71.Bd5 g6 72.Kh3 g5!** Now the white king itself is trapped and the position is drawn.

**73.Kh2 Kf1 74.Be6 Kf2 75.Bc4 Ke3**

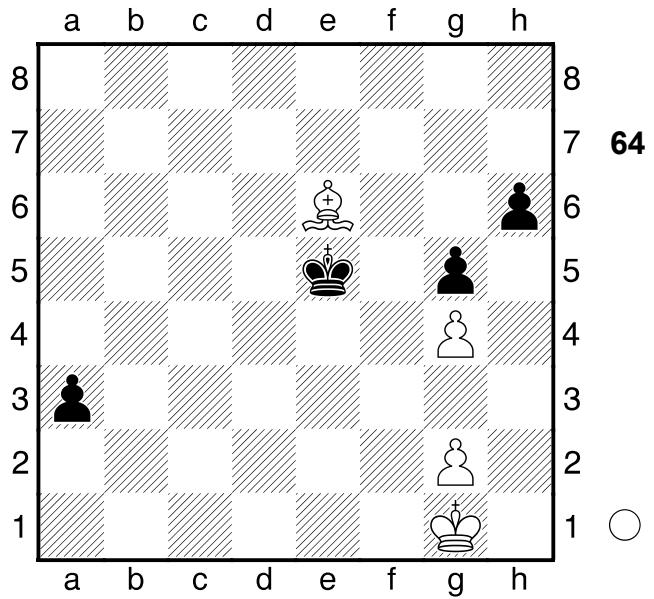


**76.Kg3 Kd4 77.Be6 Ke3 78.Kh2 Kf2  
 79.Bc4 Ke3 80.Kg1 Kf4**

(Diagram 63)



**81.Be6 Ke5 82.Bb3 Kf4 83.Be6 Ke5  
84.Bb3 Kf4 85.Be6 Ke5**



½-½

**86.Bb3**

(Diagram 65)

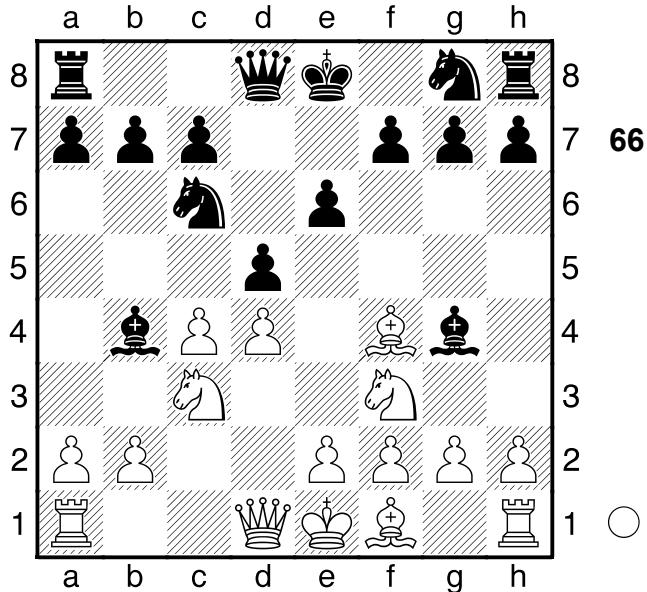
□ **Aseev,K**  
■ **Morozevich,A**  
 43: Russian Championship, Elista  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

**D07**

1995

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nf3 Bg4 4.Nc3 e6 5.Bf4 Bb4!?**

[If you prefer to avoid Aseev's next move, you can play 5...Nf6 and answer 6.e3 with Bb4, transposing to the next game, although in that case the option of ...Nge7 (Games 45-46) is ruled out.]



More active than the previous game's 5...Bd6, but also more risky via this direct move order. **6.Ne5!**

[The usual move here is 6.e3 (as in Games 44-46), which White plays 75% of the time, likely without thinking much about it. However, the text is far more critical, and Morozevich actually says that it "casts doubt on Black's plan with 5...Bb4."]

[Exchanging with 6.cxd5 is an option too. Black should probably reply Bxf3

7.gxf3 Qxd5 (as in the 4 cxd5 main lines), and if 8.e3 Qa5 9.Qb3 Nge7 10.Rc1, as in F.Behrhorst-J.Zeller, German League 1984, then h5!? (threatening ...Nd5) 11.h3 Bd6 with roughly equal chances.]

**6...Nxe5 7.Bxe5 Bxc3+** The only good way to meet the twin threats of Qa4+ and Bxg7.

[After 7...Kf8 8.Qb3 Black will have to take the knight anyway.]

**8.bxc3 Nf6?!** Too ambitious.

[8...f6 9.Bg3 was necessary, driving the white bishop back and giving the g4-bishop the f7-square. As Morozevich says, "White's chances are better thanks to his two bishops, but (...) Black can defend quite successfully." For example:

**A)** 9...c6 10.Qb3 Qd7 11.Rb1 (or 11.f3 Bh5 12.e4 Ne7) 11...b6 12.Qa4 Rd8 13.c5 Bf5! 14.Rb2, C.Samuelson-O.Simonsen, Faroe Islands Championship, Oyrabakki 2005, and now after bxc5 15.e3 Ne7 16.Ba6 e5, Black doesn't stand so badly.;  
**B)** 9...Ne7 10.Qb3 (or 10.Rb1 b6 11.Qa4+ c6 12.e3 0-0 13.Bd3 Qd7 14.Rc1 Bf5 15.Be2 a6 16.Qb3 b5 ½-½ D.Doric-N.Fercec, Porec 2004) 10...b6 11.f3 Bh5 12.cxd5 (or 12.e4 0-0) 12...exd5 13.c4 0-0 14.cxd5 Bf7 15.e4 c6, J.Jirka-T.Vojta, Czech League 2014, followed by ...c6xd5.]

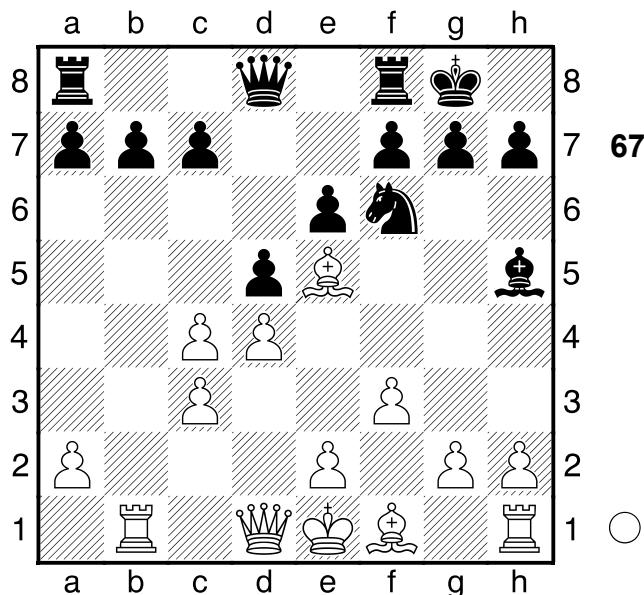
**9.Rb1**

[Targeting the black bishop is even stronger: 9.f3 Bh5 10.g4 Bg6 11.h4 h6?! (but if 11...h5 12.g5 Nd7 then 13.Bxg7 Rg8 14.Bh6!, since the bishop is only trapped as long as the black rook stays on g8) 12.Qd2 dxc4 13.h5 Bh7 14.g5 (or just 14.e4) 14...hxg5 15.Qxg5 Bg6?! 16.h6 Ng8

17.Qxd8+ Kxd8 18.Bxg7 Rh7  
 19.0-0-0 and White was a clear pawn up in F.Reinemer-K.Keller, Leverkusen 2000. ]

**9...0-0!?** This is certainly consistent.  
 [After 9...b6 10.Qa4+ Qd7 11.Qxd7+ Kxd7 12.f3 Bf5 13.Rc1 , White is at least slightly better with his two bishops. ]

### 10.f3 Bh5



**11.Rxb7 dxc4!** The best try.  
 [After 11...c5? 12.g4 ( 12.e3 Ne4!? is less clear ) 12...Bg6 13.dxc5 , Black now has to face a passed c-pawn. (White might also throw in 13.h4! . )]

### 12.Qd2

[Not 12.e4? Nxe4 13.g4?? Qh4+ and wins. ]

[But he could have grabbed the c7-pawn: 12.Rxc7!?, and if Nd5 then 13.Rc5! (not 13.Rxc4? Ne3 , winning the exchange; or 13.Rb7 f6 14.Bg3 Nxc3 15.Qd2 Qa5 and Black has equalized ) 13...f6 14.Bg3 Nxc3 15.Qd2 (White can win a piece with 15.Qc1 Qxd4 16.Bf2 Nxa2 17.Bxd4 Nxc1 18.Rxh5 e5 , but his rook is then offside and

Black's passed a-pawn is of some concern ) 15...Nb1 16.Qc2 Bf7 (or 16...Bg6 17.Qxc4 ) 17.e3 Qb6 18.Qxc4 e5 19.d5 with a clear advantage. ]

**12...Rc8** QUESTION: This looks terrible for Black, doesn't it?

ANSWER: At first it might seem Black's opening is a failed one, as he has weaknesses all over the place (c4, c7 and a7). The one redeeming factor is that White has not developed his kingside and is still a couple of moves away from castling. Can Morozevich capitalize on this?

### 13.Rb5?!

[Still not 13.e4? because of Nxe4 14.fxe4? Qh4+ 15.Bg3 Qxe4+ , followed by 16...Qxb7. Aseev's move safeguards his rook with a veiled attack on the black bishop, but Morozevich calls it "too subtle" and says White should just have taken the a7-pawn, after which Black is struggling to find compensation. ]

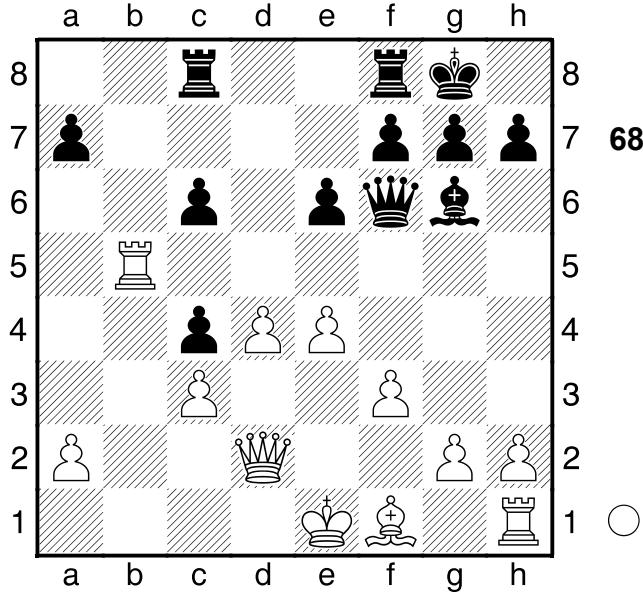
### 13...Bg6 14.e4 c6 15.Bxf6?!

White wants to keep his rook on the fifth rank to rule out ...c6-c5 and/or ...Qa5; [and since 15.Rc5 is met by Nd7 , he takes the knight first. ]

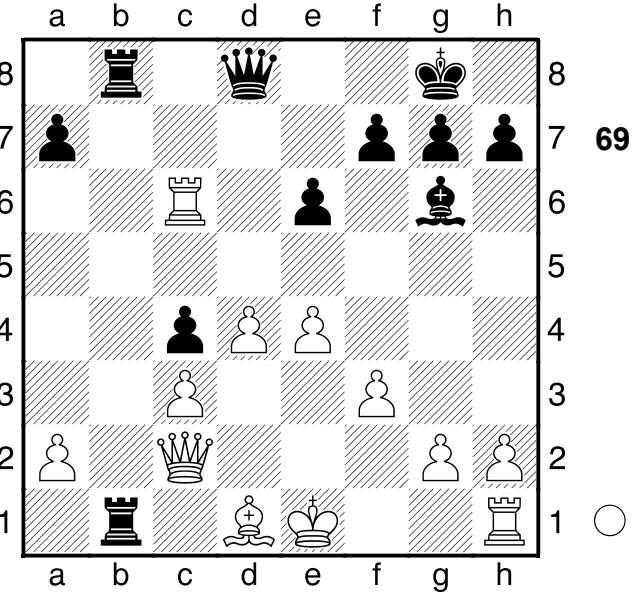
[Objectively, it was better to return the rook to b7, when 15.Rb7 c5 16.Be2 Qa5 (or 16...cxd4 17.Qxd4 ) 17.Qb2 keeps some advantage. ]

### 15...Qxf6

(Diagram 68)



68



69

**16.Rc5** So the rook has reached c5 and the c4-pawn is indefensible. The price was surrendering the b-file, where Morozevich is now able to generate active counterplay.

**16...Rb8** Threatening a back rank check, which White hurries to prevent. **17.Qc2**

[Or if 17.Qc1 then Bxe4! 18.fxe4 Qh4+ 19.Ke2 f5 with a strong attack.]

**17...Rb5!** Morozevich does not give White time to consolidate. At the same time he plans to increase his control of the b-file by doubling rooks.

**18.Rxc6?** This is not the moment to be grabbing pawns.

[Nor with 18.Rxc4? Rfb8, when 19.Be2? loses to Rb1+ 20.Bd1 R1b2! (rather than 20...R8b2? 21.Rb4!) 21.Qc1 Rxg2 .]

[He should have bailed out with 18.Bxc4 Rxc5 19.dxc5 Qe5 20.Qd2 Qxc5 21.Qd4 Qa5 22.0-0 and his king reaches safety in a level position.]

**18...Rfb8 19.Be2 Rb1+ 20.Bd1 Qd8!**

[Avoiding 20...R8b2?? 21.Rc8+ and mates.]

**21.0-0**

[Or 21.Qe2 R1b2 22.Bc2 Rxa2 23.0-0 h6 , followed by ...Rbb2. Someone once called doubled rooks on the seventh “blind pigs”. Why? Because they eat everything in their path! ]

**21...R8b2 22.Qa4 h5** Having given his king some luft, Black is now winning, even if he didn't realize it at the time.

**23.Rc5**

[Not 23.Qxc4? Qg5 24.Be2 Qe3+ 25.Kh1 Qf2 etc. ]

**23...Rd2?!** It can be a sobering experience analysing sharp games with modern engines, even games played by top grandmasters. Where earlier annotations attached exclamation marks, the silicon monsters calmly shake their heads.

[Instead, 23...Qh4! wins for Black, with the threat of 24.-- Rd2 , when 25.Be2 fails to Rxe2 26.Rxb1 Qf2+ etc. ]

**24.Be2** Aseev finds the only way to stay in the game.

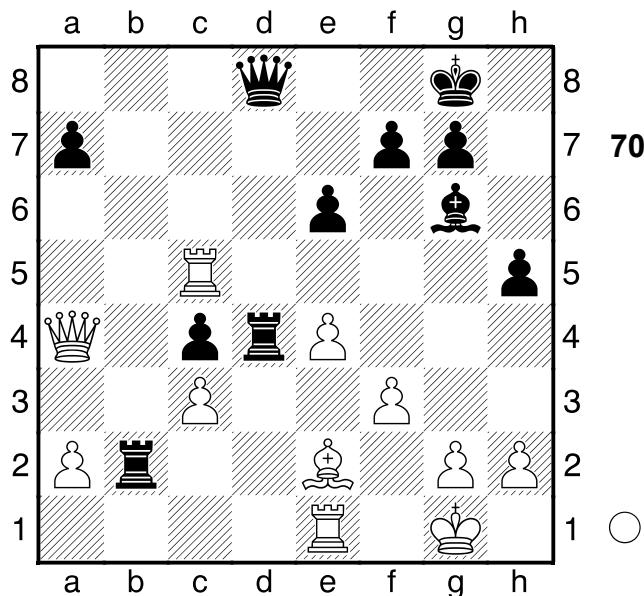
[Not 24.Bc2? Rxf1+ 25.Kxf1 Qh4 and the king is laid bare, so it is hardly surprising for him to be

checkmated.]

## 24...Rbb2 25.Re1 Rxd4?

[Not 25...Rxe2? 26.Rxe2 Rxe2 either, as after 27.Qxc4 the threat of Rc8 forces Black to take a draw with Re1+ 28.Kf2 Qh4+ 29.g3 Qxh2+ 30.Kxe1 Qxg3+ etc.]

[Instead, 25...Kh7! renews the threat to capture the bishop, and 26.Qxc4 (not 26.Bf1? Qh4) 26...Qh4 27.g3 Qh3 leaves Black fully in control.]



Imaginative, but incorrect. **26.Qa6??**

A blunder.

[Taking the rook was preferable: 26.cxd4 Qxd4+ 27.Kf1 Qxc5 28.Qxc4 Qa3 29.Ra1, when White has maintained a fragile material balance and is only slightly worse.]

[Alternatively, 26.Rxc4 Rdd2 27.Rd4! is even stronger; e.g. Qb6 28.Kf1 Rxa2 29.Qd7 Rxd4 30.Qxd4 Qb2 31.Qb4 and Black has no advantage at all.]

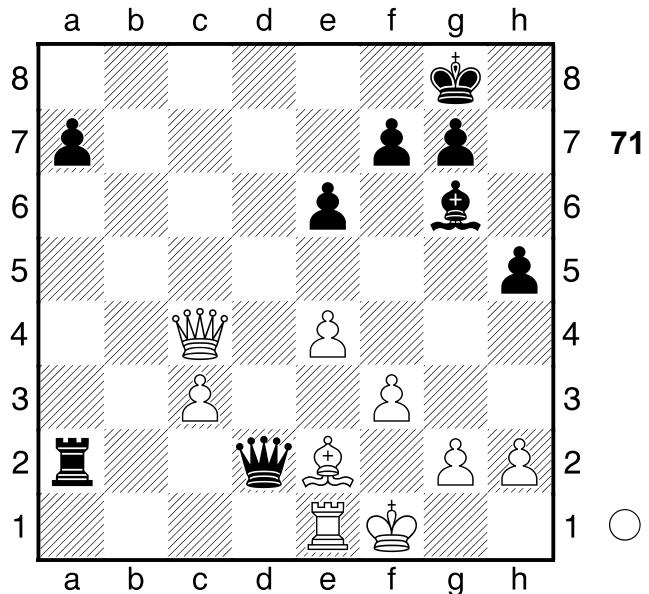
**26...Qf6??** Black reciprocates.

[He should have played 26...Rxe2! 27.Rc8 (or 27.Rxe2 Rd1+ 28.Kf2 Qh4+ 29.g3 Qxh2+ 30.Ke3 Rd3+ 31.Kf4 Qxe2 and the white king will

be mated) 27...Rxe1+ 28.Kf2, when Ra1! 29.cxd4 (29.Rxd8+ Rxd8 leaves Black well ahead on material) 29...Rxa2+ saves the queen and wins.]

## 27.Rc8+ Rd8 28.Rxd8+ Qxd8

## 29.Qxc4 Qd2 30.Kf1 Rxa2



Restoring the material balance, after which the engines declare "0:00" equality. Nonetheless, Black retains practical chances as the white king is not secure and it is harder to defend than attack, especially in time trouble.

**31.Qd4 Qg5** You don't want to trade queens when you have the initiative and your opponent's king is exposed.

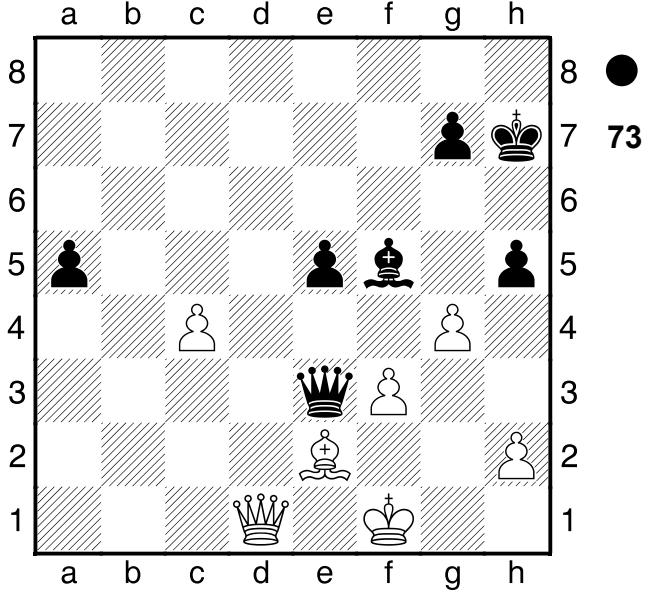
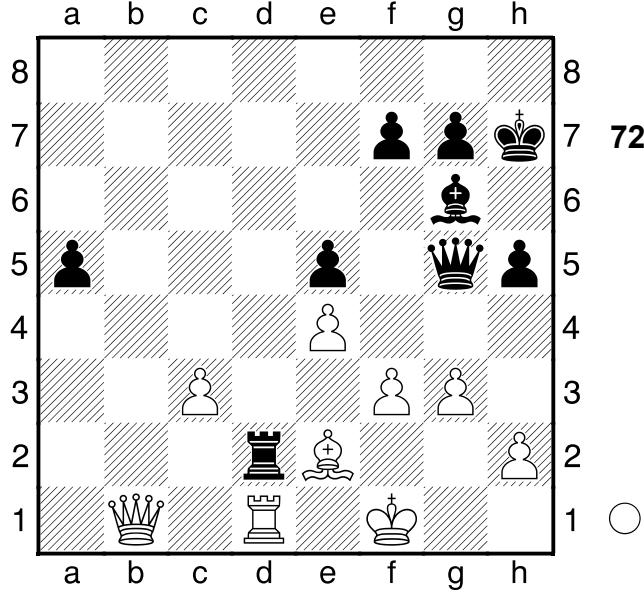
## 32.Rd1 Kh7 33.g3 e5??

Another blunder. **34.Qd3?**

[Aseev doesn't have time to spot it: 34.Qd5! Rc2 35.f4 (exploiting the pin on the e5-pawn) Qf6 36.f5 and Black loses his bishop, as there is no good way to forge a retreat; e.g. Kh6 37.Qd7 Bh7? 38.Rd6 wins the queen instead. White gets another chance on the next move.]

## 34...a5? 35.Qb1? Rd2

(Diagram 72)



**36.Qc1?!**

[Instead, 36.Rxd2 Qxd2 37.Qa1! is dead level.]

**36...Rxd1+ 37.Qxd1 Qe3 38.c4 f5!**

Revitalizing his initiative, and with White's flag hanging. **39.exf5 Bxf5**

**40.g4?!**

[after 40.g4 hxg4 41.fxg4 Be4 , White is in trouble again anyway.]

[But even at the end the engines aren't done, indicating a defence with 40.Qd5! a4 41.c5 a3 42.c6 Qc3 43.Bc4 , and if a2 44.Bxa2 Bd3+ then 45.Kg2 Qd2+ 46.Kh3 Bf1+ 47.Kh4 Qxh2+ 48.Kg5 Qxg3+ 49.Kf5 Bh3+ 50.Ke4 Qf4+ 51.Kd3 Kh6 52.Qd6+ g6 53.Kc3! Qxf3+ 54.Kb4 , claiming that White can hold this position two pawns down. That would a lot for a human to find even with an hour on the clock.]

Aseev overstepped the time limit;

**0-1**

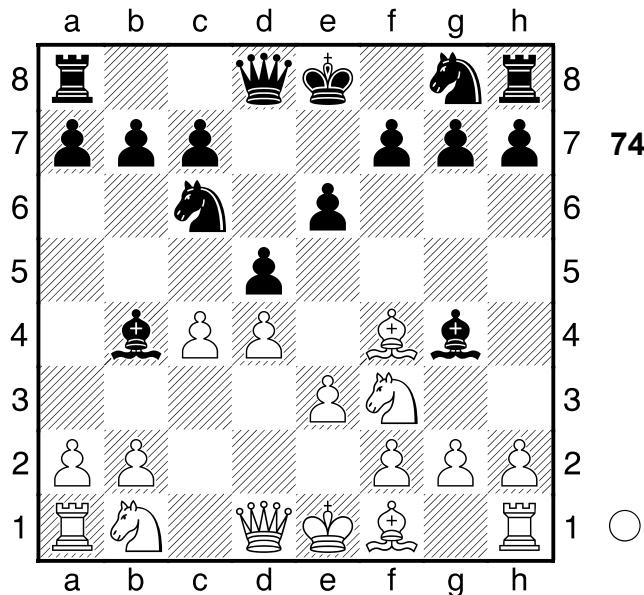
(Diagram 73)

Kramnik,V  
 Ivanchuk,V  
 44: Linares  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

D02

1998

**1.Nf3 Nc6 2.d4 d5 3.Bf4 Bg4 4.e3 e6 5.c4 Bb4+**



**6.Nc3** We have now transposed to the Chigorin 3 Nf3 Bg4 4 Nc3 e6 5 Bf4 Bb4 6 e3 variation. The next two games take a similar route. Note that by delaying c2-c4 White has prevented himself from playing 6 Ne5! as in the previous game.

**6...Nf6** As long as Black has not played ...Nf6 already (e.g. 4 Nc3 e6 5 Bf4 Nf6 6 e3 Bb4 transposes here), he has a choice of squares for his king's knight.

[The text is the most natural move, with the possibility of ...Ne4, whereas Morozevich opted for 6...Nge7 (Games 45-46), though he later decided that "the development of the knight to f6 is more promising." ]

**7.Rc1** The most accurate reply, securing his pawn structure for the moment and preparing later play on the c-file.

[Other moves:

a) 7.cxd5? Nxd5 is not a good idea for White. ]  
 [b) 7.Be2 is well met by dxc4! 8.Bxc4 (otherwise Black defends the pawn with ...b7-b5) Nd5 9.Bxd5 (more or less forced) Qxd5 10.Bxc7 (or 10.0-0 Bxc3 11.bxc3 Bxf3 12.gxf3 0-0-0 13.e4 Qh5 , intending ...g7-g5 and ...f7-f5 to launch a kingside attack ) 10...Rc8 11.Bg3 0-0 12.0-0 Bxc3 13.bxc3 Na5 14.Qa4 Bxf3 15.gxf3 Rxc3 and Black regained the pawn with equality, R.Vera Gonzalez-I. Teran Alvarez, Ayamonte 2004. ]  
 [c) 7.a3 seems premature: Bxc3+ 8.bxc3 0-0 9.Be2 (or 9.cxd5 exd5 10.Bd3 Na5 ) 9...dxc4 (or 9...Na5 – Bronznik ) 10.Bxc4 Nd5 11.Bg3 Nxc3 12.Qb3 Bxf3 13.gxf3 Nd5 14.Bxd5? ( 14.Qxb7 Na5 15.Qb5 Nxc4 16.Qxc4 is equal ) 14...Na5 15.Qb5 Qxd5 16.Qxd5 exd5 17.Bxc7 b6 and Black had a definite advantage in M.Bucher-A.Raetsky, Lenk 2005. ]

[d) 7.Qb3 can be met by a5 8.a3 a4 9.Qc2 Bf5 10.Bd3 , as in J. Bolbochan-C.Merlo, Buenos Aires 1960, and now Bxd3 11.Qxd3 Bxc3+ , followed by ...Na5, when Black has no more problems. ]

[e) 7.h3 Bxf3 8.Qxf3 0-0 9.Rc1 transposes to the main game; (or if 9.Bg5!? , then dxc4 10.Bxc4 Na5 11.Be2 c5 12.Rd1 Qd5 and Black looks fine. )]

**7...0-0**

[Black has a logical alternative here in 7...Ne4!?. For example, 8.cxd5 (after 8.Be2 dxc4 9.Bxc4 e5! Black already stands well, E.Epp-L. M.Christiansen, Bermuda 2003; or if 8.h3 Bxf3 9.Qxf3 Qe7 10.cxd5 exd5 11.Qd1 0-0 12.Be2 , as in Ki. Georgiev-D.Pirrot, Bad Wörishofen

2002, then *Bxc3+* 13.*bx*<sub>c</sub>*3 Na5*  
“with good play on the light squares”  
– Scheerer ) 8...*Qxd5* 9.*Bd3?!* ( 9.*Be2*  
is better ) 9...*e5!* 10.*dxe5?!* 0-0-0  
11.*Bxe4 Qxe4* 12.*Qe2 Bxc3+*  
13.*bx*<sub>c</sub>*3 Rhe8* 14.*h3 Nxe5* 15.*Bxe5*  
*Bxf3* 16.*Qxf3 Qxf3* 17.*gxf3 Rx*<sub>e</sub>*5*  
with a good endgame for Black, S.  
Giardelli-C.Boissonet, Buenos Aires  
1991. ]

**8.h3** There is no reason to defer the capture on f3. **8...Bxf3 9.Qxf3 Qe7?!**  
Preparing the thematic strike ...*e6-e5*;  
[ e.g. 9...*Qe7* 10.*Bd3?!* *dxc4* 11.*Bxc4*  
*e5!* and Black equalizes at once. But  
9...*Qe7* is now considered inaccurate  
because of Kramnik’s response. ]  
[ Instead, theoretical attention has  
focused on the immediate 9...*Bxc3+*  
10.*bx*<sub>c</sub>*3* (when 10.*Rxc3 Ne4* 11.*Rc1*  
*e5!* 12.*dxe5 Qe7* and Black has a  
strong initiative, A.Graf-R.Rabiega,  
German Championship, Heringsdorf  
2000 ) 10...*Qe7* and then:

**A)** 11.Bg5? now fails to *Qa3*,  
followed by ...*Ne4*.;

**B)** 11.Bd3 is met by *e5!* 12.*Bg5*  
(or 12.*cxd5 Nxd4* 13.*cxd4 exf4*  
14.*Qxf4 Qa3* – Bronznik ) 12...*e4*  
13.*Bxf6 exf3* 14.*Bxe7 fxg2*  
15.*Rg1 Nxe7* 16.*Rxg2 Rad8*  
and Black drew in J.Delemarre-A.  
Karpatchev, German League  
2007.;

**C)** 11.cxd5 Nxd5

**C1)** White cannot avoid the piece swap since 12.Bg3? *Qa3*  
13.*Rc2 Nxc3* 14.*e4 Nxd4*  
15.*Qxc3 Nxc2+ 16.Qxc2 Qb4+*  
17.*Qd2* (or 17.*Ke2 f5*)  
17...*Qxe4+* is good for Black;

**C2)** 12.Bc4 Nxf4 13.*Qxf4 e5*  
also seems okay for Black; for  
example, 14.*Qe4* (the d4-pawn  
needs defending; normally

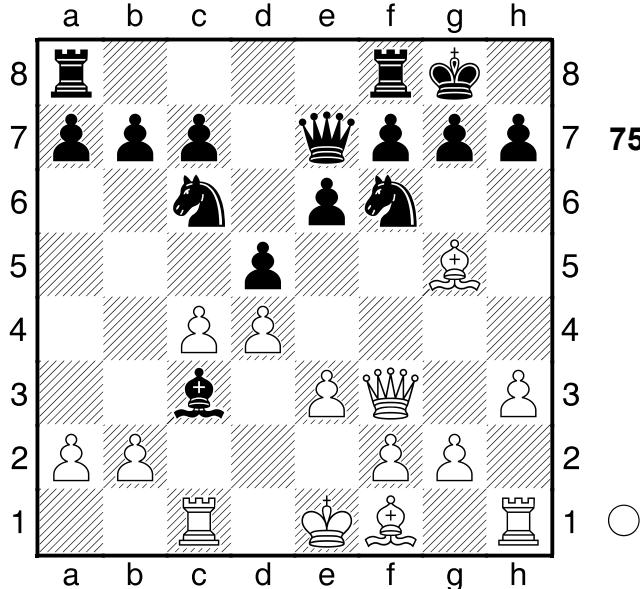
exchanging on e5 would be the way to go but here it would just leave White with a weak c3-pawn) *Kh8* (preparing ...*f7-f5* to drive the white queen away)  
15.*Qb1 Na5* 16.*Bd3 b6* 17.0-0  
*Rae8* 18.*d5?!* (ceding the c5-square to the knight is hard to understand) *Nb7* 19.*Bb5 Rd8*  
20.*Rcd1 f5* and I already prefer Black: the white centre is immobile, while Black has the initiative on the kingside, S.Vanel-E.Breuer, correspondence 2005.;

**D)** 11.Be2! looks critical, intending  
11...*Ne4* 12.*cxd5 exd5* 13.0-0!  
*Nd2* (while after 13...*Qa3* 14.*c4*  
*Nb4* 15.*Rfe1 Nd2* 16.*Qg4 f5*  
17.*Qh5 dxc4* 18.*Bxc4+ Nxc4*  
19.*Rxc4*, White was clearly better in H.Ness-J.Gronemann, correspondence 2009 ) 14.*Qxd5*  
*Nxf1* 15.*Rxf1*, when the two bishops and centre pawns provide excellent compensation for the exchange. ]

[ So, rather than play ...*Qe7* at all, Black might prefer 9...*Na5*!, after which 10.*cxd5 Qxd5* 11.*Qxd5 Nxd5* 12.*Bg3 c5* 13.*Bd6 Rfe8*  
14.*Bxc5* (or 14.*dxc5 Rac8*)  
14...*Nxc3* 15.*Bxb4 Nxa2* 16.*Ra1 Nxb4* 17.*Rxa5 Rec8* 18.*Rb5 a5*  
19.*Kd1 Rc7* was level in V.Gagliardi-G.Perini, correspondence 2011. ]

**10.Bg5!** Preventing both ...*e6-e5* and ...*Ne4*, so Ivanchuk attempts to exploit White’s loss of time moving the bishop again by starting a queen invasion on the queenside. **10...Bxc3+**

(Diagram 75)



## 11.Rxc3

[Not 11.bxc3? Qa3 , when Black escapes from the pin and is ready to play ...Ne4 with advantage. For example, 12.Rc2 Ne4 13.cxd5 exd5 14.Bf4 Nb4! 15.cxb4 Qxb4+ 16.Kd1 Qb1+ 17.Rc1 Qxa2 18.Qe2 Nxf2+ 19.Ke1 Qxe2+ 20.Bxe2 Nxh1 21.Bf3 c6 22.Ke2 a5 23.Rxh1 a4 and Black's rook and queenside pawns are worth more than White's bishops. ]

**11...Qb4** Threatening both ...Qxb2 and ...Ne4, so White's reply is forced. **12.Bxf6** **Qxb2 13.Rb3**

[Wandering past the board Anand noticed the possibility of 13.Qg3!?, giving up the rook with check in the hope of delivering mate on g7. His analysis for ChessBase ran Qxc3+ 14.Kd1 g6 15.Qg5 Qa1+ (giving up the rook with check in the hope of delivering mate on g7. His analysis for ChessBase ran 15...Qb2? 16.Bd3 Qc3 17.Ke2 dxc4 18.Be4 Qa5 19.d5!; and 15...Nb4? 16.g4! Nd3 17.Bxd3 Qxd3+ 18.Ke1 win for White ) 16.Ke2

**A) 16...Qb1!** 17.g4 Qe4 18.Kd2

Nxd4 (the only defence) 19.exd4 e5 20.Qe3! Qb1 "unclear", after which 21.Ke2 Qxa2+ (or 21...e4 22.Qb3) 22.Kf3 e4+ 23.Kg2 Qa6 24.Qg5 looks good for White.;

**B)** In his book Morozevich writes that Rybka later refuted all this with 16...Qxa2+! 17.Kf3 Qa3!

**B1)** 18.Qh6 Nxd4+ 19.Bxd4 f6 and Black wins. ( 19....-- );

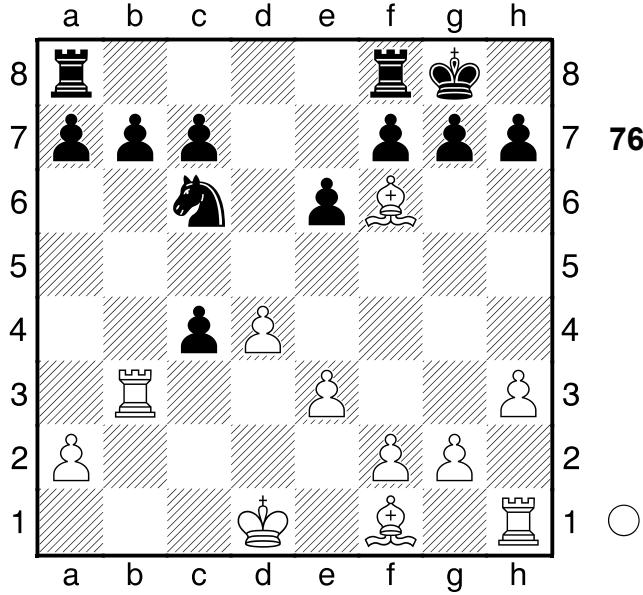
**B2)** Today's engines beg to differ, suggesting 18.Kg3! and claiming equality, though after 18...Rfe8! ( 18...Qd6+ 19.f4 Rfe8 20.h4 Qf8 21.h5 Ne7 22.Kf2 a5 23.Be5 Nc6 24.Bf6 Ne7 is a draw by a repetition ) 19.c5 Nxd4 20.Bxd4 e5 21.Bxe5 Qxc5 22.Qf6 Rxe5 23.Qxe5 a5 Black pawns look more dangerous than White's bishop. Whether future engines will alter the assessment again remains to be seen. Failing that, Kramnik's move was the strongest, as it leads to an endgame where White has the better chances. ]

## 13...Qc1+

[Not 13...Qxa2? , since 14.Qg4 then forces g6 and Black is just a piece down. ]

**14.Qd1 Qxd1+ 15.Kxd1 dxc4**

(Diagram 76)



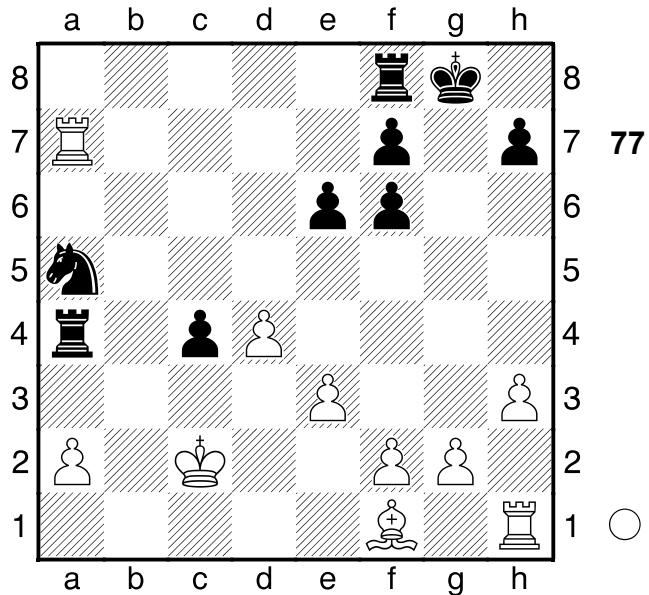
**19...Rb4**

[Not 19...Rfc8? 20.Rxc8+ Rxc8 21.Be2 , followed by Rb1, when the bishop vs. knight and Black's weak c4-pawn would make this ending very difficult to defend. ]

**20.Rxa7!?**

[Kramnik presumably concluded that something like 20.a3 Ra4 21.Be2 Rxa3 22.Rb1 wouldn't get him anywhere, so he decided to try an exchange sacrifice. ]

**20...Ra4**



**21.Rxa5! Rxa5 22.Bxc4**

With two pawns for the exchange, including a passed a-pawn, as well as the superior structure, White is the only one who can win this endgame.

**22...h5** Restricting White's kingside pawns from advancing freely. **23.h4**

Fixing the black h-pawn on h5, where it is potentially a weakness. **23...Rc8**

**24.Kd3 Rxc4!?** Ivanchuk has no wish to suffer in a long defence, so he returns the exchange to reach a rook endgame where his active rook gives him excellent prospects of holding.

**25.Kxc4 Rxa2**

(Diagram 78)

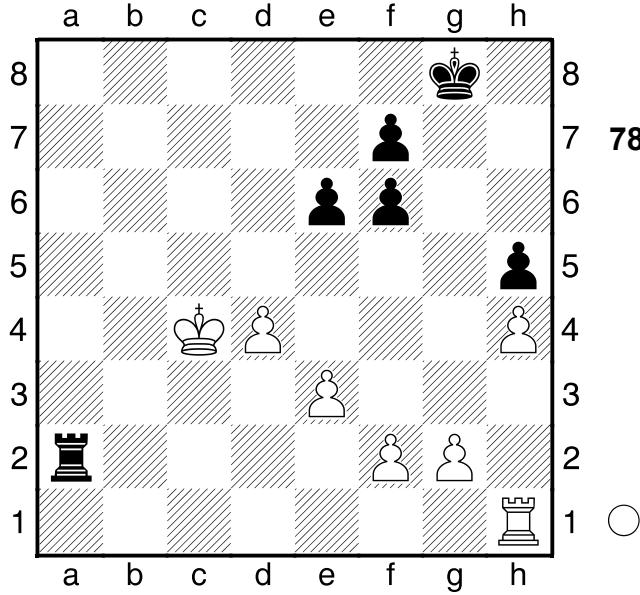
**16.Rxb7 gxf6 17.Kd2?!**

[If White wants to move the king, 17.Kc2 is a better square, preventing an enemy rook from entering his position down the b-file. After Rab8 18.Rxb8 Rxb8 19.Bxc4 Na5 (or 19...Kf8 20.Kc3 Ke7 21.Rd1 with a slight advantage – Donev ) 20.Bd3 c5 21.dxc5 Rc8 22.Kd2 Rxc5 23.Rc1 Nb7?! 24.Rxc5 Nxc5 25.Bc2 , White obtained a favourable minor piece ending in S.Crouan-B. Marzolf, Saint Affrique 2011. ]

[Alternatively, 17.g4 is a consideration, preventing ...f6-f5 and intending to develop the bishop on the long diagonal; for example, Rfc8 18.Bg2 Ne7 19.Kd2 Nd5 20.Rc1 c3+ 21.Kd3 c6 22.Bxd5 cxd5 23.Rxc3 Rxc3+ 24.Kxc3 is good for White with his more active rook and king. ]

**17...Rab8! 18.Rxc7 Na5 19.Kc2**

[Note that 19.Kc3 is now answered by Rb1 , and if 20.Rxa7 Nc6 21.Ra4 then Rfb8 22.Rxc4 Ne7 and Black has sufficient counterplay, with ideas of ...Ra1 or ...Rd1 and doubling on White's back rank. ]



Threatening ...Re4 mate, which forces White to weaken his second rank. **31.f3 Ra5+**

[Not 31...Rxh4?? 32.Ra1 , followed by Ra7+ with a winning position for White.]

**32.Kf4 Ra2!** The point of his 30th move. The g2-pawn now has to be defended.

**33.Rb1**

[Or 33.g3 Kf6 34.e4 Re2 (threatening 35...e5 mate) 35.g4 hxg4 and Black liquidates to a draw.]

**33...Kf6** In such endings it is usually more important to keep the opponent's king from advancing than it is to snap up loose pawns.

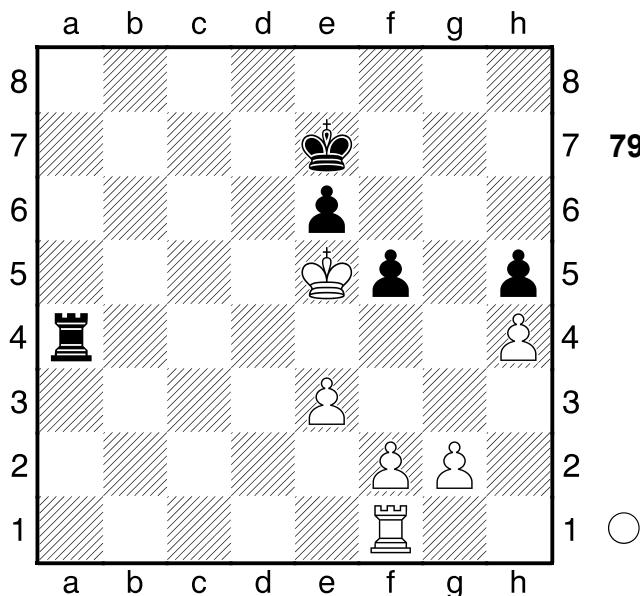
[Nevertheless, 33...Rxf2 was also good enough; e.g. 34.Ke5 Re2 35.Rb7+ Kd8 36.e4 (or 36.Kxe6 Rxe3+ 37.Kxf5 Rxf3+ 38.Kg5 Ke8 39.Kxh5 Ra3 with a simple draw) 36...fxe4 37.fxe4 Ke8! 38.Rh7 Kf8 39.Rxh5 Kg7 40.Rg5+ Kf7 41.Rg4 Rh2 42.Rf4+ (or 42.Kf4 Kf6) 42...Ke7 43.Rf6 Rxh4 44.Rxe6+ Kf7 , reaching a similar ending as in the game.]

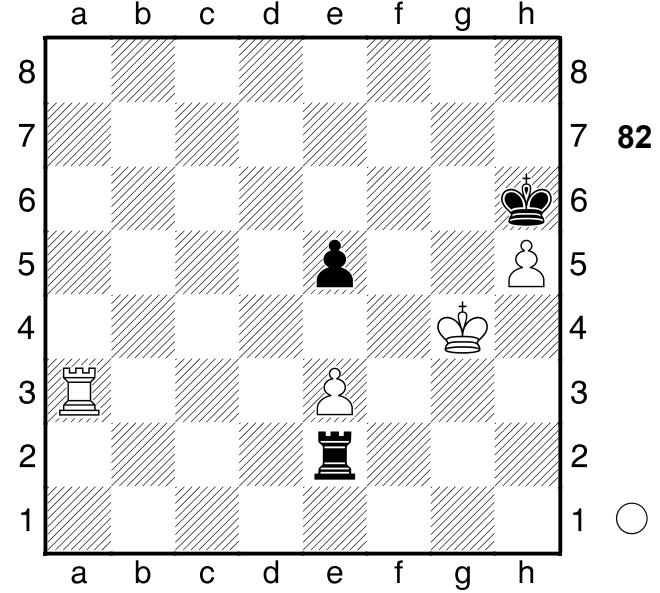
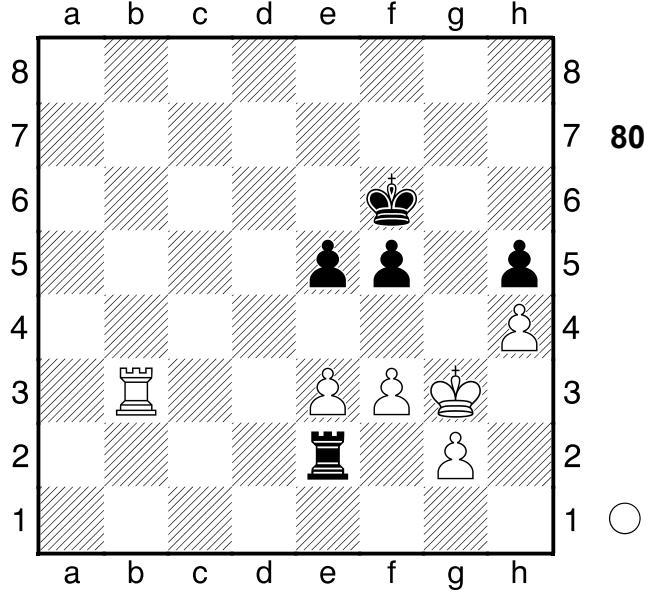
**34.Kg3**

[Obviously not 34.g3?? e5# .]

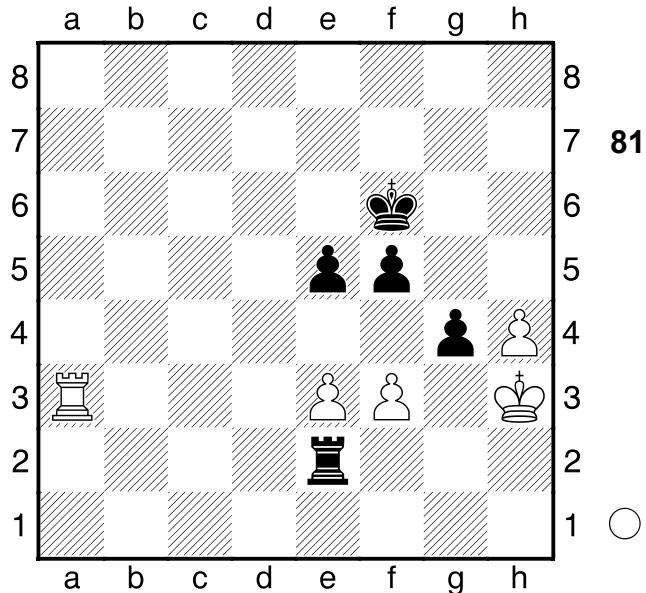
**34...Re2! 35.Rb3 e5**

(Diagram 80)





With his king shut out and both the e3- and g2-pawns needing to be defended, White can make no progress. **36.Rb6+ Kg7 37.Rb3 Kf6 38.Ra3 Kg6 39.Kh3 Kf6 40.g4!?** The only way to try and do something, though it was unlikely to get anywhere against Ivanchuk. **40...hxg4+**

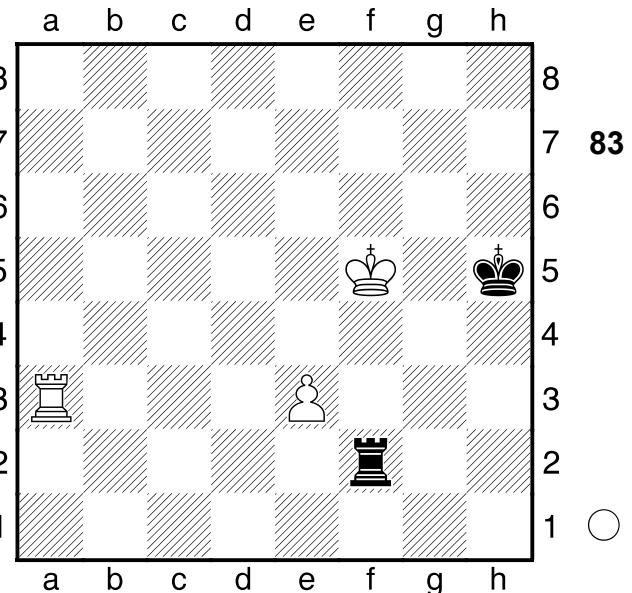


**41.fxg4 fxg4+ 42.Kxg4 Kg6 43.h5+ Kh6 44.Ra6+ Kh7 45.Ra3**

[Or 45.Kf3 Rh2 46.h6 Rh4 and draws as the white king cannot cross the fourth rank.]

**45...Kh6**

**46.Kf5 e4 47.Kxe4 Kxh5 48.Kf5 Rf2+ 49.Ke6 Re2 50.Kf5 Rf2+**

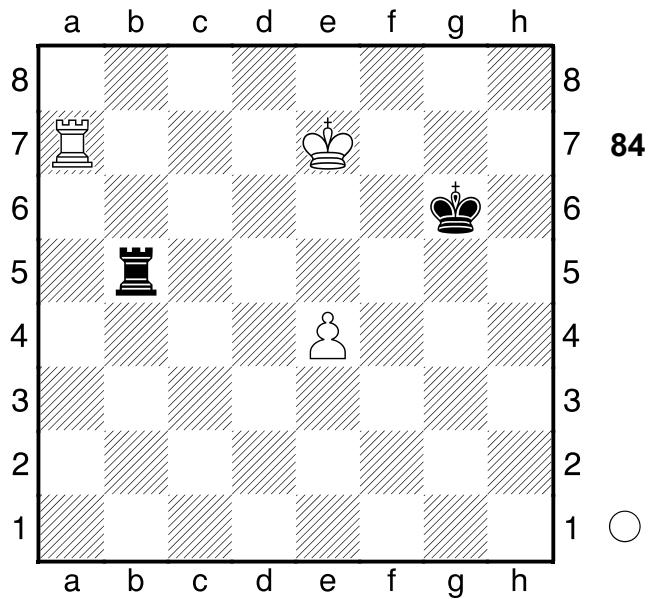


**51.Ke5 Kg6 52.e4 Rb2 53.Ra7 Rb5+ 54.Ke6 Rb6+ 55.Ke7 Rb5**

[ 55...Kg5 56.e5 Kf5 was another option.]

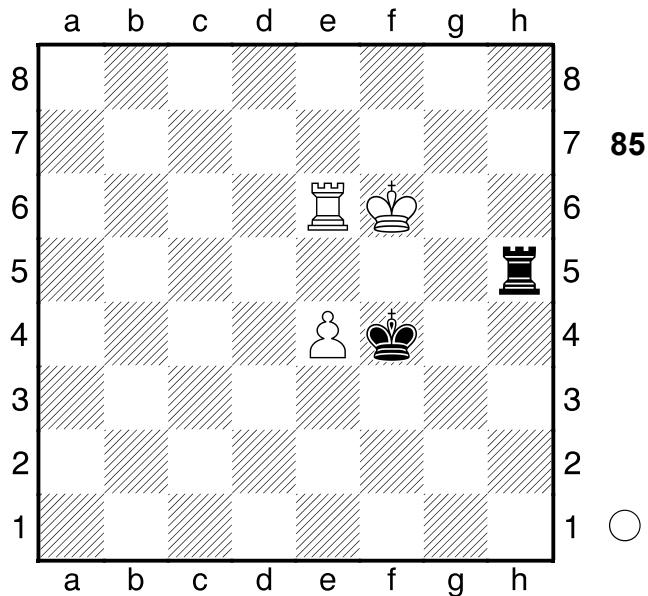
[But not 55...Rb4?? 56.e5 Rb6 57.e6 Kg7 58.Ra8 Rb7+ 59.Kd6 Rb6+ 60.Kd7 Rb7+ 61.Kc6 Re7 62.Kd6 and White wins.]

(Diagram 84)



Preventing the white pawn from advancing. **56.Ra6+ Kg5 57.Re6 Kf4 58.Kf6 Rh5**

[White still can't push his pawn due to 58...Rh5 59.e5 Rf5+ and ...Rxe5, so the players finally shook hands on a draw.]



$\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}$

**Akesson,R**  
 **Morozevich,A**  
 45: London Lloyds Bank  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

D02

1994

Dmitriev, Ulianovsk 2008.;  
**B)** Alternatively, **9.h3 Bh5**  
 is the 8 a3 line below; (while  
 9...Bxf3 10.Qxf3 is in the next  
 game again. )]

### 7...Bh5

[For 7...Bxf3 see the next game. It seems slightly un thematic to retreat the bishop. In the Chigorin Black often takes the knight unprovoked and now he won't even take it with tempo. Moreover, the bishop can become a target for g2-g4. ]

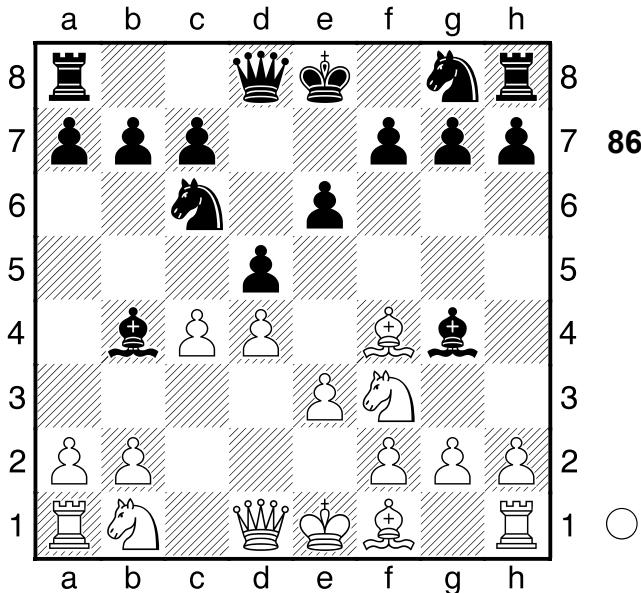
### 8.Rc1

[White has scored very well with the simple 8.a3 Bxc3+ 9.bxc3 0-0 10.Bh2 , though it doesn't look particularly dangerous. For instance, after Na5 11.cxd5 exd5 12.Be2 Rc8 13.0-0 c5 , Black was fine at this point in M.Taimanov-H.Hepting, Fürth 1999. ]

### 8...0-0 9.a3

[Here 9.Bd3 Ng6 transposes to L. Van Wely-A.Morozevich, Tilburg 1993, which continued 10.Bh2 (after 10.g4?! Nxf4 11.exf4 Bg6 White has merely weakened his kingside, and 12.f5? exf5 13.gxf5 Bh5 only makes things worse; the immediate 10.Bxg6 Bxg6 11.cxd5 may well be best ) 10...Nh4 11.g4 Nxf3+ 12.Qxf3 Bg6 13.Bxg6 hxg6?! (recapturing the other way was preferable: 13...fxg6 14.Qe2 Bd6! and both sides have weaknesses ) 14.cxd5 exd5 15.Kf1! (anticipating the h1-rook's usefulness in an attack on the king, while threatening the d5-pawn) Ne7 16.h4?! (too eager) ( 16.Ne2 first was stronger ) 16...Bxc3 17.Rxc3 c6 18.h5 g5 19.h6 f6 20.hxg7 Kxg7 21.Bg3 Qd7 . Black has finally emerged from the opening unscathed,

**1.Nf3 Nc6 2.d4 d5 3.Bf4 Bg4 4.e3 e6 5.c4 Bb4+**



**6.Nc3 Nge7** From here the knight can go to g6 to harass the f4-bishop, and in some positions a further ...f7-f5-f4 may prove effective. **7.h3** A standard move in the London system, even if this isn't one quite. White can also defer h2-h3 for a turn or two; either way Black has to decide how to react. In this game we will look at instances where Black retreats the bishop; in the next, where he takes on f3.

[Instead:

a) 7.Rc1 is examined in the next game, apart from 0-0 8.h3 Bh5 which transposes back here. ]

[b) 7.a3 Bxc3+ 8.bxc3 0-0

**A)** **9.Bg3** Na5 (or 9...Nf5) 10.c5 (or 10.cxd5 exd5 11.Bd3 Bf5) 10...b6 11.Qa4 Bxf3 12.gxf3 Nf5 was fine for Black in A.Ulanov-I.

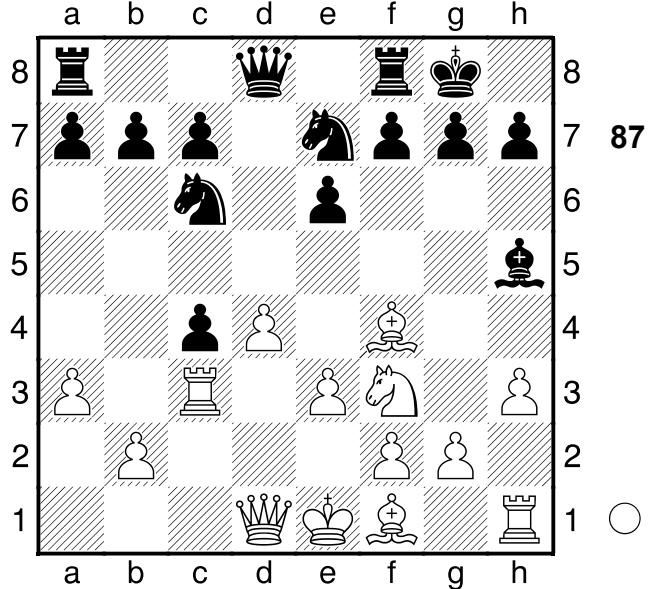
and his knight is quite the equal of White's bishop in this structure. The rest of the game is worth looking at: 22.Kg2 Rh8 23.Rcc1 Rxh1 24.Rxh1 Qe6 25.Qe2 Re8 26.f3 Ng6 27.Re1 f5 28.gxf5 Qxf5 29.e4!? (instead, 29.Kf2 g4 30.Rg1 Rf8 31.Bf4 Nxf4 32.exf4 Qxf4 33.Qe7+ Rf7 34.Rxg4+ Qxg4 35.Qxf7+ Kxf7 36.fxg4 a5! is a drawn pawn endgame) 29...Qd7!?, 30.Qe3? (30.Qd3 is still equal) 30...dxe4 31.Kg1 (not 31.fxe4? Qg4 and White is unexpectedly lost, e.g. 32.e5 Rf8 33.Rf1 Nf4+ 34.Kg1 Ne2+, winning material; 31.Qxg5 exf3+ 32.Kxf3 Qf7+ 33.Kg4 Rxe1 34.Bxe1 Qxa2 is also good for Black, whose knight is an excellent defender against queen checks) 31...Qf5 32.fxe4 Qg4 33.d5 cxd5 34.Qc3+ Kh6 35.exd5 Rc8 36.Qe3 Rd8 37.d6 Rxd6 38.Qf2? Nf4 39.Kf1 Rf6 40.Re4 Qd1+ and Van Wely resigned, since 41.Re1 Qd3+ 42.Kg1 Nh3+ wins his queen for starters.]

### 9...Bxc3+

[Retreating again with 9...Bd6 10.Bxd6 Qxd6 is unattractive for Black, especially as 11.g4!? Bg6 12.h4 h5 13.Nd2 hxg4?! (13...e5 was better) 14.cxd5 Nxd5 15.Qxg4 Bf5 16.Qg2 gave White a very strong attack in W.Hase-V.Malinin, correspondence 2004.]

### 10.Rxc3 dxc4

(Diagram 87)



**11.Rxc4?** White mistakenly tries to keep both bishops.

[Giving one up with 11.Bxc4! Nd5 12.Bxd5 exd5 sets Black far more problems, as it very difficult for him to find counterplay; for instance, 13.Rc5 Re8 14.0-0 Qd7 15.g4 Bg6 16.Nh4 b6 17.Rc3 Na5 18.Nxg6 hxg6 19.Rxc7 Qb5 20.Qc2 and White was winning in O.Cvitan-V.Bukal, Croatian League 1998.]

**11...Ng6?!** Very risky, since Black now has to waste a move saving his bishop by capturing on f3 after all, and his central counterplay seems barely sufficient.

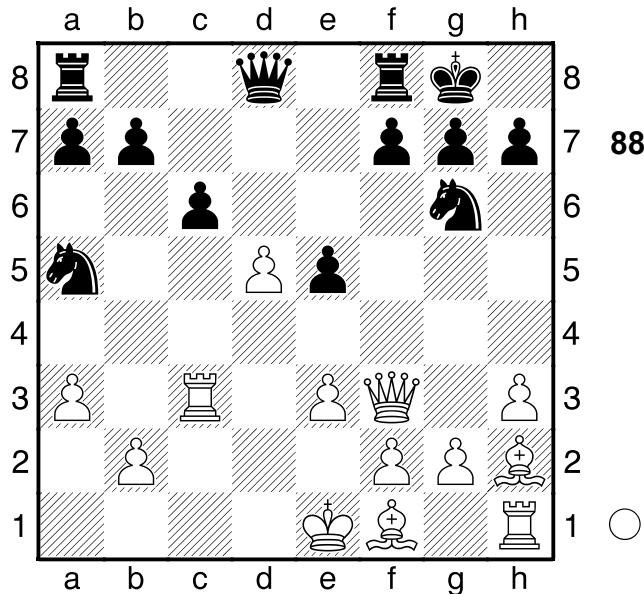
[Instead, 11...Nd5! 12.Bh2 f5 improves, when 13.Be2 f4 14.Qd2 fxe3 15.fxe3 Bxf3 16.Bxf3 Qh4+ 17.Qf2 Qh6 18.e4 Nf6 19.Qe2 e5 20.Bxe5 (or 20.d5 Nd4) 20...Nxe5 21.dxe5 Nd7 22.Qd2 Qxd2+ 23.Kxd2 c6 led to a draw in C.O'Hare-E.Gibney, correspondence 2005.]

**12.Bh2 Bxf3 13.Qxf3 e5 14.d5 Na5?!** Gaining time on the rook at the cost of putting the knight in danger.

[Presumably Morozevich wanted to avoid 14...Nce7 15.h4, when White

is already attacking. Nevertheless, Black may be able to survive by sacrificing the g6-knight: c6! 16.h5 Qa5+ 17.b4 (or 17.Kd1 Rad8! 18.hxg6 fxg6 19.Qe2 Rxf2! 20.Qxf2 Qxd5+ 21.Rd4 exd4 22.e4 Qa2! 23.Kc2 c5 24.Qh4 Rf8! 25.Bd6 c4! and the engines say this mess is level) 17...Qxa3 18.hxg6 cxd5 19.Rc2, A.Chernin-S.Kapnisis, Korinthos 2000, and now Qxb4+ 20.Rd2 Nxg6 with three good pawns for the piece, while White still has to develop his kingside.]

### 15.Rc3 c6



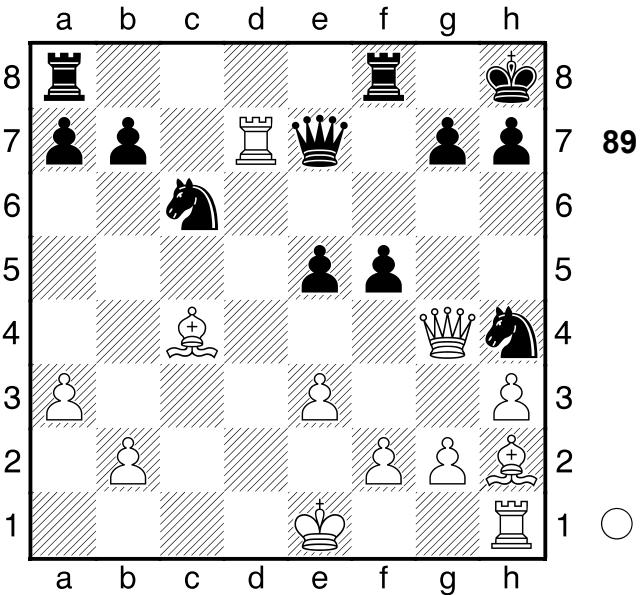
### 16.dxc6

[Another option was 16.d6!? b6 (16...Qxd6? 17.b4 traps the knight) 17.b4 Nb7 18.Rxc6 Nxd6 19.Bd3, followed by 0-0 and the bishops are better than the knights.]  
[Not yet 16.b4? cxd5 17.bxa5? Qxa5 and the rook on c3 is lost.]

**16...Nxc6 17.Bc4 Nh4 18.Qg4 Kh8 19.Rd3 Qe7 20.Rd7** In possession of a good position we often feel obliged to push it to the limit, as Akesson does here. White's rook gets to the seventh rank, who would not want that?

[However, against Morozevich it might have been more prudent to continue calmly and just castle; i.e. 20.0-0, intending f5 21.Qe2 Qg5 22.f4! Qe7 23.Rfd1 exf4 24.Bxf4 Ne5 25.Rd6 Nxc4 26.Qxc4 with a definite advantage, as White controls the open d-file with both rooks.]

### 20...f5!



Without this resource Black would be losing. **21.Rxe7 fxg4 22.Rxb7?!** Another very natural move. White's rook was en prise so he moves it and takes a pawn at the same time.

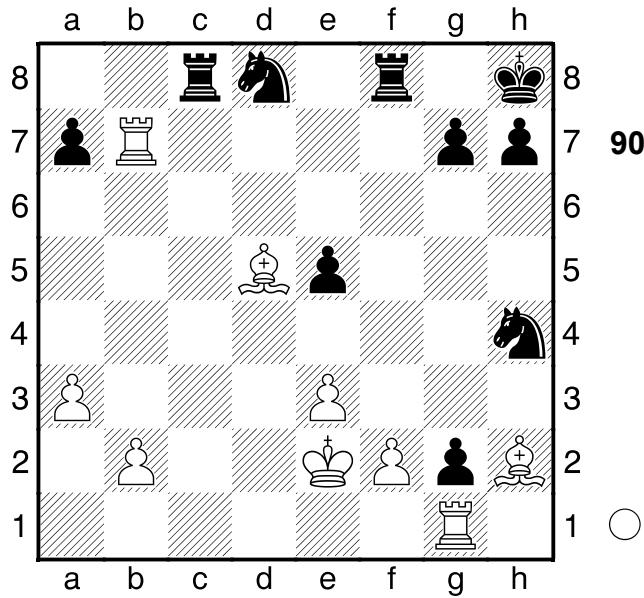
[But it was more important to control the d-file with 22.Rd7!, when gxh3 23.gxh3 Nf3+ 24.Ke2 Nxh2 25.Rxh2 keeps an edge.]

### 22...gxh3 23.Bd5

[Now if 23.gxh3 Nf3+ 24.Ke2, Black plays Rad8, threatening ... Rd2+ with strong counterplay.]

### 23...hxg2 24.Rg1 Rac8 25.Ke2 Nd8?!

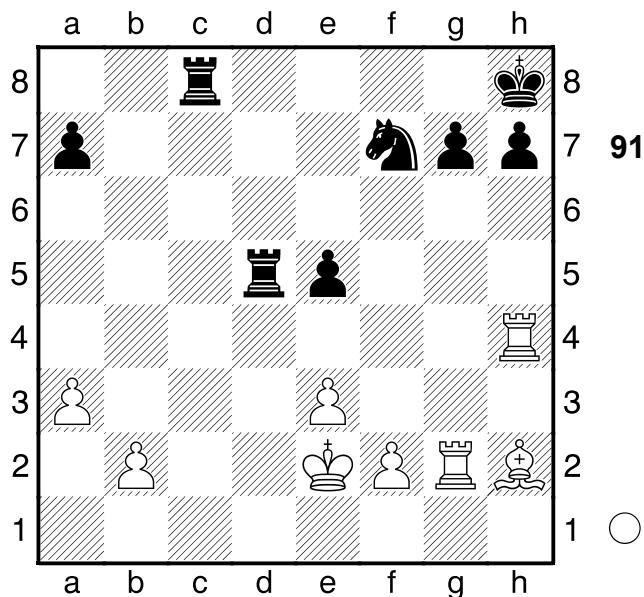
[but 25...Rfd8 was stronger; e.g. 26.Rb5 (or 26.Be4 Na5) 26...a6 27.Rc5 Ne7 28.Rxc8 Rxc8 29.Be4 Nef5 30.Bxe5 (or 30.Bxf5 Nxf5 31.Rxg2 e4) 30...Re8 31.Bxf5 Rxe5 and Black is hanging on.]



Clearing the c-file for his rook makes sense; **26.Rb4?!**

[This time White should take the pawn: 26.Rxa7! Rc2+ 27.Kd3 Rcx<sub>f</sub>2 28.Bxe5 Nf7 29.Bd4 Rf1 30.Rxg2 Nxg2 31.Bxg2, when the bishops and two passed pawns on the queenside are more than sufficient compensation for the exchange.]

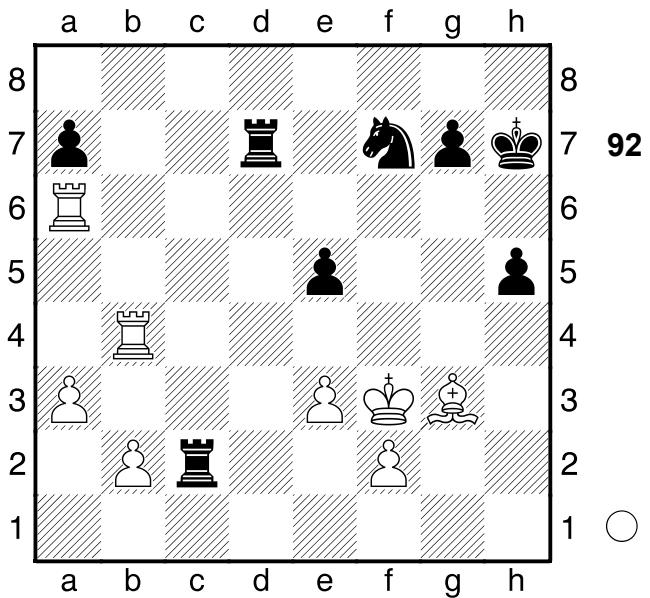
**26...Rc2+ 27.Kd3 Rc5 28.Rxh4 Rxd5+ 29.Ke2 Nf7 30.Rxg2 Rc8**



Black's kingside is safe, so his rooks

can begin invading the queenside.

**31.Rb4 h6 32.Rg6 Kh7 33.Ra6 Rc2+ 34.Kf3 Rd7 35.Bg3 h5**



**36.Ra5 Re7** Akesson has managed to keep up with Morozevich's less than conventional play so far, but now he starts to go wrong. **37.Rab5?!**

[37.Rbb5 was better, keeping the pressure on e5.]

**37...g5!** Morozevich is ready to give up the a-pawn in return for active play on the kingside.

**38.Rb7 Rxb7 39.Rxb7 Kg6 40.b4?**

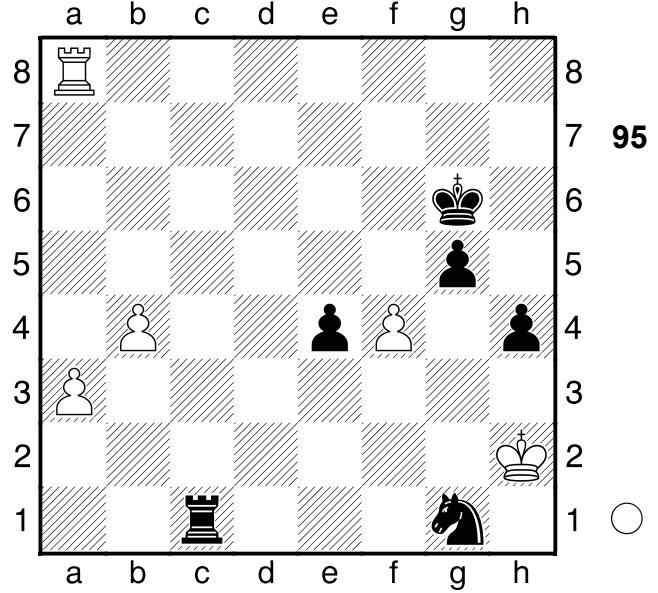
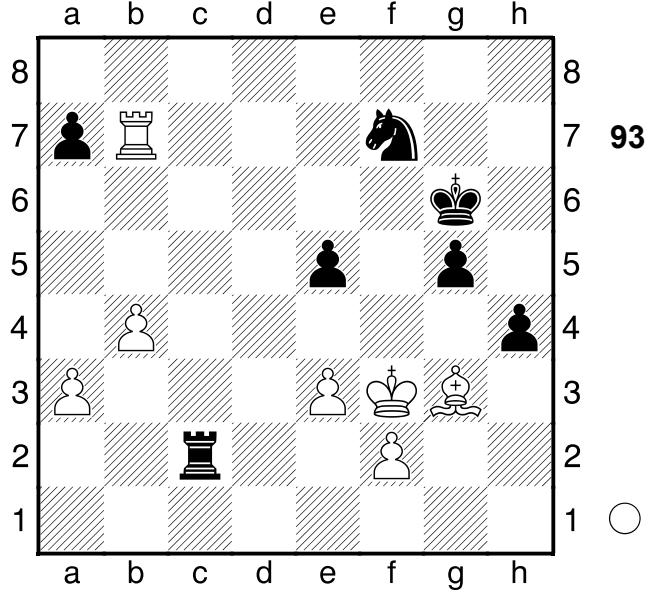
With the black pawns marching down on him, White's defence was very difficult. This move doesn't help him;

[and 40.Rxa7? h4 41.Bh2 e4+ is much the same.]

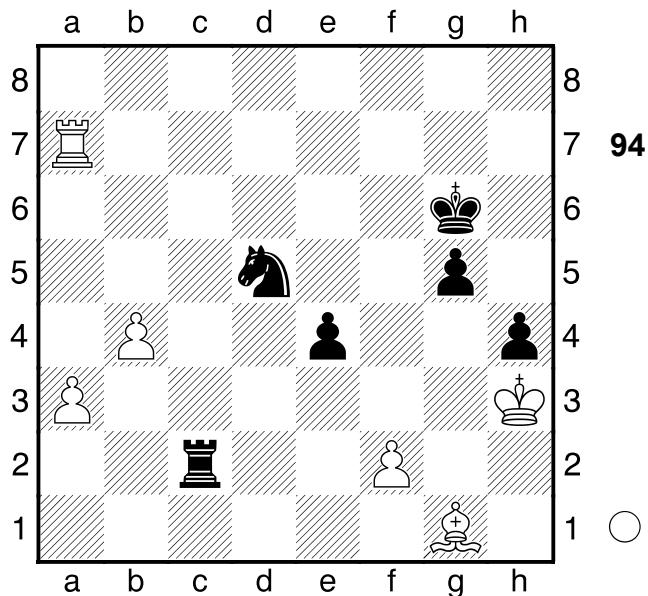
[He needed to find 40.Re7! Kf6 (or 40...g4+ 41.Ke4) 41.Rxa7 h4 42.Ra6+ Kg7 43.Bh2 e4+ 44.Kg2, when g4 (or 44...Rxb2 45.Re6; not 44...Nh6?! which fails to 45.Be5+ Kh7 46.Bf6) 45.Bf4 g3 46.Bxg3 hxg3 47.Kxg3, followed by Kf4 or f2-f3 is a draw.]

**40...h4**

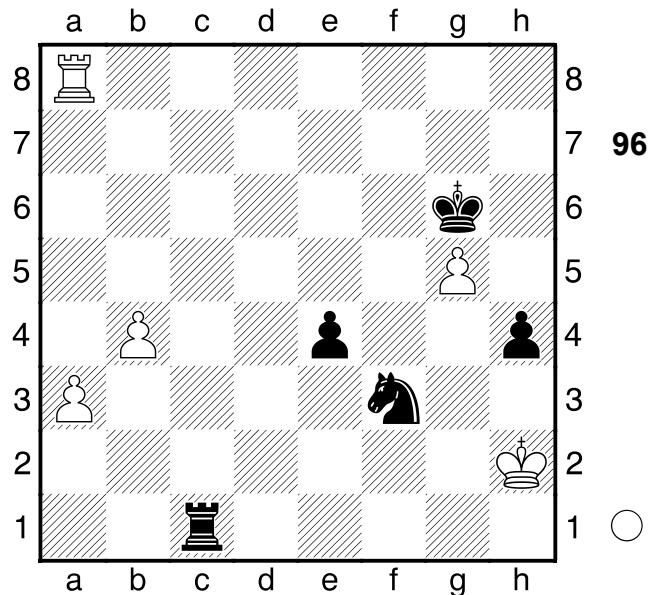
(Diagram 93)



**41.Bh2 e4+ 42.Kg2** Is the knight equal to the bishop in this endgame? Watch how Morozevich uses his horse!  
**42...Nh6! 43.Rxa7 Ng4 44.Bg1 Nxe3+ 45.Kh3 Nd5**



**51.fxg5 Nf3+**  
 [White resigns, since 51...Nf3+ 52.Kh3 (while 52.Kg2 Rc2+ 53.Kh3 e3 will queen the pawn) 52...Rg1 catches the white king in a mating net.]



**46.Ra8 Rc3+ 47.Kg2 Nf4+ 48.Kh1  
 Rc1 49.Kh2 Ne2 50.f4 Nxg1**

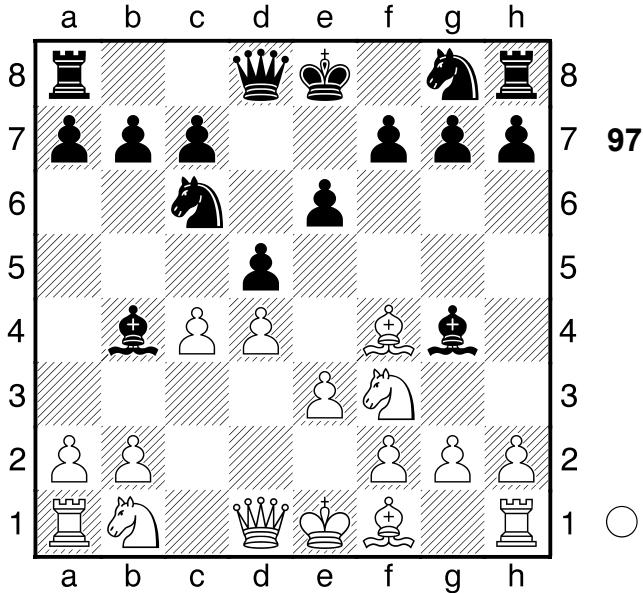
(Diagram 95)

0-1

Schussler,H  
 Hector,J

46: Swedish Championship, Malmö  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

**1.d4 d5 2.Nf3 Nc6 3.Bf4 Bg4 4.e3 e6 5.c4 Bb4+**



**6.Nc3 Nge7 7.Rc1** The most common continuation, developing the rook and defending the c3-knight (as in Game 44).

[There are a few leftovers from the previous game to deal with as well:

7.h3 Bxf3 8.Qxf3 0-0

**A)** 9.Bd3 dxc4 10.Bxc4 Nd5 11.Bxd5 exd5 12.Rc1 Ne7 13.0-0 c6 and Black is fine, as he has neutralized any pressure on the c-file, M.Vacek-J.Plesek, Czech League 2010. (13...--);

**B)** Instead, 9.Rc1 transposes below;

**C)** while 9.a3 Bxc3+ 10.bxc3 can be met by dxc4 (or else 10...Na5!?) 11.Bxc4 Nd5 – Scheerer]

[Or 7.a3 Bxc3+ 8.bxc3 0-0 9.h3 Bxf3 – see 9 a3 etc.]

**D02 7...0-0 8.Bd3** White points his bishop towards the black kingside, threatening the classical sacrifice on h7.

[Instead:

a) 8.h3 allows Black to strike in the centre with Bxf3 9.Qxf3 e5! 10.dxe5 (neither 10.cxd5 Nxd4! 11.exd4 exf4 12.Bc4 Nf5 , A.Czebe-T.Ruck, Zalakaros 2003; nor 10.Bxe5 Nxe5 11.dxe5 d4 12.exd4 Qxd4 13.Be2 Qxe5 14.0-0 Nc6 , E.Senador-D. Howell, Calvia 2004, gives White anything either ) 10...d4 11.exd4 Qxd4 12.Qe3 (both 12.Rd1 Qc5 , M.Arnold-D.Pirrot, Bad Wörishofen 2015; and 12.Be2 Ng6 13.Be3 Qxe5 , P.Vezzosi-S.Skembiris, Montecatini Terme 2000, are also fine for Black ) 12...Ng6 13.Qxd4?! Nxd4 14.Be3 Nf5 15.Bd2 Nxe5 and Black's lead in development gave him a long-term initiative in G.Danner-R.

Aschenbrenner, Graz 2005. ]

[b) 8.a3 Bxc3+ 9.Rxc3 can be met by:

**A)** after 9...Ng6 10.cxd5 exd5 11.h3! Bxf3 (or 11...Nxf4 12.hxg4 Ne6 13.Bd3) 12.Qxf3 Nxf4 13.Qxf4 Rc8 14.h4 , White looks a little better;

**B)** 9...Na5 10.h3 Bh5!? (or just 10...Bxf3 11.Qxf3 dxc4 12.Bxc4 Nxc4 13.Rxc4 c6 with a solid position ) 11.c5 Bxf3 (now that White has released the pressure) 12.Qxf3 Ng6 13.Bh2 Nc6 14.Bd3 e5 15.dxe5 Re8 (not 15...Ncxe5? 16.Bxe5 Nxe5 17.Bxh7+ Kxh7 18.Qh5+ , winning a pawn ) 16.Bxg6 (here 16.Qd1 Ncxe5 17.Be2 at least keeps the bishops ) 16...hxg6 17.0-0 Nxe5 18.Bxe5 Rxe5 and the players agreed a draw in A.Wojtkiewicz-K.Miton, Geneva 2001. ]

**8...Ng6** Blocking the b1-h7 diagonal and hitting the f4-bishop.

[Not 8...dxc4?! 9.Bxh7+! Kh8 10.Bb1 Nd5 11.Bg3 Nce7? 12.0-0 c6 13.Qc2 Bf5 14.e4 Bg6 15.Ne5 Bh7 16.Nxc4 and White won easily in V. Topalov-R.Rabiega, Frankfurt (rapid) 2000.]

**9.h3?!** This is mistimed and allows a tactical blow.

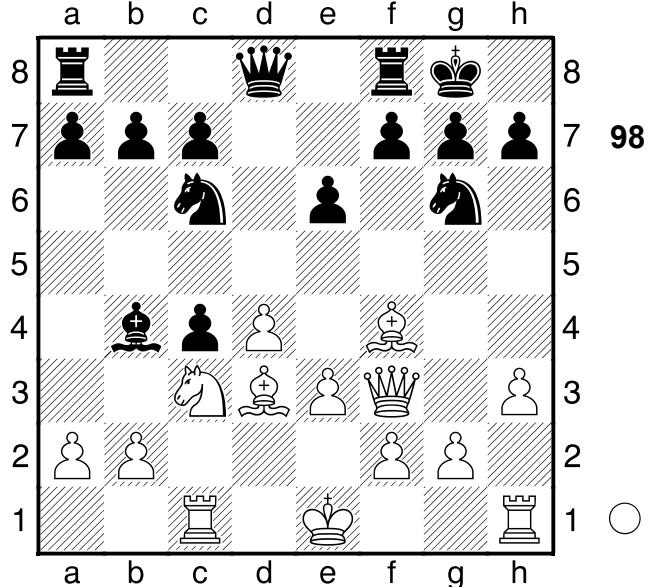
[White should prefer 9.Bg3, although Black looks fine anyway after f5! 10.cxd5 (or 10.h3 Bxf3 11.Qxf3 f4 12.Bh2 Bd6 13.0-0 fxe3 14.Qxe3 Bxh2+ 15.Kxh2 Nf4 and soon ½-½ in H.Kuhn-P.Daus, correspondence 2007) 10...exd5 11.a3?! Bxc3+ 12.Rxc3 f4 13.exf4 Bxf3 (13...Nxf4! looks even better) 14.Qxf3 Nxd4 15.Qh5 Qe8+ 16.Kd2 c6 17.Bxg6 hxg6 18.Qe5 Qxe5 19.fxe5 Ne6, when the strong knight and queenside pawns gave Black a promising endgame in B.Bannink-D. Pirrot, Bad Wiessee 2003.]

**9...Bxf3!**

[Stronger than 9...Bh5 as in Van Wely-Morozevich (see the notes to the previous game).]

**10.Qxf3 dxc4!**

(Diagram 98)



**11.Bxc4 Nxd4! 12.Qxb7**

[Not 12.exd4? Qxd4 (forking the two bishops) 13.Bxc7 Qxc4, when White is unable to castle without shedding more pawns; e.g. 14.Bg3 (after 14.Qxb7? Rad8! 15.Bxd8 Nf4 Black already has decisive threats) 14...f5 15.Qe2 Qxa2 16.0-0 Bxc3 17.Rxc3 f4 18.Bh2 e5 and Black is just two pawns up.]

**12...Nxf4 13.exf4**

[Not 13.Qxb4? Nxg2+ 14.Kf1 Nxe3+! 15.fxe3 Qf6+ 16.Ke1 Rab8 and Black is winning. P.Nemecek-R. Rybak, correspondence 1999, continued 17.Qa4 Qg5 18.Nd1 Qg3+ 19.Kf1 Qf3+ 20.Kg1 Rxb2! 21.Nxb2 Qxe3+ 22.Kg2 Qd2+ 23.Kf1 (23.Kg3 Nf5+ 24.Kf3 Nh4+ 25.Kg4 f5+ leads to mate) 23...Qxc1+ 24.Nd1 Qd2 25.Nf2 Nf5 26.Kg2 Qg5+ 27.Ng4 Rd8 28.Be2 h5 and White resigned.]

**13...Rb8 14.Qe4**

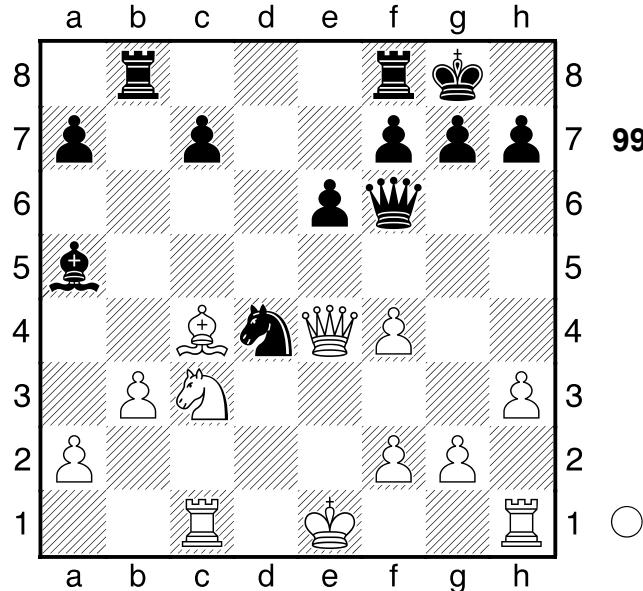
[And not 14.Qxa7? Qd6 15.0-0 Bc5 16.Qa6 Qxf4 (Bronznik), threatening 17...Nf3+! 18 gxf3 Qg3+ and wins, or 17.Ne2 Nxe2+ 18.Bxe2 Bxf2+ 19.Kh1 Rxb2 with a clear

advantage.]

#### **14...Ba5 15.b3?!**

[White should let the b-pawn go and castle: 15.0-0, intending Rxb2 16.Rfd1 Bxc3 (or 16...c5 17.Na4) 17.Rxc3 c5 18.Bd3 with reasonable counterplay.]

#### **15...Qf6**



#### **16.Qe5**

[Not 16.0-0? Bxc3 17.Rxc3 Ne2+, winning the exchange;]

[and even after 16.Qe3 Bb6 17.Qe4 Nf5! (Scheerer), Black seems to have the better chances. Note that White can't castle here because of 18.0-0? Ng3.]

#### **16...Qxe5+ 17.fxe5 Nb5 18.Bxb5**

#### **Rxb5 19.0-0**

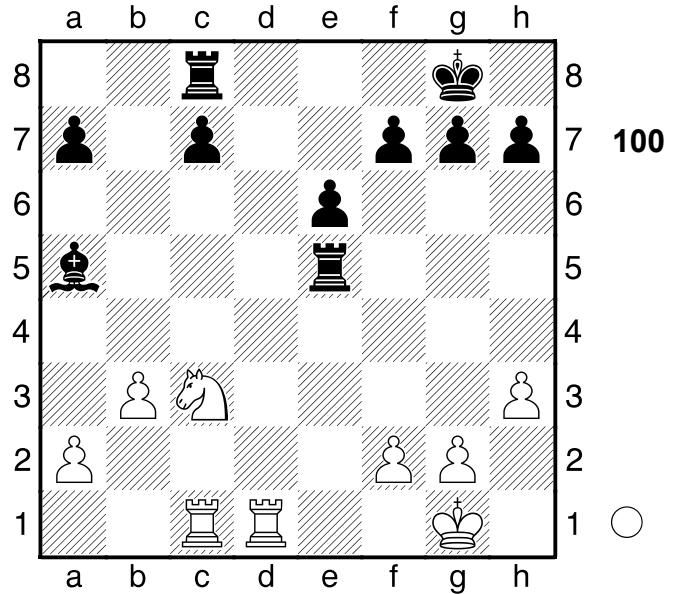
[White cannot defend the e5-pawn with 19.f4??, since Rc5 20.Kd2 Rd8+ then wins a piece.]

**19...Rxe5** Bronznik stops here, writing that "Black did not manage to use his material advantage". It can often be difficult in a rook endgame against a grandmaster opponent.

#### **20.Rfd1 Rc8**

[If instead 20...Rc5, then 21.Na4 Rxc1 22.Rxc1 Rd8 23.a3 and --

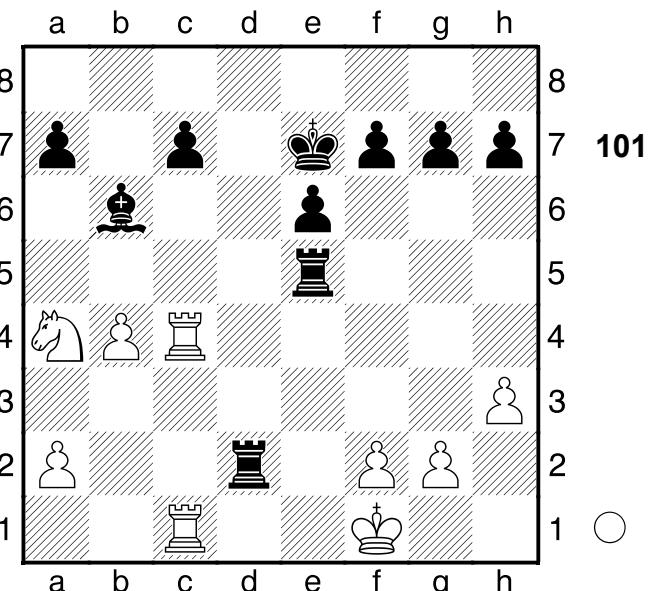
24.b4 Bb6 25.Nxb6 cxb6 reaches much the same position.]



**21.Na4 Kf8 22.Rc4** White fastens his attention on the c7-pawn, planning to double rooks and then rid himself off the black bishop with b3-b4 and Nxb6.

**22...Ke7 23.Kf1 Rd8 24.Rdc1 Rd2**

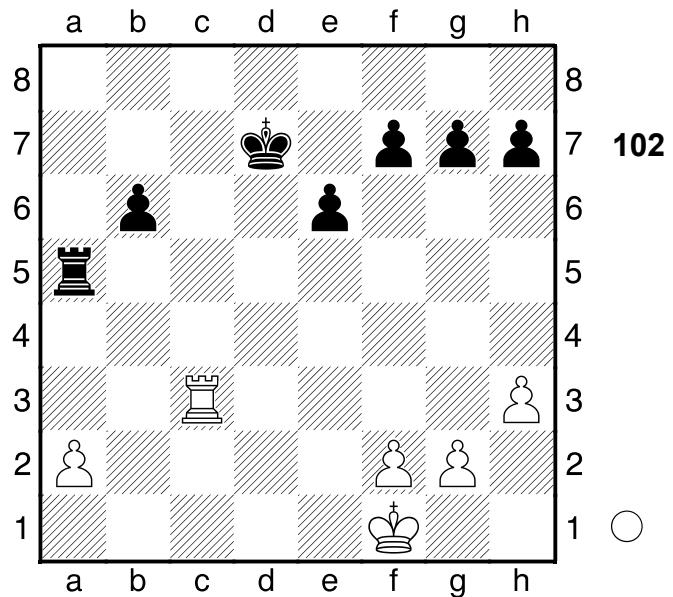
**25.b4 Bb6**



**26.Nxb6 cxb6 27.R4c2 Rxc2 28.Rxc2**

**Kd7 29.Rc3 a5** Hoping for chances to attack the white a-pawn after an exchange of pawns on a5. **30.bxa5**

## Rxa5



1. Keep your rook active – and the king too, if possible.

2. Exchange as many pawns as you can.

3. Attack enemy pawns in order to tie down his rook or king to defence.

**37...Rc7 38.Re3 Re7 39.Re5!**

A good move, preventing the black e-pawn from advancing to e4 where it would be defended by its colleague on f5. **39...Kc6 40.a4** Once this pawn is exchanged it will be easy for White to draw, as all the pawns are then on one side of the board. **40...Kd6**

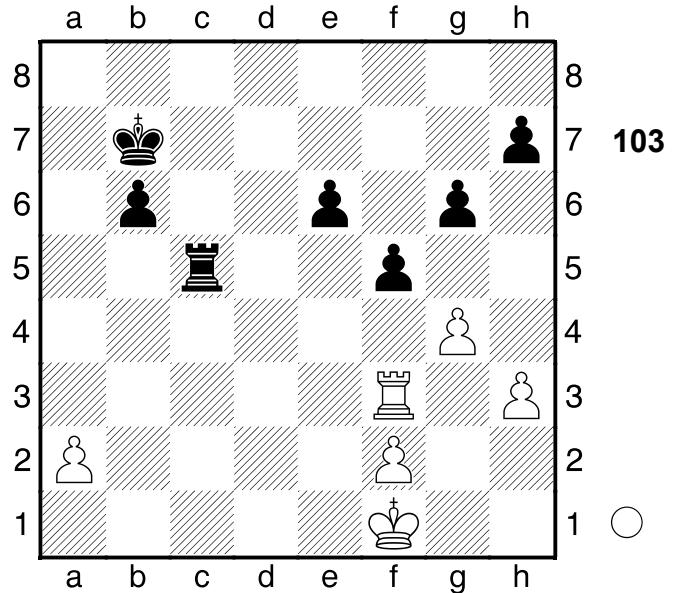
**31.Rd3+ Kc6 32.Rc3+ Rc5 33.Ra3**

**Kb7** White has good chances to hold the ending since Black's extra pawn cannot result in an outside passed pawn.

**34.Rf3 f5**

[Here 34...f6 looks more accurate, avoiding pawn exchanges which favour the defending side.]

**35.g4 g6**



**41.Rb5 Rb7 42.a5 Kc6 43.Re5**

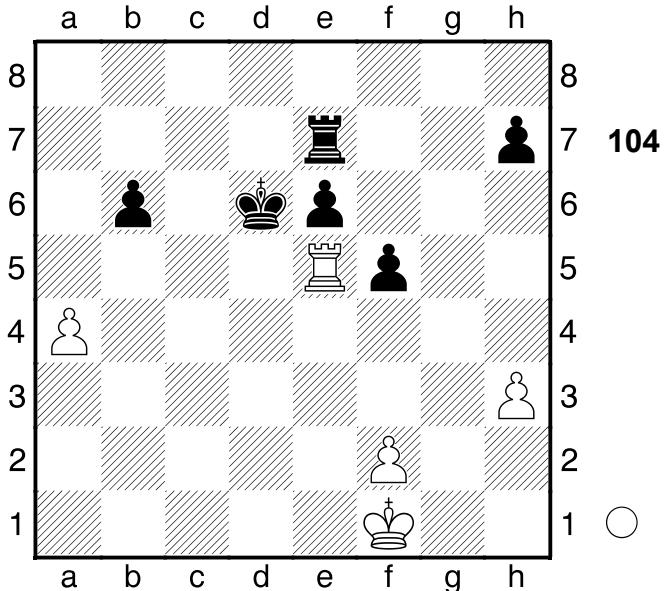
Obviously White needs his rook.

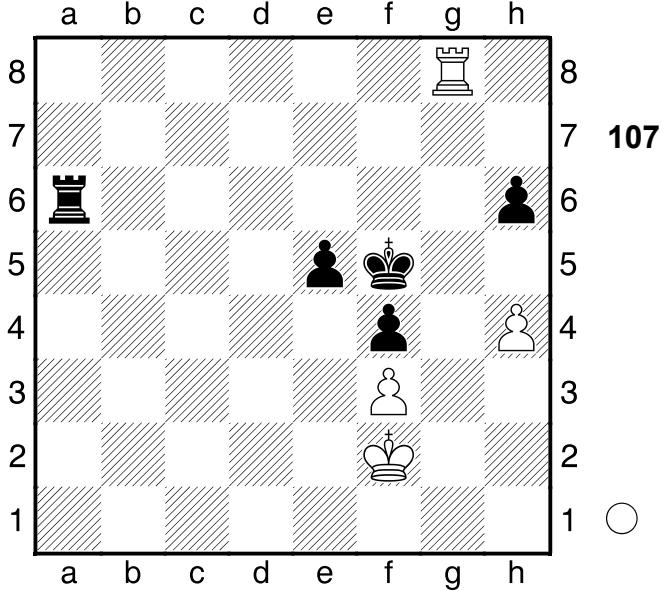
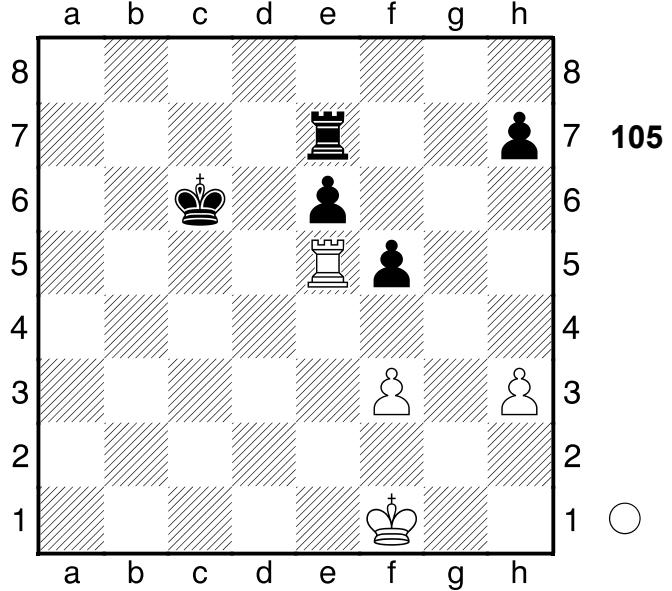
[43.Rxb6+?? Rxb6 44.axb6 Kxb6 results in a lost pawn ending.]

**43...Re7 44.axb6 Kxb6 45.f3 Kc6**

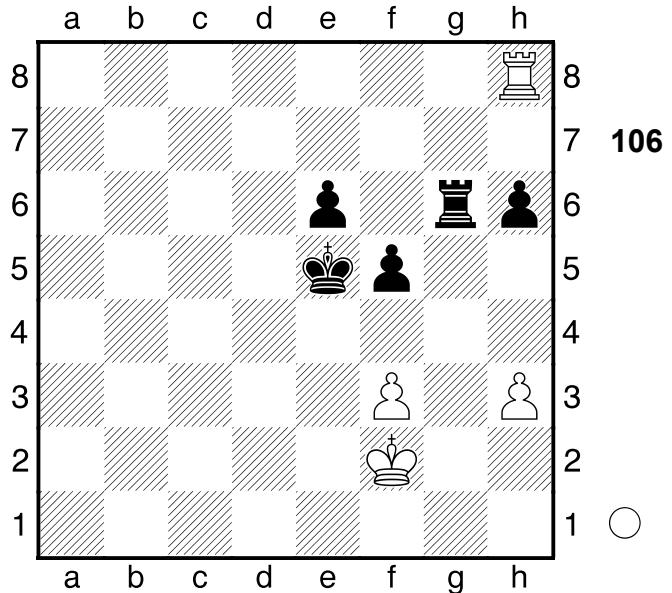
(Diagram 105)

**36.gxf5 gxf5 37.Rg3** The standard method of defence in rook endings where you are a pawn down is to:





**46.Kf2 Kd6 47.Ra5** Staying active.  
**47...Rg7 48.Ra4 h6 49.Ra8 Ke5**  
**50.Rh8 Rg6**



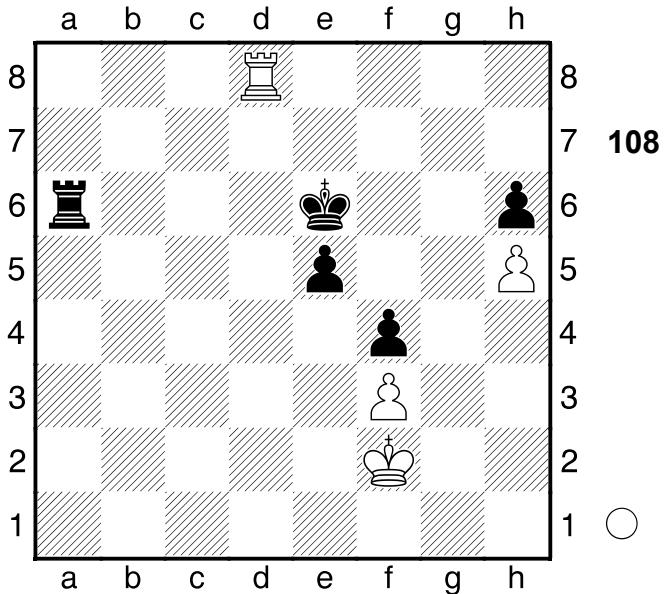
**51.Ke3 f4+ 52.Kf2 Kf5 53.Rf8+ Rf6**  
**54.Rg8 e5 55.h4 Ra6**

(Diagram 107)

**56.h5 Rf6** Black cannot even create a passed pawn.

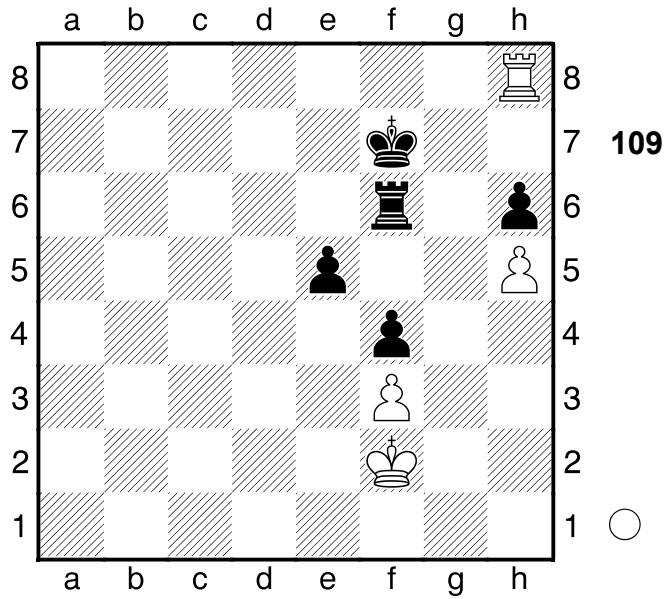
[If he tries 56...Ra2+ 57.Kg1 e4, he just loses his e-pawn after 58.Rf8+ Ke5 (or 58...Kg5 59.fxe4 Kxh5 60.Rxf4) 59.Re8+ .]

**57.Ke2 Ke6 58.Rh8 Kd5 59.Kf2 Ra6**  
**60.Rd8+ Ke6**

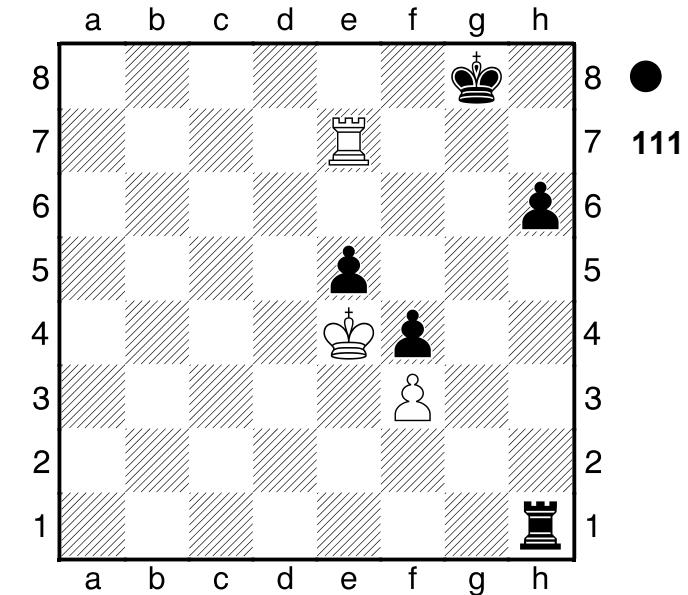


**61.Rh8 Kf5 62.Rg8** Keeping the black king from approaching the h5-pawn.  
**62...Rc6 63.Kf1 Ke6 64.Kf2 Kf7**  
**65.Rh8 Rf6**

(Diagram 109)

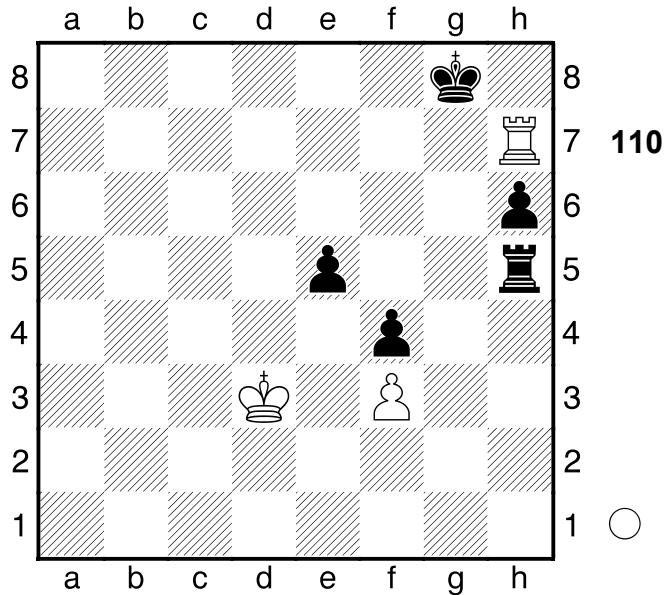


**74.Re7**



$\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}$

Black tries to attack the h-pawn with the rook. This will be winning unless White places his pieces correctly. **66.Rh7+ Kg8 67.Re7 Rf5 68.Ke2!** Heading for the e4-square. **68...Kf8 69.Rh7 Rxh5 70.Kd3 Kg8**



**71.Re7 Kf8 72.Rh7 Rh1 73.Ke4 Kg8**

Now Black's e- and f-pawns will drop off; [but 73...Re1+ 74.Kf5 Re3 75.Rxh6 Rxf3 76.Kxe5 Kg7 77.Ra6 is also clearly drawn, since the black king is cut off from the pawn and White will pick it up in due course.]

D07

□ Chetverik,M  
 ■ Veltkamp,G  
 47: Budapest  
 [Jimmy Liew]

1996

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nf3 Bg4 4.cxd5 Bxf3** The point of Black's third move: by removing the defensive knight he ensures that ...Qxd5 will come with tempo on the d4-pawn;

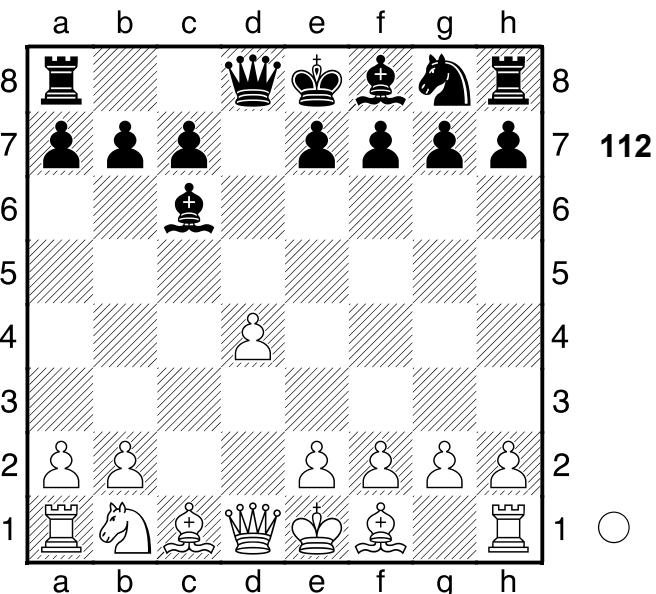
[whereas after 4...Qxd5?! 5.Nc3 Black would lose time. From the other side, White has eliminated the opposing pawn in the centre and can, if he wishes, gain the bishop pair as well.]

**5.dxc6** White is content to have won the battle in the centre and plans to continue with Nc3 and e2-e4. Most of Chigorin's games with 4 cxd5 went this way.

[Personally I prefer to capture the bishop with 5.gxf3 , after which Qxd5 6.e3 reaches the main line for this chapter, examined in Games 48-54. ]  
 [The third option 5.exf3!? is better than its reputation, though Black should be okay here: Qxd5

**A) 6.Be3 e5!?** (the quieter 6...e6 is also possible, leaving White with the isolated d-pawn; but not 6...0-0-0? because of 7.Nc3 Qa5 8.a3! and White is clearly better – Bronznik ) 7.Nc3 Bb4 8.dxe5 (or if 8.Qa4 Nge7 9.0-0-0 Bxc3 10.bxc3 , V.Doncea-I.Miladinovic, Marrakesh 2010, then 0-0 11.Bc4 Qd6 ) 8...Qxe5 , intending ...Nge7 and ...0-0, or 9.Qb3!? 0-0-0 (rather than 9...Nd4?! 10.Qa4+ b5 11.Qa6 Ne7 12.0-0-0 Bxc3 13.bxc3 Ndc6 , as in K.Rakesh-C. Aravindh, Delhi rapid 2016, when

14.Qa3! 0-0 15.Qc5 is good for White ) 10.Be2 Nge7 11.0-0 Nf5 12.f4 Qa5 13.Qxf7 Rhf8 with sufficient play for the pawn.;  
**B)** After 6.Nc3!? Qxd4 7.Qb3 (or 7.Qc2 e6 8.Be3 Qd7 9.Rd1 Bd6 10.Bb5 a6 11.Ba4 Nge7 White barely has enough for the pawn, even if she won in E.Atalik-M.Yurtseven, Turkish Championship, Gebze 2016 ) 7...Qb4! . ]

**5...Bxc6**

**6.Nc3 e6** As we'll see, there is no need to try and prevent e2-e4 since Black gets fully sufficient counterplay.

[Nevertheless, 6...Nf6 is also acceptable:

**A) 7.Bg5 e6 8.Qd3** (not yet 8.e4? h6; or 8.f3 Be7 9.e4? Nxe4 ) 8...h6 9.Bh4 Be7 10.f3 Qd7 11.Bf2 0-0 12.e4 b6 13.Rd1 Bb7 14.Qc2 Qc8 15.Bc4 a6 16.0-0 b5 17.Bb3 c5 and Black equalized in M.Kletsel-J.Boey, correspondence 1978.;  
**B) 7.f3 e5!** 8.dxe5 Nd7 (after 8...Qxd1+?! 9.Kxd1 0-0-0+ 10.Kc2 Nd7 11.e6 fxe6 12.e4 Ne5 13.Be3 Be7 14.Be2 g5 15.Rad1

Black is slightly worse, V.Koziak-M. Sadilek, Prague 2011 ) 9.Bf4 g5!? (or 9...Bc5 , followed by ...Qe7 ) 10.Bg3 Bg7 11.e6 fxe6 12.e4 Ne5 13.Qb3 Qe7 14.0-0-0 0-0 was unclear in E.Ibanez-W. Arencibia Rodriguez, Badalona 1995. ]

#### 7.e4 White duly seizes the centre.

[Other moves give Black few problems:

a) 7.Bf4 Nf6 8.e3 Bb4 ( 8...Bd6 is also fine ) 9.Qb3 Nd5 10.Bg3 0-0 11.Bd3 Qg5 12.Qc2 f5 with good play for Black, R.Teichmann-M. Chigorin, Cambridge Springs 1904. ]  
[b) 7.a3 f5 8.e4 (or 8.Qb3 Bd5 ) 8...Nf6 9.Bg5 h6 10.Bxf6 Qxf6 11.exf5? 0-0-0 and White was already in difficulties, J.Vazquez Tey-E.Formanek, Foment 1995. ]

7...Bb4 Pinning the c3-knight, so the e4-pawn now requires defending. That might seem a simple matter, but Black is able to force concessions by aggressive play with his queen.

#### 8.f3

[Obviously 8.Bd3?? drops the d-pawn; ]

[while 8.Qd3?! Qh4! 9.d5 exd5 10.exd5 0-0-0 11.Qf5+ Bd7 12.Qf4 Qe7+ 13.Be3 Nf6 14.Bc4 Ng4 was good for Black in Ma.Rakic-An. Stojanovic, Serbian Women's Championship, Pancevo 2007. ]

#### 8...Qh4+!

[Chigorin played 8...f5?! three times:

**A)** and successfully because his opponents all responded 9.e5?! , when Black's hold over d5 ensures him of a good game; e.g. Ne7 10.a3 Ba5 11.Bc4 Bd5 12.Qa4+ c6 13.Bd3 Qb6 14.Bc2 ( 14.b4? Qxd4 wins for Black ) 14...Qa6 and Black stands better, H.

Pillsbury-M.Chigorin, St. Petersburg 1896.;

#### **B)** Unfortunately, 9.Bc4!

is much stronger, aiming to exploit Black's loose position in the centre. For example, 9...Qh4+? (Black should play 9...fxe4 10.0-0 exf3 11.Bxe6 Nf6 , though he still stands worse after 12.Bg5 Qd6 13.Bxf6 gxf6 14.d5 ) 10.g3 Qh3 11.Qb3 Bxc3+ 12.bxc3 Qg2 13.Rf1 fxe4 14.Bxe6 exf3 (or 14...Nf6 15.Be3! , followed by 0-0-0 ) 15.Bf7+ Kd8 16.Bg5+ Kc8 17.0-0-0 and White won in L. Lengyel-J.Flesch, Hungarian Championship, Budapest 1962. ]

**9.g3 Qf6** Having prompted White to weaken his pawn chain with g2-g3, the black queen drops back to put pressure on both f3 and d4.

[The alternative is 9...Qh5 , which leaves Black free to attack the centre with ...f7-f5. White has numerous options here, but since he answers 10...0-0-0 with 11 Be3 in virtually every case we'll assume he plays it straight away; i.e. 10.Be3 0-0-0 and now:

**A)** 11.Bc4 prevents ...f7-f5 but allows Bc5! 12.0-0 Ne7 13.b4?! Bxd4 14.Bxd4 e5 15.b5?! exd4 16.bxc6? dxc3 17.Qb3 Rd2 18.Qxb7+ Kd8 and Black was winning in K.Schlenga-A.Barthel, German League 1991.;

**B)** 11.Bd3 f5 12.0-0 fxe4 13.fxe4 Qxd1 14.Raxd1 Nf6 15.Bc4 Bxc3 16.bxc3 Nxe4 17.Bxe6+ Bd7 18.Bxd7+ Rxd7 gave Black a slight edge in the endgame, M.Feige-M. Fette, Leutersdorf 2001.;

**C)** 11.Be2 f5 12.Qb3 (or 12.0-0 Bxc3 13.bxc3 fxe4 14.fxe4 Qg6 15.Bd3 Bxe4 and a draw was soon

agreed in J.Novak-J.De Waard, correspondence 2008 ) 12...Bxc3+ 13.bxc3 fxe4 14.Qxe6+ Bd7 15.Qxe4 was J.Granda Zuniga-A. Morozевич, Amsterdam 1995, where Morozевич later preferred Nf6! 16.Qd3 (or 16.Qe5 Qf7!) 16...Rhe8 with good play; e.g. 17.Bf4 Bf5 18.Qc4 Nd5 19.Be5 Rxe5!? 20.dxe5 Ne3 21.Qc5 Nc2+ 22.Kf2 Nxa1 23.e6 Nc2 24.Qxa7 Bxe6 25.Qa8+ Kd7 26.Qa4+ Kc8 with a draw.;

**D) 11.Kf2 f5 12.Bc4 Bxc3**

13.Bxe6+ Kb8 14.bxc3 fxe4 15.f4 , as in V.Mikhalevski-K.McPhillips, Galway 2005, should be met by Qe8! ( 15...Qxd1? 16.Raxd1 Nf6 17.c4± ), intending 16.d5 (or 16.Bb3 h5) 16...Bxd5 17.Bxd5 Nf6 18.Qd4 Ng4+ 19.Ke2 Nxe3 20.Kxe3 c6 21.Qxg7 cxd5 , regaining the piece with equality.;

**E) 11.Bg2 f5**

**E1)** after 12.0-0 Nf6 13.e5 Bxc3 14.bxc3 Nd5 15.Bd2 f4 16.Qe2 Qg6 17.Qf2 fxg3 18.hxg3 h5 19.Rfe1 Rdf8 20.c4 , V.Akopian-A.Reprintsev, Russian Team Championship 1990, Black could have played h4! 21.cxd5 Bxd5 with a winning attack; e.g. 22.g4 (or 22.gxh4 Rxf3) 22...h3 23.Bh1 h2+ 24.Kf1 Qd3+ etc;

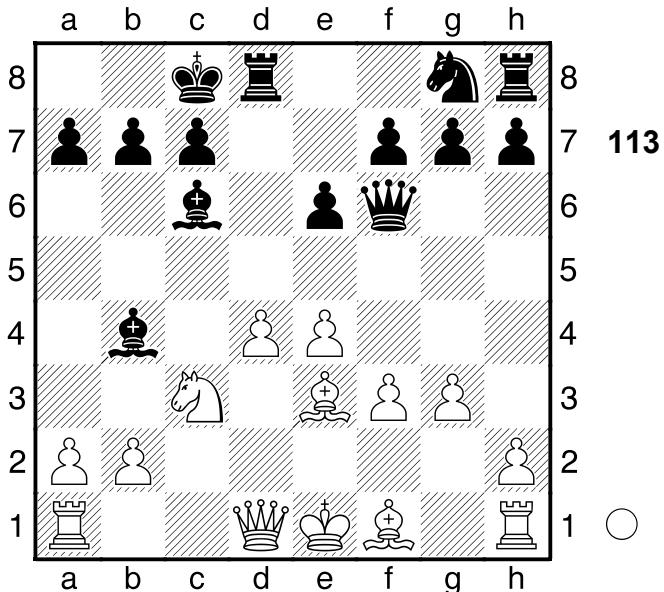
**E2)** 12.Qb3 fxe4 13.fxe4 Bxc3+ 14.bxc3 (or if 14.Qxc3 Nf6 15.Rc1 Rd7 16.Qa3 Bb5 17.Rc2 , E.Degtiarev-C.Scheerer, German Championship, Höckendorf 2004, then Kb8! is equal according to Scheerer) 14...Nf6 15.Qxe6+ Kb8 16.Rb1 Ka8 17.c4?? ( 17.Qe5 Qxe5 18.dxe5 Bxe4 is equal again )

17...Rhe8 18.Qxc6!? bxc6 19.e5 Re6 and Black won in I. Caspi-P.Chernomordik, Israeli League 2007. ]

### 10.Be3

[Most alternatives transpose to the next note after 10...0-0-0 11 Be3 etc, but 10.Bf4!? 0-0-0 11.Be5 is independent. Bl.Kovacevic-O. Orenda, Croatian Championship, Pula 1996, continued Qh6 12.Bc4 Ne7 13.Qc1 Qh3 14.a3 Qg2 15.Rf1 Bd6 16.Rf2 Qh1+ 17.Ke2 Qxc1 18.Rxc1 Bxe5 19.dxe5 , and now g5! (Bronznik) looks roughly equal. ]

### 10...0-0-0



**11.Bd3** The best square for the bishop, where it blocks the gaze of the black rook down the d-file, while leaving the e2-square free for the white knight.

[Other moves:

- 11.Bc4?! Bc5 12.e5 (not 12.Qc1? Bxd4 13.Bg5? Qxf3; or 12.Ne2?? Qxf3 and wins; but if White is forced to play e4-e5 he has usually gone wrong) 12...Qe7 13.Qd2 Bb6 14.Ne4 f6 15.Qc3 Bxe4 16.fxe4 fxe5 17.dxe5 Bxe3 18.Qxe3 Kb8 19.0-0 Nh6 is better for Black, B.

Glembek-B.Fels, correspondence 2010.]

[b) 11.Be2 Ba5 (rather than 11...Bc5?! 12.Qc1!, threatening a skewer on g5) 12.Qd2 h6 13.0-0-0 Ne7 14.h4 Bb6 15.h5 Bxd4 16.Bxd4 e5 17.Bxe5 Qxe5 18.Qf4 , A.Rombaldoni-M.Godena, Italian Championship, Milan 2015, and now Rxd1+ 19.Kxd1 (or 19.Bxd1 Qg5; or 19.Nxd1 Qc5+; or 19.Rxd1 Qxh5) 19...Rd8+ 20.Kc2 f6 looks level.]

[c) 11.Bg2 might be answered by h5!? (not 11...Bc5?! 12.Qc1! Bb6 13.a4 Qg6? , B.Emodi-G.Mester, Hajduboszormeny 1996, when 14.b4 Bxd4 15.Bxd4 Rxd4 16.Nb5 is just winning for White; similarly if 11...Ba5 12.Qd2 Qg6 , as in D. Rajkovic-I.Miladinovic, Bar 2008, then 13.Rb1 Bb6 14.b4 with the initiative) 12.0-0 (or 12.h4 Qg6 13.Kf2 Bd6 14.Ne2 f5) 12...h4 13.Qb3 hxg3 14.hxg3 Ba5 and Black has good counterplay; e.g. 15.d5 exd5 16.exd5 Qe5!? (or 16...Be8) 17.Bxa7!? Bd7 18.Ne4 Bh3 19.Bxh3+ Rxh3 20.Kg2 Rh5 21.Qa4 Nf6 and so on.]

[d) 11.Qe2 can be met by Qg6!?? (Watson) (who suggests 11...h5!?? too) 12.Bh3 (both 12.Bg2 f5 13.e5?! Ne7 , M.Tyrtania-M.Breutigam, Berlin 1996; and 12.a3 Bxc3+ 13.bxc3 f5 14.e5?! Ne7 , M.Castro Perez-A. Garcia Cano, Sant Cebria 1998, are better for Black) 12...Kb8 13.Qc4 Bxc3+ 14.bxc3 Ne7 15.Qc5 (or 15.0-0 f5 16.d5 exd5 17.Qc5 Nc8 with an unclear position) 15...Rhe8 16.Qg5 Qxg5 17.Bxg5 , E.Bayer-R. Baumhus, German League 1989, and now Bronznik gives h6 18.Bd2 f5 19.Bg2 Nc8 , considering that "Black has sufficient counterchances".]

**11...Ba5 QUESTION:** Why this strange

retreat? The bishop is not even attacked!

ANSWER: White has a very strong centre which he plans to consolidate by castling, putting his queen on e2 or c2, and centralizing his rooks. Black therefore hurries to target the d4-pawn which is currently defended only by the e3-bishop. The drawback to this plan is that White may be able simply to give the d-pawn away, as we'll see in the next note.

[Instead, 11...Ne7 might be worth investigating. For example, 12.Qe2 (note that 12.0-0?! allows Rxd4! 13.Bxd4 Qxd4+ 14.Kh1 Rd8 15.Be2 Qe3 16.Qe1 Rd2 with good play for the exchange; but 12.Rf1! g5 13.Qd2 Rhg8 14.0-0-0 may offer White something) 12...Ba5 13.Rf1 (threatening e4-e5) g5 14.f4 gxf4 15.Rxf4 Qg7 16.Qh5?! (16.0-0-0 keeps it level) 16...f5! 17.0-0-0 e5 18.dxe5 Qxe5 19.Rxf5 Nxf5 20.Bf4 Qc5 21.Qxf5+ Qxf5 22.exf5 Bf3 23.Rd2 Bg4 and Black was better in Ka.Hansen-Bl.Kovacevic, Oberwart 2000.]

**12.0-0 Bb6 13.e5?** This is exactly what Black wants to see. White solves the "problem" of his d-pawn with tempo and frees the e4-square for his pieces – at the serious cost of fixing his own centre. Surprisingly, IM Chetverik played this move twice;

[whereas he should have gone for 13.Ne2! e5 14.Qc1 (better than 14.Qd2?! Ne7 15.d5 Qh6 16.f4 , as in A.Shneider-M.Breutigam, Berlin 1992, when f5! creates a mess; though 14.a4! may be even stronger) 14...Ne7 15.b4!? (or 15.a4 again; not 15.d5?! Bd7 16.Kg2 Kb8 17.a4 Bxe3 18.Qxe3 c6 with equal chances, Ja.Gustafsson-H.Reefschiäger, Hamburg 1995) 15...exd4 (or

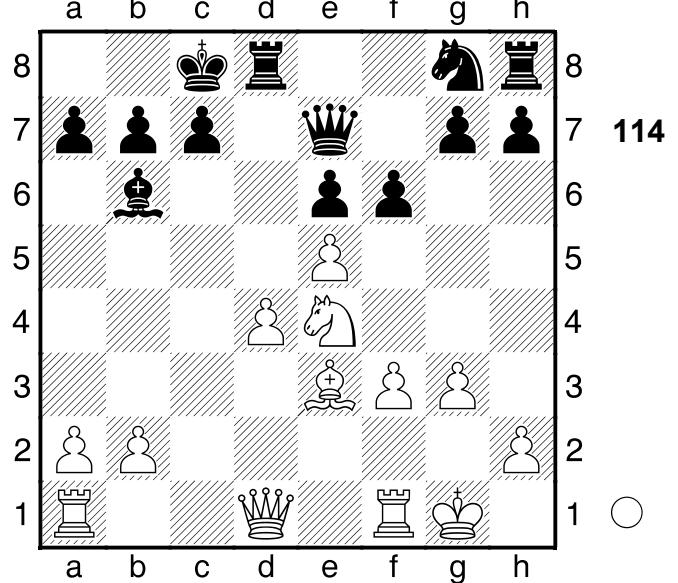
15...Be8 16.a4 Nc6 17.Bg5 Nxd4  
 18.Kg2 Nb3 19.Bxf6 Nxc1 20.Bxd8  
 Nxd3 21.Be7 and Black only has a pawn for the exchange, G.Högerl-G.  
 Keller, correspondence 2006 ) 16.Bg5  
 Qe5 17.a4 a5 18.Qd2 axb4? 19.a5  
 Ba7 20.a6 Kd7 21.f4 Qd6 22.f5 f6  
 23.Bf4 Qc5 24.Rfc1 Qb6 25.Rc4  
 with a decisive attack for White in G.  
 Högerl-W.Wittal, correspondence  
 2005. ]

**13...Qe7 14.Be4 Bxe4 15.Nxe4**  
 [If 15.fxe4 then f6! 16.Na4 fxe5  
 17.Nxb6+ axb6 18.Qa4 Kb8 19.dxe5  
 Nh6 with advantage to Black, Mi.  
 Richter-A.Feicht, Weilburg 1996. ]

**15...f6?!**

[Pushing two squares was better here:  
 15...f5! 16.exf6 ( 16.Nc3 can be met by f4!, a positional sacrifice to free the f5-square for the knight; e.g.  
 17.gxf4 Nh6 18.Qd3 Nf5 19.Ne2 Rd7 , doubling the rooks on the d-file, after which a later ...c7-c5 could be decisive ) 16...Nxf6 17.Re1 ( 17.Nxf6 gxf6 leaves Black with the superior minor piece and pressure against d4 ) 17...e5 18.Nxf6 Qxf6 19.d5 Bxe3+ 20.Rxe3 Qb6 21.Qb3 Rxd5 22.Qxb6 axb6 23.Rae1 Rd2 24.R1e2 Rxe2 25.Rxe2 Re8 26.f4 Kd7 27.fxe5 Ke6 28.Kf2 Ra8 29.a3 Ra5 30.Kf3 Rxe5 and Black was again a pawn up in M.Chetverik-K.Pinkas, Gyongyos 1995. It is not obvious what White's improvement might have been on this game. ]

(Diagram 114)



**16.f4?** Now Black gets the f5-square without even having to sacrifice.

[ 16.Qb3 was correct, defending the bishop, when the game is roughly equal. ]

**16...Nh6 17.Rc1 Kb8** A reflex move which is a necessity at some point.

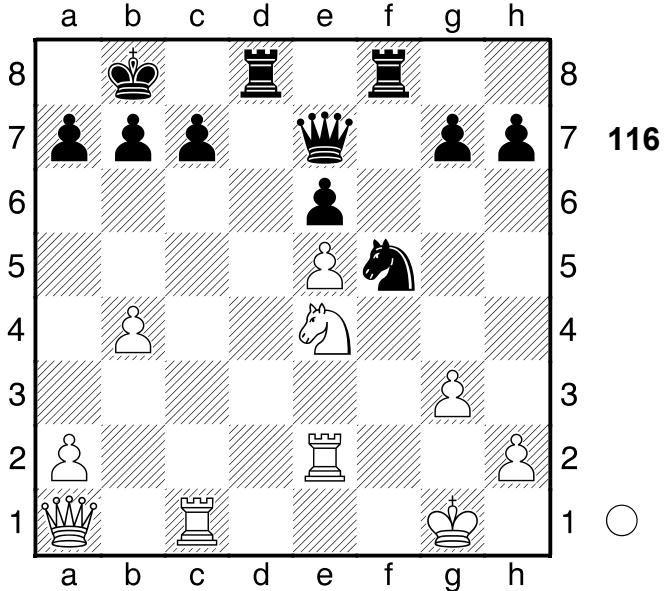
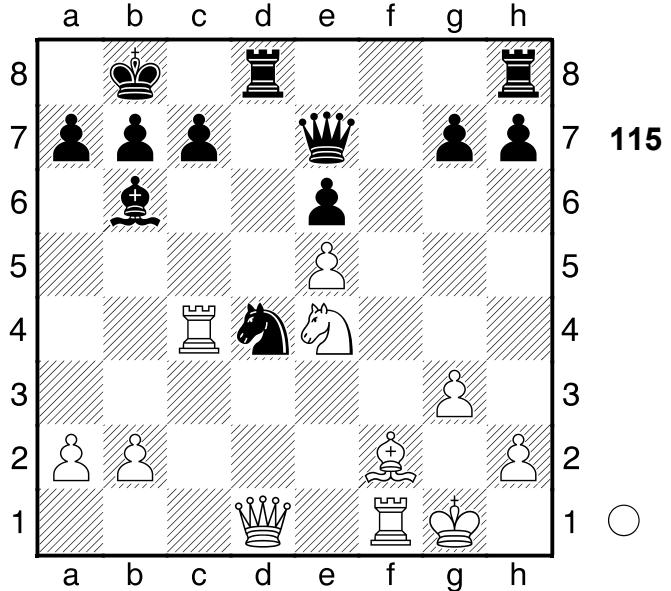
[ If immediately 17...Nf5 18.Bf2 fxe5 19.fxe5 Nxd4 , White has 20.Nd6+! Kb8 21.Bxd4 Bxd4+ 22.Qxd4 cxd6 23.exd6 Rxd6 , when Black has won the d4-pawn but not under the best circumstances. After 24.Qe5 Rhd8 25.a4 Ka8 26.b4 Qd7 27.b5 g6 28.Rfe1 , I do not see how he can make any progress. ]

**18.Rc4?** This fails to secure the d-pawn.  
 [ 18.exf6 gxf6 19.Nc5 was a better defence. ]

**18...Nf5 19.Bf2 fxe5 20.fxe5 Nxd4!**

[in view of the various pins after 20...Nxd4 21.Rxd4 (or 21.Bxd4 Rxd4 22.Rxd4 Qb4 ) 21...Bxd4 22.Bxd4 Qb4 . ]

(Diagram 115)



Winning a pawn; **21.b4?!** This serves no purpose and just leaves the pawn vulnerable on b4. **21...Nf5**

[Why not 21...Nc6 , when either b4 or e5 falls as well? ]

**22.Qa1 Bxf2+ 23.Rxf2 Ne3 24.Rc1**

**Rhf8**

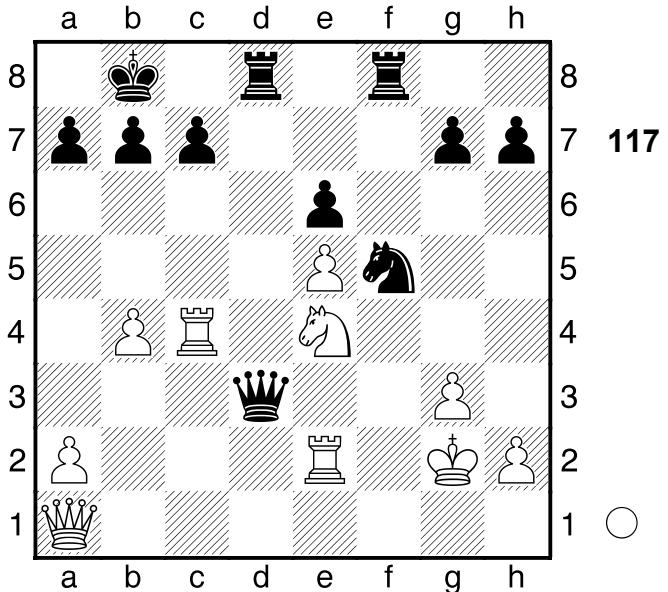
[Taking the b-pawn allows White more chances: 24...Qxb4 25.Nc5! Qa5 26.Qb1 b6 27.Rf3 and the game still continues; for example, Qd2 28.Na6+ Kb7 29.Qe4+ Kxa6 30.Qa4+ Qa5 31.Qxa5+ Kxa5 32.Rxe3 c5 33.Ra3+ Kb5 34.Rxa7 and White wins a pawn back with active rooks. ]

**25.Re2 Nf5**

(Diagram 116)

**26.Rc4 Qd7 27.Kg2?** A blunder in a losing position. **27...Qd3**

[or if 27...Qd3 28.Rcc2 then Ne3+ ends the game. ]



Forking the two rooks;  
0-1

D07

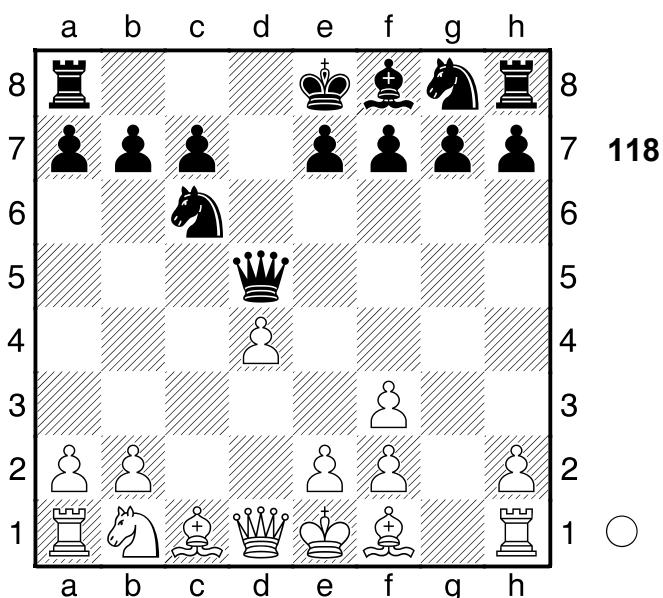
□ **Gaprindashvili,N**  
 ■ **Al Modiahki,M**  
 48: Groningen  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

1999

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nf3 Bg4 4.cxd5**

**Bxf3 5.gxf3** This time White goes for the bishop pair. From the other side, Black is quite happy to give up his bishops for knights, as that's what the Chigorin is all about anyway.

**5...Qxd5**



**6.e3 e5** In the spirit of the Chigorin Defence Black applies further pressure to the d4-pawn, while at the same time opening the a3-f8 diagonal for his bishop.

[Surprisingly, Chigorin himself played 6...e6 7.Nc3

**A)** 7...Bb4 here. Two of his games continued 8.Bd2 Qd7 (instead, 8...Bxc3 9.bxc3 Nge7 10.Rg1 Qh5 11.Qb3 Nd8 12.Qb5+ Qxb5 13.Bxb5+ c6 14.Bd3 Ng6 15.f4 gave White an excellent ending, though he later lost in Em.Lasker-M. Chigorin, Hastings 1895 ) 9.Qa4

(here 9.Rg1! g6 10.Ne4 looks better, as in L.Qendro-G. Oppici, Condino 2010 ) 9...Nge7 10.Bb5 a6 11.a3 Bxc3 12.Bxc3 0-0 13.Be2 Nd5 14.Bd2 Rad8 15.Rc1?? e5! 16.dxe5 Nf4 17.Rc2 Nxe2 18.Kxe2 Qd3+ 19.Kd1 Nd4 and Black was winning, though he only managed to draw in W.Steinitz-M.Chigorin, London 1899.;

**B)** In recent years, Black has generally opted for 7...Qh5!?

**B1)** aiming for an endgame after 8.f4 Qxd1+ 9.Kxd1 Nf6 , when 10.Bg2 0-0-0 11.Ke2 Ne7 , followed by ...h7-h6 and ...g7-g5, seems okay for Black; e.g. 12.Bd2 h6 13.Nb5?! (but 13.h4 h5 leaves White with a weak h-pawn ) 13...Kb8 14.Na3 g5 15.fxg5 hxg5 16.Rag1 Nf5 17.Nc4 Be7 18.Bf3 Nd5 19.Ne5 Rh7 and Black was more than okay in E.Bareev-G. Kamsky, Tilburg 1991.;

**B2)** However, it's hard to have confidence in Black's passive position if White keeps the queens on the board; e.g. 8.Bd2 0-0-0 9.Rc1 Nf6 10.Be2 Nd5 11.f4 Qg6 12.Kf1 Kb8 13.Rg1 Qh6 14.Rg2 Be7 15.Bb5 Ncb4 16.a3 a6 17.Be2 Nc6 18.Qb3 and White had a big advantage in Z.Sturua-B.Chatalbashev, European Championship, Ohrid 2001. ]

[Black has tried to improve this by playing 6...0-0-0 7.Nc3 Qh5 first.

**A)** Then 8.f4 Qxd1+ 9.Kxd1 e6 10.Bg2 Nce7 11.Ke2 Nf6 reaches the queenless 6...e6 lines above; ( 11...-- );

**B)** while 8.Bd2 Nf6 9.f4 (not 9.Rc1? e5!; White should therefore

prefer 9.Be2 , keeping the queens on and preventing ...e7-e5, with at least a slight advantage since Black again has no special counterplay )  
9...Qxd1+ 10.Rxd1 e6 11.Bg2 Ne7 12.Ne4 Nxe4 13.Bxe4 g6 14.Rc1 Nd5 also led to a draw in L. M.Christiansen-N.Short, Monte Carlo (blindfold rapid) 1993. ]

## 7.Nc3 Bb4 8.Bd2

[White occasionally plays 8.a3!? Bxc3+ 9.bxc3 , which allows a quick Rb1 without dropping the a-pawn, while the c1-bishop can sometimes emerge at a3. For example, Nge7 (all other standard moves have been tried as well) 10.Rb1 (after 10.c4 Qd6 11.d5 Nb8 12.Bb2 Nd7 13.h4 0-0 14.Bd3 c6 15.dxc6 Qxc6 16.Be4 Qe6 , Black had good counterplay in V.Moskalenko-A. Morozевич, 7th matchgame, Moscow 1994 ) 10...b6 11.Rb5 Qd6 12.f4?! (Morozевич gives 12.dxe5! Nxe5 13.Qxd6 cxd6 14.f4 as good for White, though Black doesn't stand too badly after Nd7 with the knight coming to c5 ) 12...exf4 13.e4 was M.Grabarczyk-M.Kaminski, Polis Championship, Brzeg Dolny 1996, and here Black should play Nd8! , intending ...c7-c6 and ...Ne6 with a good game (Bronznik). ]

**8...Bxc3 9.bxc3** The critical position for this chapter. Notice that it's almost identical to 3 cxd5 Qxd5 4 e3 e5 5 Nc3 Bb4 6 Bd2 Bxc3 7 bxc3 in Chapter One (Games 4-9), except that Black has given up the c8-bishop as well, leaving himself with two knights versus two bishops.

At first sight, White appears to stand very well with the bishops, a strong centre, and half-open b- and g-files for her rooks. On the downside, she is

slightly behind in development and her pawn structure is not the best, with doubled f-pawns and twin isolated rook's pawns.

**9...Nf6** Black concentrates on rapid development, allowing c3-c4 and d4-d5, and hopes that the resulting closed position will favour his knights. Despite 7...Nf6 being the main move in Chapter One, the immediate knight deployment is less common in this position, though both Rabiega and Short have tried it, and Morozevich gives it an exclamation mark in his book.

[More often Black retreats the queen with 9...Qd6 , as examined in 49-52; ] [while the related idea 9...Qd7?! is seen in Games 53-54. ]

[The alternative knight move 9...Nge7 takes the square away from its colleague on c6, so that 10.c4 Qd6 11.d5 Nb8 reaches a identical position to 9...Nf6 10 c4 Qd6 11 d5 Ne7 below but with a black knight on b8 rather than f6, which must be in White's favour. For example, 12.Rb1 b6 13.Bb4 c5

**A)** rather than 14.dxc6 Qxc6 15.Bd3 Qe6 16.c5 Nbc6 17.cxb6 Nxb4 18.Rxb4 axb6 19.Qb3 and ½-½ in A.Grischuk-Ma.Carlsen, Wijk aan Zee 2011; (though even here 19.Bb5+ Kf8 20.Ra4

looks to give White an edge );

**B)** 14.Bc3 Nd7 15.Rg1 Rg8?!

(Black should probably try 15...0-0 with ideas of ...f7-f5, ...Qe7 and ... Nc8-d6 ) 16.Bh3 f5 17.Qc2 g6 18.Ke2 0-0-0?! 19.a4 a5 20.Qb2 Kc7 21.e4 Rdf8 22.f4! and Black's position collapsed in S.Anino-M.Di Muro, Mar del Plata 2014. ]

[Finally, the old main line with 9...exd4 10.cxd4 is now regarded as unnecessarily committal:

**A) 10...Nf6**

**A1)** 11.Be2 0-0 12.Rb1  
( 12.Qb3! , as in S.Webb-N.  
Povah, British Championship,  
Morecambe 1975 ) 12...Qxa2  
13.Rxb7?! (but White has  
numerous earlier improvements,  
such as 13.Qc1 , threatening  
Bc4 ) 13...Rab8 14.Rb5 Rxb5  
15.Bxb5 Rb8 16.Bd3  
was S.Tarrasch-E.Schiffers,  
Nuremberg 1896, where Nb4  
17.Bxb4 Rxb4 18.0-0 Qd5  
would have been okay for Black;  
**A2)** or 11.Bg2! 0-0 12.0-0 Rad8  
13.Qc2 Rfe8 14.Rab1 Rd6  
15.Rfc1 and White was clearly  
better in V.Golod-D.Zoler,  
Givatayim (rapid) 2005.;

**B)** 10...Nge7 can also be met by  
11.Bg2! , intending 0-0-0 (or  
11...Ng6 12.h4 0-0-0 13.Qb3  
, I.Zaja-M.Muse, Croatian League  
2004; while after 11...0-0 12.0-0 f5  
13.f4 Qe6 14.Rb1 Qxa2 15.Rxb7  
Rab8 16.Rxc7 White was already  
winning in I.Khairullin-D.Howell,  
Kirishi 2004 ) 12.0-0 Rd6 13.Kh1  
(not 13.f4? Rg6 ) 13...Qh5 (or  
13...Rg6 14.Rg1 ) 14.f4 and White  
has a permanent advantage,  
whether Black exchanges queens  
or plays Qh4 15.Qf3 , as in R.  
Gobauer-P.Reuter, German League  
1993. ]

**10.Rg1** Seeing as Black is intending to  
castle short anyway, this rook move is  
likely not the best at this juncture.

[White has several other possibilities  
to choose from:

a) 10.Be2 0-0 11.Qb3 Qd7 12.Qxb7  
Rab8 13.Qa6 Rb6 14.Qc4 Rfb8  
15.Bd1 was N.Legky-L.Dubois, Paris  
1999, and now e4! 16.fxe4 (or 16.f4  
Rb1 ) 16...Nxe4 17.Qd3 (or 17.Bc1

Qh3 ) 17...Re8 would give Black  
enough for the pawn, since the white  
king lacks a safe home. ]

[b) 10.Bg2 0-0 11.0-0 Rad8?!

(Dautov suggests 11...Qe6 12.Qb3  
, when White is only slightly better )  
12.Qb3 Na5 13.Qxd5 Nxd5 14.Rfc1  
Nc4 15.Be1 Ndb6 16.Bf1 f6  
17.Rab1 Rf7 18.Rb4 and Black was  
unable to maintain his blockade in T.  
Koskela-E.Gibney, correspondence  
2010. ]

[c) 10.c4 is the most direct move,  
which I believe gives White an edge:  
Qd6 11.d5 Ne7 12.Rb1 b6 13.Bb4

**A)** 13...c5 14.Bc3 is much the  
same; (whereas 14.dxc6 Qxd1+  
15.Rxd1 Nxc6 16.Ba3 Rd8  
17.Bd6?! Nd4! was objectively  
equal in A.Giri-N.Short, Amsterdam  
2010 );

**B)** 13...Qd7 14.Bc3!? (instead of  
14.h4 0-0 15.Bh3 Qd8 16.d6  
cxd6 17.Bxd6 e4 18.Be5 Qxd1+  
19.Rxd1 exf3 20.Bxf6 gxf6  
21.Rg1+ Kh8 22.Rg3 , A.Saidy-M.  
Al Modiahki, Las Vegas 2001, when  
Rfd8 should be defensible for  
Black ) 14...Qd6 15.Qa4+

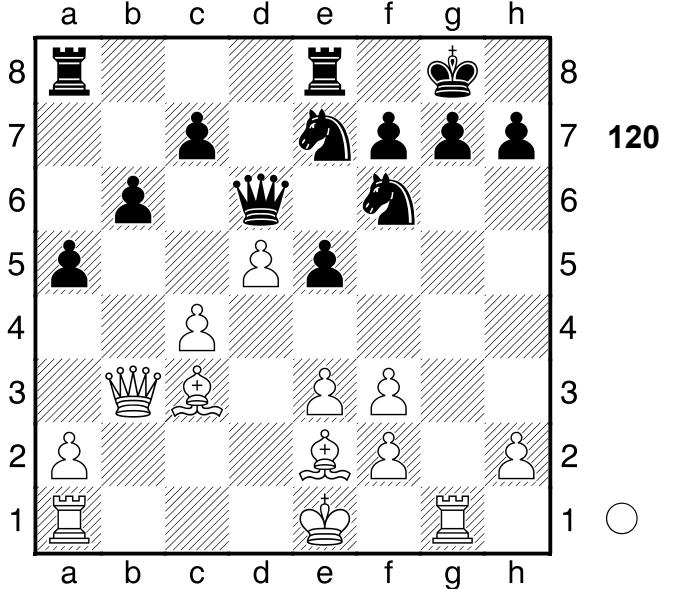
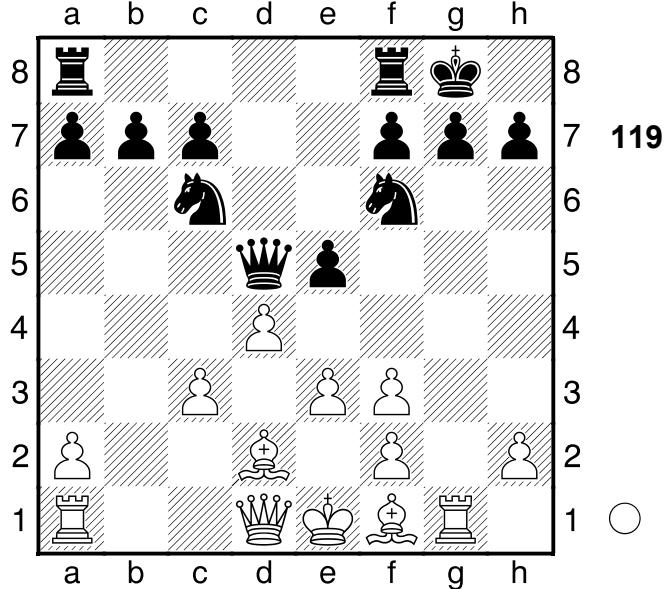
**B1)** if 15...Qd7 16.Qc2 Qd6  
17.Bb4 Qd7 then 18.Qb2 (or  
18.Rg1 0-0 19.Bh3! );

**B2)** 15...Nd7 16.Bb4 c5 17.Bc3  
and White has established a  
strong passed pawn on d5, while  
the activity of the black knights is  
limited. We saw a similar position  
in the 9...Nge7 line above. ]

**10...0-0**

[There is no need to clarify the  
situation in the centre with 10...exd4  
11.cxd4 , which is much the same as  
on the previous move. ]

(Diagram 119)



**11.c4** White decides to push her pawns after all.

[Not 11.e4?! , which creates a hole on e4 for the black knight after Qd6 12.d5 Ne7 , followed by ...Ng6. ]

**11...Qd6 12.d5 Ne7 13.Qb3**

Attacking the b7-pawn and preparing Bb4;

[but since Black can ignore the first threat and prevent the second, 13.Rb1 looks stronger (as in the 10 c4 line); e.g. b6 14.Bb4 Qd8 (or 14...Qd7 15.Bh3! again ) 15.Bd3 and White may still have a little something. ]

**13...a5 14.Bc3**

[Not 14.Qxb7?? Rfb8 and the queen is trapped. ]

**14...Rfe8 15.Be2 b6**

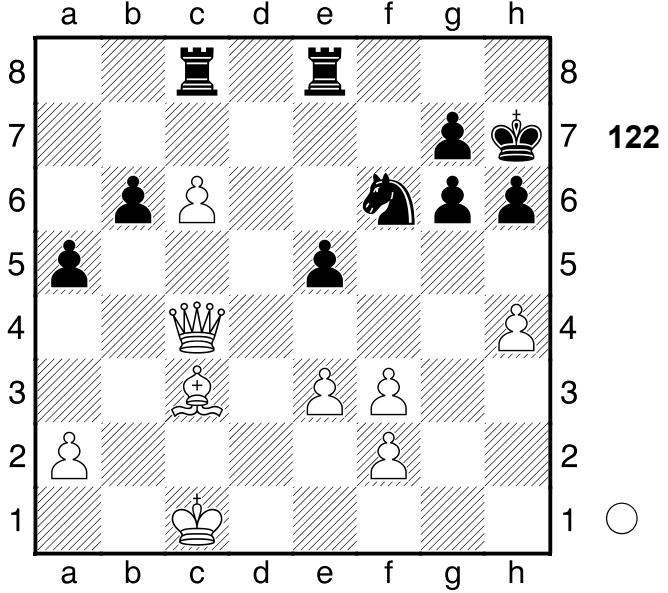
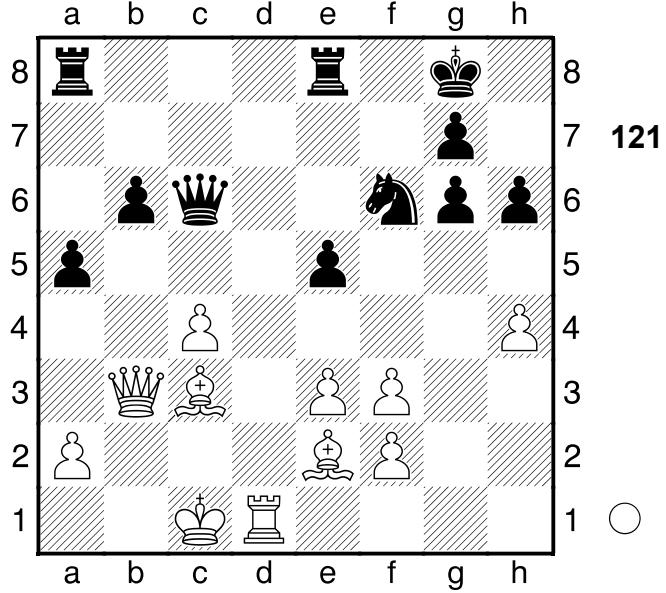
(Diagram 120)

**16.0-0-0 Ng6** Black has a sound position. The fixed central pawn structure renders White's bishop pair ineffective, while the two knights are well placed to defend the black king from an attack on the g-file. The only issue is in finding winning chances, which the Qatari grandmaster attempts to generate by opening the queenside with ...c7-c6.

**17.Rg5 c6 18.h4 h6 19.dxc6 Qxc6**

**20.Rxg6!?** Rather than retreat her rook, the former women's world champion resorts to an imaginative exchange sacrifice. **20...fxg6**

(Diagram 121)



**21.Rd6 Qxd6!?** Black responds in kind.

[He could keep the material by retreating the queen, but after 21...Qc8 22.Rxb6 the two bishops and passed c-pawn, together with the weak black pawns on e5 and a5, give White enough compensation for the exchange; e.g. Qh3 23.c5+ Kh8 24.Qf7 Qxh4 25.Rb7 Rg8 26.Bxe5 Rad8 27.Qxg6 Qxf2 28.Qxh6+! gxh6 29.Bxf6+ Rg7 30.Bxg7+ Kh7 31.Bd4+ Kg6 32.Kd2 and the engine claims “0 00”-level equality.]

**22.c5+ Qe6 23.Bc4 Qxc4 24.Qxc4+**

**Kh7 25.c6** The unbalanced material – queen and bishop vs. two rooks and knight – makes this position extremely difficult to play. The one factor in Black’s favour is that the white king is more exposed.

**25...Rac8**

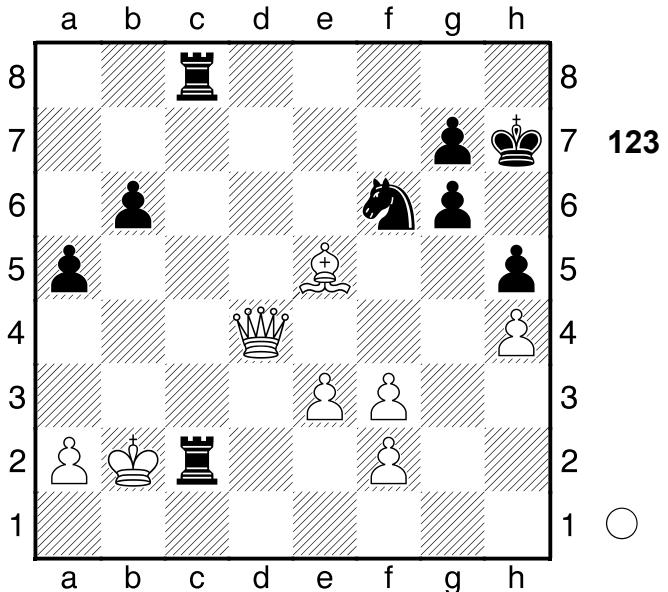
(Diagram 122)

**26.Kb2**

[It was safer to play 26.f4! b5 (not 26...exf4? 27.Bxf6 gxf6 28.Qf7+) 27.Qxb5 Re6 28.Bxe5 Rxc6+ 29.Kd1 Ng4 30.Qb7 Nxe5 31.fxe5 and with her new passed pawn, White is not worse.]

**26...Rc7 27.Qb5 Rec8 28.Bxe5 Rxc6**

**29.Qd3 h5 30.Qd4 Rc2+ 31.Kb3 R2c6?!**



**31.Kb3 R2c6?!**

[Putting the other rook here with 31...R8c6 was stronger, and if 32.Bxf6? then R2c4! wins, which is

perhaps worth looking at: 33.Qe5 (if 33.Qxc4 Rxc4 34.Kxc4 gxf6 , Black has potential passed pawns on both sides of the board; e.g. 35.a4 g5 36.Kd3 gxh4 37.Ke2 Kg6 38.Kf1 h3 39.Kg1 Kf5 40.Kh2 Ke5 41.Kxh3 b5 42.axb5 a4 and wins as the black king can now stop the white b-pawn ) 33...Rb4+ 34.Ka3 Rxf6 (the white king is caught in a trap and Black will find a way to give check on the sixth rank) 35.f4 Rf5 36.Qd6 Rc5 37.Qd3 b5 38.Qd2 Rb1 (threatening 38...Rc3+ etc) 39.Qxa5 Rc6 , intending ...Rd6-d3+ and wins. ]

**32.a4 Ne8 33.f4 Nf6 34.Qd3 Ng4**

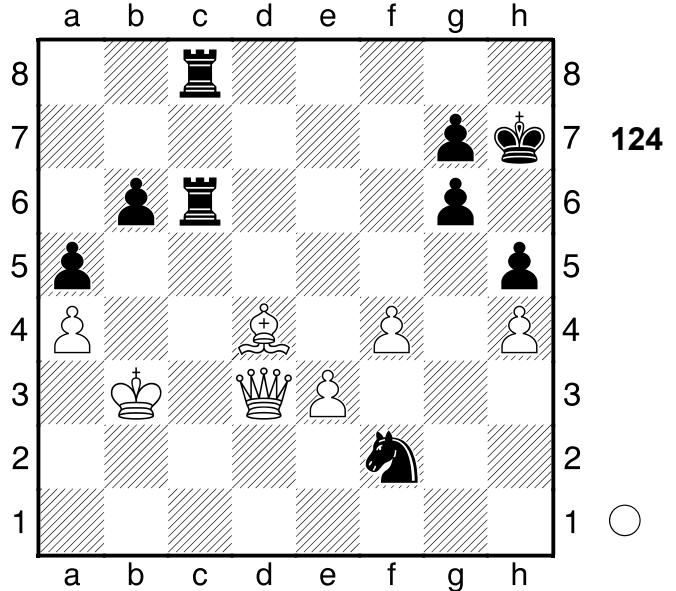
**35.Bd4?!**

[It was better to leave the d4-square for the queen: 35.Bb2 Nxf2 36.Qd4 R8c7 37.f5 Ng4 38.Qe4 Nh6 39.fxg6+ Rxg6 40.Bd4 and with the black king exposed, requiring piece protection, White should hold the draw. ]

[Liquidating with 35.f3!? Nxe5 36.fxe5 Rc3+ 37.Qxc3 Rxc3+ 38.Kxc3 was also possible, though it would necessitate precise defence: g5 39.e6 Kg8 40.Kd2 gxh4 41.Ke2 h3 (or 41...Kf8 42.f4 Ke7 43.f5) 42.Kf2 Kf8 43.f4 Ke7 44.e4! (not now 44.f5? g5!) 44...Kxe6 45.Kg3 Kd7 46.Kxh3 b5 47.axb5 a4 48.e5 a3 49.b6 a2 50.e6+ Kxe6 51.b7 a1Q 52.b8Q and the queen ending is drawn, according to the tablebases. The remainder of the game appears to have been played in extreme time trouble as the players swap numerous mistakes and the assessment swings back and forth. An engine will point these all out if you want to look for yourself. ]

**35...Nxf2**

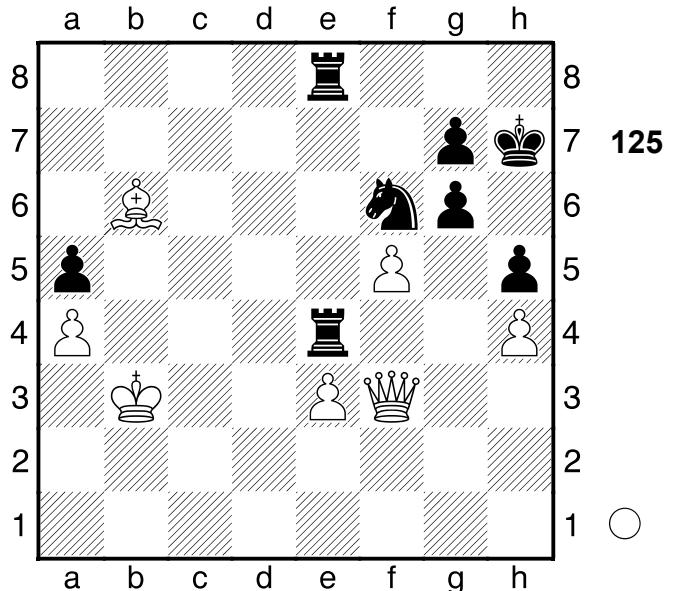
(Diagram 124)



**36.Qb1 Re6? 37.f5** White realizes she has to open up the black king, but then declines to do so until too late.

**37...Re4? 38.Qf1?! Ng4 39.Qf3? Rce8 40.Bxb6?? Nf6??**

[Simply 40...Rxe3+ 41.Bxe3 Rxe3+ 42.Qxe3 Nxe3 is winning for Black. ]

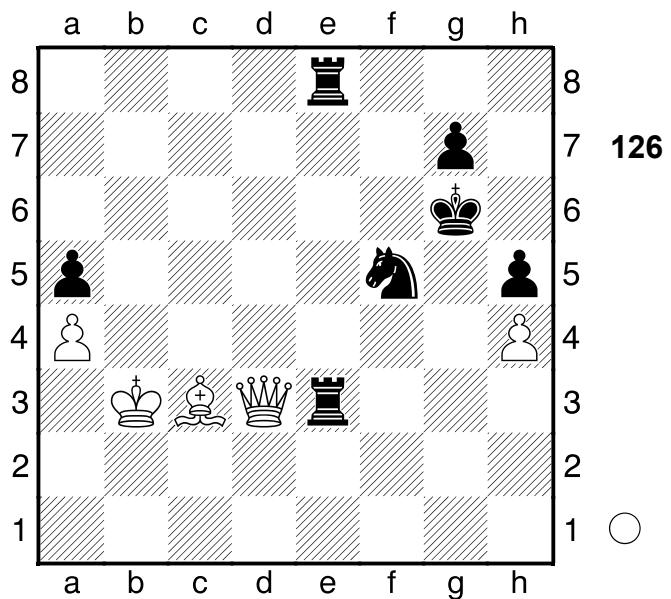


**41.Bd4? Ng4? 42.Qf1?? Nxe3**

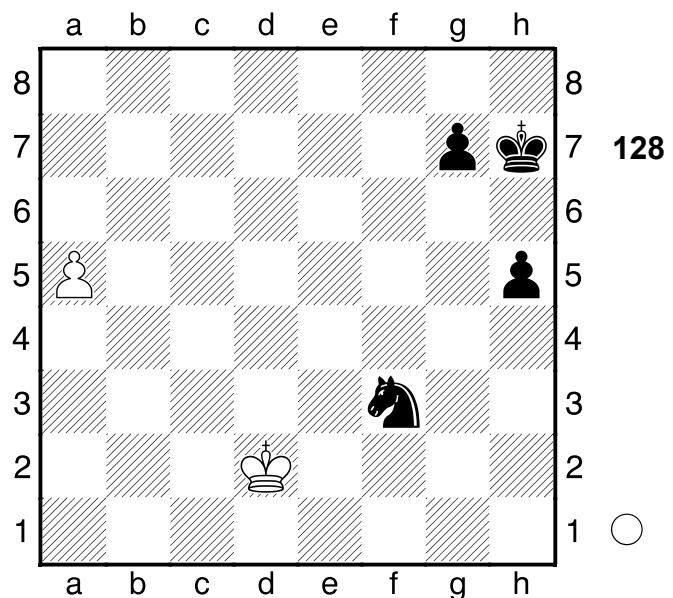
**43.fxg6+ Kxg6 44.Qd3? Nf5**

Now there's no way back for White and it's just a matter of Black organizing his rooks.

**45.Bc3 Re3**



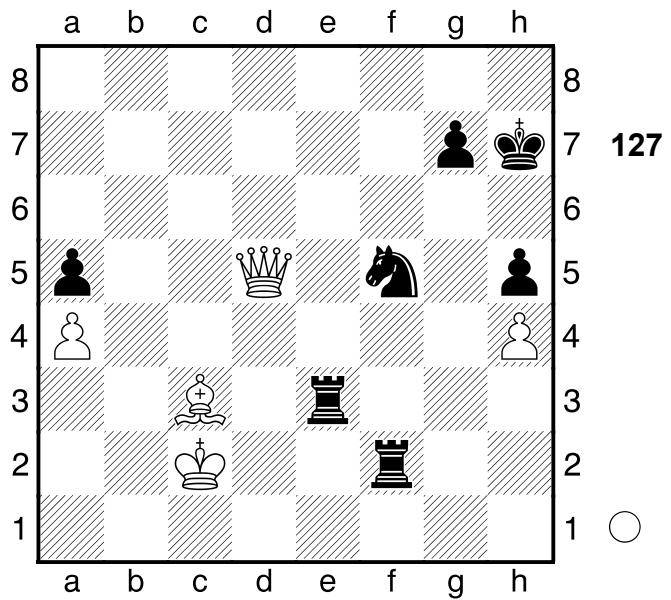
126



128

0-1

**46.Qa6+ R8e6 47.Qc4 R6e4 48.Qc6+**  
**Kh7 49.Qd5 Rf4 50.Kc2 Rf2+**



127

**51.Bd2 Ree2 52.Qxa5 Rxd2+**  
**53.Qxd2 Rxd2+ 54.Kxd2 Nxh4 55.a5**  
**Nf3+**

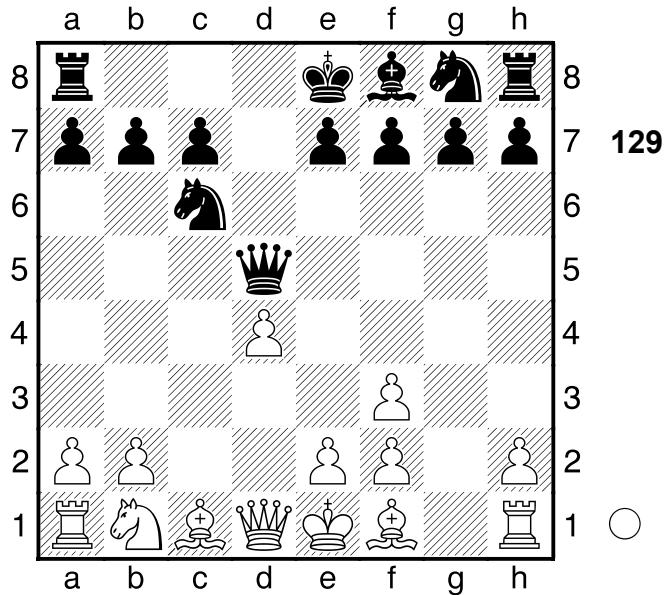
(Diagram 128)

**Nester,I**  
**Martinovic,Sa**  
 49: Bad Gleichenberg  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

**D07**

2014

**1.Nf3 d5 2.d4 Nc6 3.c4 Bg4 4.cxd5  
Bxf3 5.gxf3 Qxd5**



**6.e3 e5 7.Nc3 Bb4 8.Bd2 Bxc3  
9.bxc3 Qd6** QUESTION: Why is the queen retreating again? It is not even under attack.

ANSWER: Actually, this move has become the main line in the 5 gxf3 variation. It is rather strange: the queen retreats without being attacked, and d6 does not seem like a better square than d5, especially as it releases the slight pressure on the a2- and f3-pawns. The point is to prevent White from quickly establishing a strong centre after either c3-c4 and e3-e4, both of which would now drop the d4-pawn.

**10.Qb3**

[The most common move here is 10.Rb1 (for which see Games 50-52), but the text is no less critical.]  
 [Numerous other continuations have

been tried as well, such as:

- a) 10.Qb1 0-0-0 ( 10...Nge7 11.Qxb7 transposes to the main game ) 11.f4!? exf4 12.Qf5+ Kb8 13.Qxf4 Qxf4 14.exf4 doesn't give White much, as his two bishops are offset by his wrecked structure, G. Kasparov-N.Short, St. Louis (blitz) 2015. ]
- b) 10.Be2 Nge7 11.0-0 0-0 (safer than 11...0-0-0 12.Kh1 g5 13.Rg1 Rdg8 14.Qb3 , which was good for White in O.Panno-A.Planinc, Mar del Plata 1971 ) 12.Rb1 b6 13.Kh1 Rad8 and Black is solid enough, J.Arizmendi Martinez-O. Perez Mitjans, Linares (rapid) 2013. ]
- c) 10.Bg2 Nge7 11.f4!? exf4 12.e4 0-0 13.e5 Qg6 14.0-0 Nf5 15.Bxf4 Nh4 16.Bg3 Nxg2 17.Kxg2 Rad8 18.Qb1 f5 19.exf6 Qxf6 gave Black good counterplay in V.Moskalenko-A.Morozevich, Moscow (5th matchgame) 1994. ]

- d) 10.f4 exf4 11.e4 Nge7 12.Qf3 (for 12.Bg2 see 10 Bg2 ) 12...Ng6 and it's unclear whether White really has enough for the pawn; e.g. 13.h4 h5

**A)** 14.e5 Qe6 15.Bh3?! runs into Nxh4!, D.Riegler-T.Schlager, Baden 2002, intending 16.Qxf4 (or 16.Qe4 f5) 16...Qxh3! etc;

**B)** 14.Rb1 0-0-0 15.Qe2 Rhe8 16.Bg2 Kb8 17.Kf1? Nce5! 18.Qb5? b6 19.Be1 f3 20.Bh3 Nf4 21.dxe5 Qg6 22.Rg1 Qxe4 and Black was winning in L. Voloshin-T.Vojta, Czech League 2011. ]

**10...Nge7**

[Instead:

- a) 10...0-0-0

**A)** 11.Rb1 b6 is covered in the notes to the next game.;

**B)** The immediate 11.Qxf7

is also possible, after which Nh6 12.Qb3 exd4 13.cxd4 Kb8 14.Rb1 b6 15.Bh3? (but 15.Be2 is much better) 15...Rhf8 16.f4? Rxf4 17.exf4? Nxd4 18.Qg3? Qc6 19.Bg2 Re8+ 20.Be3 Qc3+ 0-1 D.Jacimovic-I.Miladinovic, Kavala 1996, was a disaster for White;

**C)** and there is also 11.Be2 f5 12.0-0 Nge7 13.Rfb1 b6 14.a4 , when “White’s initiative is very unpleasant” (Morozevich). ]

[b) 10...b6 is not entirely satisfactory either:

**A)** 11.d5

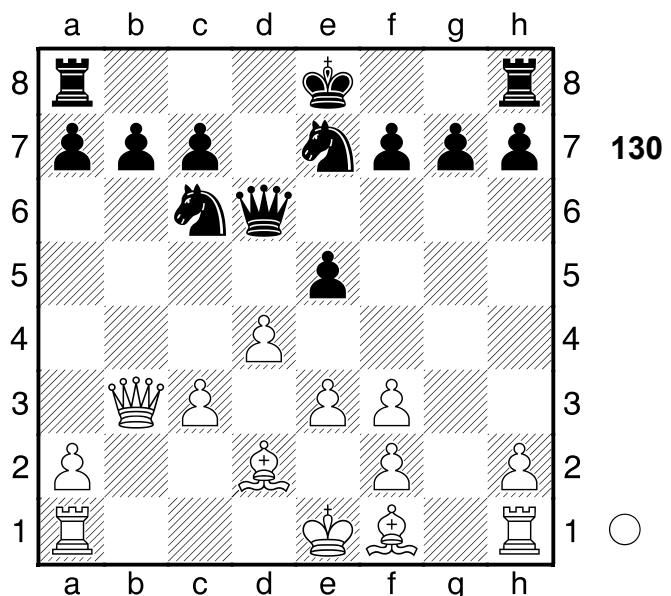
**A1)** White’s plan is revealed after 11...Nb8 12.Bb5+ Kf8 (or 12...Nd7 13.c4 with Bb4 to follow) 13.c4 Nd7 14.Bxd7! Qxd7 15.Rg1 Ne7 16.Ke2 , when Black has serious problems finding a safe place for his king as he dare not weaken his dark squares; e.g. g6 17.Qc3 f6 18.f4 Qd6 19.fxe5 Qxe5 20.Qxe5 fxe5 21.Bc3 wins a pawn.;

**A2)** 11...Na5 12.Qa4+ Kf8 13.c4 Nb7 14.Bc3 (better than 14.Bb4 Nc5 15.Qc2 Nf6 16.Bc3 g6 17.h4 Kg7 18.Rd1 Rhe8 19.Be2 h6 , when Black doesn’t stand too badly, E.Zude-I.Zuyev, Hanau 2008) 14...Nc5 15.Qc2 Ne7 16.h4 and Morozevich considered this position to be “rather dangerous for Black” in view of the misplaced king.;

**B)** Instead 11.Bc4 can be met by Nh6 , and if 12.e4 then exd4 13.Bxh6 Qxh6 14.Bxf7+ Ke7 , when Black’s king is “surprisingly safe” – Scheerer;

**C)** but 11.Rg1 g6 12.Bc4

improves this for White (and 12.dxe5!? Qxe5 13.f4 Qf6 14.0-0-0 Nge7 15.c4 0-0 16.Bc3 Qh4 17.Qb2 Rad8 18.Bg2 looks good too, Tom.Jensen-B.J. Jorgensen, correspondence 2016) ; e.g. 12...Qd7 13.Qa4 Nge7 14.f4 e4 15.Bb3 with an edge, G. Säuberli-M.Rüfenacht, correspondence 2006. ]



Offering the b-pawn up as a sacrifice.

**11.Bc1** Switching the bishop to the a3-f8 diagonal.

[A decade earlier, as a junior, Martinovic faced 11.Rg1 0-0 12.Bd3 b6 13.Rd1 Rae8 14.Bc1 exd4 15.Rg3 , V.Pregarac-Sa.Martinovic, Umag 2005, and here he should have played Ne5! 16.Be4 (or 16.cxd4 Nxd3+) 16...d3 17.f4 Nd7 18.Rxd3 (or 18.Bxd3 Qh6) 18...Nc5 with equality. ]

[Objectively, White should probably take the pawn with 11.Qxb7 , when Morozevich writes that “Black does not gain full compensation”. However, he does get decent practical

chances; for example, Rb8 12.Qa6 0-0 13.Bd3 (preventing ...Qg6) (after 13.Be2 Qg6 14.Qd3 Qg2 15.Rf1 Rfd8 16.0-0-0?! Qh3 17.Qc2 Qe6 18.Bd3 Qd6 19.Qa4 exd4 20.exd4 Nd5 , Black gained strong counterplay in P.Neukirchner-A.Karpatchev, Neustadt an der Weinstrasse 2018; or if 13.Bc4 Rb6 14.Qa4 Qf6 15.Qd1 Nf5 16.d5 Nce7 17.Be2 , L.Jarmula-G.Signorelli, World Junior Championship, Tarvisio 2017, then Nxd5! 18.e4 Nde3 19.Bxe3 Nxe3 20.fxe3 Qh4+ 21.Kf1 Qh3+ forces a draw ) 13...Rb2 14.Bc1?! ( 14.Rd1! was better – Morozhevich ) 14...Rb6 15.Qa4 exd4 16.cxd4 Nb4 17.Qd1 c5 and Black had excellent compensation in S.Shipov-A. Morozhevich, Moscow (blitz) 2001, which continued 18.Ba3 cxd4 19.0-0 Ned5 (not 19...dxe3?! 20.Bxh7+!) 20.Bc4? and now Qd7! would have won; e.g. 21.Kh1 Rh6 22.Rg1 Qc7 , forking h2 and c4. ]

**11...0-0?** This natural and consistent move is in fact a mistake because it leads to problems on the dark square diagonals.

[Black should play 11...Qf6 first, and if 12.Bg2 (or 12.Ba3 then 0-0-0) 12...0-0 13.0-0 Nf5 14.f4 exf4 15.Qxb7 f3! 16.Bxf3 Nfxd4 with equality, as in Y.Souply-M.De Ridder, correspondence 2013. ]

**12.Ba3 Qf6 13.d5 Nd8 14.Rg1**

[White had a more forcing way of gaining an advantage: 14.Qb4 Re8 15.Qa4! c6 ( 15...Rf8? 16.Qd7 wins material ) 16.d6 Nd5 (or 16...e4 17.0-0-0! Qxc3+ 18.Kb1 b5 19.d7 Rf8 20.Qb3 Qxb3+ 21.axb3 Nd5 22.Bb2! and Black is in trouble ) 17.d7! Re6 18.Qe4 (defending f3 and threatening to trap the rook with Bh3)

a5 (not 18...Nxc3? 19.Qb4 , threatening the knight as well as mate on f8 ) 19.Rc1 and White is clearly better. For example, Qh6 (preventing Bh3) 20.Bc4 Nf6 21.Qd3 e4 22.fxe4 Rxe4 23.Qd6 c5 (not 23...Ne6? 24.Bxe6 Rxe6 25.d8Q+ and wins ) 24.Bxc5 Nc6 25.Rd1 Rd8 26.Bd5! Qh5 (not 26...Nxd5? 27.Qxh6 gxh6 28.Rg1+ Kh8 29.Rxd5 and the threat of Bb6 cannot be met; while 26...Rh4? 27.Bxc6 bxc6 28.Qe7 wins even faster ) 27.Rg1 Ne5 28.Rg3 Nf3+ 29.Rxf3 Qxf3 30.Bb6 Qxd1+ 31.Kxd1 Rxd7 32.Qxd7 Nxd7 33.Bxe4 Nxb6 34.Bxb7 with a winning endgame. ]

**14...b6** Black tries to set up a dark square blockade.

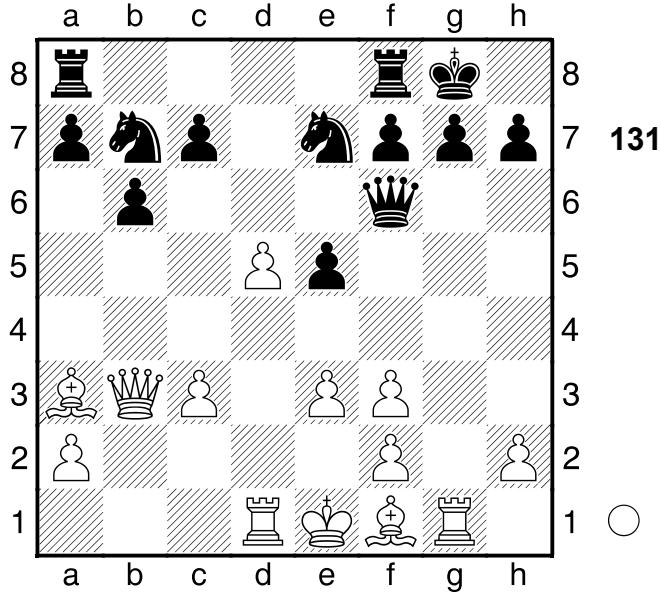
[Now after 14...b6 15.Qb4 c5 he is just in time to hold the position together. ]

**15.Rd1?** Too slow.

[White should have anticipated his opponent's plan of ...Nb7-d6 and hurried to develop the initiative, which he could do with 15.c4 and 16 f4!, creating pressure on the long dark diagonal. For instance, Re8 (or 15...Nb7 16.f4 Nc5 17.fxe5 Qxe5 18.Bb2! Nxb3 19.Bxe5 f6 20.Bxf6 Rxf6 21.axb3 with an extra pawn ) 16.f4 Ng6 17.Bb2 Nb7 (or 17...Qh4 18.fxe5 Nxe5 19.Rg3 ) 18.fxe5 Nxe5 19.Qc2 , followed by 0-0-0, when the open lines favour the bishops. ]

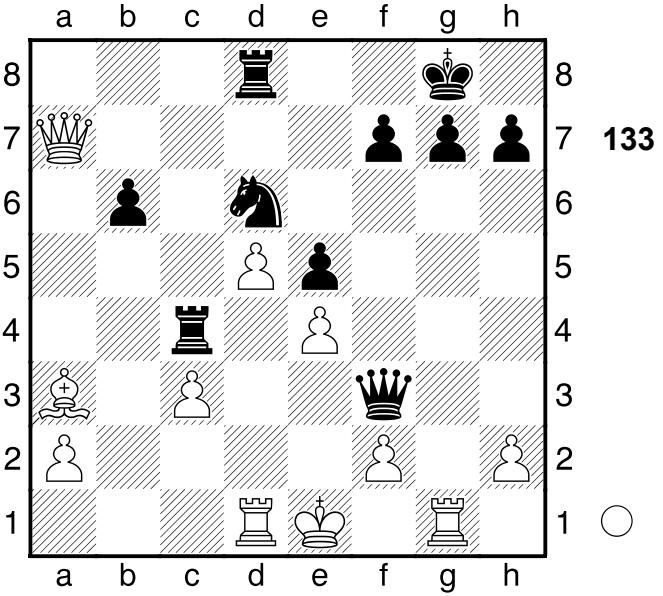
**15...Nb7**

(Diagram 131)



**23.Qxa7?** Losing at once;  
[though 23.Qa6 Qxf3 24.Bxd6  
Qxc3+ 25.Kf1 Rxd6 is hopeless  
anyway.]

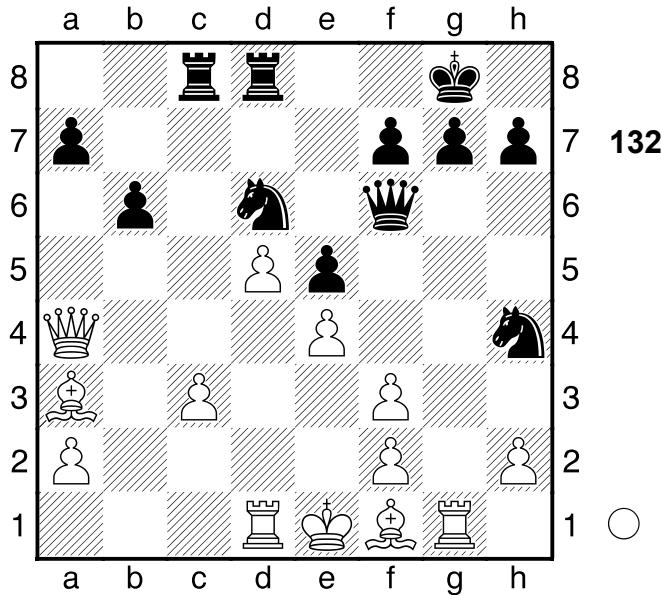
**23...Qxf3**



**16.Qc4 Nd6 17.Qxc7 Nef5 18.e4??**

[Instead, 18.Ba6 was necessary to prevent Black's next move. Still, it is quite a surprise that White's position is now completely lost.]

**18...Rac8 19.Qd7 Rfd8 20.Qa4 Nh4**



The black pieces swoop in on White's king and there is nothing his army can do about it. **21.Be2 Nxf3+ 22.Bxf3**

**Rc4** A nice in-between move.

[ 22...Qxf3 23.Bxd6 Qxc3+ (or  
23...Rxd6 24.Rg3) 24.Ke2 Rxd6  
25.Qb3 is less conclusive.]

. The rook check on e4 will be decisive.

**0-1**

Anand,N  
 Praggnanandhaa,R  
 50: Heraklion  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

D07

2018

10...b6

[Black can also defend the pawn with the rook; 10...Rb8!? is examined in Game 52.]

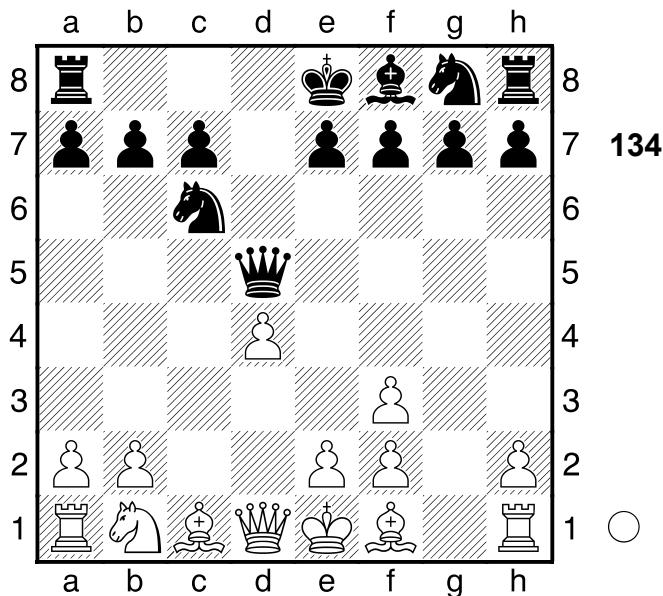
[Note that castling long with 10...0-0-0!? only saves the pawn temporarily, as 11.Qb3 then forks both b7 and f7, though Black can play this as a gambit: b6 12.Qxf7 Kb8!? (an interesting idea: the king usually has to move anyway so Black puts it here at once, keeping options with his king's knight) (instead, 12...Nf6 13.Bh3+ Kb8 14.0-0 Rde8 15.Qc4 g5 16.Bg2 e4 17.fxe4 Nxe4 18.Be1 left Black struggling in W.Gerstner-D. Pirrot, German League 2003; while 12...Nh6 13.Qc4 Rhf8 14.Bd3 Rxf3 15.Be4 Rf6 , as in C.Marzolo-I. Miladinovic, French League 2006, is well met by 16.Qa6+! Kb8 17.d5 ) 13.Qc4 (White follows suit, retreating the queen before it is attacked) (after either 13.Bh3 Nh6 14.Qc4 Qg6 15.Rb2 Rhf8 , R.Jovicic-I. Miladinovic, Obrenovac 2005; or 13.Bg2 Nh6 14.Qc4 Qg6 15.0-0 Nf5 16.f4 , H.Vatter-D.Pirrot, Bad Wörishofen 2004, and now Rd6! , Black has good counterplay ) 13...Qf6 14.Bg2 Nge7 15.f4!? (opening the long diagonal and preventing ...g7-g5) (presumably White didn't like 15.0-0 g5 16.Rb5 Rhg8 17.Rfb1 Rg6 , intending ...Nf5-h4, which looks very messy ) 15...exf4 16.exf4 (not 16.e4? f3 17.Bf1 Nxd4! 18.cxd4 Rxd4 19.Qc2 Rhd8 20.Be3 Rxe4! and Black has a huge attack ) 16...Na5 17.Qa6 Qe6+

**A)** White should have played 18.Qe2 , and if Qxa2

(perhaps Black should prefer 18...Rd6 , maintaining his own compensation ) 19.0-0 Nd5

In case you're not yet aware, Praggnanandhaa is a young Indian grandmaster, the second youngest (behind Sergey Karjakin) ever to gain the title (at age 12 years, 10 months). He recorded his second norm by winning the Crete Open, from which the current game is taken, and his third in Italy two months later. His opponent, by the way, is not the illustrious former world champion but a namesake – after all, Anand is a very common Indian name.

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nf3 Bg4 4.cxd5 Bxf3 5.gxf3 Qxd5**



**6.e3 e5 7.Nc3 Bb4 8.Bd2 Bxc3 9.bxc3 Qd6 10.Rb1** A slight drawback of retreating the queen to d6 is that it no longer attacks the a2-pawn, which frees the a1-rook from having to defend it, White exploits this fact straight away, posting his rook on the half-open b-file and hitting the b7-pawn.

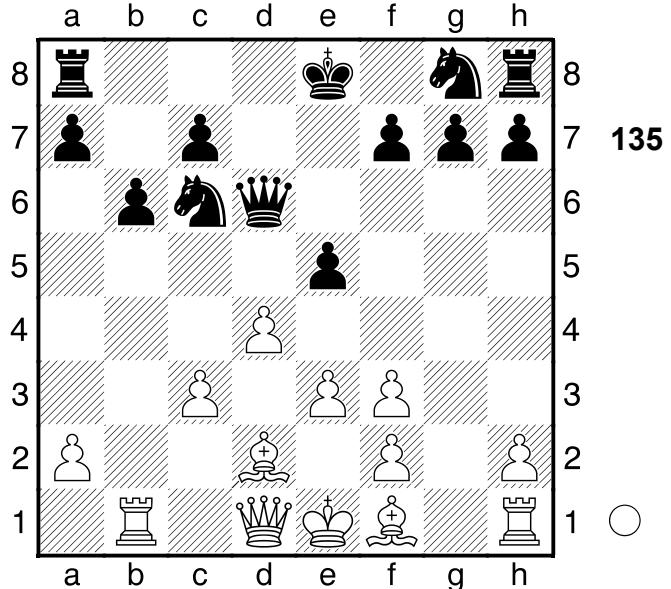
– Krasenkow – then 20.Qa6! Qxd2 21.Qxa5 Qxc3 22.Qa6 c6 23.Rfc1 Qxd4 24.Rxc6 Rd7 25.Rc4 Qf6 26.Rd1 with a strong initiative for the pawn;

**B)** 18.Be3? Nf5 19.0-0

(there is no time for 19.Qxa5? because of Nxe3 20.fxe3 Qxe3+ 21.Kd1 Qd3+ 22.Kc1 Qxb1+! 23.Kxb1 bxa5 with a winning endgame ) 19...Nh4 20.Rb5 Nxg2 21.f5 and now Qc8?! (instead, Krasenkow suggests either 21...Qc4 22.Rxa5 Qxa6 23.Rxa6 Kb7 24.Ra4 Nh4 , regaining the pawn to reach a favourable endgame; or 21...Qe4 22.Rxa5 Qa8 23.Bg5 Rde8 24.d5 Ne1 25.Be3 Nf3+ 26.Kh1 Rhf8 with the initiative; Black's queenside defences cannot be broken down and he has ideas of ...Rxf5 and ...Rh5 ) 22.Qxc8+ Kxc8 23.Kxg2 Rhf8 was roughly equal in J.L.Hammer-R.Rapport, European Team Championship, Reykjavik 2015.

Rapport seems to believe that Black can give up the f7-pawn for development and piece play, as he adopts a similar plan against Nakamura in Game 54. ]

(Diagram 135)



**11.Bb5?!** Such a move already indicates that White does not quite understand the subtleties of the opening. Very likely he was caught unprepared for the Chigorin, since it appears to be the first time Prag had ever played it. Although the c6-knight looks vulnerable, White cannot bring sufficient pressure to bear before Black has escaped with ...Nge7 and ...0-0.

The standard plan for White is to play f3-f4, either at once or after developing the kingside. We will look at this in the next game.

[Another option is 11.Rg1 , attacking the other knight's pawn.

**A)** Mirroring the queenside with 11...g6 seems to allow White a favourable version of the 11 f4 line after 12.f4! exf4 13.e4 ; ( 13.-- ); **B)** so Black should probably gambit: 11...Nge7?! 12.Rxg7 (here 12.f4 exf4 13.e4 0-0 14.e5 Qe6 15.Qg4 Ng6 is fine for Black, R.Douven-R.Osterman, Bad Wörishofen 1993 ) 12...0-0-0 ( 12...Ng6 13.Bc4 Nd8 14.e4 Qf6 15.Bh6 Nh4 16.Qc1 Qxf3 17.Rb5! is slightly better for White, A.

Moman-B.Visser, correspondence 2008 ) 13.Qa4 (not 13.Rxf7?! Qg6 and the rook is trapped; while after 13.Qb3 f5 14.a4 Qh6 15.Rg2 f4 Black had good counterplay in P. Haller-M.Welti, correspondence 2007 ) 13...Rhe8 14.Bb5 (not 14.Rxh7? Qg6 , forking the rooks; or 14.Qa6+? Kb8 15.Rxh7 exd4 16.cxd4 Nxd4 17.exd4 Nf5+ and Black wins ) 14...Kb7 15.Rb3 exd4?! ( 15...Qh6! looks more accurate and equal ) 16.cxd4 Qxh2 17.Rc3? ( 17.Rxf7! improves the game continuation considerably for White ) 17...Qh1+ 18.Ke2 Nxd4+ 19.exd4 Nc6+ 20.Re3 Nxd4+ 21.Qxd4 Rxd4 22.Bxe8 Qa1 23.Rg4 Rxg4 24.fxg4 Qxa2 and Black is certainly not worse, O. Cvitan-B.Maksimovic, Yugoslav Championship 1988. ]

**11...Nge7 12.c4?!** White is staking everything on the move Bb4 on the vague presumption that there will be "something" after that.

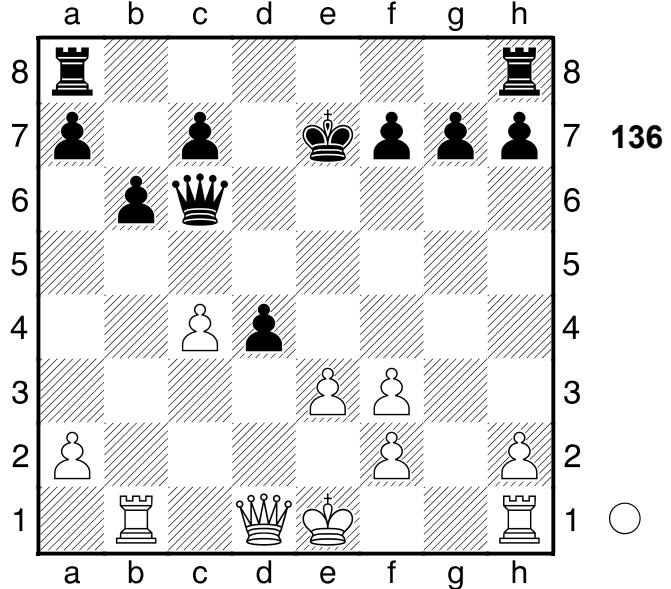
[Then again, 12.e4?! 0-0 13.d5 Na5 14.c4?! Nb7 15.Bc3 Qf6 16.Bd7 Nc5 17.Bg4 Ng6 , as in A.Abolianin-R.Schürmans, Belgian Championship, Westerlo 2004, was certainly no improvement as the knights are clearly superior to the bishops in the blocked position. ]

**12...exd4 13.Bb4 Qf6 14.Bxe7**

[After 14.Qxd4 Qxd4 15.exd4 0-0-0! 16.d5 Nxb4 17.Rxb4 Nf5 Black stands better. These endings with a single minor piece and a fixed centre generally favour the knight, and White's kingside pawns have been compromised too. ]

**14...Kxe7 15.Bxc6 Qxc6**

(Diagram 136)



The weakness of Black's king is an illusion – in fact he is already marginally better.

### **16.Qxd4**

[Not 16.exd4? Qxc4 and Black wins an important pawn. Note that after 17.Rc1 Qe6+ 18.Qe2 Rhe8! the c7-pawn is immune due to the threats on the e-file; i.e. 19.Rxc7+?? (or 19.Qxe6+ Kxe6 20.Rxc7?? Kd6+ , winning the rook ) 19...Kd6 20.Rc2 Qg6 , winning the queen. ]

**16...Qxf3** Taking the doubled f-pawn shouldn't offer Black very much.

[Instead, 16...Rad8 looks stronger:

**A)** not fearing 17.Qxg7?! since Rhg8 18.Qe5+ Kf8 19.Qe4 Qa4 gives Black great activity;

**B)** while 17.Qe5+ Kf8 18.Rg1 f6 19.Qe4 Qxe4 20.fxe4 Kf7 leaves White with a lot of pawn weaknesses in the rook endgame. ( 20.... );

**C)** Prag may have rejected this because of 17.Qh4+ f6 (if 17...Qf6 18.Qxf6+ Kxf6 19.Ke2 , followed by c4-c5, or c5 20.Rhd1 , White ought to be able to draw ) 18.Ke2 Qa4 19.Rhc1 Kf7 (or

19...Qxa2+ 20.Kf1 ) 20.Qh5+ g6  
 21.Qb5 Qxa2+ 22.Kf1 Rd2  
 23.Kg1 , intending Ra1, when White looks to have sufficient play for the pawn and, more importantly, is fighting for the initiative. ]

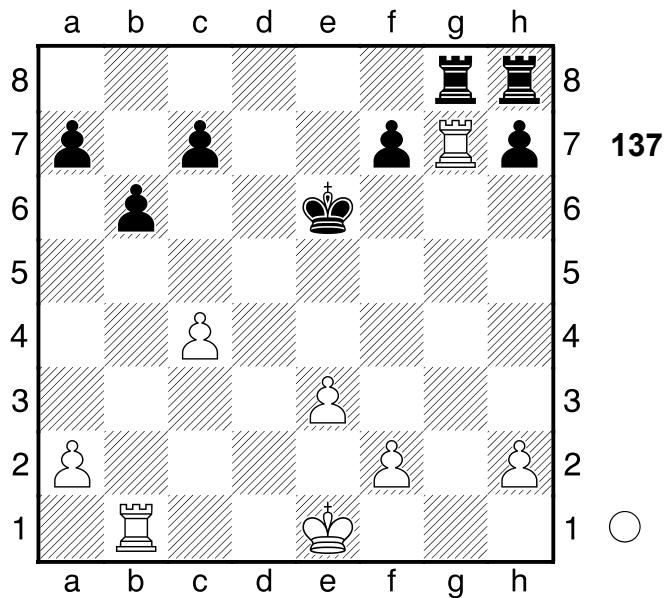
### 17.Rg1 Qf6 18.Qe4+

[The immediate 18.Rxg7 was more accurate, after which White should have few problems. ]

### 18...Qe6 19.Qxe6+?!

[Here keeping queens on the board was preferable: 19.Qf4 (White regains a pawn as both c7 and g7 are en prise) Kf8 20.Qxc7 g6 21.Qf4 Kg7 , when Black still has the more compact pawn structure but it will be difficult to make progress with queens around; e.g. after 22.Qd4+ f6 23.Rg5! , followed by Rd5. ]

### 19...Kxe6 20.Rxg7 Rg8



**21.Rg3 h5!** Black is quick to capitalize on the fact that White's king position does not allow him to take over the g-file.

### 22.Ke2

[He might have considered 22.Rb3! (rather than 22 Ke2) h4 23.Rxg8 Rxg8 24.Ra3 a5 25.c5 earlier on. ]

**22...h4 EXERCISE:** White has a difficult

decision to make. Should he surrender the g-file or not?

### 23.Rgg1?!

[ANSWER: Yes! His rook is doing nothing on the g-file, so 23.Rxg8 Rxg8 and then 24.c5 was correct, seeking to exchange more pawns. Possibly White was worried about h3 , followed by ...Rg2 (note that after 24...Rg2 25.h3 , the white h-pawn is immune since Rh2 26.Kf3 Rxh3+?? 27.Kg2 traps the rook ), but then something like 25.cxb6 axb6 26.a4! Rg2 27.Kf3 Rxh2 28.Rc1 Kd6 29.Rd1+ Kc6 30.Rb1! should hang on. ]

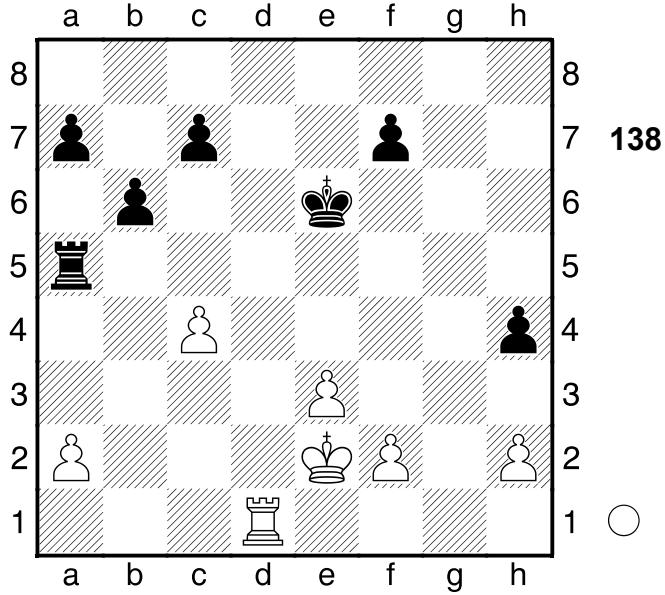
**23...Rxg1 24.Rxg1 Rh5!** Black lifts his rook to the queenside to attack the weak a2- and c4-pawns, aiming to force White on to the defensive. **25.Rd1?**

In rook endings, it is paramount to keep your rook active.

[Here that means 25.Rg4! Ra5 26.Rxh4 Rxa2+ 27.Kf3 , which looks scary as the black a-pawn seems quite unstoppable, but the key to holding this type of position is to go on the offensive and push your own passed pawn(s). For example, a5 (or 27...Rc2 28.Re4+ Kf6 29.Rf4+ Kg7 30.Rg4+ and Black cannot really hide his king from checks by going to f8 since the white h-pawn would then start its march to h8 ) 28.Rh6+ f6 (or 28...Ke7 29.Rc6 Kd7 30.Rf6 etc ) 29.Rh7 Kd6 30.h4 a4 31.h5 Ra1 32.Kg2 Rc1 33.h6 Rxc4 34.Rf7 Rh4 35.Rxf6+ Ke5 36.Rc6 Kd5 37.Rxc7 Rxh6 38.e4+ Kd4 39.f4 and so on. After the text White is reduced to passive defence and Black's winning chances are that much greater. ]

### 25...Ra5

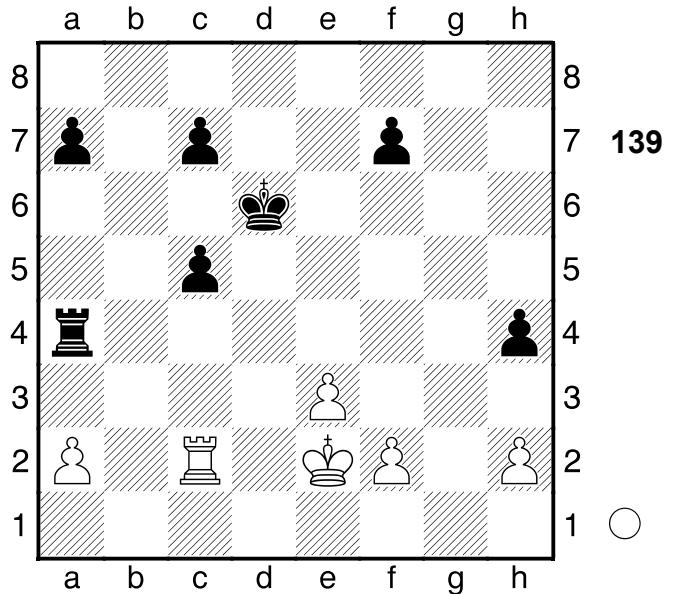
(Diagram 138)



black king can go round and mop up the kingside ) 34...Kd5 35.h4 c4 36.h5 c3 37.h6 c2 38.h7 c1Q 39.h8Q Qg1+ 40.Kf5 Qxf2+ 41.Kg4 Qg2+ 42.Kf4 Qe4+ swaps the new queens off and wins. ]

[The best chance was probably 30.Rd2+ Kc5 31.e4 Kxc4 (or 31...Rxc4 32.Ke3) 32.f4 , trying for some belated activity, even if it's objectively too late to save the game. ]

**30...bxc5**



**31.f3 c4! 32.Kd2 Ra3!?**

[The obvious 32...Kc5 wins as well. ]

**33.Ke2**

[Or 33.Rxc4 Rxa2+ 34.Kd3 h3! 35.Rd4+ Kc6 36.Rc4+ Kb7 37.Rb4+ Kc8 38.Rh4 Rxh2 and Black wins easily with his extra passed pawn on each flank. ]

**33...Kc5 34.Kd2 h3 35.Ke2 Kb4**

(Diagram 140)

**26.Rd2 Ra4 27.Kd3 Ra3+ 28.Ke2**

**Ra4** Leaving the c5-square for the king.

[Another option is 28...c5 , shutting White down completely and aiming for zugzwang. Play might continue 29.Rc2 (otherwise ...Rc3 wins the c4-pawn) Kf5 30.Kf3 Ra4 31.h3 f6 32.Ke2 Ke5 33.Kd3 Ra3+ 34.Ke2 f5 35.Rd2 Ra4 36.Rc2 Ke4 37.f3+ Ke5 38.Kf2 Ra3 , intending to force a way in after ...f5-f4. True, White can now mobilize his rook with 39.Rd2 Rc3 40.Rd7 , but Rxc4 41.Rxa7 Rc2+ 42.Ke1 Rh2 is clearly hopeless. ]

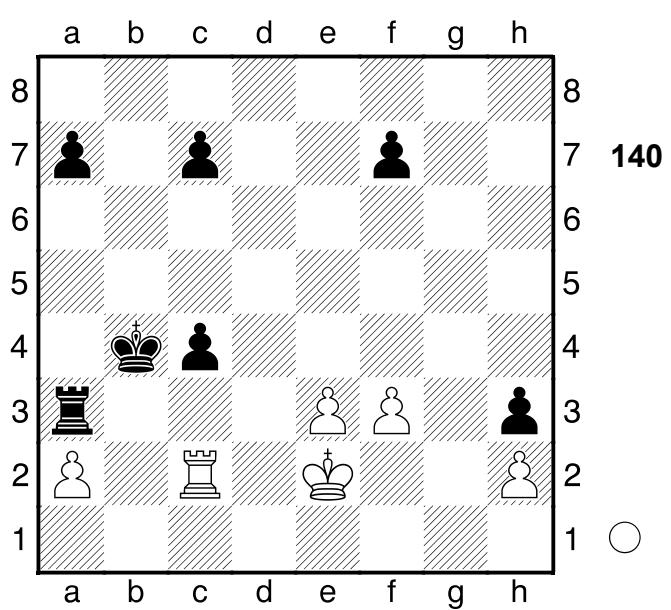
**29.Rc2 Kd6**

[ 29...c5 was still possible. ]

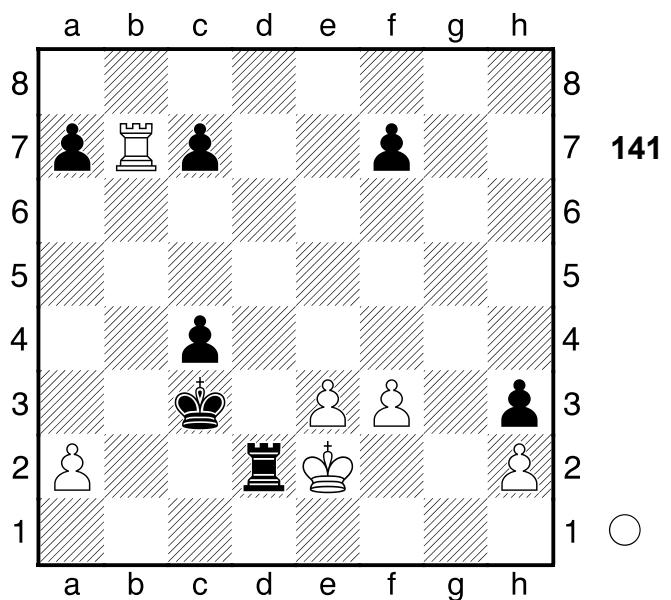
**30.c5+?!** Preventing ...Kc5 at the cost of giving Black an extra passed c-pawn.

[ Going for the h-pawn with 30.Kf3?!

Kc5 31.Kg4 was no good either, since 31...Rxc4+ 32.Rxc4+ Kxc4 33.Kxh4 c5 is a winning pawn endgame for Black; e.g. 34.Kg5 (after 34.Kg4 Kd5 35.Kf3 b5 36.e4+ Kd4! 37.h4 c4 38.h5 Ke5 39.Ke3 Kf6; or 34.Kg5 Kd5 35.f3 b5! 36.Kf2 Ke5 37.Ke2 c4 38.Kd2 b4 , the white king is stuck guarding the queenside while the



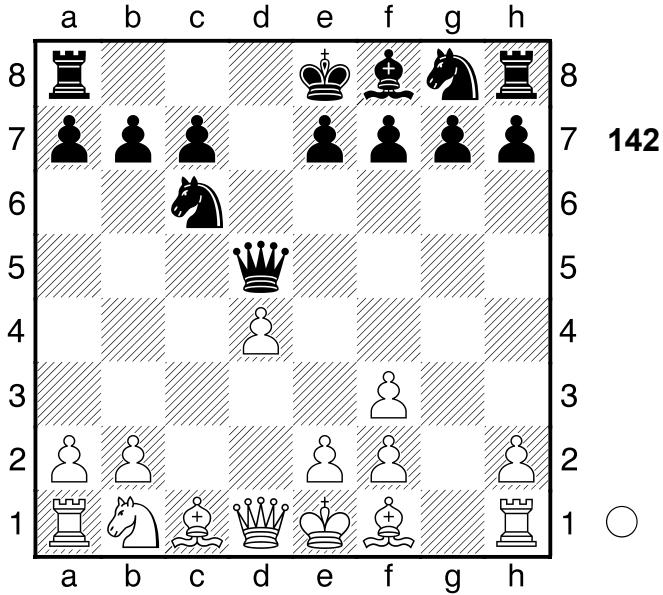
**36.Kd2 Rd3+ 37.Ke2 Rd6 38.Rb2+**  
**Kc3 39.Rb7 Rd2+**



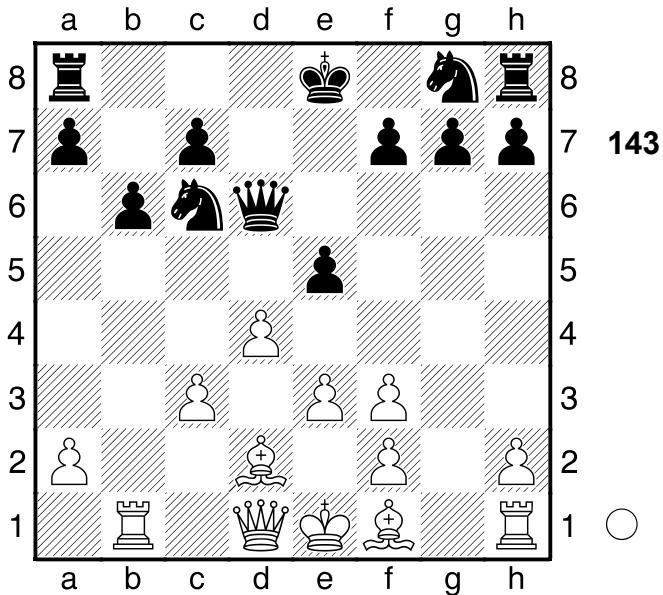
**0-1**

Lukacs,P  
 Pinal,N  
 51: Havana  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nf3 Bg4 4.cxd5  
Bxf3 5.gxf3 Qxd5**



**6.e3 e5 7.Nc3 Bb4 8.Bd2 Bxc3  
9.bxc3 Qd6 10.Rb1 b6**



**11.f4** A standard temporary sacrifice; White opens the game for his bishops

D07

1986

and frees up his centre. As we'll see, this can be very dangerous for Black if he fails to play precisely, but the same can be true for White as well. Objectively, Black has more than one route to a decent position.

[Delaying f3-f4 for a move or two doesn't seem to strengthen White's hand either: 11.Bg2 Nge7 12.0-0 (or 12.f4 exf4 13.e4 Rd8 14.0-0 Ng6 15.e5 Qd7 16.Qf3 Nce7 17.Bxf4 Nh4 18.Qe2 Nxg2 19.Kxg2 c5 , D.Gurevich-N.De Firmian, US Championship, San Diego 2004 ) 12...0-0 13.f4 exf4 14.e4 Rad8 15.e5 (or if 15.Qg4 Ng6 16.Bc1 Nce7 17.h4 , V.Kramnik-A. Morozevich, Moscow blitz 2001, then f5! – Morozevich ) 15...Qh6! 16.Re1 Na5 17.Qg4 Ng6 18.Rbd1 Qh4 19.Qf5 c6 20.Bc1 Ne7 21.Qxf4 Qxf4 22.Bxf4 Nd5 , P.Cech-C.Köpke, German League 2007, and Black is fine in all lines. ]

**11...exf4 12.e4**

[Obviously not 12.exf4? , when White has just ruined his own pawn structure and opened the e-file with his king still on e1. ]

**12...Nge7 13.Qf3** Developing the queen to a strong post and preparing to regain the pawn.

[ 13.Bg2 returns to 11 Bg2 lines above. ]

**13...0-0** Black is not at all interested in defending the f4-pawn, nor is he advised to try;

[after 13...g5? 14.h4 f6 15.hxg5 fxg5 16.Qh5+ Ng6 17.Qxg5 ]

[or 13...Ng6? 14.h4 h5 15.e5 Qe6 16.Bg2 Nge7 17.Bxf4 , he loses the pawn anyway and stands much worse. ]

[However, 13...Qa3 is a significant alternative and is actually preferred

by Morozovich.

**A)** Note that 14.Bxf4? is now ruled out due to Nxd4!, so Black avoids the problems in the main game.;  
**B)** For example, 14.Qxf4 0-0 (rather than the highly unconvincing 14...Qxa2 15.Rd1 Qe6?! 16.Be2 Ng6 17.Qf3 Na5?! 18.h4 h5 19.Bg5 c6 20.Rg1 Rc8 21.Kf1  $\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}$  K.Sakaev-N.De Firmian, Copenhagen 2005, when White could have played on without any risk) 15.Rg1 (or 15.Bc4 Na5) 15...Ng6 16.Qxc7 Rac8 (instead, 16...Qxa2! 17.Rd1 Na5 is fine for Black) 17.Qg3 Qxa2 18.Rd1 Rfe8?! (and here 18...f5!?) 19.Bd3 Qd5 20.Be3?! (20.f3 f5 21.Kf2 is stronger) 20...Qb3 21.Bd2 f5 22.e5?? (22.h4 still keeps an edge) 22...Ncxe5! 23.dxe5 Rxe5+ 24.Be3 f4 25.Qh3 Qxc3+ 26.Kf1 fxe3 and Black won in J.Daloz-F.Libiszewski, Nice 2003.;

**C)** If 14.Be2 Qxa2, White cannot castle since the d2-bishop drops, while 15.Rd1 f5 sees Black's counterplay coming more quickly.]

#### **14.Bxf4 Qa3?!** This is now mistimed.

[Keeping the queen in the centre with 14...Qe6! is more flexible, as apart from ...Qxa2 Black can also play ...f7-f5, aiming to fix the central pawns. For example, 15.Rb2 (or 15.Bb5 f5; and not 15.d5? Nxd5 16.Bc4 Rfe8 – Scheerer; 15.Bxc7 doesn't give White anything after Qxa2 16.Rd1 Rac8 17.Bg3 Qa5 18.Qd3 f5; while 15.Bg2; and 15.Bh3 can both be met by Qc4, preventing castling) 15...f5 16.e5 Na5 17.Bg2 Rad8 18.0-0 Nd5 19.Bg5 Rd7 20.Re1 Nc4 21.Rbb1 a6 with a solid blockade on the light squares, C.Blanco Gramajo-W.

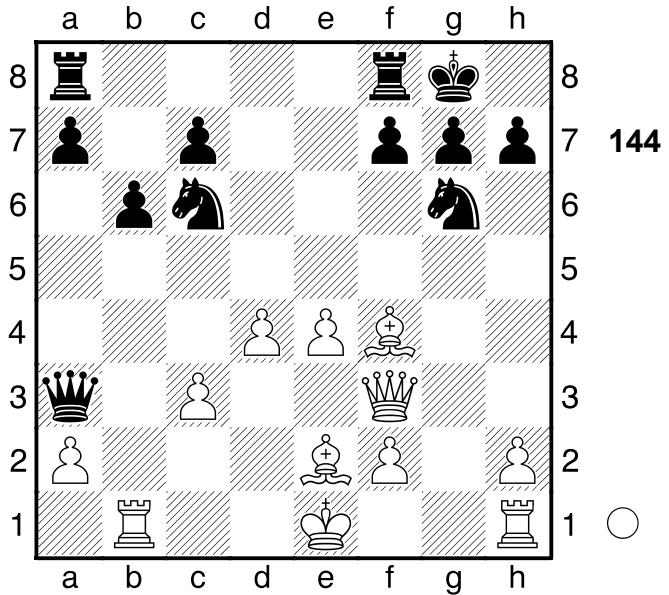
Boucher, correspondence 2005. ]

#### **15.Be2** Defending the queen against ... Nxd4 tricks.

[ 15.Bg2 seems equally good, and if Ng6 16.Bg3 f5 (Kasparov), then 17.Qd3! Nxd4 18.Qc4+ Kh8 19.cxd4 f4 20.0-0 with advantage. ]

#### **15...Ng6**

[ Instead, G.Kasparov-V.Smyslov, Vilnius (11th matchgame) 1984, saw 15...f5 16.0-0 fxe4? (but 16...Ng6 17.Bg5! is good for White anyway) 17.Qxe4 Qxc3 18.Be3 Qa3 19.Bd3 Qd6 20.Qxh7+ Kf7 21.Rb5 Nxd4 22.Bxd4 Qxd4 23.Rg5! (Kasparov) would have won for White. ]



#### **16.Bg3**

[ There is no point in 16.Bxc7?!, since Rac8 17.Bg3 (not 17.Qg3? Rxc7! 18.Qxc7 Qxc3+ 19.Kf1 Qh3+ 20.Kg1 Nxd4 and wins – Lukacs) 17...Nce7 (Scheerer) gives Black good counterplay. He will regain his pawn next move and can look to attack the white centre with ...f7-f5. ]

#### **16...Nce7?!** Too passive.

[ The immediate 16...Qxa2 seems better, intending 17.0-0 f5?! ]

( 17...Nce7 18.h4! transposes to 18 0-0 below ) 18.Ra1 (or 18.exf5 Nce7) 18...Qf7 , though Black is still in for a hard time against the bishops. ]

### 17.h4! Qxa2

[If 17...f5? , then 18.Bc4+ Kh8 19.h5 fxe4? (or 19...Nf4 20.Kd2!) 20.hxg6 (Lukacs) is winning for White, in view of h6 ( 20...exf3 21.Rxh7#; or 20...Nxg6 21.Rxh7+ Kxh7 22.Qh5# ) 21.Rxh6+ gxh6 22.Be5+ etc. ]

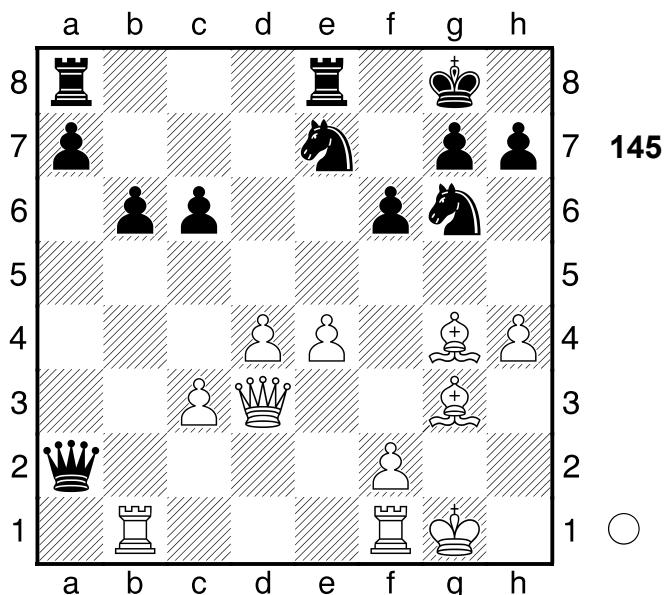
### 18.Qd3

[Simply 18.0-0 f5 19.h5 Nh8 20.Bd3 looks very good for White too. ]

### 18...Rfe8 19.0-0 c6

[After 19...Qe6 20.h5 Nf8 21.Bxc7 (Lukacs), White has a big advantage. ]

### 20.Bg4 f6



### 21.Bd1 Kh8 22.Bb3 Qa5 23.f4

White has open diagonals for his bishops, plus a mobile centre. This is virtually lost for Black. 23...f5?!

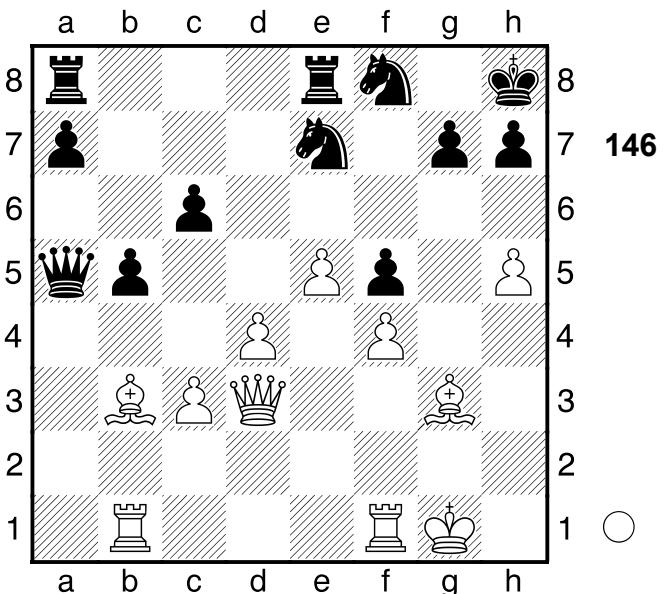
[The last chance was 23...Qh5!? 24.Bd1 Qh6 25.h5 f5 (not 25...Nf8?) 26.f5 and the black queen is in danger) 26.hxg6 fxe4 27.Qxe4 Nd5 , when Black has some counterplay if

not really enough for the piece. ]

### 24.e5 b5

[Or 24...Nd5 25.h5 Nge7 26.c4 Qc3 27.Rf3 Qxd3 28.Rxd3 Nb4 29.Rdd1 and the central pawn mass will win through. ]

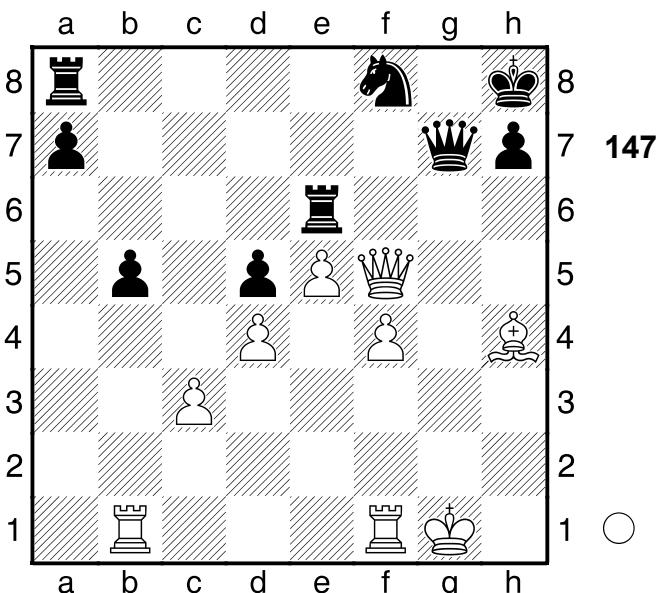
### 25.h5 Nf8



### 26.Bh4! Qc7 27.h6 Nd5?!

[But if 27...Ng8 then 28.Bxg8! Kxg8 29.Qxf5 (Lukacs). ]

### 28.Bxd5 cxd5 29.Qxf5 Re6 30.hxg7+ Qxg7+

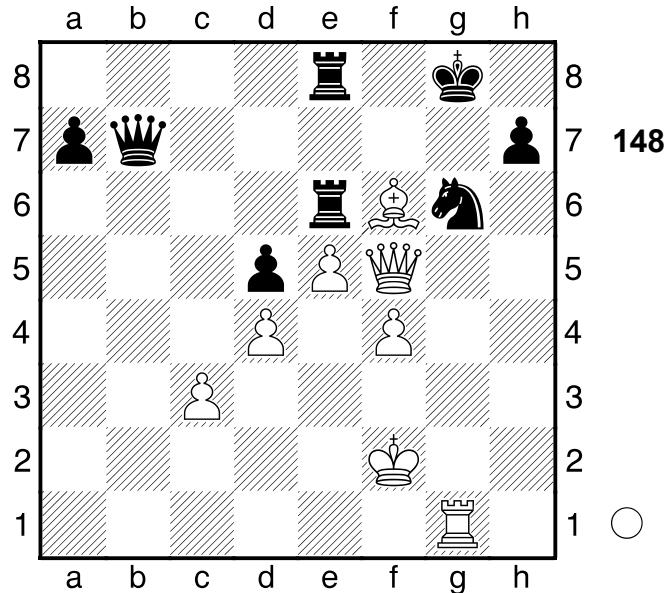


### 31.Kf2 Kg8 32.Bf6 Qf7 33.Rxb5

White can more or less win as he pleases.

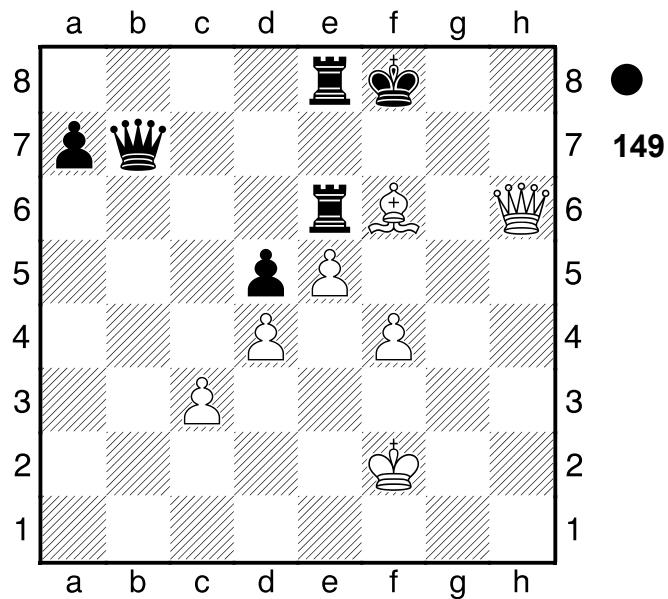
[The engine prefers 33.Rg1+ Ng6  
34.Rxg6+! hxg6 35.Rg1 and so on.]

**33...Rae8 34.Rg1+ Ng6 35.Rb7! Qxb7**



**36.Rxg6+ hxg6 37.Qxg6+ Kf8**

**38.Qh6+**



. A nice illustration of what can go wrong for Black when he gives up the bishop pair without knowing what he is in for.

**1-0**

Pert,N  
 Sasikiran,K  
 52: British Championship, Torquay 2002  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

D07

queenside pawns intact has certain benefits, as we will see. The drawback is that it rules out the option of castling long, so White should react accordingly.

**11.f4** The normal way to set up a strong centre, but right here it is not the best.

[Nor does 11.Bg2 Nge7 12.f4 exf4 13.e4 0-0 14.0-0 Ng6 set Black any particular problems; indeed, 15.Rb5 Nce7 16.Rh5 b5 17.e5?! Qe6 18.Qf3 Qxa2 19.Bxf4 b4 only gave White problems in T.L.Petrosian-A. Chibukhchian, Armenian Championship, Yerevan 2010.]

[The critical continuation is 11.Rg1! Nge7 (or similarly 11...g6 12.f4! exd4 13.cxd4 Nge7 14.Bc4 0-0 15.h4 , as in P.Cafolla-O.Vea, Gibraltar 2006 ) 12.f4! (rather than 12.Rxg7?! Ng6 13.Bc4 b5! and Black is fine since 14.Bb3 Nd8 15.e4? Qf6 16.Bh6 fails to Ne7 17.Qd2 Rb6!) 12...exd4 (forced, as 12...exf4? 13.Rxg7! Ng6 14.Qh5 Qf6 15.Rxh7 Rxh7 16.Qxh7 Ke7 17.Qh5 is winning for White, V.Golod-B.Holmirzaev, Tashkent 2009) 13.cxd4 0-0 , reaching a type of 9... exd4 10 cxd4 Nge7 variation (see the notes to Game 48) where White is at least slightly better, not least because Black's ...Qd6 now makes no sense.]

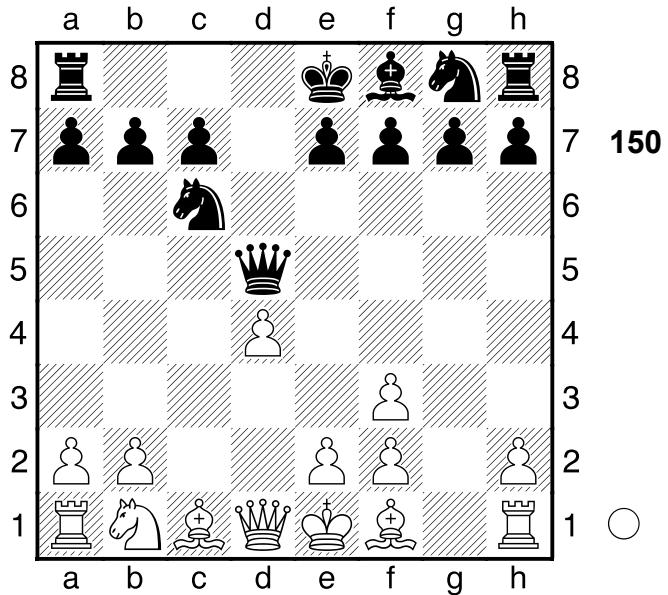
**11...exf4 12.e4 Nge7 13.Qf3 Ng6!**

QUESTION: In the notes to the previous game 13...Ng6 was given as bad, so why does it get an exclamation mark now?

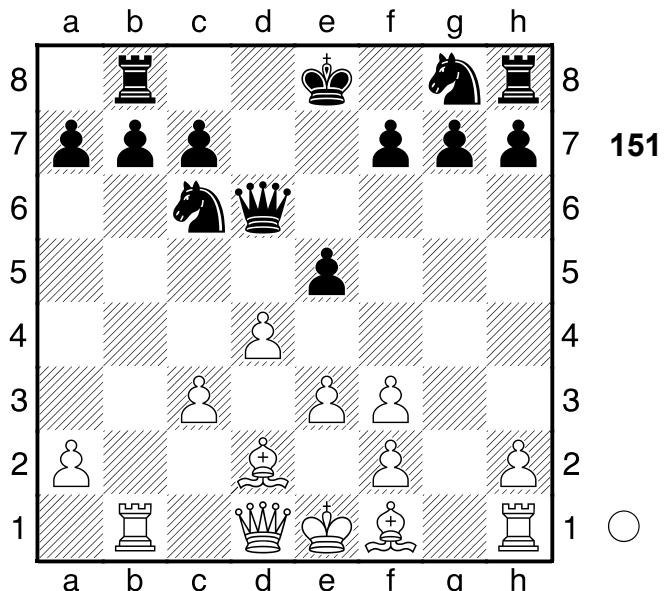
ANSWER: Because Black has played 10...Rb8 rather than 10...b6. The fact that he is not vulnerable on the long light diagonal enables Black to defend the f4-pawn more safely.

**14.h4 h5** The pawn needs to be stopped, even though it means castling short is now less desirable for Black due

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nf3 Bg4 4.cxd5 Bxf3 5.gxf3 Qxd5**



**6.e3 e5 7.Nc3 Bb4 8.Bd2 Bxc3 9.bxc3 Qd6 10.Rb1 Rb8!?**



This time Black simply defends the b-pawn with the rook. Keeping the

to the weakness on h5.

[The attempted counter-attack with 14...Qa3 (threatening ...Nxd4) is well met by 15.Rh3!, intending Qxa2 16.Rd1 h5 17.Bxf4, when White has more than enough for the pawn.]

**15.e5?!** Driving the black queen to a more aggressive square is inaccurate since Bxf4 is never on the cards (see below).

[Instead:

a) 15.Bb5 is apparently given as good for White in one edition of 'ECO'. In fact Rd8 16.Rd1 a6 17.Ba4, F.Dushatskiy-S.Inhoven, German League 2005, and now b5 18.Bb3 Nce7 seems fine for Black.]

[b) 15.Rb5 is more testing, going straight for the h5-pawn which can't be defended, so Black needs to develop rapid threats of his own.

**A)** In A.Rustemov-E.Pedersen, Morso 2002, he tried sacrificing the pawn with 15...0-0, but came out worse after 16.Rxh5 Rfe8 17.Be2 Qe6

**A1)** not 18.d5?! Qxe4 19.Qxe4 Rxe4 20.f3 (20.dxc6 f3) 20...Rxe2+ 21.Kxe2 Re8+ 22.Kd1 Nce5 and Black has sufficient play for the exchange;

**A2)** 18.Kf1 Qxa2 19.Be1 Rbd8?! (but if 19...Qe6 20.d5 Qxe4 21.dxc6 Qxc6 22.Bd2, Black's three pawns are not worth the piece) 20.Rg1 (planning to double rooks on the g-file, so Black goes in for a tactical sacrifice which doesn't work) Rxd4?! 21.cxd4 Nxd4 22.Qd3 f3 23.Bxf3 Nxf3 24.Qxf3 Qc4+ 25.Kg2 Rxe4 26.Kh2 and White soon won.;

**B)** Black should therefore try 15...Rd8!

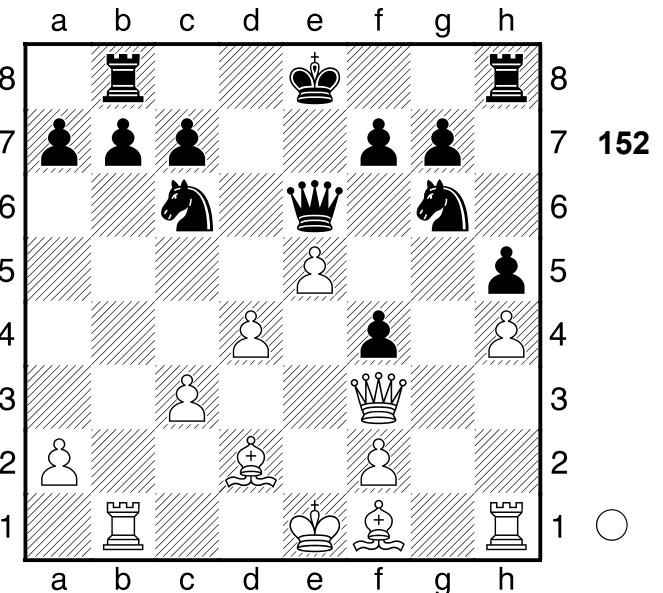
**B1)** which rules out 16.Rxh5?

because of Rxh5 17.Qxh5 Nxd4! 18.cxd4 Qxd4 19.Qd1 Ne5 20.Rh3 Qxe4+ 21.Qe2 Qb1+ 22.Qd1 Qxa2 with advantage (even better than taking the draw); (22....);

**B2)** 16.Rxb7?! 0-0! also gives Black good play, with ideas of ...Nxd4, ...Nce5, ...Rfe8 and ...Rb8.;

**B3)** In response the engine wants to play 16.Rh3?!, the point being 16...a6 17.Rxh5 Rxh5 18.Qxh5 Nxd4? (though 18...Qe6 seems okay) 19.cxd4 Qxd4 20.Bc3! and White wins.]

**15...Qe6**



Both kings are unable to castle without losing their respective h-pawns, so it boils down to who has the more useful moves with their pieces. At first glance that might seem to be White, who has several promising-looking squares for his king's bishop; but it turns out that none of them are particularly good, while the various holes in White's position mean that the knights are by no means inferior to the bishops here, added to

which Black still has an extra pawn.

**16.Be2** Guarding the king against a knight sacrifice on e5.

[Other moves with the f1-bishop are worse:

a) 16.Bd3?? loses quickly to Ngxe5! etc.]

[b) 16.Bh3? runs into Nxh4 17.Qe4 (or 17.Qxf4 Qd5) 17...f5!

with a clear advantage.]

[c) 16.Bb5 is well met by 0-0!, and if 17.Qxh5 the engine claims that Ncxe5! 18.dxe5 Rbd8 is winning for Black.]

[d) 16.Bg2, which was the correct move in the 10...b6 line, can be answered in the same way as the game.]

[Finally, if Pert was intending to retake the f4-pawn when he played 15 e5, he must have noticed now that 16.Bxf4?? Qf5 (forking the bishop and b1-rook) 17.Rxb7 fails to 0-0! 18.Qxc6 Qxf4 and White is in big trouble.]

**EXERCISE:** The ball is now in Black's court. What can he possibly play in this position?

**ANSWER:** **16...Nce7!** Heading for the kingside and freeing the c-pawn to attack the white centre;

[while avoiding any Rxb7 tricks; e.g. 16...Qxa2? 17.Rxb7! and if Qa1+ then 18.Bd1.]

**QUESTION:** Can't White now take the b7-pawn anyway?

**ANSWER:** Yes, but Black doesn't mind that since he can take control of the b-file after castling and an exchange on b8.]

**17.Rxb7?** Opening the b-file plays into Black's hands.

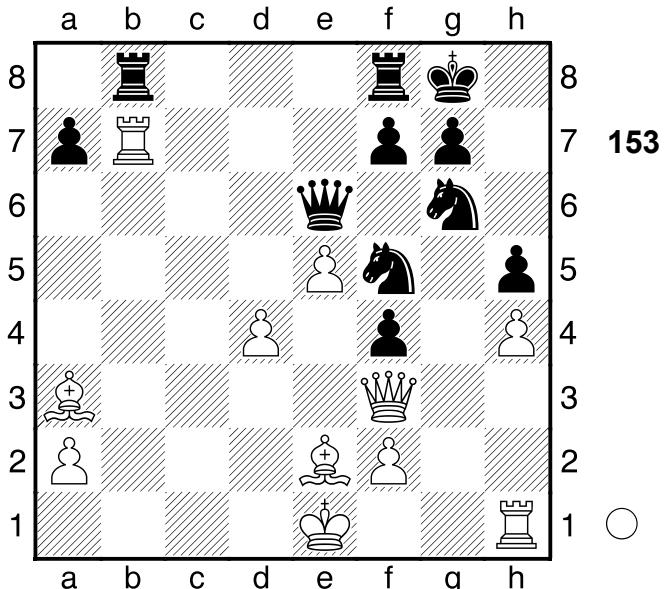
[ 17.Rb3 is safer and equal.]

**17...0-0 18.Bc1?** Bringing the bishop to the a1-f8 diagonal fails to have the desired effect.

[White is naturally reluctant to surrender the b-file by exchanging rooks, as it would allow Black a strong initiative. All the same, that would have been a better option; for example, 18.Rxb8 Rxb8 19.Qe4 (not 19.Qxh5? Rb1+ 20.Bd1 Qd5! 21.0-0 Qxa2 22.Be1 a5, when the passed a-pawn is very dangerous) 19...Qxa2 20.Bxh5 c5 21.Bd1 Nf8 22.h5 Ne6 23.h6 g6 (or 23...Ng6 24.Rg1) 24.Bxf4 Qc4 (or 24...Kh7 25.0-0) 25.Rh3 and White is still in the game.]

[Another possibility was 18.Rb3 again, intending Rxb3 (or 18...c5 19.Bxf4 Rxb3 20.axb3 Qxb3 21.Bg3 cxd4 22.cxd4 Qb4+ 23.Kf1 Qxd4 24.Qd3 and White always has some chances with his bishops) 19.axb3 Qxb3 20.0-0.]

**18...c5! 19.Ba3 cxd4 20.cxd4 Nf5!**



A wholly correct, indeed decisive, exchange sacrifice. White cannot survive the destruction of his centre with his king still in the middle.

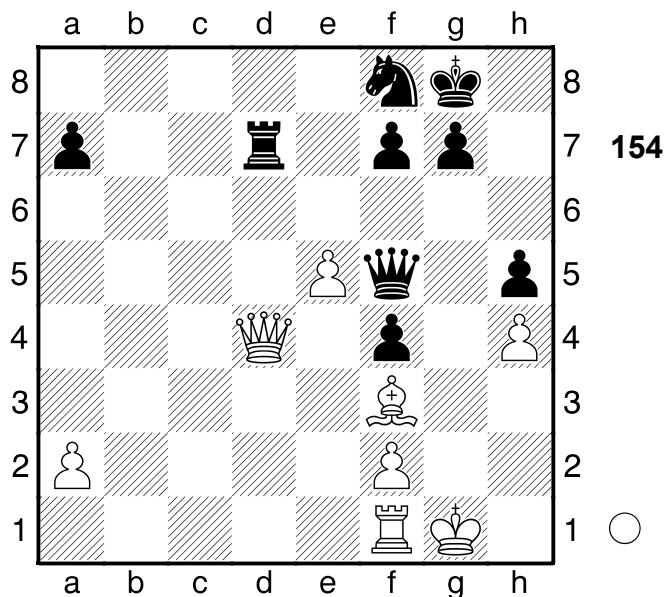
**21.Bxf8 Nxd4 22.Qe4 Rxb7 23.Qxd4**

[After 23.Qxb7 Qxe5 24.Qa6 Nf3+ 25.Kd1 (or 25.Kf1 Qa1+ 26.Kg2

*Ngxh4+ and wins ) 25...Qa1+ 26.Kc2 Nd4+ 27.Kd3 Qxh1 28.Kxd4 Nxf8 29.Qxa7 Qxh4 Black emerges two pawns up, with the white king completely exposed. ]*

**23...Nxf8?!** A slight slip; [missing a straightforward win with 23...Rb1+ 24.Bd1 (or 24.Kd2 Qxa2+ 25.Kd3 Rb3+ 26.Ke4 Qxe2+ 27.Kd5 Kxf8 and White can resign ) 24...Nxe5 25.0-0 Rxd1! 26.Qxd1 (or 26.Rxd1 Nf3+ etc ) 26...f3 and mates. ]

**24.0-0** Did Black forget that White could still castle? **24...Qf5 25.Bf3 Rd7**



**26.Qe4 Qxe4** Black goes for the ending with two extra pawns;

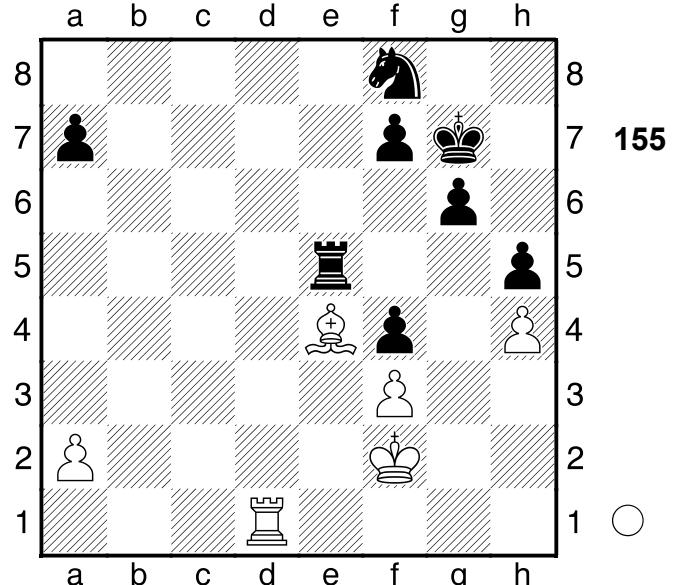
[which is simpler than keeping queens with 26...Qh3 27.Qxf4 Ng6 28.Qg3 Qf5 29.Rd1 Nxe5 .]

**27.Bxe4 Re7 28.Rd1 Rxe5**

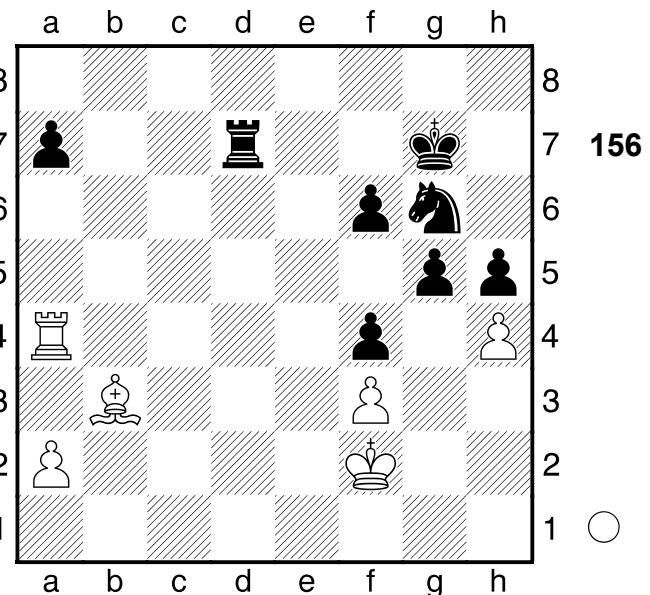
The endgame is a straightforward win for Black, even though Pert manages to string the game out for another thirty moves.

**29.f3 g6 30.Kf2 Kg7**

(Diagram 155)



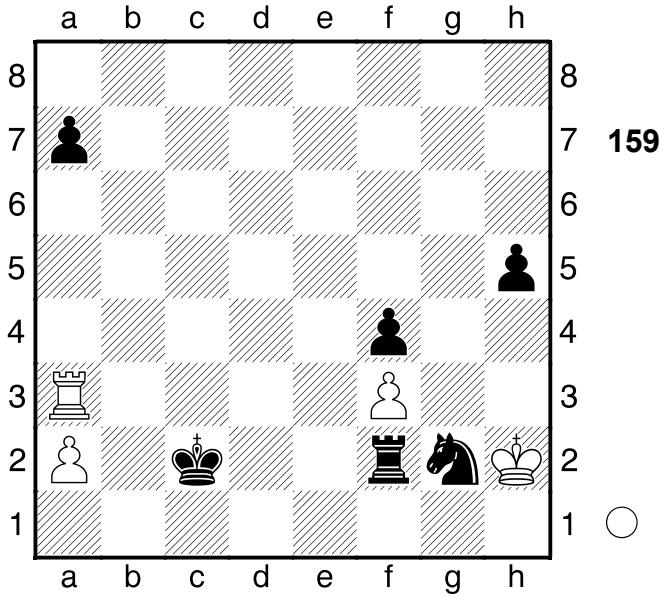
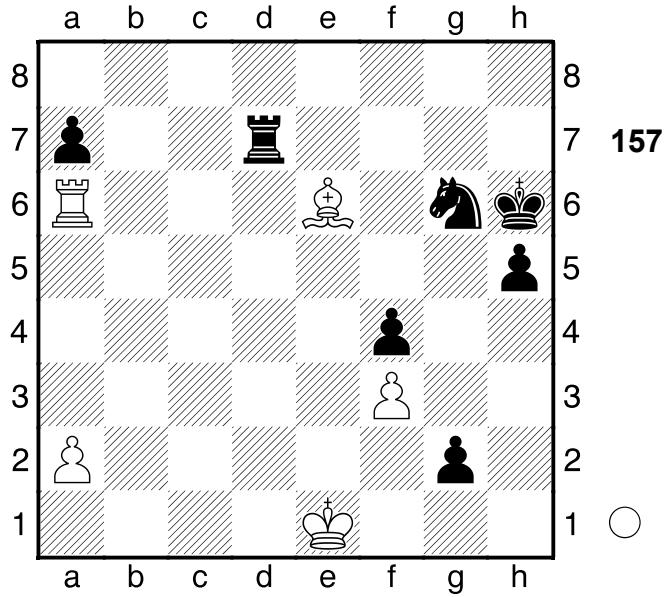
**31.Bd5 Re7 32.Bb3 Rd7 33.Re1 f6  
34.Re4 g5 35.Ra4 Ng6**



**36.hxg5 fxg5 37.Ra5 Kh6 38.Ra6 g4  
39.Be6 g3+ 40.Ke1 g2**

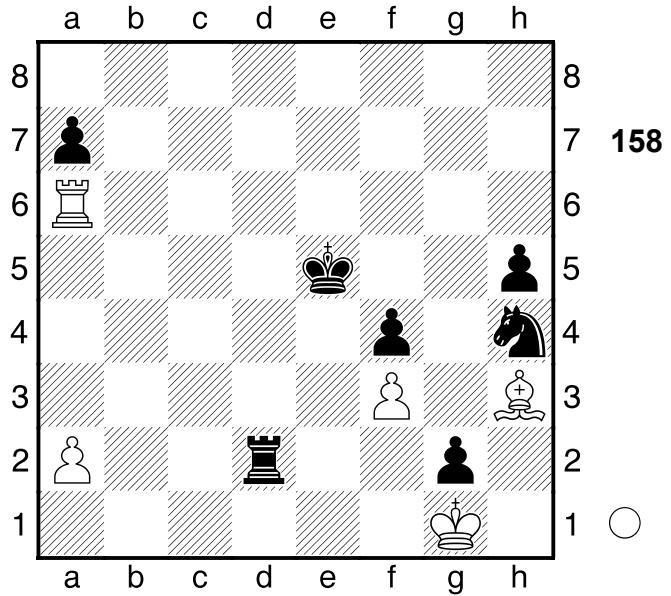
[Or 40...Rd1+! 41.Kxd1 g2 and the pawn promotes. ]

(Diagram 157)



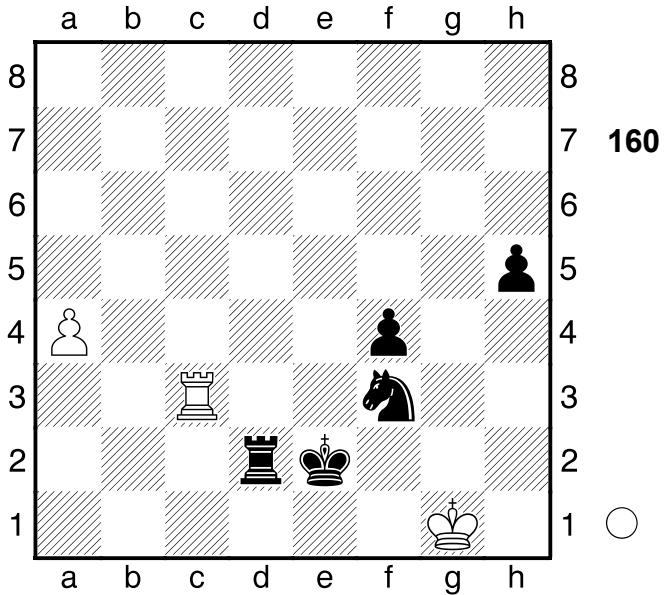
**41.Kf2 Rd2+ 42.Kg1 Nh4**

The discovered check is nothing to worry about. **43.Bh3+ Kg5 44.Ra5+ Kf6  
45.Ra6+ Ke5**



**51.Kg1 Rd2 52.Rxa7 Ne1 53.Rc7+**

**Kd1 54.Rc3 Ke2 55.a4 Nxf3+**

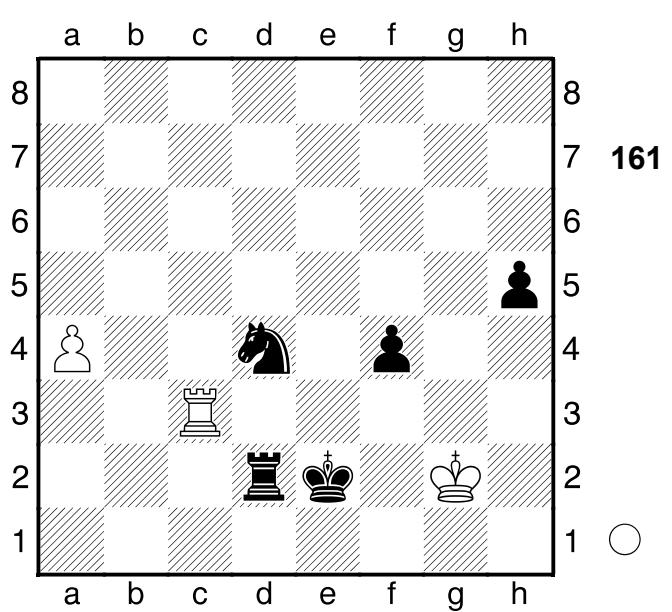


**56.Kg2 Nd4**

(Diagram 161)

**46.Ra5+ Kd4 47.Ra4+ Kd3 48.Ra3+  
Kc2 49.Kh2 Rf2** With the black king now safe from checks there is no defence to ...Nxf3 except to give up the bishop for the g2-pawn.  
**50.Bxg2 Nxg2**

(Diagram 159)



0-1

**Volodin,A**  
 **Sklyarov,D**  
 53: Finnish League  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

**D07**

2010

, Black removes the queen from d5 in order to pre-empt the tempo-gaining c3-c4 and d4-d5. By retreating further back, the queen is safe from potential attacks via Bb4, Bf4 or e4-e5 and also protects the f7-pawn against Qb3. On the other hand, it is slightly less actively placed on d7, unable either to slide along the sixth rank or suddenly appear at a3, while the possibility of Bb5 may prove annoying in some lines. As Morozhevich says: “The question is, which are more significant: the pluses or the minuses?” ]

**10.Rb1** Following the 9...Qd6 main lines. This has been the almost ubiquitous response in the relatively few number of games with 9...Qd7 so far.

[Instead:

a) 10.Bg2 Nge7 11.0-0 0-0 is too quiet to trouble Black, and 12.Rb1 b6 13.Qc2 Ng6 14.Kh1 Nh4 15.Rg1 f5 already saw him developing a strong initiative in I. Nepomniachtchi-A.Morozhevich, Moscow (blitz) 2004. ]

[b) 10.f4 exf4 11.e4 can be met by Nf6 , showing another advantage of the queen not being on d6 (there is no e4-e5 pawn fork). After 12.Qf3 0-0 13.Bh3 Qe7 14.e5 Rad8 15.0-0 Nd5 16.Rab1 Na5 , Black was doing fine in C.Böhmer-W.Traudes, German League 2008. ]

[c) 10.Qb3 (as in Game 49) needs to be taken seriously:

**A)** 10...Nge7 11.Qxb7 0-0 12.Qb1?! ( 12.Qa6 is better ) 12...Rfe8 13.Qd3 exd4 14.cxd4 Nf5 15.Be2? ( 15.Bc3 was necessary ) 15...Ncxd4! 16.exd4 Nxd4 17.Be3 Nxf3+ 18.Kd1 , J.Carron-G.Miralles, Swiss League 2010, and now Qc6!

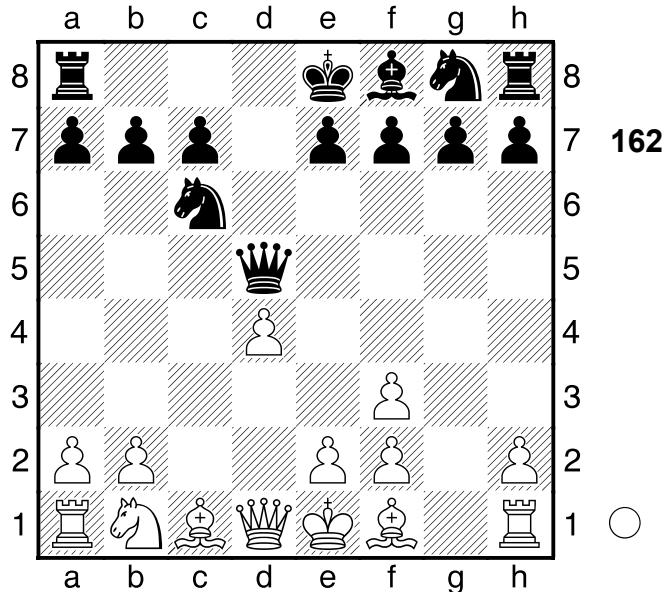
### 1.d4 Nc6!? 2.Nf3

[As long as a Nimzowitsch Defence (with 2.e4 ) is not unwelcome, this is an interesting move order for Black. ]

[Then 2.d5 Ne5 leads to very obscure play; ]

[while 2.c4 can be met by e5 . If White decides not to bother with all that and plays 2 Nf3 (as in the game), Black can return to a Chigorin set-up with 2...d5, having avoided the 3 cxd5 and 3 Nc3 variations. ]

**2...d5 3.c4 Bg4 4.cxd5 Bxf3 5.gxf3 Qxd5**



**6.e3 e5 7.Nc3 Bb4 8.Bd2 Bxc3**

**9.bxc3 Qd7!?**

[QUESTION: This is a strange-looking move. What is the reason behind it?

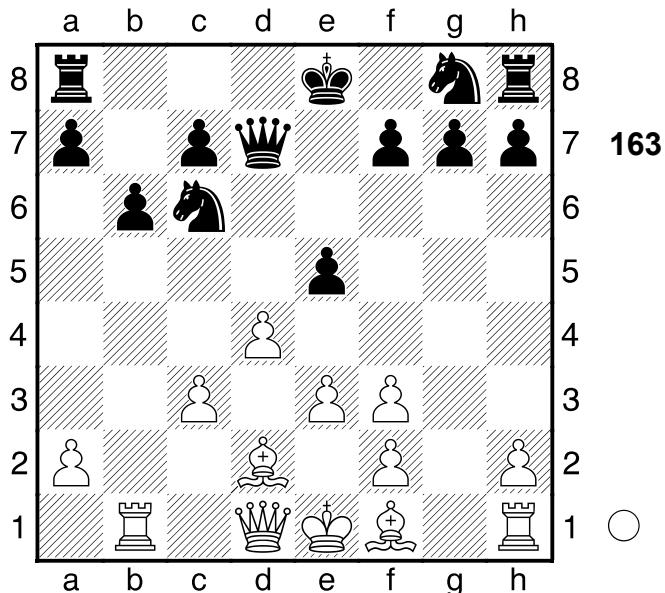
ANSWER: It's a suggestion by Morozhevich in his book and he has played a few games with it, albeit only on the internet. As with 9...Qd6

19.Qc4 Rad8+ 20.Kc1 Qf6  
 21.Rb1 Rd6 wins for Black.;  
**B)** Black might also consider  
10...Nf6!? 11.Qxb7 Rb8 12.Qa6  
 0-0;  
**C)** as well as 10...0-0-0!? 11.Rb1  
 b6 12.Bb5 Nge7 13.Qxf7 Rhf8  
 , e.g. 14.Qh5 (or 14.Qxg7 Rxf3  
 15.Qxh7 exd4 16.cxd4 Qe6)  
 14...Kb8 15.Qg4 Qd6 16.0-0 Rf6  
 17.Kh1 Rdf8 with decent  
 counterplay. ]

## 10...b6

[Nonetheless, we will look at  
 10...0-0-0 next.]

[Note that the previous game's  
 10...Rb8 is hardly an option here, as  
 Black is not ready to defend his pawn  
 after 11.f4 (and 11.Rg1 looks very  
 good for White too) 11...exf4 12.e4  
 , V.Kovar-M.Novotny, Czech League  
 2010. ]



The only move considered by  
 Morozevich, who doesn't like to castle  
 long in these 5 gxf3 lines. **11.Bg2**  
 Again, simple development should not  
 cause Black too many problems.

[More critical are:

a) 11.f4 exf4 12.e4 (12.Rg1!?)  
 12...Nge7 13.Bxf4 (not 13.d5? Nxd5?  
 14.exd5? Qxd5 15.Rg1 0-0-0  
 , when Black is close to winning with  
 ...Rhe8 and/or ...Ne5 coming and the  
 white king stuck in the centre) 13...0-0  
 , though Black has "adequate  
 resources" according to Morozevich.  
 For example, 14.d5 (for 14.Bg2  
 see 14 Bxf4 in the main game)  
 14...Ng6 (or 14...Na5 at once)  
 15.Bg3 Na5 16.f4 , as in Raffael-A.  
 Morozevich, online (blitz) 2006, can  
 be met by c6!? 17.f5 (or 17.Bg2  
 Nc4) 17...Ne5 18.Bxe5 Qe8 19.Qd4  
 c5 , regaining the piece with an  
 unclear position. ]

[b) 11.Rg1 and now:

**A)** 11...Nge7 fails to 12.Rxg7  
 Ng6?! (12...0-0-0!?) is unlikely to  
 offer sufficient compensation  
 either) 13.Bc4 (rather than  
 13.Qa4? Kf8 14.Rxg6? hxg6  
 15.Bb5 , which is itself refuted by  
 Qf5! 16.e4 Qxf3 17.Bxc6 Rxh2)  
 13...Nd8 14.e4 Qh3 15.Bg5 Kf8  
 16.Bf6 .;

**B)** So Black probably has to play  
11...g6 , and if 12.f4 exf4 13.e4  
 then Nf6 with "a somewhat inferior  
 position" (Morozevich). At least  
 Black is not losing by force here; for  
 example, 14.f3 (or 14.Bb5 a6  
 15.Qa4 axb5! 16.Qxa8+ Nd8  
 17.f3 0-0 with surprising play for  
 the exchange) 14...Qd6!? 15.e5  
 Qe6 (Marin) 16.Bb5 Nd5 17.Qa4  
 Nde7 18.Bxf4 0-0 , intending  
 19.Bh6 (or 19.Bg5 a6 20.Bc4  
 Qh3) 19...Nxe5! 20.dxe5 Qxe5+  
 21.Kf1 Qh5 22.Bxf8 Qxf3+  
 with a draw. ]

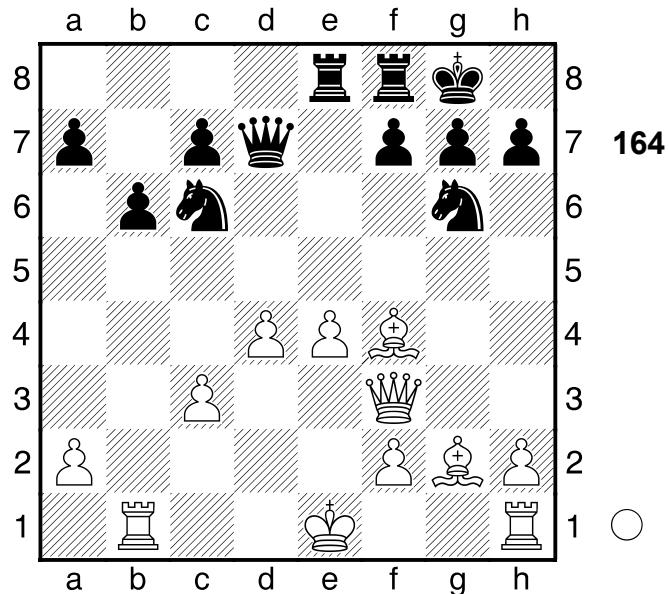
## 11...Nge7 12.f4

[12.0-0 0-0 transposes to 10 Bg2  
 above. ]

## 12...exf4 13.e4 0-0 14.Qf3

[ Presumably he didn't like 14.Bxf4 Ng6 15.Bg3 f5 ; e.g. 16.exf5 Rxf5 (not 16...Rae8+?! 17.Kd2 Rxf5 18.Bh3) 17.0-0 Nf4 18.Be4 Rf6 , followed by ...Raf8, when Black has a reasonable game. ]

## 14...Rae8 15.Bxf4 Ng6



**16.0-0** With both ...f7-f5 and ...Nh4 threatened White has no time to retreat his queen's bishop, so he tucks his king away to safety and catches up on development.

**16...Nxf4?** Black hurries to remove one of White's aces, the bishop pair, but goes for the wrong one.

[ It was better to target the light-squared bishop with 16...Nh4 . If White saves it by playing 17.Qh3 , he loses some of his centre after Qxh3 18.Bxh3 Rxe4 , when Black is okay; e.g. 19.Bxc7 Ne7 20.Bg3 (or 20.Bd6 f5) 20...Nf3+ 21.Kg2 Nd2 22.Rfe1 f5 . ]

**17.Qxf4** With his strong pawn centre and powerful king's bishop, White already has enough aces up his sleeve and can look forward to a pleasant middlegame.

**17...Ne7** Black attempts to generate

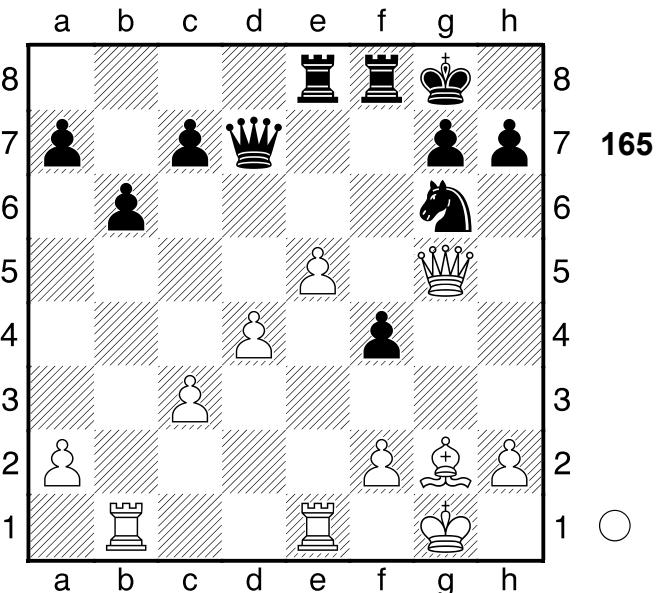
some counterplay on the kingside.

[ Instead, 17...Na5 looks logical, aiming for the c4-square, but it can't do much over there by itself. ]

## 18.Rfe1 f5 19.e5 Ng6

[The knight is unable to find a foothold in the centre: 19...Nd5 20.Qf3 Rd8 21.c4 Ne7 22.Rbd1 and White's mobile pawn mass will decide. ]

## 20.Qg5 f4



## 21.Be4 Qh3 22.f3!

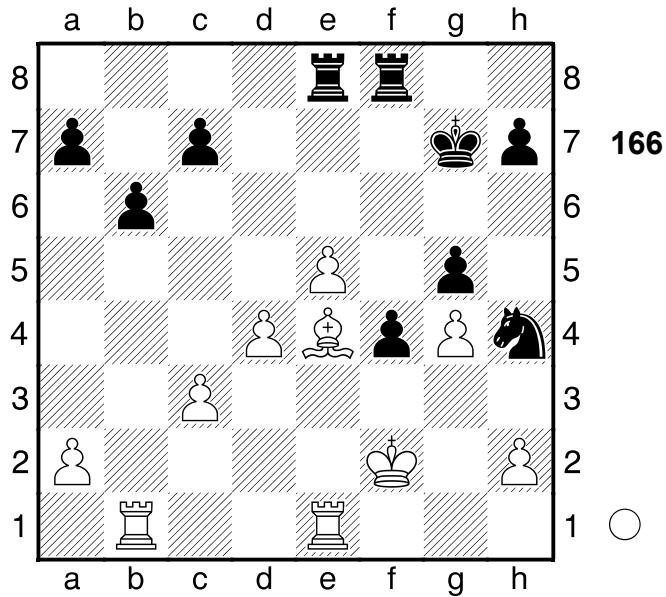
[This is not the moment to cash in: 22.Bxg6? hxg6 23.Qxg6 Re6 24.Qg2 Qh5 (or 24...Qxc3) 25.Qd5 Rff6! and White has to take the draw. ]

## 22...Nh4 23.Qg4 Qxg4+ 24.fxg4 g5

White has a clear advantage. The bishop is a monster compared with the knight, and while both sides have protected passed pawns, Black's f-pawn is not dangerous, whereas White's e-pawn can be supported by c3-c4 and d4-d5.

## 25.Kf2 Kg7

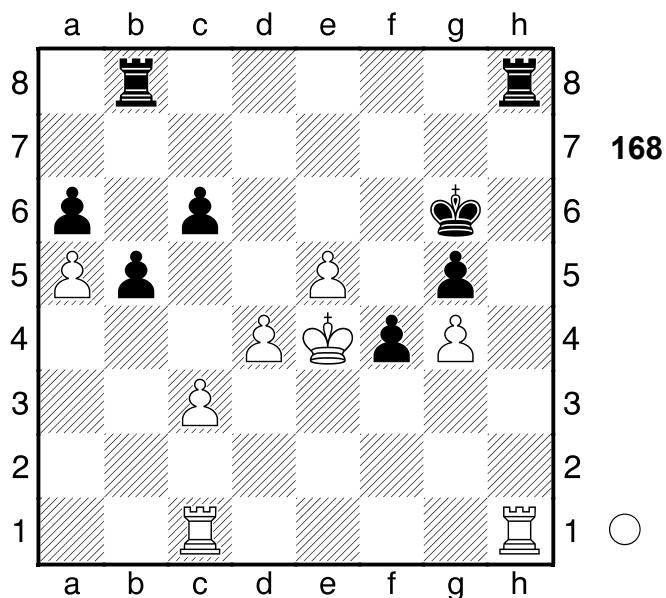
(Diagram 166)



advance c3-c4 and d4-d5 to get a winning position. Unfortunately, Black's is now able to prevent that with his next move.

[White should have played 33.c4 first, and if Rxh1 34.Rxh1 c5 then 35.Rb1 cxd4 36.Rxb6+ Kg7 37.Ke4 d3 (or 37...Rf8 38.Rb3) 38.Rd6 f3 39.Rd7+! Kg8 40.Kxf3 (not 40.Rxd3? f2 41.Rf3?? Rf8 and Black wins) 40...Rxe5 41.Rxd3 with a winning rook endgame.]

**33...b5!** **34.a5 Ref8** **35.Rc1 Rb8??**



Aiming to discourage White from playing c3-c4 and penetrating with the rook on the c-file, but Black needed to exchange rooks on the h-file first.

**36.Kf3??** Very likely the endgame was being conducted in time trouble.

[White could have won directly with 36.Rxh8 Rxh8 37.c4 b4 (or 37...Rh3 38.d5) 38.d5 Rc8 39.d6, when Black's two outside passed pawns are no match for White connected pawns in the centre.]

**36...Rbd8** **37.Rcd1**

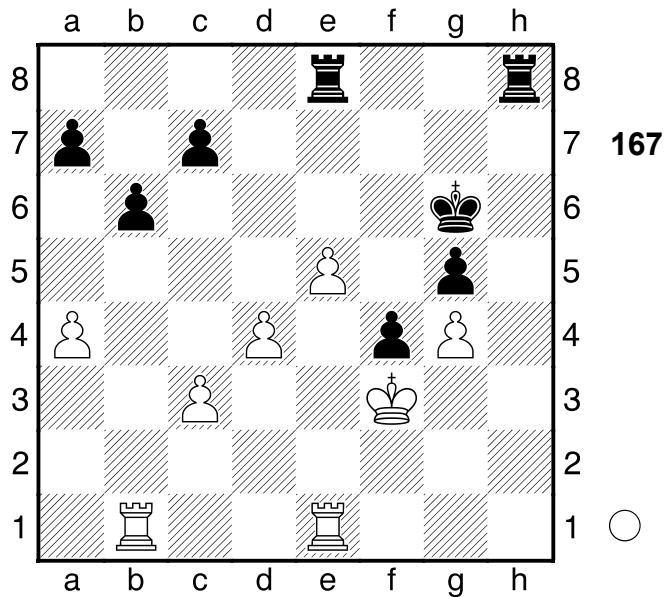
[Now if 37.Rxh8 Rxh8 38.c4 then Rh3+ and the white king will be mated if he goes back to e4.]

**26.a4 h5 27.h3 hxg4 28.hxg4 Ng6**

**29.Bxg6?!** White wants to free the e4-square for the king, though there was no need to take the knight just yet as it has no good squares to go to in any case.

[ 29.a5 was worth throwing in first.]

**29...Kxg6** **30.Kf3 Rh8**



**31.Rh1 c6 32.Rbe1?!** A meaningless move.

[ 32.Ke4 at once was stronger.]

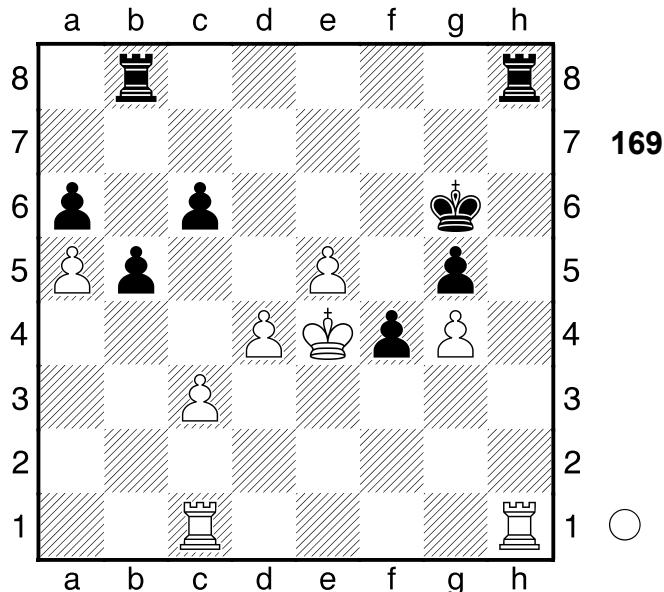
**32...a6 33.Ke4?** This is the type of position White was aiming for when he played 29 Bxg6. All that is needed is to

[Nor does 37.Ke4 get anywhere:  
 Rh4!? (or just 37...Rxh1 38.Rxh1  
 Rb8 and White can make no  
 progress) 38.Rxh4 gxh4 39.Kxf4 b4!  
 (undermining the white pawn chain)  
 40.cxb4 Rxd4+ 41.Kf3 Kg5 42.e6  
 Rf4+ 43.Ke3 Rxb4 44.e7 Rb8  
 45.Kd4 (or 45.Re1 Kf6 46.Kf4 Kf7)  
 45...Kf6 46.Re1 Kf7 47.Kc5 (or  
 47.g5 Ke8 48.g6 Rb4+ 49.Kc5 Rg4  
 50.Re6 h3 etc) 47...Ke8 48.Kxc6  
 Rb5 49.Kd6 Rg5 50.Re6 (or 50.Rg6+  
 Rg6+) 50...Rxg4 51.Rh6 Rd4+  
 and draws.]

**37...Rc8 38.Ke4 Rcf8 39.Rdf1 Rd8**

**40.Rc1 Rb8??**

[Either 40...Rh4]  
 [or 40...Rxh1 would have held the  
 ending as shown in the previous  
 note.]



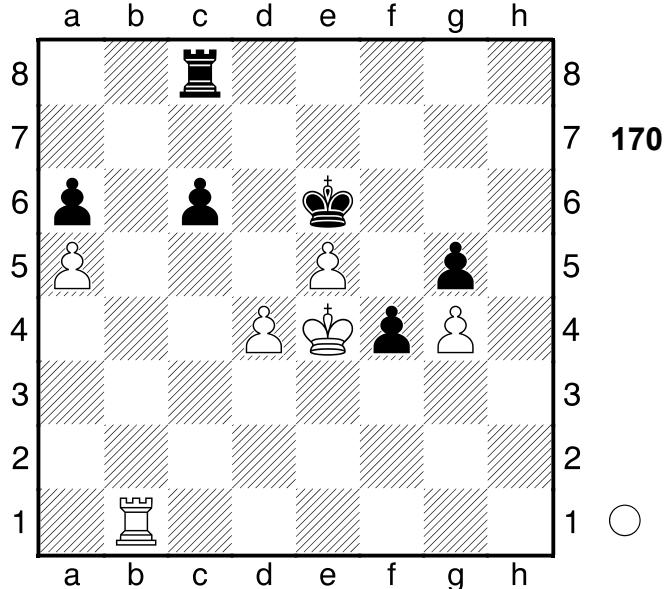
**41.Rxh8** Finally finding the correct plan.

**41...Rxh8 42.c4** White's active king,  
 rook and centre pawns enable him to  
 win without any further fuss.

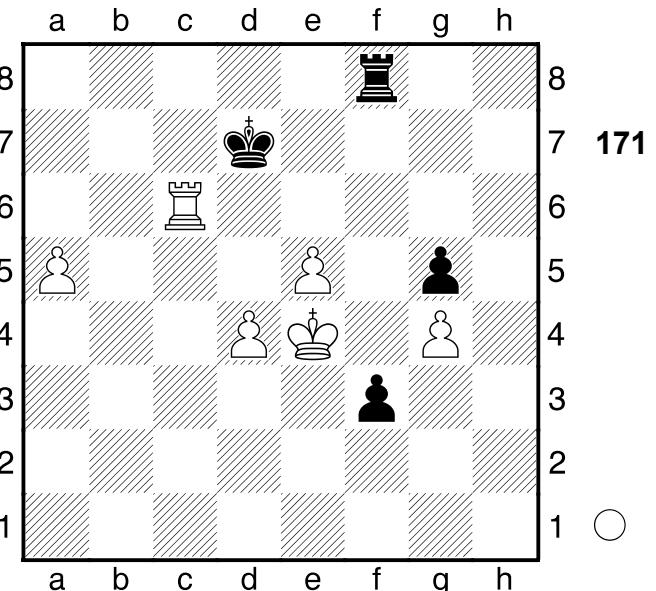
**42...bxc4 43.Rxc4 Rc8 44.Rc1 Kf7**

**45.Rb1 Ke6**

(Diagram 170)

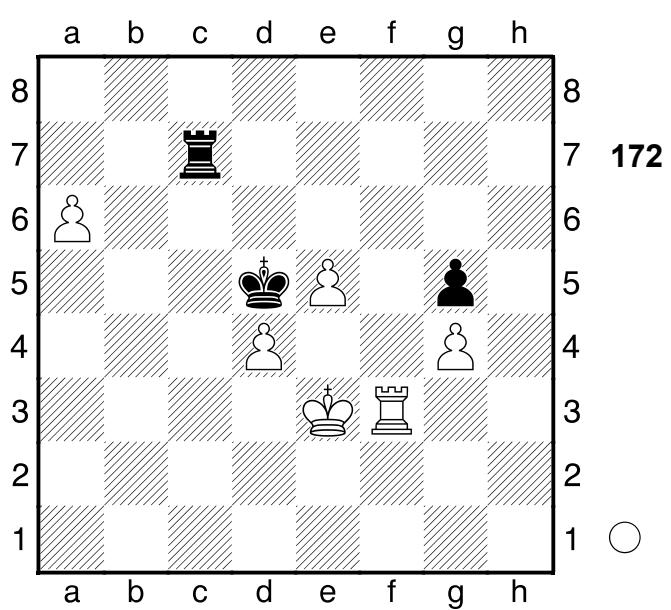


**46.Rb6 Kd7 47.Rxa6 Rf8 48.Ra7+**  
**Ke6 49.Rc7 f3 50.Rxc6+ Kd7**

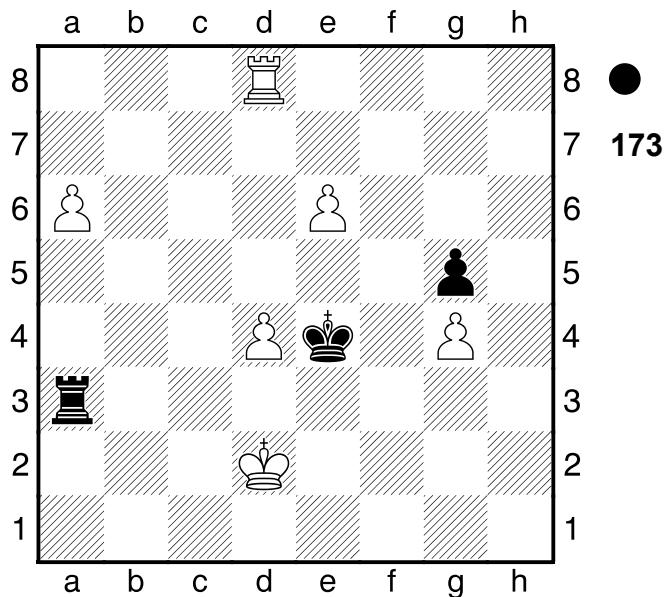


**51.Rc1 Rf4+ 52.Ke3 Ke6 53.a6 Rf7**  
**54.Rf1 Kd5 55.Rxf3 Rc7**

(Diagram 172)



**56.Rf8 Rc3+ 57.Kd2 Ra3 58.Rd8+**  
**Ke4 59.e6**



**1-0**

Nakamura,H  
 Rapport,R  
 54: FIDE Grand Prix, Sharjah  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

D07

**11.Bg2**

[In the equivalent 9...Qb6 line, White played 11.Qb3 b6 12.Qxf7 (see the notes to Game 50). Here 11.Qb3 b6 is slightly less effective as the f7-pawn is defended by the queen, and Black does not have to answer 12.Bg2 with Nge7 , transposing below, though that may be best anyway. ]

**11...Nge7** The Hungarian grandmaster Richard Rapport is one of the most creative and uncompromising player of his generation. So when he adopts this line against a top ten grandmaster, one should take note. Black allows the queen fork against b7 and f7, relying on superior development and open lines against the white king to compensate.

**12.Qb3** Nakamura accepts the challenge;

[after 12.0-0 Ng6 ]

[or 12.f4 exf4 13.e4 g5

, Black already has a good game. ]

**12...b6 13.Qxf7 Rhf8 14.Qc4**

The queen retreats to defend the centre.

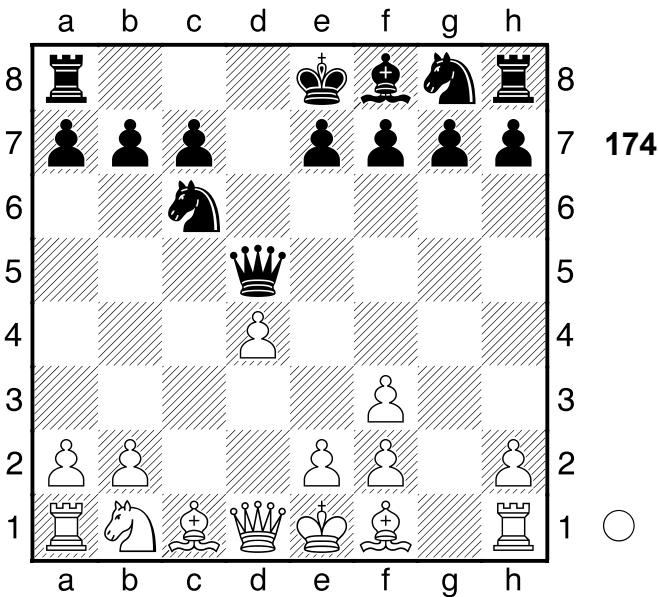
[GM Marin shows what might happen if it remains on the kingside: 14.Qh5 exd4 15.cxd4 Nxd4!? (forcing a long sequence which leads to a less than clear ending, supposing White manages to get that far) 16.exd4 Qxd4 17.Rd1 Qd3 (already the threats of ...Nf5-d4 and/or ...Rfe8 are very dangerous) 18.Bf1! Qc2 19.Qb5! Nf5 20.Be2! Nd4 21.Qa6+ Kb8 22.Be3! Nxe2 23.Qxe2 Rxd1+ 24.Qxd1 Qxa2 and White emerges with a piece for two pawns, but his king is still exposed and Marin considers that the three queenside pawns should provide Black with sufficient compensation anyway, especially in an endgame. ]

[Obviously not 14.Qxg7?? Rg8 . ]

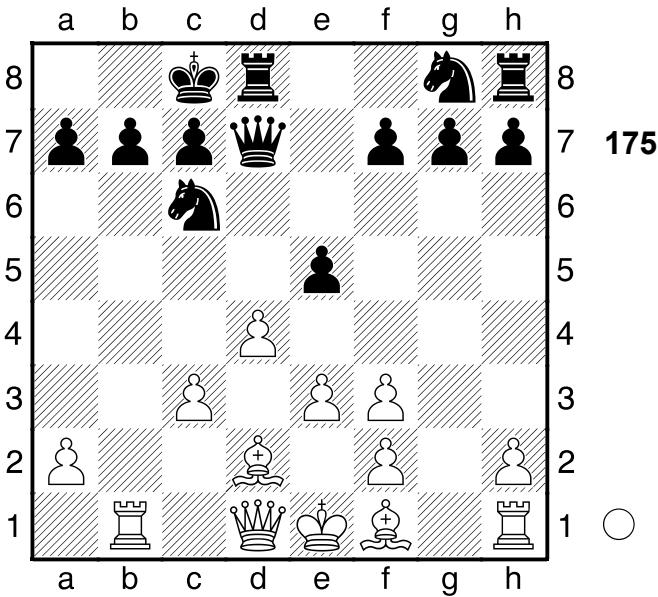
**14...Kb8 15.0-0 g5?!**

2017

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nf3 Bg4 4.cxd5 Bxf3 5.gxf3 Qxd5**

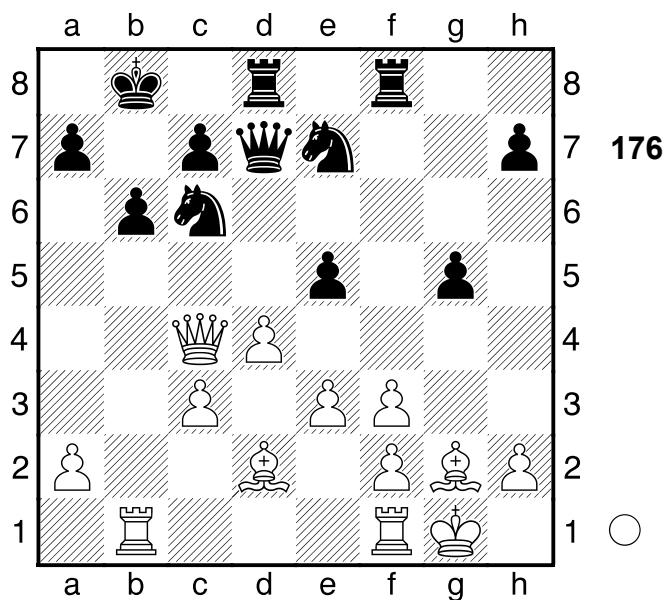


**6.e3 e5 7.Nc3 Bb4 8.Bd2 Bxc3 9.bxc3 Qd7 10.Rb1 0-0-0!?**



A more aggressive option than 10...b6 as in the previous game.

[Bringing the knight forwards with 15...Ng6! was stronger, threatening simply ...Rf6, ...Nh4 and ...Rg6. For example, 16.f4 (or 16.Rb5?! Nh4 17.d5 Nxg2 18.dxc6 Qh3 19.Qg4 Qxg4 20.fxg4 Nh4 21.Bc1 a6 and White is in trouble despite the extra pawn as his pieces are poorly placed) 16...Na5 17.Qa6? (17.Qb5 exf4 18.Qxd7 Rxd7 is roughly equal) 17...Nh4! (Black's threat of ...Qg4 is more compelling) 18.f3 Qf7 19.Rf2 (not 19.Qxa5?? Qg6 20.Rf2 Qxb1+) 19...Nc4 (Marin), when the two knights dominate the two bishops – a dream position for the Chigorin player!]



Black prevents f3-f4 for the moment, at the cost of a tempo while obstructing the g-file for his heavy pieces. **16.Rb5** Applying pressure on the black pawns along the rank. **16...Rf6?**

Having sacrificed a pawn Rapport is playing uncharacteristically passively, more concerned with his opponent's potential threats. Here he defends the c6-knight against the opening of the h1-a8 diagonal.

[Instead, he had another chance to activate the e7-knight, this time with 16...Nf5, threatening ...Nd6. Then 17.f4 can be met by e4! 18.Bxe4 Nd6 19.Qxc6 Nxe4 20.Qxd7 (not 20.Qxe4? Qxb5) 20...Rxd7 21.Rd1 gxf4 22.exf4 c5 (Marin) and Black's active pieces compensate for the pawn minus, which is a doubled f-pawn anyway.]

### **17.e4!**

[Not yet 17.dxe5 because of Re6! 18.f4? (or 18.Bh3? g4! 19.Bxg4 Rg6 20.Bc1 a6 21.Rb1? Nxe5) 18...gxf4 19.exf4 Rg6 (Marin) and Black is winning.]

### **17...h6** Black's third passive move on the trot;

[though this one was necessary as both 17...g4 18.f4 exd4 19.f5 dxc3 20.Bxc3 Nd4 21.a4 (Marin)]

[and 17...exd4 18.Bxg5 Rg6 19.Bh4 Rdg8 20.Bg3 dxc3 21.Qxc3 Nd4 22.Rb2 are very good for White.]

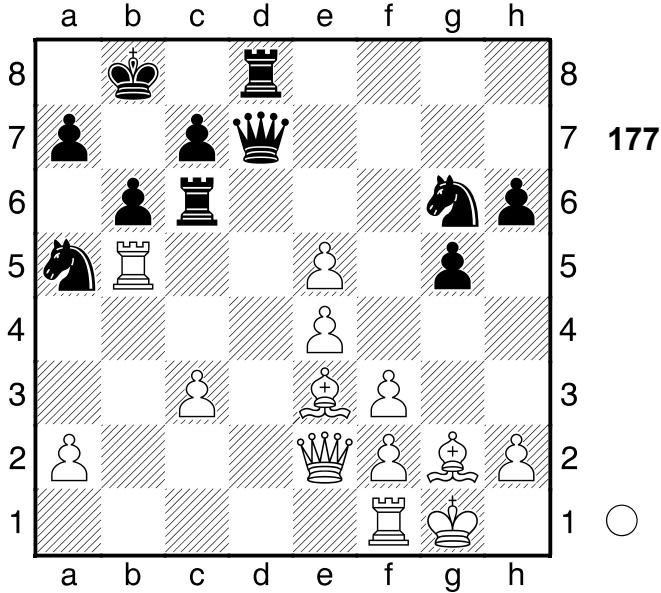
### **18.dxe5 Na5?!**

[Not 18...Re6? in view of 19.f4 gxf4 20.Bxf4 and White wins with his extra pawns. Meanwhile his king is safe from attack as the queen's bishop will retreat to g3, completely blocking the g-file.]

[The best chance now was 18...Rff8 19.Be3 Ng6, fighting for the kingside dark squares. For example, 20.e6 Qe8! 21.a4 (or 21.e7 Ncxe7 22.a4 Nc8) 21...Rf6 22.a5 Qxe6 23.Qxe6 (or 23.Qa4 a6 24.Rbb1 b5 25.c4 b4) 23...Rxe6 and Black is worse but at least still in the game.]

### **19.Qe2 Rc6 20.Be3 Ng6**

(Diagram 177)



, after which 29.e6 Rc6 30.Re8 Nf4 31.Bxf4 gxf4 32.Kg2 h5 33.Kh3 Rc5 34.Rf8 Re5 35.Kh4 leaves Black's kingside pawns as dead meat. ]

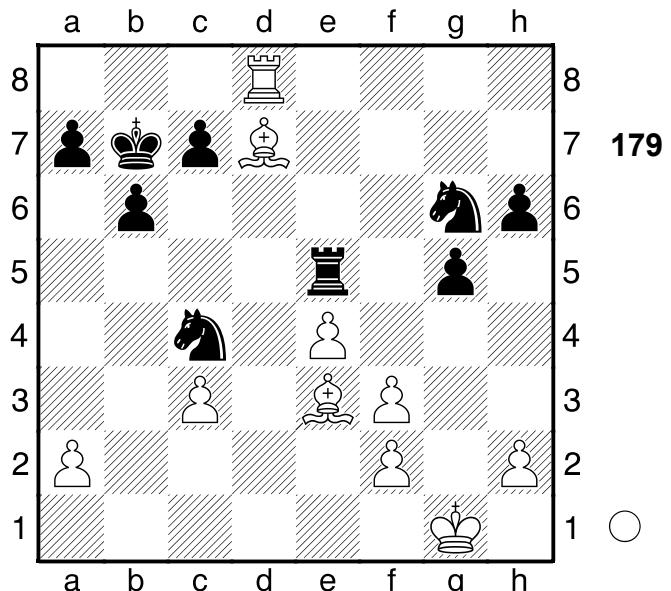
### 26...Nc4 27.Qxe6?!

[Here 27.Rg8! was correct, and if Ngxe5 (or 27...Ncxe5 28.Qd8), then 28.f4 (Marin) Qxd5 29.exd5 Rg6 30.Re8 gxf4 31.Bxf4 Nd3 32.Bg3 should win.]

### 27...Rxe6 28.Bh3 Rxe5 29.Bc8+

Nakamura starts repeating moves to gain time on the clock. 29...Kc6

### 30.Bd7+ Kb7



### 31.Bc8+ Kc6 32.Bd7+ Kb7 33.Bd4

Ra5 34.Bc8+ And again. 34...Kc6

### 35.Bd7+ Kb7

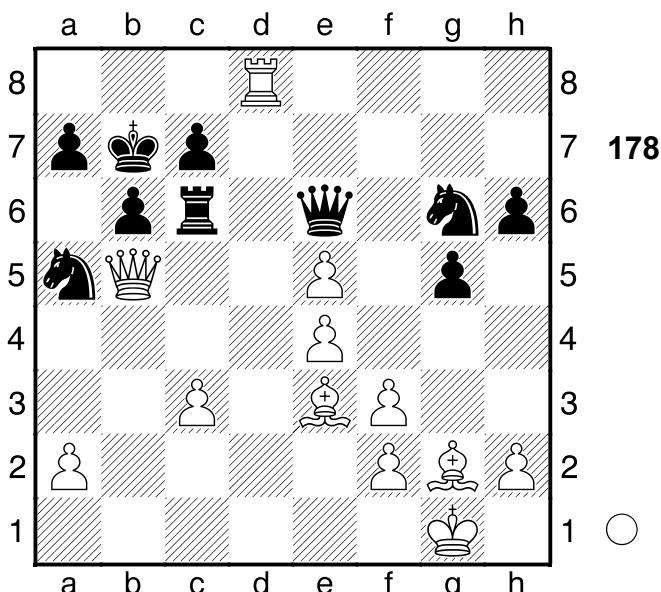
(Diagram 180)

### 21.Rd5 Qe7 22.Rfd1 Rf8 23.Qb5 Qe6

**24.Rd8+** Building up a winning position must have left Nakamura in some time pressure as he proves unable to finish things off.

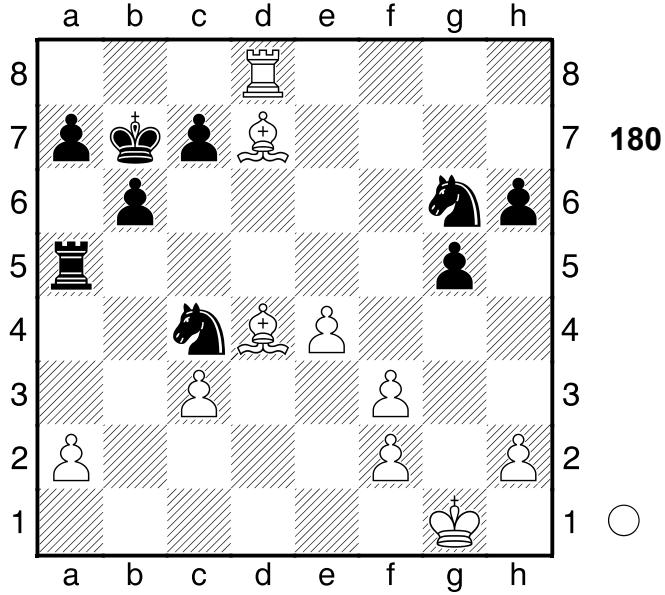
[One way was 24.c4 Nh4 (or 24...Rxc4 25.Qa6 Qc8 26.Rxa5) 25.Qa6 Qc8 26.Bh3! Qxa6 27.Rd8+ and wins.]

### 24...Rxd8 25.Rxd8+ Kb7



### 26.Qd5?!

[Instead, 26.Bf1 wins easily by forcing Nc4 27.Bxc4 Qxc4 28.Qxc4 Rxc4



**36.Bc8+ Kc6 37.Be6 Kb5?!**

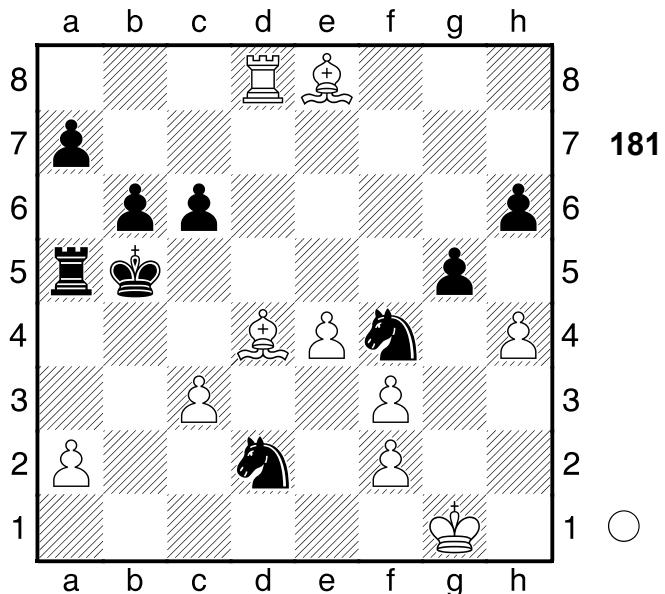
Technically this is a mistake, but...

**38.Bd7+?**

[White misses his last win (for the moment!) in 38.a4+! Rxa4 39.Rd5+ c5 (not 39...Ka6? 40.Bc8#) 40.Bd7+ (Marin) Ka5 41.Bxa4 Kxa4 42.Bg7! with a winning endgame.]

**38...c6** Somehow Rapport has managed to survive and, with the position now kind of blocked, his knights come into their own.

**39.Be8 Nf4 40.h4 Nd2**



**41.Kh2** Starting the king moving before it gets trapped on the back rank.

[Instead, after 41.Be3 Nxf3+ 42.Kf1 Nh2+ (42...Rxa2 43.Bxf4 gxf4 44.Rd6 is equal), White has to allow the perpetual since 43.Ke1? Rxa2 can only land him in trouble; e.g. 44.hxg5 hxg5 45.Bxf4 gxf4 46.Rd6 Nf3+ 47.Kd1 Ka4 48.Bxc6+ Ka3 and so forth.]

**41...gxh4?!**

[Now if 41...Nxf3+?! then 42.Kg3 and White has the better chances.]

[By inserting 41...gxh4, Black rules that out and hopes to build a mating net with 42...Nxf3+ 43.Kh1 Rxa2, but he can't maintain the knight on f4 in the meantime.]

[He should have settled for 41...Nf1+ 42.Kg1 (or 42.Kh1 Rxa2) 42...Nd2, repeating the position for a draw.]

**42.Be3 Nxf3+**

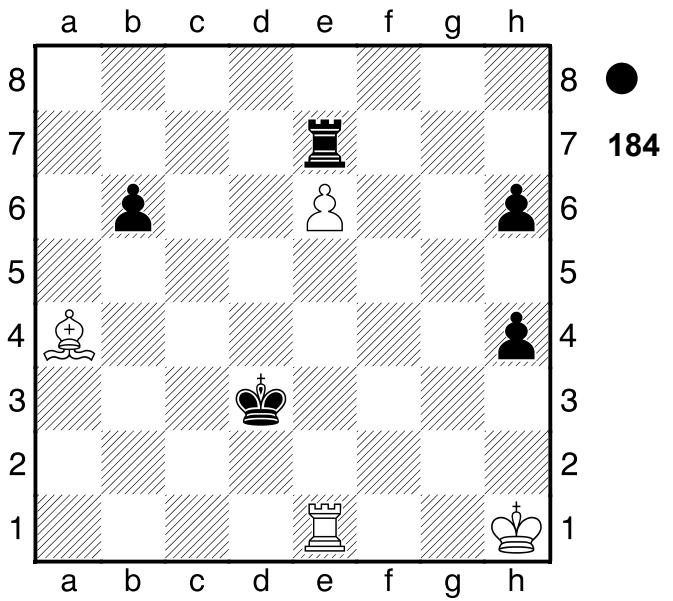
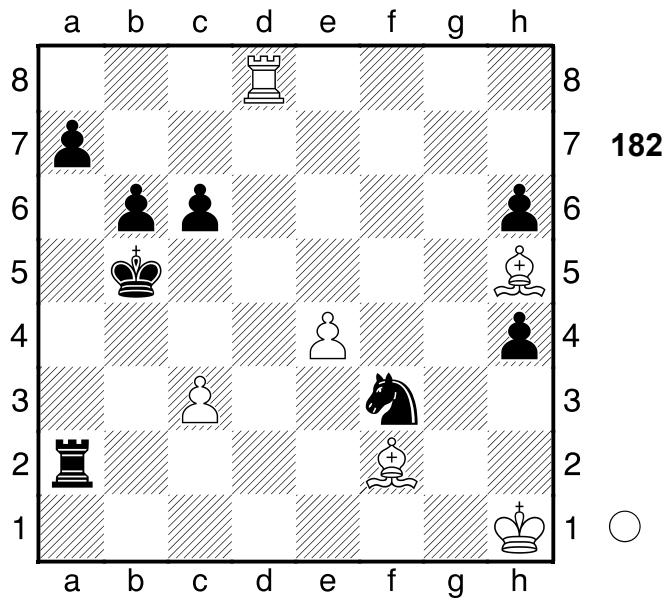
[After 42...Nf1+? 43.Kh1 Nxe3 44.fxe3 Ne2 45.Rd5+! Kc4 46.Rxa5 bxa5 47.Bxc6 Nxc3 48.Kh2 Kc5 (not 48...Kd3?? 49.e5 and wins) 49.Bd5 Nd1 50.f4 Nxe3 51.Bb7, White is clearly better with his connected passed pawns.]

**43.Kh1 Nh3 44.Bh5 Nxf2+?**

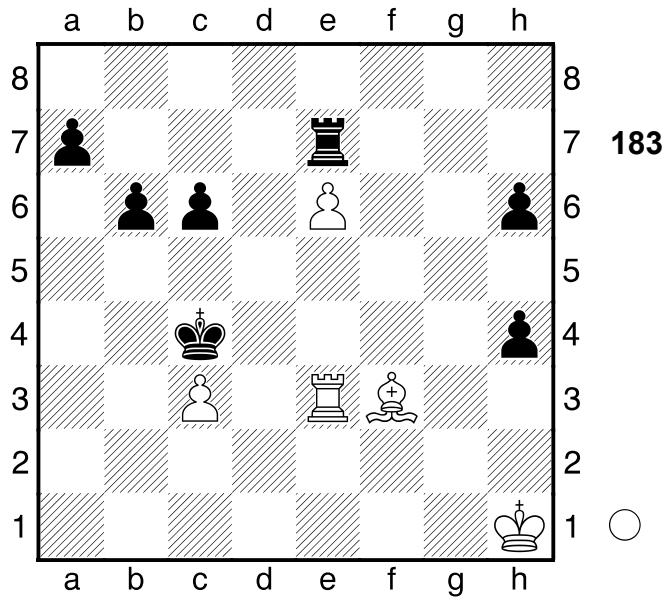
[“Premature panicking”, in Marin’s words, who says that 44...Nhg5 45.Kg2 Ne1+ 46.Kf1 h3! might yet have saved Black; e.g. 47.Be2+ Ka4 48.Rd6 h5 49.Bf4 Nef3! 50.Rh6 Ka3 51.e5 Kxa2 52.Bxg5 Nxg5 53.f4 h2 54.Rxh5 Kb3! 55.fxg5 Rxe5 56.Bf3 Rf5 57.Ke2 a5 and Black is hanging on.]

**45.Bxf2 Rxa2**

(Diagram 182)



**46.Bxf3 Rxf2** Now White's passed e-pawn wins the game. **47.Rd3 Kc4**  
**48.Re3 Rd2 49.e5 Rd7 50.e6 Re7**



1-0

**51.Bxc6 a5 52.Re4+ Kxc3 53.Bb5**  
None of Black's pawns are going anywhere since his king cannot support them, whereas White's king can vacuum up the kingside on its way to f6, and there is nothing Black can do about it.  
**53...a4 54.Bxa4 Kd3 55.Re1**

(Diagram 184)

## Chapter Four

### White Allows the Albin

After 1 d4 d5 2 c4 Nc6 ([view in Game format](#)), both 3 Nc3 and 3 Nf3 aim to deter Black from playing ...e7-e5. The former attacks the d5-pawn (see the notes to [Game 17](#)); the latter increases White's control over the e5-square. Therefore transpositions from the Chigorin to the Albin mainly occur when White plays 3 e3, and then answers 3...e5 with 4 dx5, as in the first two games below.



[55: E.Bareev-A.Morozevich, Russian Championship, Elista 1997](#)

[56: E.Agrest-M.Sadler, German League 2003](#)

[57: C.Matamoros Franco-W.Arencibia Rodriguez, Santa Clara 1996](#)

## Summary

It is quite rare for Black to reach an Albin Counter-Gambit from the Chigorin. It generally means that White has to play 3 e3 e5 and then 4 dxe5, after which [Game 56](#) shows that Black has no problems in any case. Another possibility is for Black to answer 3 Nf3 with 3...e5!?, as in [Game 57](#), when 4 dxe5 gives him the choice between a standard Albin with 4...d4 or independent play with 4...dxc4. The danger is that White can opt for 4 Nxe5! instead.

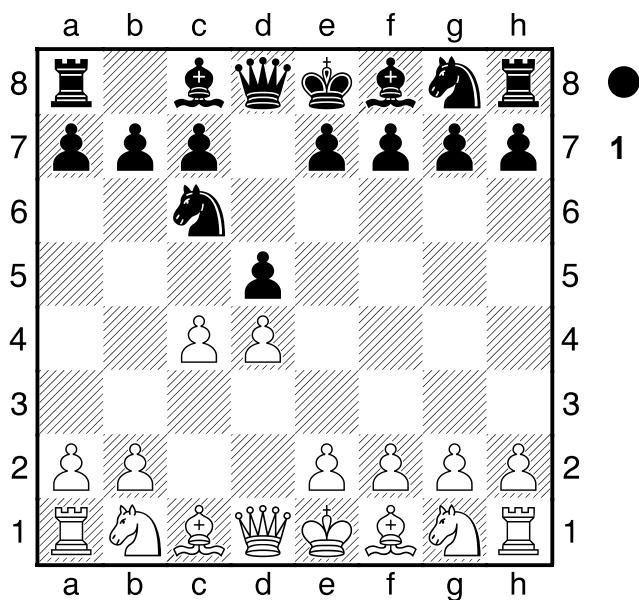
## Chapter Four: Intro [Jimmy Liew]

After 1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 : 3.--

[both 3.Nc3 ]

[and 3.Nf3 aim to deter Black from playing ...e7-e5. The former attacks the d5-pawn (see the notes to Game 17); the latter increases White's control over the e5-square. ]

[Therefore transpositions from the Chigorin to the Albin mainly occur when White plays 3.e3 , and then answers e5 with 4.dxe5 , as in the first two games below. ]



Bareev,E  
 Morozevich,A  
 55: Russian Championship, Elista 1997  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

D08

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.e3 e5** This move was the main idea behind 2...Nc6 so it would make little sense to defer now.

[For instance, 3...Nf6

**A)** 4.cxd5 Nxd5 (after 4...Qxd5?! 5.Nc3, there is no ...Bb4 because Black's e-pawn is still on e7) 5.Nf3 (or 5.Bb5 sets Black problems; 5.e4 Nf6 6.d5 Nb8 and ...e7-e6 may be playable);

**B)** or just 4.Nf3, since 4...Bg4 would be met by 5.cxd5 again.]

**4.dxe5!?** As we've seen in other chapters, taking the e5-pawn usually allows Black an easy game, and 4 dxe5 is not the critical move here either. Nevertheless, it was suggested by GM Glenn Flear in 'Dangerous Weapons: The Queen's Gambit' as a way to "take the fun out of the Albin and Chigorin", so it needs to be considered seriously.

[Others mostly transpose elsewhere:  
a) 4.cxd5! is the strongest move, when Qxd5 reaches the main line of Chapter One.]

[b) 4.Nc3 dxc4 is Game 24 in Chapter Two; (while 4...Bb4 5.a3 Bxc3+ 6.bxc3 Nf6 7.cxd5 Qxd5 is Game 3 in Chapter One again.)]

[c) 4.Nf3

**A)** 4...Bg4!? is Game 40 in Chapter Three. 5.-- (5.--);

**B)** Instead, 4...e4!? 5.Nfd2 is asking too much of Black's position;

**C)** but 4...exd4 5.Nxd4 (or 5.exd4 Bb4+) 5...Nxd4 6.exd4 (or 6.Qxd4 Be6) 6...Nf6 looks like a simple

equalizer.]

**4...d4!** Black pushes past in the typical Albin fashion. **5.a3** This is the move recommended by Flear, largely on the basis of the current game. Its main point is to prevent ...Bb4+;

[as after 5.Nf3 Bb4+ 6.Bd2 dxe3 7.fxe3, when White's extra pawn is worthless.]

[Exchanging on d4 with 5.exd4 Qxd4 6.Qxd4 Nxd4 is well known to be acceptable for Black. The immediate threat is ...Nc2+, so 7.Bd3 is forced and then:

**A)** 7...Bg4 is usually given an "!" following a crushing victory in R. Réti-E.Bogoljubow, Kiel 1921, which continued 8.f3 (after 8.h3; or 8.Nc3 0-0-0 9.h3, the bishop's best retreat is to e6, so it might as well have gone there at once) 8...Be6

**A1)** 9.Be3?! 0-0-0 10.Bxd4 Rxd4 11.Ke2 Ne7 12.Nd2 Ng6 13.Bxg6 hxg6 14.b3 Bf5 15.a3 Be7, when Black had a excellent game. (15...--);

**A2)** However, 9.Ne2 0-0-0 10.Nxd4 Rxd4 11.Be2 improves, as in D.Velimirovic-A. Morozevich, ICC 2002.;

**B)** 7...Ne7!? is a more recent try.

**B1)** Then 8.Ne2 Bf5 (or 8...Ndc6!?, with ideas of ...Nb4, M.Foisor-S.K.Williams, British League 2017) 9.Nxd4 Bxd3 10.Na3 was S.Muheim-F.Raab, French League 2010, and now Ng6! looks good for Black.;

**B2)** Not 8.Be3 Bf5 9.Bxf5? Nxf5 and the threat of ...Nc2+ is very awkward for White.;

**B3)** Probably White should prefer 8.Nc3!, intending 8...Nec6 (or 8...Bf5 9.Bxf5 Nxf5 10.Kf1)

9.Bf4 (or 9.Be3 Nxe5; but not 9.f4? Nb4) 9...Be6 10.0-0-0 0-0-0, though Black looks okay in all these lines; e.g. 11.b3 h6 12.h4 Bc5, followed by ...Rhe8, and White will not manage to hang on to the e5-pawn.]

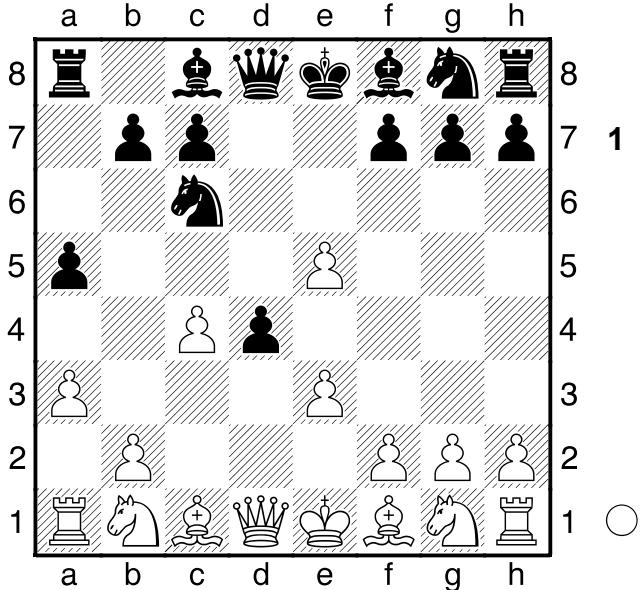
## 5...a5!?

[Instead:

a) 5...Be6 is examined in the next game.]  
 [b) 5...dxe3!? 6.Qxd8+ Kxd8 7.Bxe3 Nxe5 regains the pawn at the cost of ceding the initiative. It may not be entirely pleasant, but Black should still be okay; e.g. 8.Nf3!? (or 8.Nc3 Be6 9.0-0-0+ Kc8 10.c5 Nf6 11.h3 a5 and Black looks more than fine, Pr. Nikolic-J.Piket, Monte Carlo rapid 1996) 8...Nxf3+ 9.gxf3 Be6 10.Nc3 Ne7 11.0-0-0+ Kc8 12.Ne4 Nf5 13.Ng5 Nxe3 14.fxe3 Bc5 15.Nxe6 was J.Lopez Martinez-J.Fluvia Poyatos, Barcelona 2017, and now after Bxe3+ 16.Kc2 fxe6 17.Bh3 (Flear) a5 18.Bxe6+ Kb8, it's hard to believe White has more than equality.]

[c) 5...Nge7 6.Nf3 (6.f4 can be met by g5!; while 6.b4 dxe3!? 7.Qxd8+ Kxd8 8.Bxe3 Nxe5 is looks like a good version of line 'b' for Black)  
 6...Bg4 7.exd4 (or 7.Be2 dxe3 8.Qxd8+ Rxd8 9.Bxe3 Bxf3 10.Bxf3 Nxe5 11.Bxb7 Nxc4 12.Bxa7 Na5 13.Bf3 Nb3 14.Ra2 Nc1 15.Ra1 Nb3 with a draw, J.Parker-N.Pert, British Championship, Swansea 2006) 7...Bxf3 8.Qxf3 Qxd4 9.Nc3 Qxe5+ 10.Be2 has been seen a few times. As yet no one has tried Nd4! 11.Qxb7 Rd8 12.f4 Qe6 13.Kf2 Nec6 14.b4 which is as "messy" as Flear says, although the engines very much like Black's position after Be7

.]



Preventing White from pushing the b-pawn, thus securing the c6-knight and the c5-square for the f8-bishop, but White has probably gained more from the inclusion of the two a-pawn moves.

**6.Nf3 Bc5 7.exd4** White has resisted taking on d4 but can hardly delay any longer.

[For instance, 7.Be2 Bf5! would force an exchange under inferior circumstances, as 8.0-0?? loses a piece to d3.]

**7...Bxd4** IM Watson gave this move an "!" back in 1981.

[7...Nxd4 8.Be3 Bg4 9.Be2 is at least slightly better for White.]

## 8.Be2

[If 8.Nxd4 Qxd4 9.Nc3, Black should not be too hasty to recapture the e5-pawn, as White can then develop an edge with the two bishops; e.g. Qxd1+ (or 9...Qxe5+ 10.Qe2 Be6 11.Qxe5 Nxe5, transposing) 10.Nxd1 Be6 11.Nc3 Nxe5?! (instead, either 11...0-0-0; or 11...Nge7 looks to give adequate compensation) 12.Bf4 f6 13.0-0-0

**Ne7** 14.b3 (Flear) and Black is on the defensive.]

### 8...Nge7 9.0-0 0-0 10.Nc3

[White has two other promising options:

a) 10.Bg5 Bxb2 11.Ra2 Qxd1 (or 11...f6 12.Qxd8 Rxd8 13.Bxf6 gxf6 14.Rxb2 fxe5 15.Nc3 Rb8 16.Nb5 – Flear) 12.Rxd1 f6 13.Rxb2 (or 13.Bxf6 again) 13...fxg5 14.Nxg5 Nxe5 15.Nc3 Ra6 16.Rb5 N7g6 , A.Bonte-A.Chibukhchian, European Championship, Budva 2009; and now 17.g3 (intending f2-f4) h6 18.Nge4 Nf3+ 19.Kg2 Nge5 20.Nd5

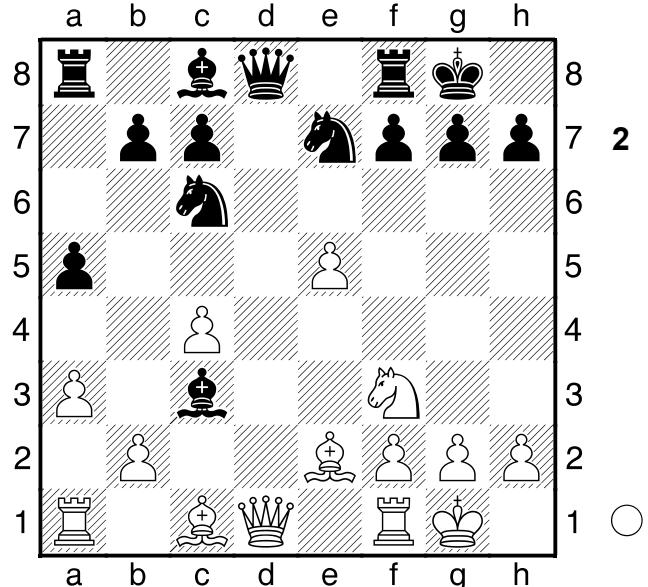
appears to give White an edge.]

[b) 10.Ra2!? (Flear) Bxe5 11.Nxe5 Nxe5 12.Nc3 Be6 13.b3 Qxd1 14.Rxd1 Rfd8 15.Rxd8+ Rxd8 16.Rd2 Rxd2 17.Bxd2 left Black in an inferior endgame, A.Aleksandrov-C.Philippe, European Championship, Aix les Bains 2011.]

### 10...Bxc3!?

[After 10...Bxe5 11.Nxe5 Qxd1 (or 11...Nxe5 12.Bf4 N7g6 13.Bg3 Bf5 14.Qb3 – Flear) 12.Rxd1 Nxe5 13.f4 N5g6 14.g3 , White has the bishop pair and can start working on his advantage.]

(Diagram 2)



**11.bxc3 Ng6 12.Bg5** As Flear writes: “White has a broken structure and Black is likely to soon regain his pawn, but the influence of the bishop pair shouldn’t be underestimated.”

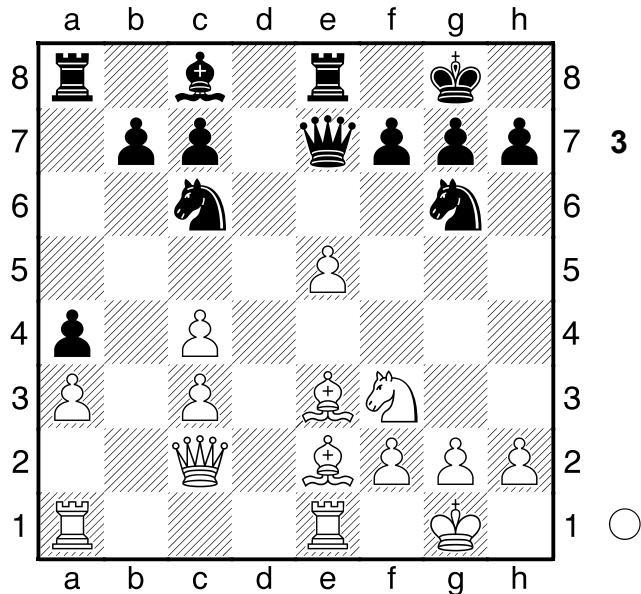
### 12...Qe8!?

Morozevich plays optimistically, not wanting merely to fight for a draw after exchanging queens, even if he might anticipate getting one. For example, 12...Qxd1 13.Raxd1 h6 14.Be3 Ngxe5 15.Nd4 (the knight is strongly placed here, controlling the e6- and f5-squares at which the bishop on g5 gazes longingly) (instead, 15.Nxe5 Nxe5 16.Bf4 f6 17.Bxe5 fxe5 18.Bf3 Be6 19.Bxb7 Rad8 20.Bd5 Bxd5 21.cxd5 Rf4 is comfortable for Black, despite being a pawn down, in view of White’s weaknesses on c3 and a3) 15...Bd7 (this is not a square the bishop wants to stay on for long, as it is prone to a discovered attack by the rook on the d-file, though for the moment it is defended by the e5-knight) 16.h3 (16.f4 can be met by Nxd4 17.Bxd4 Bg4! 18.Bxg4 Nxg4 with equality) 16...Rac8 17.Rfe1 Ng6 18.c5 Rfe8

19.Rb1 Nxd4 20.cxd4 Bc6 21.Bb5 Ne7 22.Bxc6 bxc6 23.Rb7 Nd5  
 24.Bd2 Rxe1+ 25.Bxe1 Ra8  
 , when the position has stabilized in reverse: Black is now the one with the well-placed knight and doubled c-pawns, whereas White has straightened his own pawns out but has been left with a bad bishop, so all is well in the black camp. ]

**13.Re1 a4** If either knight takes on e5, White would move his own knight to d4, when Black still has problems to solve on the e-file. **14.Be3 Qe7** Taking on e5 allows Bc5, trapping the f8-rook.

### 15.Qc2 Re8



**16.Bf1 Ncxe5?!** QUESTION: Why is this a mistake? Recapturing the pawn cannot be bad, can it?

ANSWER: The e5-pawn is inconsequential to the position. It would be better to let White commit his pieces to its defence.

[Instead, Black can improve the position of his own forces with 16...Bd7 17.Bd4 (or 17.Rad1 Bg4!) 17...Na5 , heading for the b3-square, when White's a3-pawn requires life-long defending, since losing it would

mean the a4-pawn becomes a giant beast.]

### 17.Nxe5 Qxe5

[Not 17...Nxe5? 18.Bd4 Qg5 19.Qe4 Bf5 20.Qxb7 Ng6 21.Qxc7 and we can see that the two powerful bishops combined with the passed c-pawns add up to a win for White.]

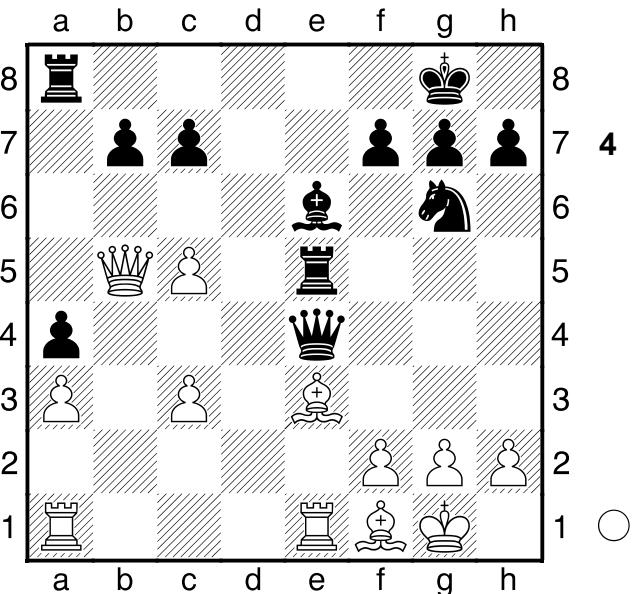
### 18.Qb2

[Morozhevich mentions that White could have played 18.Bf4! Qxe1 19.Rxe1 Rxe1 20.Qd2 (not 20.Bxc7? , when the threat of winning the f1-bishop by capturing on c4 forces White to accede to a draw: Be6 21.Qd2 Ra1 22.Qb2 Rd1 23.Qe2 etc; whereas now the back rank weakness forces the black rook to retreat ) 20...Re8 21.Bxc7 with decent winning chances, as long as the minor pieces remain on the board and there is a weak black pawn on b7.]

### 18...Qe4 19.Qb5?!

[ 19.Bf4! was still possible.]

### 19...Re5 20.c5 Be6



### 21.Rad1 h6?!

[Bareev's notes gives a terse 21...Qc6! with an "equal" sign, presumably considering White's

nominal advantage impossible to realize.]

[Another option was 21...Bd5!?, intending to put the bishop on c6, while if 22.Qd7 Bc6 23.Qxc7 then Nh4! gives Black sufficient counterplay; e.g. 24.f3 Nxf3+ 25.gxf3 Qxf3 26.Qxe5 Qh1+ 27.Kf2 Qf3+ with a draw.]

## 22.Bd3

[After 22.f4 Black might have to try Nxf4!? (not 22...Rd5? 23.Qxb7; while after 22...Rh5 23.c4, Black's pieces have been thrown out of co-ordination and White stands much better) 23.Rd4 Nh3+!? 24.gxh3 Qg6+ 25.Kf2 Rf5+ 26.Rf4 Rxf4+ 27.Bxf4 Qf6 28.Kg3 Qg6+ 29.Kf3 Rd8 (Morozevich) with decent practical chances, even if the engine finds them insufficient.]

## 22...Qg4? A serious mistake.

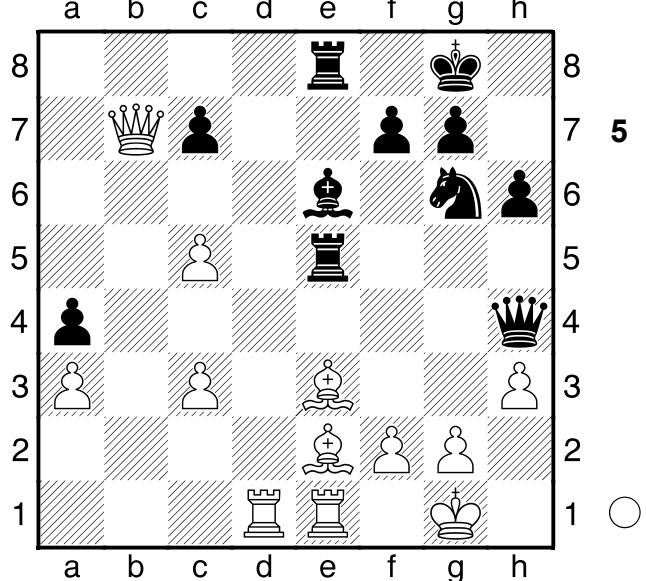
[After 22...Qc6! (again) 23.Qxc6 bxc6 24.Bxg6 (or 24.f4 Rd5) 24...fxg6 25.Bxh6 Rxe1+ 26.Rxe1 Rb8 27.Bd2 Kf7, White cannot do much with his extra pawn.]

## 23.h3!

[Not 23.Qxb7?? Bd5 24.f3 Qe6 and White loses a piece.]

## 23...Qh5 24.Be2 Qh4 25.Qxb7 Re8

(Diagram 5)



**26.Qxc7** Two pawns down Black is just lost, so Morozevich tries to stir up some complications. **26...Rxe3 27.fxe3 Qg5**

**28.Bf1?!** It's very hard to defend perfectly in time trouble. Sliding the king to the h-file was better.

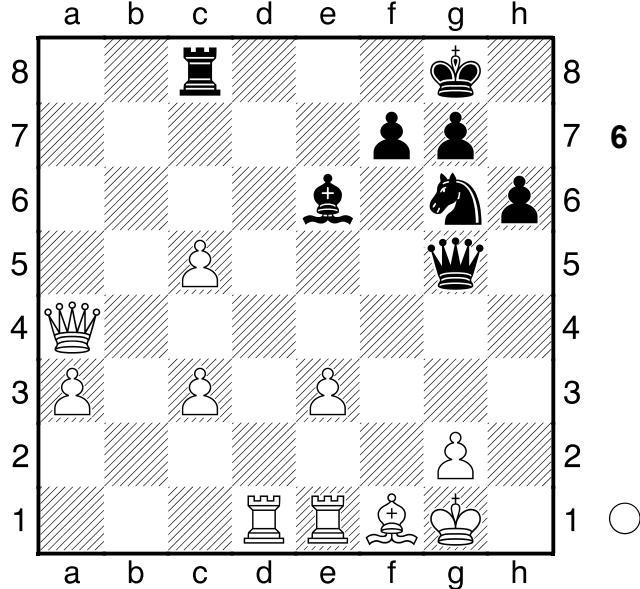
**28...Bxh3 29.Qc6 Rc8?!** It can also be hard to attack in time trouble, especially when there isn't really anything there.

[Nevertheless, Black might have tried 29...Re5!? 30.Qxa4 Rf5 (threatening ...Rxf1+) 31.Qa8+ Kh7 (threatening ...Qg3) 32.Bd3 Rxc5 33.Rd2 Rxc3 34.Qf3 Be6, when he still has practical chances.]

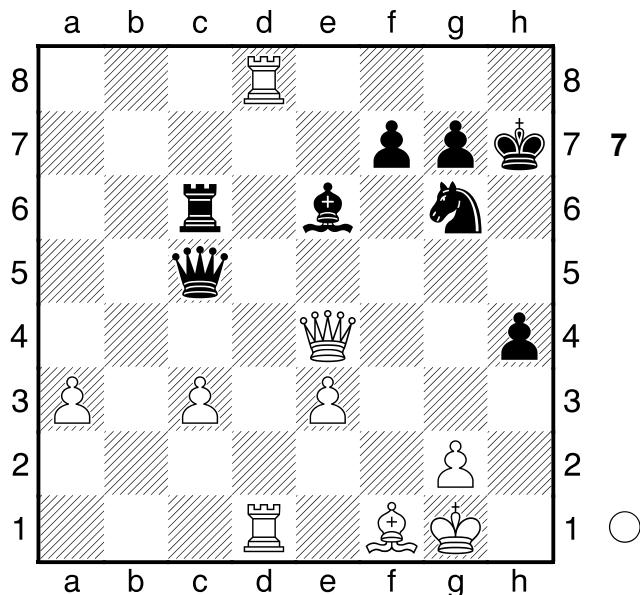
## 30.Qxa4 Be6?!

[Since 30...Rxc5 would be answered by 31.Qd4.]

(Diagram 6)



**31.c6 h5 32.Rd2 h4 33.Qe4 Qc5  
34.Red1 Rxc6 35.Rd8+ Kh7**



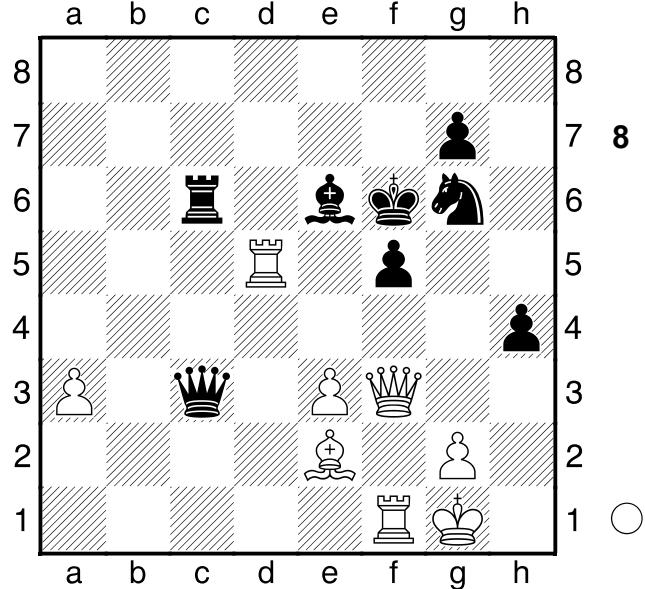
**36.Bd3 f5 37.Qf3 Kh6 38.Be2 Kg5**

**39.R8d5!** A nice move to find at this stage of the game. **39...Qxc3**

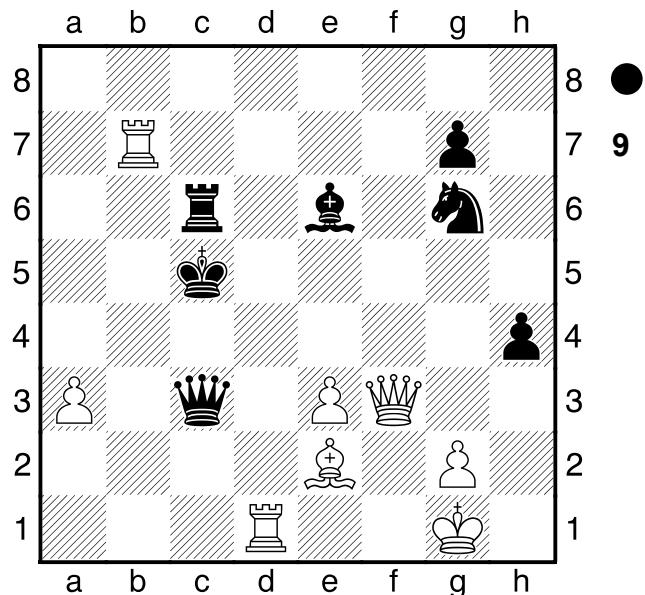
[ The rook can't be taken because 39...Bxd5? 40.Rxd5 Qxc3 41.Rxf5+ Kh6 42.Qh5# is mate. ]

**40.Rf1 Kf6??!**

[ 40...Ne7 41.Qh5+ Kf6 42.Rd3 Qe5 43.Qxh4+ Kf7 44.e4 Rc4 holds on for a little longer. ]



**41.Rxf5+! Ke7 42.Rf7+ Kd6 43.Rd1+ Kc5 44.Rb7**



. Since the check on b5 is devastating.  
**1-0**

Agrest,E  
 Sadler,M  
 56: German League  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

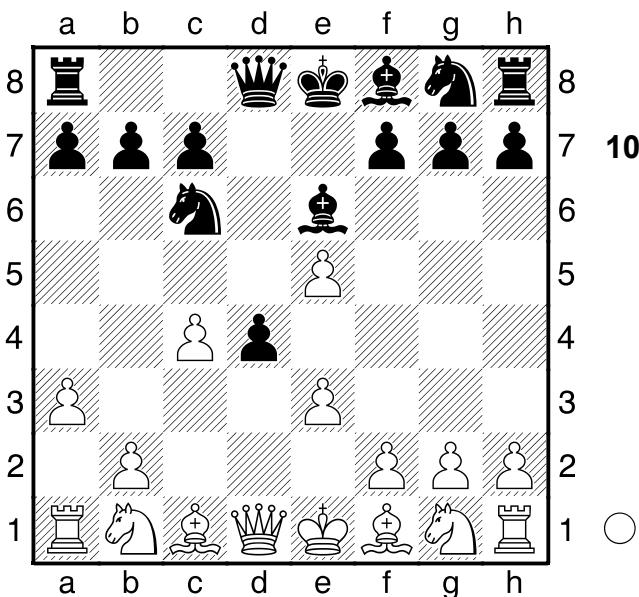
D08

2003

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 e5 3.dxe5 d4**

This time we have an actual Albin Counter-Gambit. Agrest now adopts the a2-a3/e2-e3 system, and we transpose to 2...Nc6 3 e3 e5 4 dxe5 d4 5 a3 from the previous game.

**4.a3 Nc6 5.e3 Be6**



Black prepares to capture on e3 now that his queen's rook is cleared to retake after an exchange of queens. Sometimes Black puts the bishop on f5 instead, but this seems less appropriate since his king's knight often wants that square.

**6.Nf3**

[ 6.Qa4

**A)** 6...Qd7 7.Nf3 dxe3 8.Bxe3 Nxe5 9.Qxd7+ Nxd7 10.Nc3 0-0-0 didn't give White anything in A. Aleksandrov-B.Kharchenko, St. Petersburg 2015. ( 10...-- );  
**B)** Black can also play 6...Bc5

, hoping for 7.b4?? (or otherwise 7.Nf3 dxe3 8.fxe3 a5) 7...dxe3 8.bxc5 exf2+ 9.Kxf2 Qd4+ and wins. ]

**6...dxe3 7.Qxd8+ Rxd8 8.Bxe3 Nge7 9.Nc3**

[Alternatives fail to give White an advantage either:

a) 9.Ng5 Nf5 10.Nxe6 fxe6 11.Bg5 Be7 12.Bxe7 Kxe7 13.Nd2 Nxe5 and Black stands well, M.Sbarra-E. Marchio, Corsico 1996. ]

[b) 9.Nbd2 Nf5 10.Bg5 Rd7 11.h3 h6 12.Bf4 Bc5!? 13.Ne4 Bd4 14.Rb1 Nfe7 15.Nxd4 Rxd4 16.f3 Bf5 17.Rd1 Rxd1+ 18.Kxd1 Bxe4 19.fxe4 Ng6 with a nice position for the knights, S.Swapnil-P.Dargan, Dubai 2011. ]

[c) 9.Bf4 Ng6 10.Bg3 h5 11.h4 (or 11.h3 h4 12.Bh2 Rh5) 11...Nd4 12.Nxd4 Rxd4 13.Nd2 Be7 14.Be2?! (or 14.Nf3 Re4+ 15.Kd2 Bxc4) 14...Nxh4 15.0-0-0 Nf5 and Black is better, A.Simonson-K.Opocensky, Folkestone Olympiad 1933. ]

[d) 9.Bg5 h6 10.Bxe7 Kxe7! 11.Nbd2 g5 12.0-0-0 Bg7 13.Re1 g4 14.Nh4 Bxe5 , regaining the pawn with a clear advantage in view of the bishop pair and White's weakened queenside, B.Bitan-S.Abu Sufian, Dhaka 2009. ]

**9...Nf5**

[More accurate than 9...Ng6 10.Nb5 Rd7 11.Nbd4 Ngxe5 12.Nxe5 Nxe5 13.Nxe6 fxe6 14.Be2 , when White perhaps has a slight edge. ]

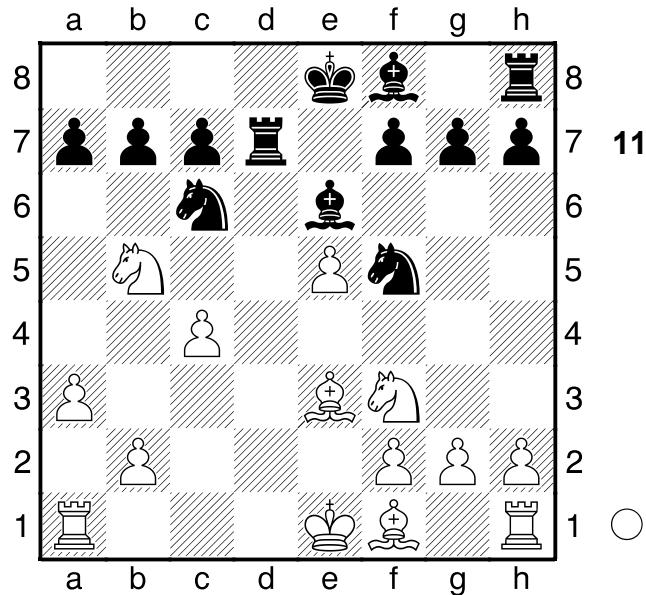
**10.Nb5**

[If White avoids the exchange of bishop for knight with 10.Bf4 , Black responds h6 (threatening ...g7-g5)

**A)** if 11.Nd5 at once, then Bxd5 12.cxd5 Rxd5 13.Bc4 Rc5!

is okay, in view of 14.Rc1 (or 14.Bd3 Nfd4) 14...g5;  
**B)** while 11.Nb5 Rd7 transposes to the next note;  
**C)** 11.h4 Ncd4 (rather than 11...Be7?! 12.Nd5 Bxd5 13.cxd5 Rxd5 14.Bc4 Rc5 15.Rc1 a5?! 16.0-0 and Black's rook was in difficulties, V.Babula-M.Krasenkov, Brno 1994) 12.Nxd4 Rxd4 13.g3 Bxc4 with equality, since 14.Be3? is met by Nxe3 15.fxe3 Rg4 (Babula). ]

#### 10...Rd7



#### 11.Rd1

[Again 11.Bf4 is answered by h6. For example, 12.h3 (or 12.g4 Nfe7 13.h3 a6 14.Nc3 Na5) 12...a6 13.Nc3 Bc5 (or 13...Na5 14.Nd5 b5 15.Bd2 Nb3 16.Rd1 Bc5 17.Nb4 Nxd2 18.Rxd2 bxc4 19.Nxa6 Bb6 20.Nb8 Rxd2 21.Nxd2 0-0 22.Nc6 c3 23.bxc3 Ra8 and Black has the a-file for his rook) 14.Be2 Nfd4 15.Rc1 Nb3 16.Rd1 Rxd1+ 17.Nxd1 Nca5 and Black will regain his pawn with the better development.]

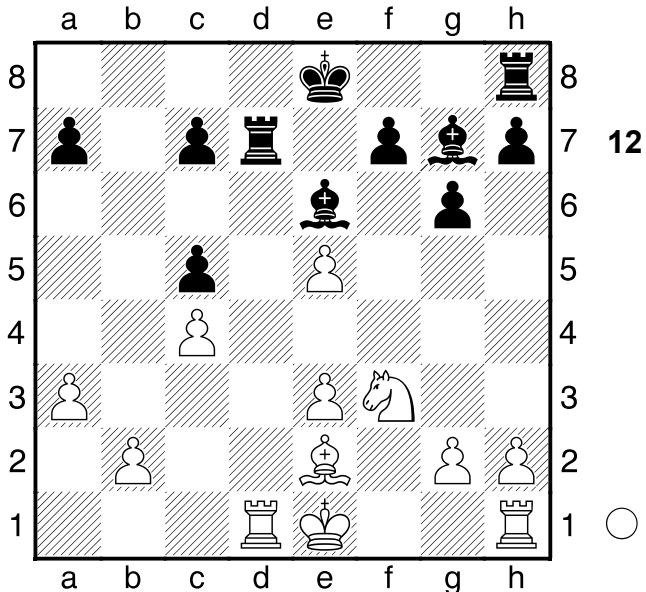
**11...Nxe3 12.fxe3 g6** Black prepares to train his dark-squared bishop on e5.

[This is a clear improvement on 12...Bc5?! 13.Rxd7 Kxd7 14.Kf2 Re8?! 15.Bd3 Bg4 16.b4 Bf8 17.h3 Bxf3 18.Bf5+ Ke7 19.gxf3 and White kept his pawn is T.Arnason-B.Finegold, Reykjavik 1990. ]

#### 13.Nbd4 Bg7 14.Nxc6

[Or 14.Nxe6 fxe6 15.Rxd7 Kxd7 16.Bd3 Nxe5 17.Nxe5+ Bxe5 with a level endgame, N.Hjelm-H. Tikkannen, Swedish League 2009. ]

#### 14...bxc6 15.Be2 c5



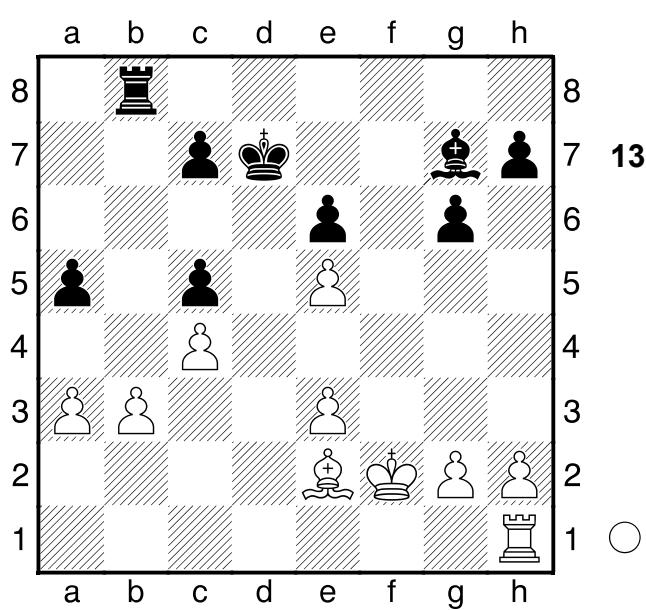
#### 16.Kf2 a5 17.b3 Ke7 18.Ng5

White signals that he is resigned to a draw.

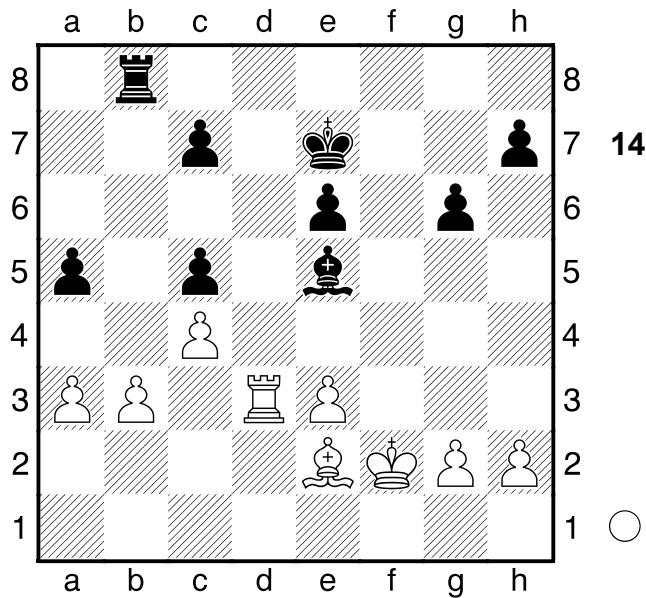
[ 18.Bd3 Rb8 19.Bc2 Bg4 20.Rxd7+ Kxd7 21.Rd1+ Ke7 22.a4 Bxf3 23.gxf3 Bxe5 would lead to the same result. ]

#### 18...Rb8 19.Nxe6 fxe6 20.Rxd7+ Kxd7

(Diagram 13)



**21.Rd1+ Ke7 22.Rd3 Bxe5**



. Material balance is restored and the opposite-coloured bishops mean only one possible result. The English grandmaster made it look easy to draw in this variation.

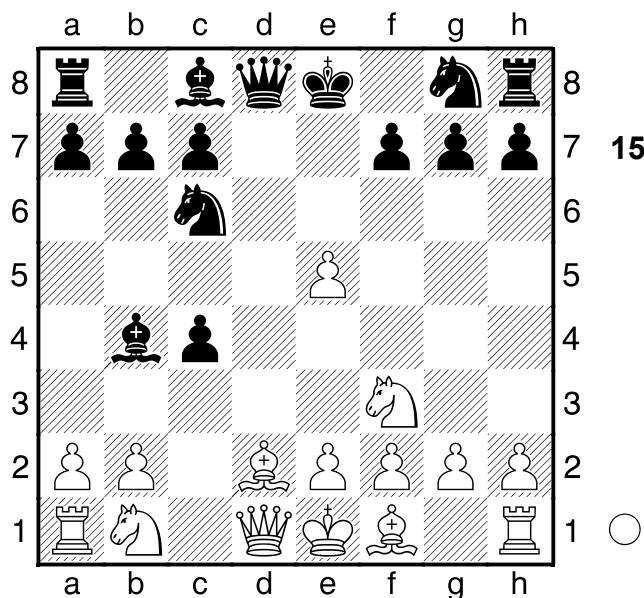
$\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}$

	D07	
<input type="checkbox"/> Matamoros Franco,C <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Arencibia Rodriguez,W 57: Santa Clara [Jimmy Liew]	1996	<p>is fine for Black, T.Carvalho-R. Disconzi da Silva, Brasilia 1999.;</p> <p><b>C2)</b> <u>6.e4 Ne7 7.f4 Nc6 8.Bd3 g5!</u> is quite unclear; e.g. 9.0-0 Bg7 10.Nd2 gxf4 11.Nf3 Bh6 12.Qb3 Qe7 13.Bd2 Rb8 14.e6 Bxe6 15.Qb5 Qf6 16.e5 Qg7 17.Rae1 0-0 and Black is not worse, R.Pert-M.Al Modiahki, Isle of Man 2003.;</p> <p><b>C3)</b> <u>6.g3 Ne7 (not 6...Be6?!</u> 7.Bg2 c6 8.Nd2 Qd7 9.0-0 Be7 10.Ne4 Bxc4 11.Bf4 and White is much better, C.Crouch-N. Povah, London 1996 ) 7.Bg2 Nc6 8.0-0 (or 8.f4 h5!?) 8...Nxe5 9.e3 was M.Hebden-S.K.Williams, Hastings 2007/08, when dxe3 10.Qxd8+ Kxd8 11.Bxe3 Nxc4 seems okay for Black.;</p> <p><b>C4)</b> <u>6.Nd2 Ne7</u></p> <p><b>C4a)</b> if <u>7.a3 Nc6 8.Nf3 Bg4</u> 9.Qb3 , as in Alb.David-J. Mellado Trivino, Casablanca 1994, then Qd7! and ...0-0-0, or 10.Qxb7 Rb8 11.Qa6 Be7 and ...0-0 with decent play for the pawns;</p> <p><b>C4b)</b> while <u>7.g3</u> might be met by Ng6!?, intending 8.f4? (or 8.Nf3 Bc5 9.Bg2 0-0 10.0-0 Re8 ) 8...Nxf4!;</p> <p><b>C4c)</b> <u>7.Nf3 Nc6 8.g3 Be6</u> 9.b3 (here 9.Bg2! Bxc4 10.0-0 may improve ) 9...Qd7 10.Bg2 0-0-0 11.a3 Bh3 12.0-0 Be7 13.Bb2 f6 14.exf6 Bxf6 and Black had good play in P.Krusina-M.Lyell, Teplice 2010. ]</p> <p><b>4...Bb4+!?</b> This move keeps the opening independent; [whereas 4...d4 transposes to the Albin, for which you'll need to buy another book! ]</p>
<b>1.d4 d5 2.c4 Nc6 3.Nf3 e5!?</b>		A speculative alternative to the usual 3...Bg4 in Chapter Three.
QUESTION: Wasn't 3 Nf3 supposed to deter ...e7-e5 - ?		
ANSWER: Yes, but Black sometimes plays it anyway.		
<b>4.dxe5</b> White shows he is happy to go into a main line Albin Counter-Gambit after 4...d4.		
[Otherwise:		
a) 4.cxd5 Qxd5 is the 4 Nf3 e5 line in Chapter One. ]		
[b) 4.e3 is the same as 3 e3 e5 4 Nf3 in the notes to Game 55. ]		
[c) 4.Nc3 exd4 5.Nxd4 (or 5.Nxd5 Nge7) 5...Nxd4 6.Qxd4 dxc4 7.Qxd8+ (or 7.Qxc4 c6) 7...Kxd8 8.e4 Be6 9.f4 f6 10.Be3 was V.Iotov-D.Mogilarov, Bulgarian League 2005, where a6 gives Black a perfectly good position. ]		
[d) 4.Nxe5! Nxe5 5.dxe5 is critical:		
<b>A)</b> when <u>5...dxc4?!</u> 6.Qxd8+ Kxd8 7.e4 Be6 8.f4 g6 9.Be3 is just good for White; ( 9.-- );		
<b>B)</b> while <u>5...Ne7</u> 6.cxd5 Qxd5 7.Qxd5 Nxd5 doesn't give enough for the pawn;		
<b>C)</b> so Black has to play <u>5...d4</u> , reaching a kind of Albin minus a pair of knights. Objectively this ought to favour White, who is now less cramped by the d4-pawn, but the variations are not entirely clear.		
For example:		
<b>C1)</b> <u>6.e3 Bc5 7.exd4 Bxd4 8.Bd3 Bxe5 9.0-0 Be6</u>		

## 5.Bd2

[ 5.Nbd2 is also met by dxc4! .  
**A)** For example, 6.a3 Ba5 7.Qc2 (or 7.b4 cxb3 8.Qxb3 Nge7 9.e3 0-0 and Black is fine, F.Izeta Txabarri-G.Schweiger, Cannes 1999 ) 7...b5 8.b3 Nd4 9.Nxd4 Qxd4 10.Rb1 Ne7 11.e3 Qxe5 12.bxc4 Bf5 13.Qb2? (better 13.Bd3 bxc4 14.Qxc4 0-0 with equality – Ftacnik ), and now 13...Qe6! (rather than 13...Qe4?! as in J.Fedorowicz-C.Boissonet, Buenos Aires 1991 ) 14.Qxb5+ Nc6 15.Rb2 0-0 is good for Black, who threatens ...Rab8, or if 16.Qd5 then Qf6 17.Bd3 Ne7! 18.Qxa5 Bxd3 and the white king is trapped in the centre.;  
**B)** Instead, 6.e3?! allows c3!;  
**C)** while 6.Qc2 Nge7 7.e3 (or 7.Qxc4 Be6 ) 7...Bg4 8.Qxc4 Qd7 gives Black good play for the pawn, which he will probably regain anyway. ]

## 5...dxc4



This position looks like a highly unusual version of a Queen's Gambit Accepted. Each side will try to hang on to the pawn

they've captured, at e5 and c4 respectively, while trying to regain the pawn given away. One point in Black's favour is that if both pawns fall he will probably have equalized.

**6.e3** The most popular move, targeting the c4-pawn straight away.

[ Others:

a) 6.e4 Be6 7.Qc1 Qe7 8.Bxb4 (or 8.Bxc4 Qc5!) 8...Qxb4+ 9.Nbd2 0-0-0 10.Bxc4 Bxc4 11.Qxc4 Nxe5! 12.Qxb4 Nd3+ 13.Ke2 Nxb4 and Black stands well, E.Vasiukov-G. Welling, European Cup, Eindhoven 1986. ]

[b) 6.a3 Bxd2+ 7.Nbxd2 c3 8.bxc3 Nge7 9.Nb3 , D.Tishin-P.Korobkov, Mariupol 2003, and now simply 0-0 and Black will regain the e5-pawn. ]

[c) 6.Qa4 Qe7 7.e3 (or 7.a3 Bxd2+ 8.Nbxd2 Bd7 9.Qxc4 Nxe5 10.Qc3 Nxf3+ 11.Nxf3 Qf6 12.Ne5 Be6 , Fr.Schwarz-D.Wanzek, German League 2002 ) 7...Bd7 ( 7...Be6?! transposes to 7...Qe7 in the game ) 8.Bxc4 Bxd2+ 9.Nbxd2 Nxe5 10.Qa5 Nxc4 11.Nxc4 b6 with a level position, R.Van Wessel-I. Zaragatski, Dutch League 2008. ]

[d) 6.Qc2 Qe7 7.e3 (or 7.Qxc4 Nxe5 8.Nxe5 Bxd2+ 9.Nxd2 Qxe5 ) 7...Nxe5 8.Nxe5 Bxd2+ 9.Nxd2 Qxe5 10.Nxc4 Qe7 with equality, S. Bes-S.Monange, Paris 2006. ]

[e) 6.g3 might be met by Nh6!? , intending ...Ng4 and leaving e7 for the queen; e.g. 7.Bg2 (or 7.Qa4 Qe7 ) 7...Ng4 8.Qa4 (or 8.0-0 Bxd2 9.Nbxd2 Ngxe5 ) 8...Bxd2+ 9.Nbxd2 0-0 10.Nxc4 and now Qe7 (or 10...Re8 , followed by ...Ngxe5 etc. )]

## 6...Be6

[Defending the c4-pawn is very natural but attacking the e5-pawn with 6...Qe7!? may be better. For example,

7.Nc3 (or if 7.Bxc4 Bxd2+ 8.Nbxd2 Nxe5 9.Nxe5 Qxe5 10.Qb3 , D.Tishin-I.Kovalenko, Dnipropetrovsk 2005, then Qe7 11.0-0 Nf6 and 12...0-0 ) 7...Be6 8.Qa4 (or 8.a3 Ba5 9.Qa4 a6 ) 8...Qc5 9.a3 Bxc3 10.Bxc3 b5 and Black was fine in F. Guzman-G.Gil Menendez, correspondence 1996. ]

**7.Qa4** Putting pressure on the black bishop and the c4-pawn again behind it. [However, he could have done this more effectively with 7.Qc2! Qd5 (or 7...b5 8.b3! ) 8.Bxb4 Nxb4 9.Qa4+ Nc6 10.Na3! c3 11.bxc3 Qc5 12.Nb5 0-0-0 13.Rc1 Nge7 14.Be2 Ng6 15.0-0 and White has a definite advantage, R.Leitao-G.Vescovi, Americana 1997. ]

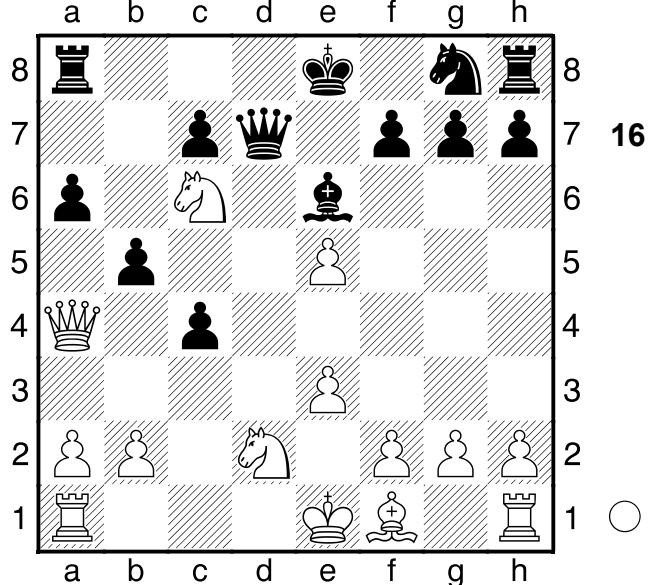
### 7...Bxd2+

[Now after 7...Qe7?! 8.a3 Bxd2+ 9.Nbxd2 a6 10.Bxc4 Bxc4 11.Nxc4 b5 12.Qb3 Rd8 (not 12...bxc4? 13.Qb7 ) 13.Ncd2 Nxe5 14.Nxe5 Qxe5 , Black stands slightly worse due to his dodgy pawn structure on the queenside. ]

**8.Nbxd2 a6** With this move Black "defends" his c4-pawn, since a capture on c4 would be met by a pawn fork with ...b7-b5.

**9.Nd4 b5!** The only way to play this variation. Have no fear, Black will win his knight back. **10.Nxc6 Qd7**

(Diagram 16)



**11.Nb8** The desperado knight wants to give itself away to the rook on a8.

[Simply allowing ...Qxc6 doesn't offer White any chances; e.g. 11.Qa5 Qxc6 12.a4 Rb8 13.axb5 axb5 14.Be2 Ne7 15.0-0 0-0 and Black has the edge if anyone, Z.Vybiral-A. Krajina, Czech Championship, Ostrava 2014; ]

[or 11.Qc2 Qxc6 12.Rc1 Ne7 13.b3 cxb3! , since 14.Qxc6+ Nxc6 15.Rxc6?! bxa2 16.Rc1 c5 looks very risky for White. ]

**11...Qc8?!** I will take with my queen, thank you.

[Nonetheless, 11...Rxb8 was better, and if 12.Qxa6 Ne7 (planning ...0-0 and ...Ra8, trapping the queen) 13.Rd1 , as in B.Kelly-J.Lindfeldt, European Cup, Saint Vincent 2005, then Bd5 (threatening ...Ra8 again) 14.Qa3 (or 14.Nf3 0-0 ) 14...Ra8 15.Qb4 Qc6 16.a3 Ra4 17.Qc3 Bxg2 is fine for Black. ]

**12.Qc2 Qxb8 13.b3** The pawn on c4 cannot be allowed to remain as it cramps White's position. **13...c5?!**

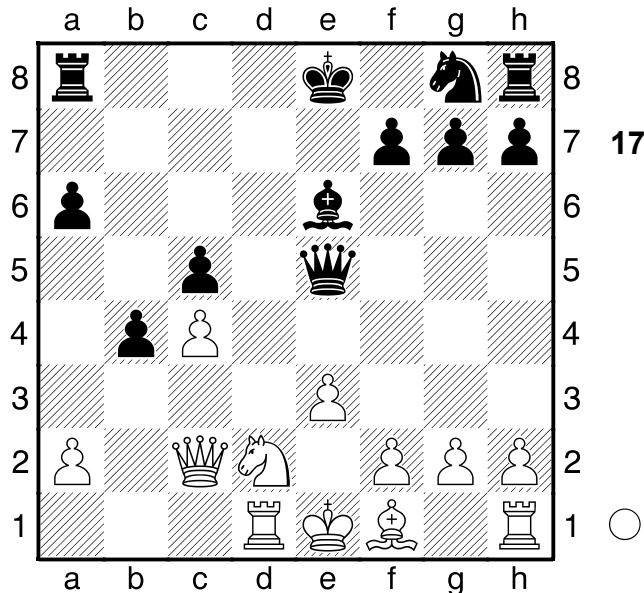
[Presumably the Cuban grandmaster didn't like 13...cxb3 14.axb3 Qb6

( 14...Ne7 15.Qc5 keeps Black from castling for the time being ) 15.Be2 Ne7 16.0-0 , when his queenside pawns look more of a liability than an asset; so he tries a counter-attack instead. ]

#### 14.bxc4?

[White should defend his e5-pawn with 14.f4 , intending something like cxb3 15.axb3 Ne7 16.Kf2 0-0 17.Bd3 h6 18.Ne4 c4 19.bxc4 bxc4 20.Bxc4 Rc8 21.Ra4 , when Black doesn't have enough for the pawn. ]

#### 14...Qxe5 15.Rd1 b4



All Black needs now is to play ...Nf6 and his position is very comfortable.

#### 16.Qe4!

[After 16.Be2?! Nf6 17.Bf3 Ra7 18.Ne4 0-0 , for instance, Black's chances are already better. He has a queenside majority and his pawns on c5 and b4 ensure that the white c-pawn remains a potential target. Naturally White isn't going to let that happen. ]

#### 16...Qxe4 17.Nxe4 Nf6

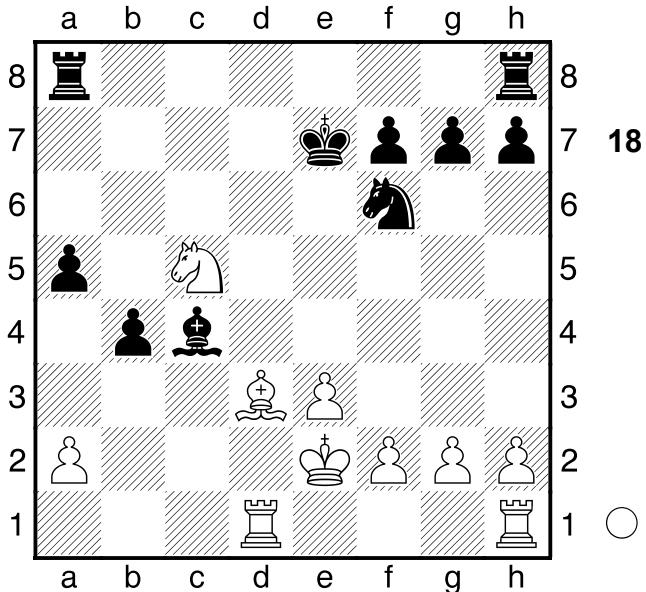
[Winning the c5-pawn since 17...Rc8?? runs into 18.Nd6+ . ]

#### 18.Nxc5 a5 19.Bd3 Ke7 Although

White is a pawn up for the moment, he has no advantage as his weak c-pawn is liable to drop off. **20.Ke2**

[After 20.Nxe6 fxe6 Black's majority and superior minor piece give him full compensation for the pawn. ]

#### 20...Bxc4!



**21.Bxc4 Rac8** The skewer enables Black to regain his piece.

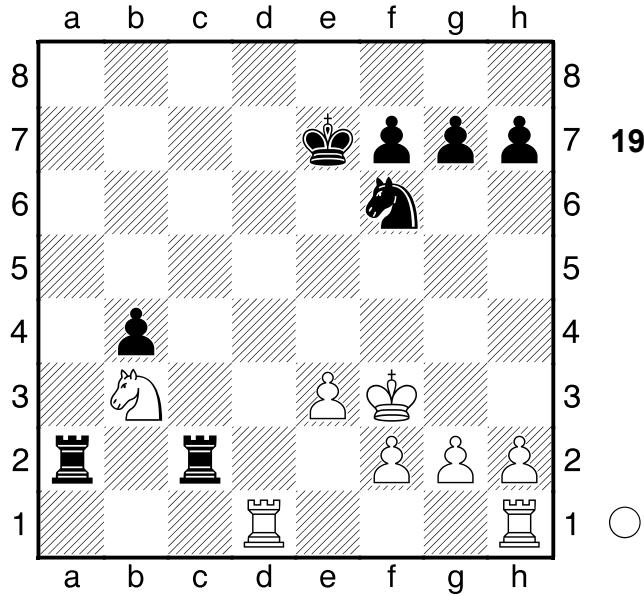
[Not 21...Rhc8?? 22.Bd5 Nxd5 23.Rxd5 and White gets to keep it. ]

#### 22.Nb7 Rxc4 23.Nxa5 Rc2+ 24.Kf3

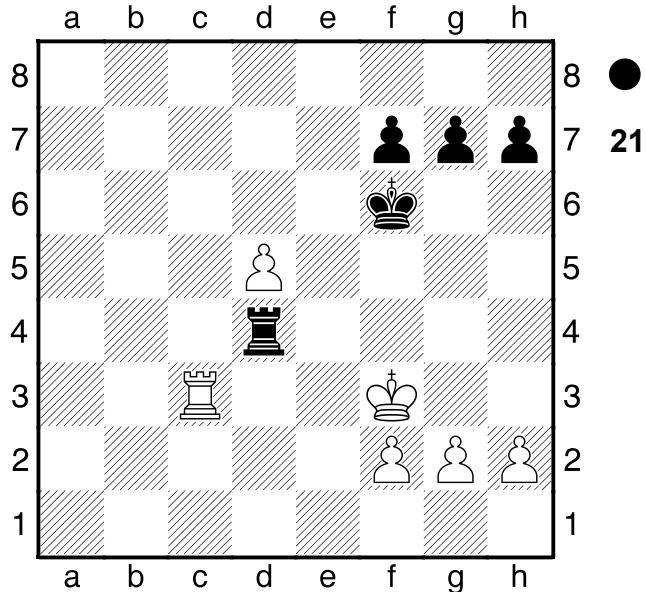
[Or 24.Rd2 Rhc8 25.f3 Nd5 26.Ra1 R8c3 and White cannot hang on to his extra pawn. ]

#### 24...Ra8 25.Nb3 Raxa2

(Diagram 19)



left to play for. ]



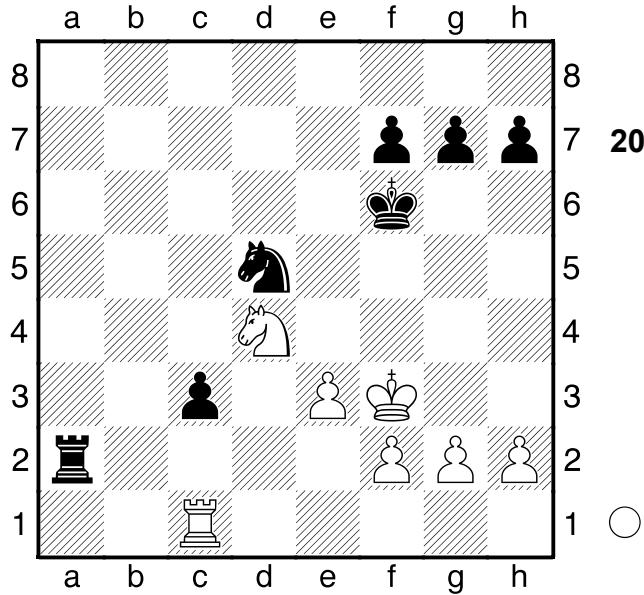
**26.Rhf1 Rc4 27.Rc1 Rc3?**

[This is actually a mistake, allowing 27...Ng4! and Black wins a pawn; e.g. 28.Kg3 Rxc1 29.Rxc1 (or 29.Nxc1 Ra1 30.Kxg4 b3) 29...Nxf2 30.Rc4 Nd3 31.Rd4 Ne1 32.Rxb4 Rxg2+. But no worries...]

**28.Rxc3 bxc3 29.Rc1 Nd5 30.Nd4**

[If 30.e4 then Ra3 protects the c3-pawn.]

**30...Kf6**



**31.e4 Rd2 32.exd5 Rxd4 33.Rxc3**

[After 33.Rxc3 Rxd5 there is nothing]

½-½

## Chapter Five

### White Avoids or Delays c2-c4

When White starts the game with 1 d4 and 2 Nf3 (or vice versa) it is often a temporizing strategy, waiting to see how Black reacts before deciding on a plan. But it can also be because White has something specific in mind, such as a London System (with Bf4), Torre Attack (with Bg5), or Colle (with e2-e3 and Bd3).

In response Chigorin himself used to play 2...Bg4!? ([view in Game format](#)), when 3 c4 Nc6 transposes to [Chapter Three](#), but 3 Ne5! sets Black more problems. Another option is just to play 2...Nc6 anyway, again offering a transposition to Chapter Three after 3 c4.



In this chapter we will examine lines where White avoids or delays c2-c4. If Black follows up with 3...Bg4, the result is to reach reversed Veresov (1 d4 Nf6 2 Nc3 d5 3 Bg5) positions, where the most significant way for White to fight for an advantage is to play c2-c4 after all. With 3 Bf4, this usually means transposing to 4 Nc3 e6 5 Bf4 lines in [Chapter Three](#) (see Games [42-46](#)); so the main independent challenge comes from 3 g3 Bg4 4 Bg2, where White's extra tempo in a 3...g6 Veresov can be quite useful, as we will see in Games [59-61](#).

[58: A.Adorjan-A.Morozevich, Alushta 1994](#)

[59: I.Radulov-S.Lorenz, Bad Mergentheim 1989](#)

[60: B.Bok-J.Van Foreest, Dutch Championship, Amsterdam 2017](#)

[61: F.Caruana-A.R.S.Salem, World Blitz Championship, Dubai 2014](#)

## Summary

When White holds his c-pawn back, the lack of pressure on the centre means that Black has a freer hand in his piece placement. The most thematic, Chigorin-like response is to play 3...Bg4 regardless, taking the game into reversed Veresov positions. Given that the Veresov itself is theoretically equal, the question is whether White can make anything of the extra tempo. The answer is “not much”, as even in the sharpest lines with 3 g3 Bg4 4 Bg2 Qd7 (Games [59-61](#)) Black seems to have sufficient

Qd7 (Games [59-61](#)) Black seems to have sufficient resources.

## Chapter Five: Intro [Jimmy Liew]

When White starts the game with 1 d4 and 2 Nf3 (or vice versa) it is often a temporizing strategy, waiting to see how Black reacts before deciding on a plan. But it can also be because White has something specific in mind, such as a London System (with Bf4), Torre Attack (with Bg5), or Colle (with e2-e3 and Bd3).

### 1.d4 d5 2.Nf3 Nc6

[In response Chigorin himself used to play 2...Bg4!?, when 3.c4 (but 3.Ne5! sets Black more problems ) 3...Nc6 transposes to Chapter Three. ]

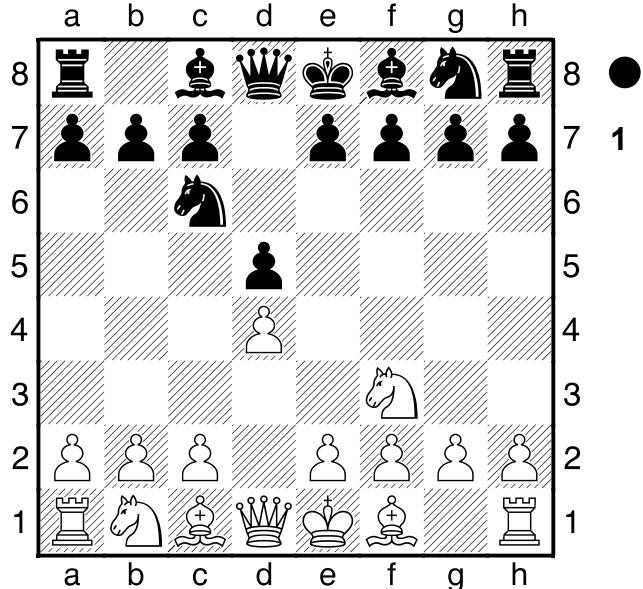
### 3.--

[again offering a transposition to Chapter Three after 3.c4 . ]

[In this chapter we will examine lines where White avoids or delays c2-c4. If Black follows up with 3.Bg5 Bg4 , the result is to reach reversed Veresov (1 d4 Nf6 2 Nc3 d5 3 Bg5) positions, where the most significant way for White to fight for an advantage is to play c2-c4 after all. ]

[With 3.Bf4 , this usually means transposing to 4 Nc3 e6 5 Bf4 lines in Chapter Three (see Games 42-46); ]

[so the main independent challenge comes from 3.g3 Bg4 4.Bg2 , where White's extra tempo in a 3... g6 Veresov can be quite useful, as we will see in Games 59-61. ]



Another option is just to play 2...Nc6 anyway;

(Diagram 1)

Adorjan,A  
 Morozevich,A  
58: Alushta  
[Jimmy Liew]

D02

1994

### 1.Nf3 Nc6 2.d4 d5 3.Bf4

White declines to enter a Chigorin, adopting a London set-up.

[Other moves:

a) 3.g3 is examined in Games 59-61.]

[b) 3.Bg5 is not really a Torre, because the omission of ...Nf6 allows Black to respond with f6! and then:

**A)** 4.Bh4 Nh6! (going after the white bishop) 5.e3 (or 5.Bg3 Nf5 6.c3? h5! 7.Bf4 g5 8.Bc1 g4 9.Ng1 e5 and White has effectively only made two moves, A.I.Kireev-I. Krush, Moscow 2002 ) 5...Nf5 6.Bg3 h5 7.c4 e6 8.Bd3 dxc4 9.Bxf5 exf5 10.Qa4 Be6 11.Nc3 Bb4 and Black is a pawn up, A. Strunski-A.Karpatchev, German League 2013.;

**B)** 4.Bf4 Bg4 sees Black now playing the White side of a Veresov (2 Nc3 Nf6 3 Bg5 Bf5 4 f3), which is obviously fine for him. For example, 5.c4 (not 5.e3?? e5 and Black wins a piece; 5.Nbd2 can be met by Nxd4 6.Nxd4 e5; or if 5.c3 then e6 6.Nbd2 Qd7) 5...dxc4! 6.d5?! (6.Nc3 e5 7.dxe5 Bb4 is still roughly equal) 6...e5 7.Bc1 (or 7.dxc6 Qxd1+ 8.Kxd1 exf4 9.cxb7 Rb8) 7...Nb4! 8.e4 c6 9.a3 Nd3+ (or even 9...Nxd5!?) 10.exd5 cxd5) 10.Bxd3 cxd3 11.dxc6 bxc6 12.0-0 Bc5 and Black had a great position in A.Morozevich-L.Van Wely, Monte Carlo (blindfold rapid) 2005; note

that the d3-pawn is extra.]

[c) 3.h3 obviously prevents ...Bg4 and is often useful in a London System but not very much in this one: Bf5 4.Bf4 e6 5.e3 Bd6 6.Bxd6 (not 6.Nbd2?, as in A.Kharlov-Benefactor, ICC 2004, because Bxf4 7.exf4 Qd6 8.g3 Qb4! wins a pawn) 6...cxd6 7.c3 Nf6 8.Nbd2 h6 9.Be2 0-0 and Black is already at least equal, A.Karagiannis-I.Miladinovic, Kalavryta 1997.]

[d) 3.c3!? is more tricky than it looks, as after Bg4 White can use his extra move in a reversed Veresov to bring the queen out or play e2-e4. The trouble with reversed openings is that Black doesn't require an advantage from the opening. After 4.Qb3 (or 4.Nbd2 e6 5.e4 dxe4 6.Nxe4 Nf6 7.Bg5 Be7, C.Golly-D.Fillon, French Team Championship 1999) 4...Rb8 (not 4...Bxf3?, as in pap-A.

Morozevich, ICC 1999, since 5.Qxb7! Nxd4 6.cxd4 Bg4 7.e4 is good for White) 5.Bf4 e6 6.Nbd2 Bd6 7.Bg3 Nf6 8.e3 0-0, G.Biebinger-E.Maahs, Bad Wiessee 2002, Black can be satisfied with equality.]

[e) 3.e3 aims for Colle-type positions, but Bg4 throws a spanner in that plan since 4 Bd3 runs into 4...e5!, so White has to play something else:

**A)** 4.c4 transposes to 4 e3 lines in Chapter Three, where Black can choose between e6 (Game 39) (and 4...e5!? (Game 40).);

**B)** 4.Be2 e6 5.0-0 is too quiet to trouble Black much, though it can be hard to find active play. In one game from this position Morozevich tried Nf6

**B1)** 6.c4 might be met by dxc4 7.Bxc4 (while after 7.Nbd2 the engine comes up with b5!?)

, intending  $8.b3\ c3!\ 9.Bxb5\ Qd5\ 10.Bc4?\ Qh5!\ 11.Nb1?\ Bd6\ 12.h3\ c2\ 13.Qxc2\ Bxf3$  and wins )  $7...Bd6$ ;  
**B2) 6.b3** (a Koltanowski set-up)  
 $6...Ne7!?$  (  $6...Bd6$  is also fine )  
 $7.h3\ Bxf3\ 8.Bxf3\ g6\ 9.c4\ Bg7\ 10.Nc3\ 0-0\ 11.Ba3\ c6\ 12.Rc1\ Qd7\ 13.Qe2\ Rfe8\ 14.Rfd1\ Nf5\ 15.g3\ Nd6$  with a solid position for Black, who later did manage to win in V.Malaniuk-A.

Morozevich, Yalta (rapid) 1995.;

**C) 4.Bb5!?** at least tries to justify White's opening, even if Black has no real cause for concern:  $4...e6\ 5.Bxc6+$  (or  $5.c4\ Nge7\ 6.cxd5\ exd5\ 7.Nc3\ a6\ 8.Be2\ g6\ 9.Bd2\ Bg7\ 10.Rc1\ 0-0\ 11.Na4\ b6\ 12.b4\ Qd6$  and Black was fine in B.Ider-C. Philippe, French League 2013 )  
 $5...bxc6\ 6.c4\ dxc4\ 7.Qa4\ Bxf3\ 8.gxf3\ Qd5\ 9.Ke2$  (or if  $9.Nd2$  , C.Scheerer-H.Hebbinghaus, Kiel 2006, then  $a5\ 10.Qxc4\ a4$ )  
 $9...Qb5\ 10.Nc3\ Qxa4\ 11.Nxa4\ Nf6\ 12.Bd2\ Nd5\ 13.Rac1\ Nb6\ 14.Nc5$  , S.Sadek-B.Khalil, Zgazig 2013, and now  $a5!$  again holds Black's position together. ]

**3...Bg4** There is no reason to refrain from our standard move. In a London proper this could be answered by  $Ne5$ , hitting the bishop (i.e.  $2.Nf3\ Nf6\ 3.Bf4\ Bg4\ 4.Ne5$ ). In the Chigorin version, the knight would simply be captured. This important difference allows Black to fight for the e5-square.

#### 4.e3

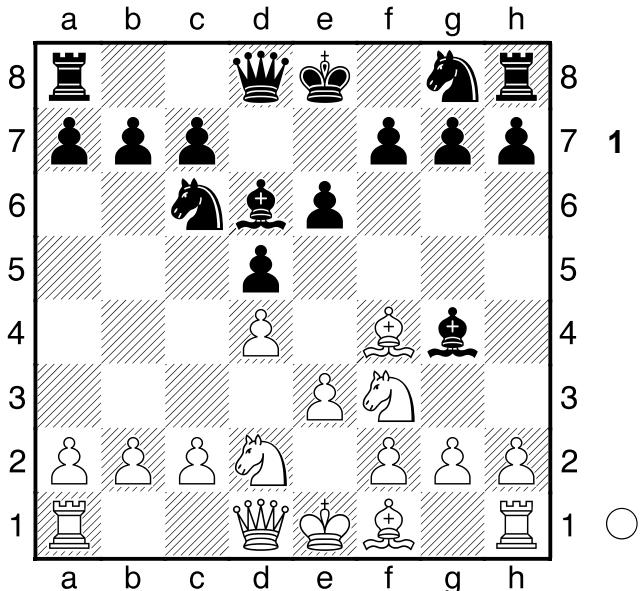
[Here  $4.c4\ e6\ 5.Nc3$  leads to positions examined in Chapter Three (see Games 42-46). ]

#### 4...e6 5.Nbd2

[Instead:  
a)  $5.c4\ Bb4+\ 6.Nc3$  is again Chapter

Three (Games 44-46). (  $6.Nbd2$  would make less sense as the knight then puts no pressure on the centre. )]  
[b)  $5.Bb5$  is less meaningful than on the previous move, as after  $Bd6\ 6.Bxc6+\ bxc6$  Black can achieve  $...c6-c5$  very easily, and otherwise he can support the  $c6$ -knight with  $6...Ne7$ . ]  
[c)  $5.Be2\ Bd6$  is quite equal, which is only problematic if Black needs to win. One game where something happened was  $6.Bg3$  (none of  $6.Bxd6\ cxd6$ ; or  $6.c3\ Nge7$ ; or  $6.Ne5\ Bxe2\ 7.Qxe2\ Bxe5\ 8.dxe5\ Nge7$  gives White anything either )  $6...Nge7\ 7.Nbd2\ Nf5\ 8.c4$  (or  $8.Bxd6\ cxd6$ )  
 $8...dxc4\ 9.Nxc4\ Bb4+\ 10.Ncd2\ h5!?$   
 $11.h3\ Nxg3\ 12.fxg3\ Bf5\ 13.0-0\ Qd6\ 14.Qe1\ 0-0-0$  and both sides had chances, R.Pogorelov-M.Narciso Dublan, Zaragoza 1995. ]

#### 5...Bd6



#### 6.Bxd6

[White more usually retreats the bishop with  $6.Bg3$  , after which, as Morozevich says, "Black has numerous tempting possibilities." He can swap bishops, or develop his king's knight to any square (Scheerer

likes Nh6 ); (or play 6...f5! ? (Bronznik); or even 6...e5! ? 7.dxe5 Nxe5 8.Be2 Nxf3+ 9.Bxf3 Bxf3 10.Nxf3 Ne7 , when a draw was agreed in W.Iclicki-M.Geenen, Brussels 1986. )]

**6...cxd6** Taking with the pawn makes the most sense; then if White plays c2-c4 at any stage, Black can take that too and has another d-pawn in reserve;

[whereas after 6...Qxd6 and then c2-c4, Black has to be concerned about a possible minority attack (if pawn is exchanged) as well as c4-c5 at an inconvenient moment. ]

**7.Be2** If White is going to play c2-c4 it is logical to do so at once, as otherwise he will waste a tempo with the bishop.

[All the same, 7.c4 dxc4 8.Bxc4 is fine for Black, whose small centre gives him the option of pushing either ...d6-d5 or ...e6-e5. For example, Nf6 (or 8...Nge7 as in the game ) 9.0-0 0-0 10.h3 Bh5 11.Be2 e5 12.dxe5 dxe5 13.Qa4 Qe7 14.Ne4?! Nxe4 15.Qxe4 f5 16.Qa4 f4 with the initiative in B.Saeheng-V.Kotronias, Bled Olympiad 2002. ]

**7...Nge7**

[Naturally 7...Nf6 is good too. Putting it on e7 means that the f-pawn is still free to advance, and the b-pawn as well with the knight now supporting its colleague on c6. ]

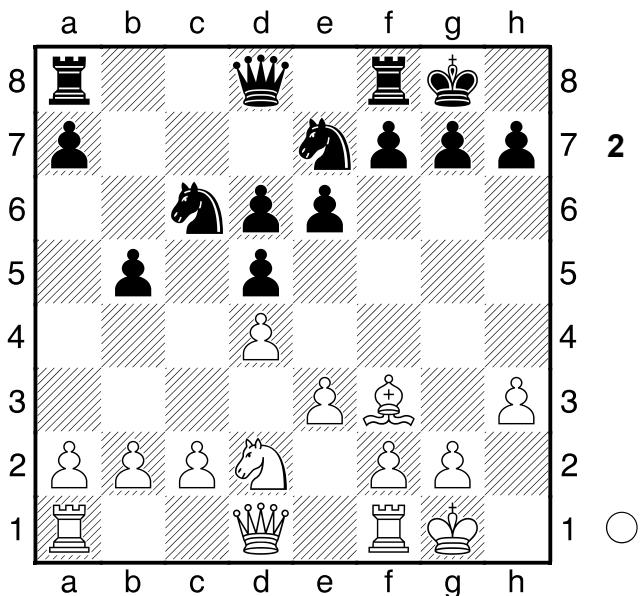
**8.0-0 0-0 9.h3**

[Now if 9.c4 dxc4 10.Bxc4 ( 10.Nxc4 encourages ...b7-b5 at some point ) 10...Qb6 , the attack on the b2-pawn is annoying. White does not really want to exchange queens with Qb3, but after 11.b3 d5 12.Be2 f6 Black stands well, especially if the light-squared bishops come off. ]

**9...Bxf3** Again preferring knights over bishops.

[ 9...Bh5 is playable too, when 10.c4 transposes to A.Karpov-V.Ivanchuk, Monte Carlo (blindfold rapid) 1998, where Black never had any problems: Qd7 (or 10...dxc4 ) 11.Rc1 Rfc8 12.a3 dxc4 13.Rxc4 Rc7 14.b4 Rac8 15.Qa1 Nd5 16.Re1 h6 17.Bd3 Nb6 18.Rc2 Ne7 19.Rec1 Bg6 20.Bxg6 Nxg6 and so on. ]

**10.Bxf3** Playing for e3-e4 rather than c2-c4. **10...b5!?**

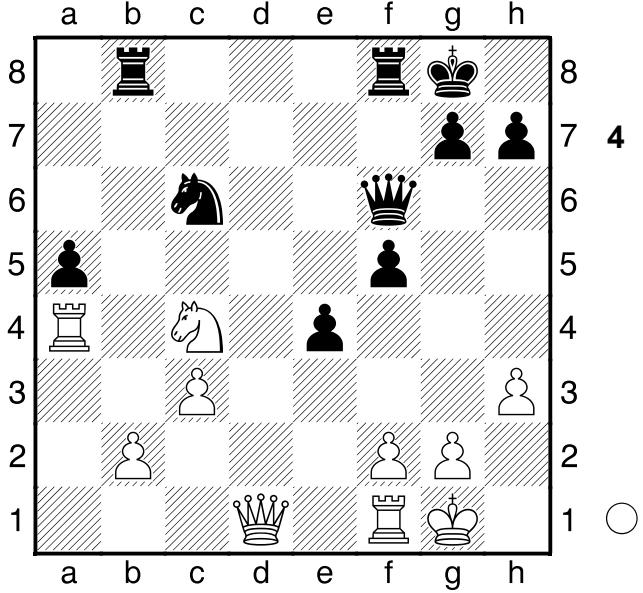
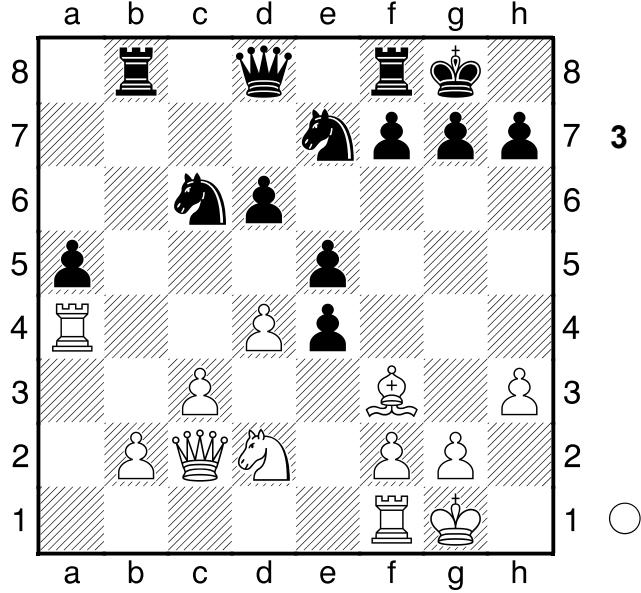


**11.c3 Rb8 12.a4 bxa4?!** Morozevich is not the type of player to sit idly on his position, even if it is prudent to do so. This aggressive move could backfire on Black, as opening the position favours White's bishop and more active queen's rook.

[Instead, 12...b4 13.c4 (or 13.Qe2 Qd7 – Morozevich ) 13...dxc4 14.Nxc4 Na5 keeps the balance. ]

**13.Qc2 e5 14.Rxa4 a5 15.e4 dxe4**

(Diagram 3)



**16.Bxe4 f5 17.Bxc6** White trades his bishop in order to play against the weak black pawns;

[whereas 17.Bd3?! e4 18.Be2 Ng6 19.Rfa1 Nf4 20.Bf1 Qg5 would give Black the kind of kingside initiative he is hoping for.]

**17...Nxc6 18.dxe5 dxe5 19.Nc4 e4**

**20.Qd1**

[On 20.Rd1 Black could give up the a5-pawn with Qe7 21.Nxa5 Ne5, when his knight has access to the strong d3-square.]

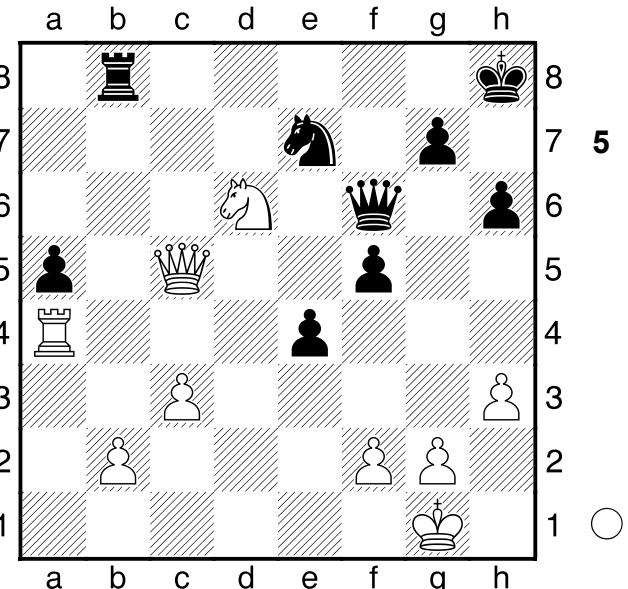
**20...Qf6**

(Diagram 4)

**21.Qd5+ Kh8 22.Rd1 h6?!**

[Morozevich says this was a mistake and that he should have played 22...Rbd8 23.Nd6 Ne7 .]

**23.Qc5 Rfd8 24.Rd6 Rxd6 25.Nxd6 Ne7**



**26.Rxa5 Rxb2 27.Nxf5 e3!?**

Rather than go straight into a pawn down rook endgame after mass exchanges on f5, Morozevich throws in an unexpected pawn move – with unexpected results.

**28.Qxe7??** Even in time trouble it is

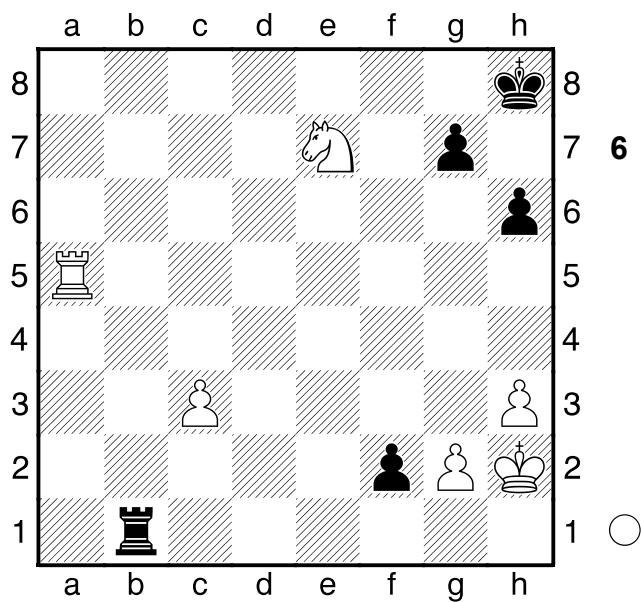
hard to understand why Adorjan played this move, unless he thought Black had blundered. But no, it's White who has blundered.

[Instead, simply 28.fxe3 would force the rook endgame:

**A)** i.e. after 28...Nxf5 29.Qxf5 Qxf5 30.Rxf5 Rc2 31.Rc5 Re2 ;  
( 31...-- );

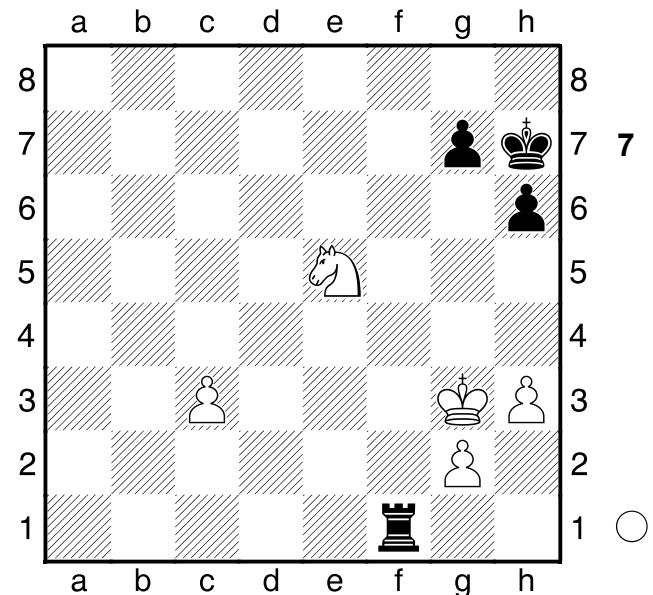
**B)** since the counter-attack with 28...Qg5? fails to 29.g4 Rb1+ 30.Kg2 Rb2+ 31.Kf3 Rh2 32.Qxe7 Rxh3+ 33.Ke2 Qxg4+ 34.Kd3 Rh1 (or 34...Qd1+ 35.Ke4 ) 35.Qe8+ Kh7 36.Nd4 and wins (Morozhevich). ]

**28...Qxe7 29.Nxe7 Rb1+ 30.Kh2 exf2**

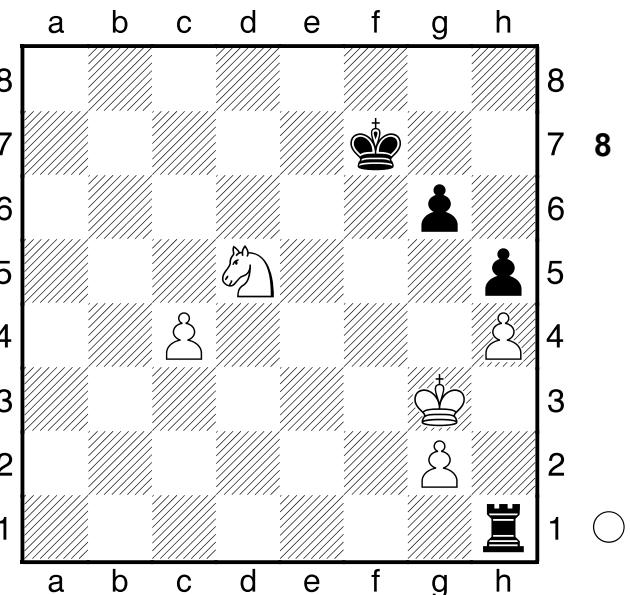


**31.Rf5 f1Q 32.Rxf1 Rxf1** So White has just lost the exchange and his passed pawn isn't well enough advanced or supported to save the game. **33.Kg3 Rd1 34.Ng6+ Kh7 35.Ne5 Rf1**

(Diagram 7)



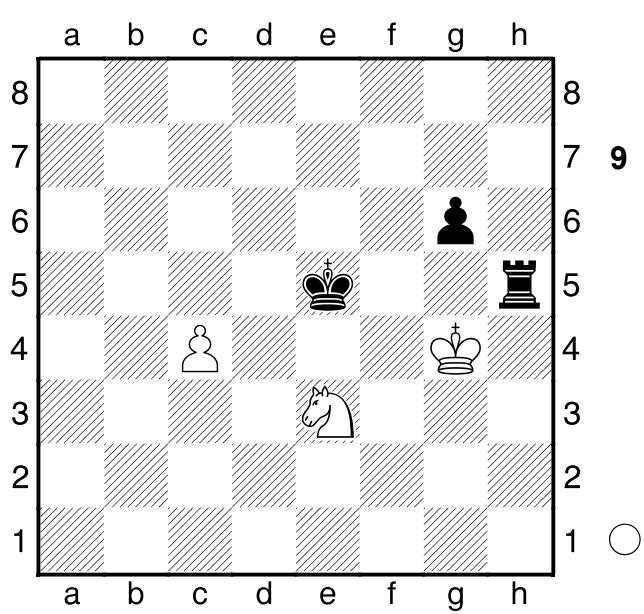
**36.c4 g6 37.h4 Kg7 38.Ng4 h5  
39.Ne3 Rh1 40.Nd5 Kf7**



**41.Ne3 Ke6 42.Kf4 Rxh4+ 43.g4**  
[Or 43.Kg5 Re4 44.Nd5 Rxc4 45.Nf4+ Kf7 46.Nxg6 Rg4+ and wins (Morozhevich). ]

**43...Rh1 44.gxh5 Rxh5 45.Kg4 Ke5**

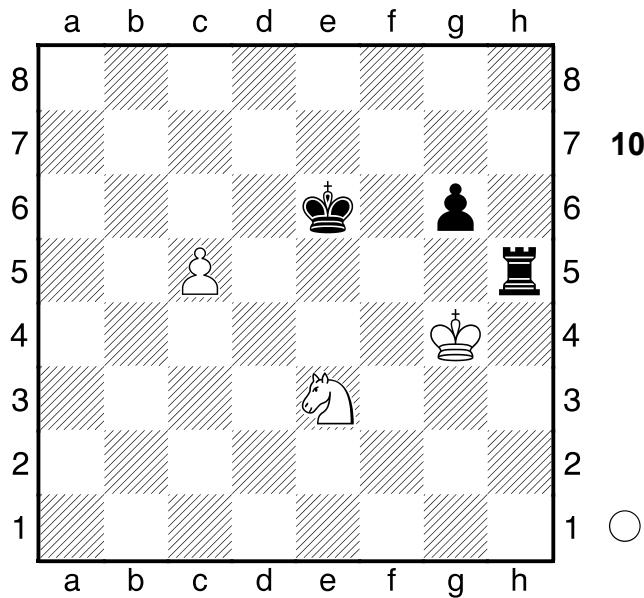
(Diagram 9)



9

○

46.c5 Ke6



10

○

0-1

Radulov,I  
 Lorenz,S  
59: Bad Mergentheim  
[Jimmy Liew]

D02

1989

Rd8 13.Nc2 h6 14.Rfd1 Nc7 and Black has a solid, if rather passive position, Pr.Nikolic-A. Morozевич, Moscow Olympiad 1994. ]

**4.Bg2 Qd7** The most aggressive set-up, planning to castle queenside and launch a kingside assault with ...Bh3 and ...h7-h5-h4. Although Black is a tempo down on a Veresov, his attack can still be very dangerous if White allows it to proceed unchecked, as we'll see in this game.

[If something more solid is preferred, Black can play 4...e6 , intending to develop the kingside and castle short. The main line then runs 5.0-0 Nf6 6.c4 Bd6 (not 6...Be7?! 7.Ne5 ) 7.Nc3 0-0 8.cxd5 Nxd5! (not 8...exd5?! 9.Bg5 )

**A)** both 9.e4 Nb6 10.Be3 (and 10.b3 Bb4 11.Ne2 f5! , M.Marin-Ro.Antonio, Yerevan Olympiad 1996 ) 10...Nc4 11.Qe2 Nxe3 12.Qxe3 Bxf3 13.Bxf3 e5 14.dxe5 Nxe5 15.Bg2 c6 , A.Flumbort-G. Kuba, Pula 2003, are fine for Black;

**B)** 9.h3 Bh5 10.e4 Nb6 ( 10...Nxc3?! 11.bxc3 just strengthens White's centre ) 11.g4 (since this doesn't work out White should perhaps go for 11.Ne2? , though f5 12.e5 Be7 13.Nf4 Bf7 14.h4 , Z.Velickovic-T. Gruskovnjak, Hungarian League 2003, and now h6 seems okay for Black ) 11...Bg6 12.Qe2 f5!

**B1)** not 13.Bg5? because of fxg4! 14.Bxd8 (while after 14.hxg4 Nxd4 15.Nxd4 Qxg5 he was just a pawn up in Y. Razuvayev-S.Skembris, Porto San Giorgio 1998 ) 14...gxf3 15.Bxf3 Nxd4 and Black gets too much for the queen;

**1.Nf3 Nc6 2.d4 d5 3.g3** If White does not intend to play c2-c4 just yet, this is probably his best option. He fianchettoes the bishop and castles, waiting to see how Black will set up his pieces. The main drawback with this approach is that Black is virtually free to decide on his development.

### 3...Bg4

[Morozevič actually prefers 3...Bf5!? here, with the idea of ...Nb4. The point is that defending c2 with Na3 misplaces the white knight slightly, while Black has cleared the way for the c7-pawn to advance; or if White prevents ...Nb4 with a2-a3 or c2-c3, Black either has a "free" move or has avoided the critical lines. For example, 4.Bg2 (after 4.a3 Qd7 5.c4 e6 6.Nc3 dxc4 7.Bg2 Nf6 8.0-0 Be7 9.Qa4 Nd5 10.Qxc4 Na5 11.Qa2 Nxc3 12.bxc3 Qa4 13.Nd2 Bc2 , Black had no problems in J. Nogueiras Santiago-W.Arencibia Rodriguez, Cuban Championship, Las Tunas 1996; or 4.c3 Qd7 5.Nbd2 f6!?) 6.Nh4 Bg4 7.h3 Bh5 8.Nb3 e5 and Black already has a good game, L. B.Hansen-H.Nakamura, Turin Olympiad 2006 ) 4...e6 5.0-0 Nb4 6.Na3 (after 6.c4!? Nc2 7.Nh4 Nxa1 8.Nxf5 exf5 9.Nc3 Nf6 10.cxd5 Be7 11.Bf4 0-0 12.Qd3 Qd7 13.Rxa1 , White has sufficient compensation but no more than that, M.Roiz-B. Heberla, Isle of Man 2007 ) 6...Be7 7.c3 Na6 8.Qb3 Qc8 9.c4 c6 10.Bf4 Nf6 11.Rac1 0-0 12.Ne5

**B2) 13.gxf5 Bh5 14.Rd1**

**B2a)** rather than 14...exf5?!  
 15.e5 Bb4 (or 15...Be7 16.d5 Nb4 17.Be3 , H.Westerman-S. Vukanovic, correspondence 2006 ) 16.d5 Ne7 17.d6 cxd6 18.exd6 Nc6 19.Bf4 Qd7 20.Nd5 Rae8 21.Qb5 and White stands better;

**B2b)** 14...Qe8! 15.e5 (if 15.a3 Rd8 16.e5 , G.Grapsa-A.Karpatchev, Vrachati 2013, then Be7 17.f6 gxf6 18.Bh6 Nxd4 19.Rxd4 Rxd4 20.Bxf8 Qxf8 is good for Black; and 15.fxe6 Qxe6 , as in Z.Almasi-D.Anton Guijarro, German League 2014, doesn't help since 16.d5? fails to Qg6 ) 15...Be7 16.f6 Qg6 17.Nh4 Qf7 18.Bf3 Bxf3 19.Qxf3 gxf6 20.Bh6 fxe5 21.Bxf8 Rxf8 22.Qxf7+ Rxf7 23.Ng2 exd4 24.Ne4 Nd5 and Black's centre pawns and bishop were better than White's rook, Mir.Markovic-M. Perunovic, Vrnjacka Banja 2012. ]

## 5.0-0

[Other moves:

- a) 5.c4 is covered in the notes to the next game. ]
- [b) 5.Ne5 Nxe5 6.dxe5 frees Black's position more than White's. One game went on e6 7.0-0 Ne7 8.c4 Rd8 9.Qc2 Nc6! 10.Bg5 Be7 11.Bxe7 Qxe7 12.Nc3 d4 13.Nb5?! 0-0 14.Qe4? Bf5 15.Qf4 g5! 16.Qd2 Nxe5 17.Nxd4? Qf6 and White resigned in S.Martinovic-T.Nyback, European Championship, Rijeka 2010. ]
- [c) 5.Bf4 just encourages Black to push his kingside pawns: 0-0-0 6.Nc3

f6 7.h3 Bf5 8.g4 Bg6 9.a3 h5 10.Nh4 Bf7 11.g5 e5 12.dxe5 fxe5 13.Bg3 Nge7 and Black stood well in Pe.Green-N.Hopewell, Waitakere 1991. ]

[d) 5.Nc3 sets a little trap:

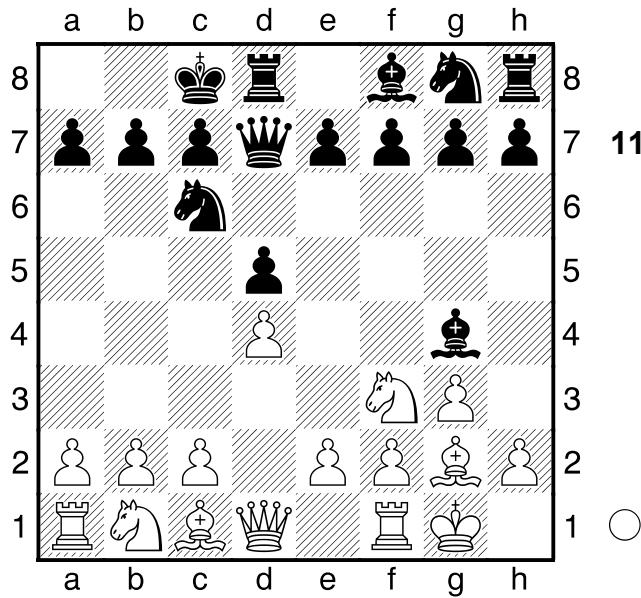
- A)** in that 5...0-0-0?! runs into 6.Ne5! Nxe5 7.dxe5 e6? ( 7...d4 8.Ne4 e6 9.Qd3 is also slightly better for White ) 8.Qd4 , forking g4 and a7, as in R.Tozer-R. Kleinschroth, Copenhagen 2001.;
- B)** Instead, 5...e6 is fine for Black now that White has hampered his own initiative by blocking his c-pawn, and e2-e4 is nothing to worry about just yet. ]

[e) 5.h3 , asking the g4-bishop to declare its intentions, is a more serious option. If the bishop retreats to h5, Black can no longer play ...Bh3 or ...h7-h5, while retreating it to f5 rules out a timely ...Bxf3. Consequently, I think Black should play Bxf3 straight away. For example, 6.Bxf3 (or 6.exf3 e6 7.0-0 h5 8.h4 Nge7 9.c3 Nf5 10.b4 a5 11.b5 , A.Vajda-M.Chetverik, Gyongyos 1999, and now Nce7 12.a4 g6 , followed by ...Bg7 and ...0-0; Black's set-up is similar to that after 4 Qa4 Bxf3 5 exf3 e6 in the notes to Game 38 ) 6...0-0-0 7.Bf4 (this only prevents ...e7-e5 temporarily) (other lines don't trouble Black either; e.g. 7.c3 e5 8.dxe5 Nxe5 9.Bg2 Kb8 10.Nd2 Nf6 , F.Portisch-M.Chetverik, Harkany 1999; or 7.Nc3 e6 8.Bf4 Bd6 9.Bxd6 Qxd6 10.Qd2 f5 , P.Harikrishna-A. Mastrovasilis, Greek League 2013; or 7.Bg2 f5 8.c3 Nf6 9.Nd2 Ne4 10.Qa4 e6 11.Nxe4 fxe4 12.Bf4 Bd6 , A.Wahono-S.Shyam, Jakarta 2013, and Black is fine ) 7...f6 8.c4 (or 8.h4?! e5 9.Be3 Kb8 10.c3

*Nge7 with a good position, P.Vorobjov-N.Short, Puhajarve rapid 2012 )  
 8...dxc4 9.d5 e5 10.Be3 Kb8  
 11.Nc3 , T.Selbes-E.Arslan, Turkish League 2015, and now Nce7 (or even 11...Na5!? looks perfectly okay for Black. )]*

### 5...0-0-0

[It is too soon to play 5...Bh3 , since 6.Bxh3 Qxh3 7.c4 e6 8.Nc3 puts Black's queenside under threat while his queen is doing nothing on h3 by itself. After 0-0-0 (both 8...dxc4 9.e4; and 8...Nf6 9.cxd5 exd5 10.Bg5 are good for White ) 9.cxd5 exd5 10.Bf4 f6 11.Nb5 White is already making progress, M.Marin-C. Ferron Garcia, Sitges 1996. ]



We have reached another reversed Veresov, specifically 3...g6 4 Qd2 Bg7 5 0-0-0 0-0, which is actually considered dubious for Black as his attack with ...c7-c6 and ...b7-b5 is less strong than White's with f2-f3, g2-g4 and h2-h4. In the present game White has the "black" pieces with an extra tempo which changes things a bit, though whether it is enough to give him an advantage is

uncertain.

**6.c3** In a sharp battle with each side attacking on opposite flanks, an extra move ought to count for something.

[Another idea is to change tack and play 6.c4! , which we'll examine in the next two games. ]

[White has also tried:

a) 6.Nbd2 f6 7.c3 (here 7.c4 dxc4 transposes to 7...f6 in the notes to Game 61 ) 7...e5! (better than 7...g5 8.b4 h5 , as in the main game ) 8.b4 e4 9.Ne1 h5 10.f3 exf3 11.exf3 Bf5 12.Nb3 g5 and both sides have chances, M.Lehmann-A.Raetsky, Samnaun 2004. ]

[b) 6.Ne5 Nxe5 7.dxe5 Bh3 eliminates the fianchettoed bishop, while if 8.Qd4 Bxg2 9.Kxg2 Kb8 10.Be3 b6 11.a4 e6 12.a5 Ne7 13.axb6 cxb6 14.Qd3 d4 15.Bg5 , as in D.Kanovsky-R.Chytilek, Olomouc 2004, then h6 16.Bxe7 Bxe7 , since White isn't really threatening anything. ]

[c) 6.Re1 saves the g2-bishop from exchange but otherwise wastes a move, and f6! 7.c4 dxc4 8.Nc3 e5 9.d5 Nb4 10.Be3?! Ne7 11.d6 Nf5 12.Bxa7 Qxd6 13.Qa4 Qc6 was good for Black in A.Miles-M. Geenen, Moscow Olympiad 1994. ]

[d) 6.b4!?, attempting to accelerate his attack even more, can be answered by Bxf3 7.Bxf3 e5! 8.c3 (or 8.dxe5 Bxb4 ) 8...e4 9.Bg2 h5 10.Qa4 Kb8 and Black is fine, Jac. Andersen-E.Nicolaisen, Roskilde 1998. ]

**6...f6** A useful and thematic move, which prepares both ...g7-g5 and ...e7-e5 and generally aims to take control of the kingside dark squares, ruling out Ne5 or Bf4 by White.

[The immediate 6...Bh3 also makes

sense; for example, 7.b4 (or 7.Bxh3 Qxh3 8.b4 Nf6 , when Black's kingside attack shouldn't be underestimated; e.g. 9.Qa4 Ng4 10.b5 Nb8 11.Qxa7 e5! 12.dxe5 h5 13.Bf4 h4 14.gxh4 g5! 15.Bg3 Be7 and so on ) 7...Bxg2 8.Kxg2 f6 9.b5 (or 9.Nbd2 e5 10.b5 e4 11.bxc6 exf3+ 12.Nxf3 Qxc6 with a level position, P.Tregubov-K.Svistunov, Moscow 1996 ) 9...Na5 10.a4 , M.Quinteros-E.Torre, Malta Olympiad 1980, and now g5 gives Black good counterplay with ideas of ...h7-h5, ...g5-g4 and ...e7-e5. ]

**7.b4** White gets on with his queenside play and Black does likewise on the kingside. **7...h5**

[Advancing in the centre with 7...e5!? is possible too, though after 8.b5 Nb8 9.dxe5 Qxb5 Black has to give up on his attack and concentrate on defending the open lines on the queenside. For example, 10.exf6 ( 10.Qd4 h5! 11.Qxa7 Nc6 12.Qa8+ Kd7 13.Na3 Rxa8 14.Nxb5 fxe5 is equal ) 10...Nxf6 11.a4 Qa6 12.Be3 Nc6 13.Qc2 Na5 14.Nbd2 Bd6 15.c4!? dxc4 16.Rfc1 Bb4? 17.Nxc4 Nxc4 and now 18.Ne5! is good for White; (and a massive improvement on 18.Qxc4?? Rd1+! 0-1 V.Ayral-G.Flear, St Chely d'Aubrac 2001. )]

**8.Nbd2** The most flexible move. From here the knight can join an attack on Black's king via b3 and c5, while also supporting central pawn breaks with c3-c4 or e2-e4.

[An untested alternative is to push the queenside pawns straight away with 8.b5 Na5 (or 8...Nb8 9.c4) 9.Qa4 b6 10.c4!?, intending h4 (or 10...Nxc4 11.Nh4!) 11.Bd2

, breaking in on the a-file. ]

**8...g5?!** With the white attack already well under way and Black a tempo behind on a Veresov, he doesn't have time for this further preparatory move.

[Instead, 8...Bh3 as virtually compulsory, exchanging the light-squared bishops while he still can. After any of 9.Nb3 (or 9.Qa4 Bxg2 10.Kxg2 h4 11.Nxh4? g5; or 9.Bxh3 Qxh3 10.b5 Nb8 11.Qa4 e5 12.dxe5 h4; or 9.b5 Nb8 10.e4 Bxg2 11.Kxg2 dxe4 12.Nxe4 Qxb5 ) 9...Bxg2 10.Kxg2 e5 11.b5 e4 , there is everything to play for. ]

**9.Nb3?!** But this is not at all flexible. White gives up his pawn breaks and blocks his queen from reaching a4, whereas the "threat" of Nc5 is easily answered.

[He had several superior options, such as 9.b5 Nb8 10.c4!?] [and 9.e4!? ;]

[as well as 9.Qa4 , which is the usual way to proceed in the Veresov. Black appears to be in some difficulty however he responds:

**A)** 9...h4? 10.Nb3 (creating immediate threats) Qe8 11.b5 (but not 11.Nc5 e5 12.Qb5?? Bxc5 13.bxc5 e4 14.Nd2 hxg3 15.fxg3 , when the well-known tactic Nxd4! 16.Qxe8 Nxe2+ 17.Kf2 Rxe8 wins ) 11...Nb8 (clearly 11...h3 12.Bh1 Nb8 is not appealing to Black, who has given up all hopes of an attack ) 12.h3! Bd7 13.Qxa7 Bxb5 14.Nc5 Qc6 (or similarly 14...Bc6 15.Rb1 b6 16.Ne6 Rd7 17.Bxg5 fxg5 18.Ne5 ) 15.c4! Bxc4 16.Rb1 Ba6 17.Bxg5 , when fxg5? 18.Ne5 is a death blow to the Black side.; **B)** 9...a6 10.h4!? (offering a pawn to halt Black's attack and open

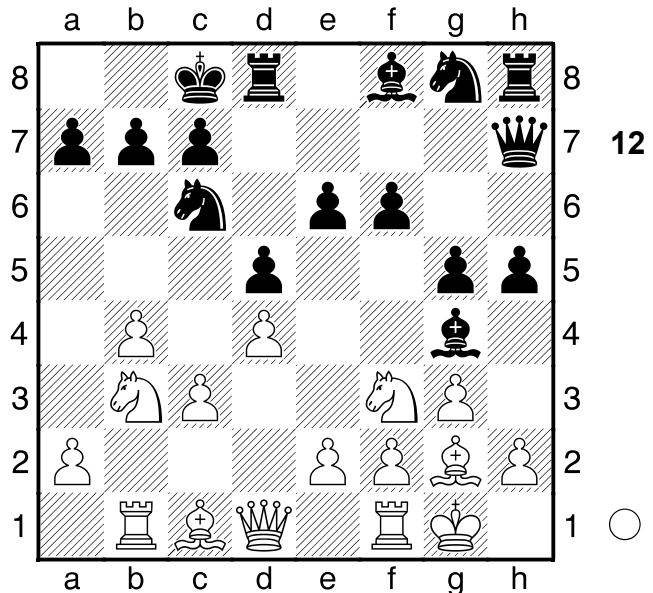
some lines; this is possible because Black has neglected his kingside development) (the direct 10.b5 is answered by Na7 , pinning the b5-pawn, though 11.c4!? still looks good for White ) 10...gxh4? (accepting the pawn is a mistake) (Black has to try 10...Bh3 11.b5 Bxg2 12.bxc6 Qh3 13.Nh2 bxc6 14.Qxc6 e6 , which is not entirely clear ) 11.Nxh4 Bxe2 12.Re1 Bd3 and now 13.b5! is very strong. For example, Na7 (after 13...axb5 14.Qa8+ Nb8 15.a4 bxa4 16.c4 e6 17.Re3 Bh7 18.cxd5 exd5 19.Rxa4 , the various threats of Ra7, Rb3 or even Nc4-b6+ are too many for Black to defend; or 13...Bxb5 14.Qc2 e5 15.a4 Bc4 16.Nxc4 dxc4 17.Ng6 Rh7 18.Be4 and the twin threats of Nxf8 and Bf5 win material ) 14.Qd1 Nxb5 15.a4 Na7 16.Nb3 Bc4 17.Nc5 Qe8 18.Rb1 (despite his two extra pawns, Black's undeveloped kingside and weaknesses on the light squares ensure his defeat) b6 19.Ne6 Rd7 20.Bf4 Bh6 (hoping for an exchange of bishops to bring the g8-knight out, but...) 21.Bxc7! Rxc7 22.Rxb6! Rc6 23.Qb1 and the pressure down the b-file is too much. After Nb5 24.Rxc6+ Qxc6 25.axb5 Bxb5 26.Nc5 (threatening Re6) e5 27.c4! Bxc4 28.Bh3+ Kc7 29.Ng6 Rh7 30.Nxe5 fxe5 31.Qxh7+ Kb6 32.Rb1+ Bb5 33.Qxg8 , Black can resign. ]

**9...e6 10.Rb1?** This does nothing to further his attack and in fact exposes his rook to tactics on the b1-h7 diagonal.  
[White can keep the balance with 10.Nc5 Bxc5 11.dxc5! (since h4?!

now runs into 12.b5 Nb8 13.Qa4 , hitting g4 and a7); ] [or else 10.h3 Bxh3!? ( 10...Bf5 11.h4! holds up Black's attack on the h-file ) 11.Bxh3 g4 12.b5 Nb8 13.Nc5 Bxc5 14.dxc5 gxh3 15.Qa4 , when both sides have chances. ]

### 10...Qh7?

[Black should play 10...h4! first, after which 11.Rb2 (or 11.b5 Nb8 12.Nc5 Qh7) 11...hxg3 12.fxg3 Qh7 leaves White struggling. ]



An attractive move to make, swinging the queen across to the h-file with tempo on the b1-rook, but it was inaccurate.

### 11.Be3?

[In turn White should safeguard his rook with 11.Rb2 , when h4 can be answered by 12.h3! Bf5 13.g4 Bxg4 14.hxg4 h3 15.Nxg5! fxg5 16.Bf3 and Black's attack has been neutralized. ]

### 11...h4 12.gxh4?!

[Black threatened ...h4xg3, ...Bxf3 etc, and 12.Re1 doesn't help in view of hxg3 13.hxg3 Bh3 14.Bh1 Bf5 (Bronznik), showing again how bad White's 10th move was. ]

[His best defence was 12.h3 Bf5 13.g4 , though in this case Black would now take on b1. ]

**12...Bf5** Hitting the rook again and clearing the way for the g-pawn to advance. **13.hxg5**

[After 13.Rb2 g4 14.Ne1 Bd6! (not allowing White's bishop to get to f4), Black's attack is unstoppable. ]

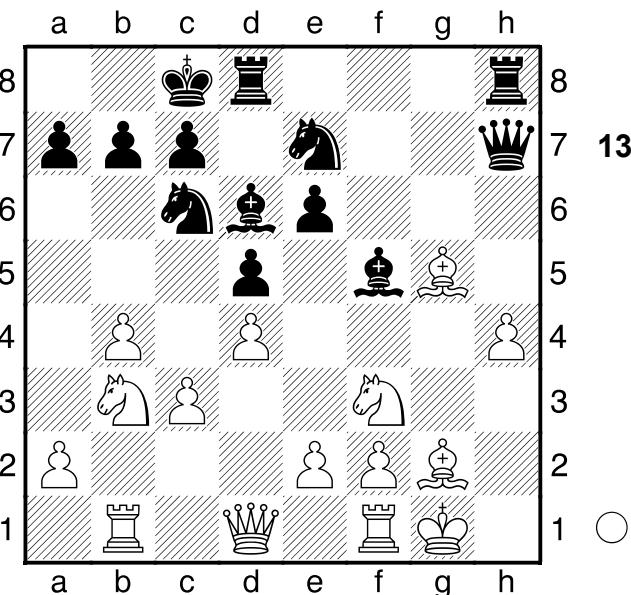
**13...Bd6** The position is too good for Black who now goes for mate. Obviously he's not interested in the b1-rook anymore.

**14.h4 fxg5** Black follows this up very powerfully, so it can't be called a mistake.

[Nevertheless, 14...Nce7! was much stronger, when there's no defence to ... Ng6 and ...Nxh4, or 15 gxf6 Nxf6 and ...Rdg8. ]

**15.Bxg5** White has gained a slight reprieve, as it will take Black some time to break through on the kingside.

**15...Nge7**



**16.b5 Nb8 17.Rc1?!** A wasted move, since Black wasn't going to take the rook anyway and White never gets anything going on the c-file. Then again, he no longer had any good moves.

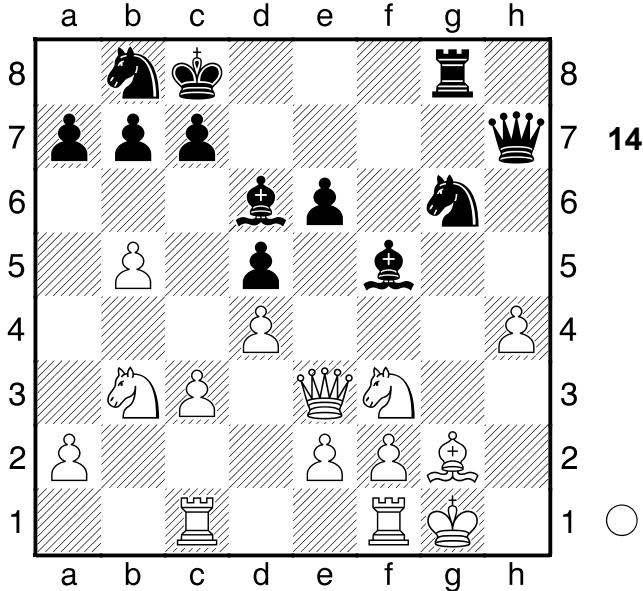
[Trying to block the attack with 17.Ne5 Rdg8 18.f4 fails to Rxg5! 19.fxg5 Qxh4 20.Rf3 Bxe5 21.dxe5 Nd7 (the queen's knight joins the party) 22.Rb2 Nxe5 23.Qd4 Nxf3+ 24.exf3 Qh2+ 25.Kf1 Ng6 , threatening ...Nf4. Although material is still even, the difference between each side's activity is enormous. Every black piece is on the attack and White cannot survive beyond a few moves; e.g. 26.Qxa7 Bd3+ (not now 26...Nf4?? 27.Nc5!) 27.Kf2 Nh4 28.Qa8+ Kd7 29.Qxh8 Qxg2+ 30.Ke3 (or 30.Ke1 Nxf3+ 31.Kd1 Qg1#) 30...Qxf3+ 31.Kd4 Qe4+ 32.Kc5 Qc4# . ]

[Even 17.c4 at once is no good, in view of Rdg8 18.c5 Bh2+! 19.Kxh2 (or 19.Nxh2 Rxg5) 19...Rxg5! 20.Nxg5 Qxh4+ and mates. ]

**17...Rdg8 18.Qd2 Rxg5! 19.Qxg5**

[If 19.hxg5 , then Bh2+ 20.Kh1 Bf4+ wins the queen; ]  
[while 19.Nxg5 Bh2+ 20.Kh1 Qxh4 21.Nf3 Qg4 ends in mate after 22.e3 Be4 23.Qe2 Bf4+ 24.Kg1 Rh2 etc. ]

**19...Rg8 20.Qe3 Ng6**



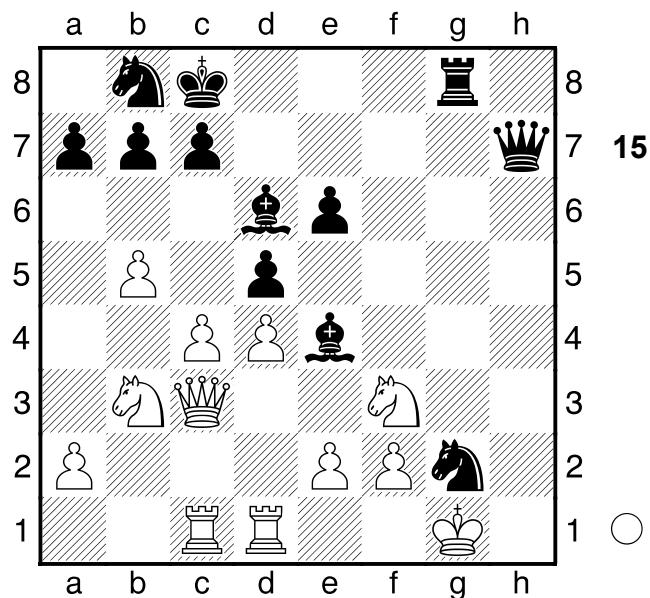
**21.c4 Be4 22.Qc3**

[Or 22.Ng5 Nf4! 23.f3 Rxg5!

(for the second time!) 24.hxg5 Nxg2  
, winning the queen since 25.Kxg2  
Qh2# is mate. ]

**22...Nhx4 23.Rfd1 Nxg2**

[ Radulov resigned without waiting to see 23...Nxg2 24.Kf1 Qh1+ 25.Ng1 Qxg1+! 26.Kxg1 Ne3# . ]



**0-1**

**Bok,B**  
 **Van Foreest,J**  
 60: Dutch Championship, Amsterdam  
*[Jimmy Liew]*

The players in this game are amongst the best young Dutch talents. The younger of the two, Jorden Van Foreest, became the Dutch champion in 2016 at the age of 17. In this amazing game, he defeats Bok in just 24 moves.

**1.Nf3 d5 2.g3 Bg4 3.Bg2 Nc6!?**

Threatening ...e7-e5, so unless White wants to play a reversed Pirc Defence he is more or less obliged to transpose to the 1 d4 d5 2 Nf3 Nc6 3 g3 Bg4 4 Bg2 variation.

**4.d4 Qd7 5.0-0** In this and the next game we'll look at lines where White plays c2-c4 after all. Bok elects to castle first.

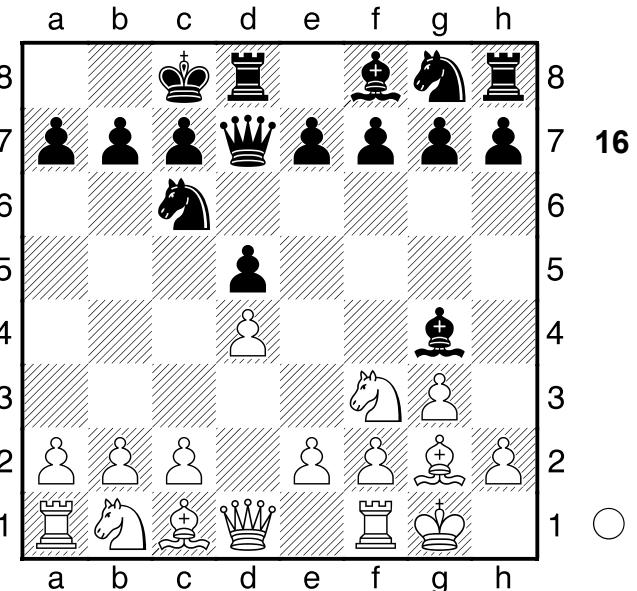
[The immediate 5.c4 is also critical, and after dxc4 (for 5...e6 6.0-0 0-0-0, see the next note) 6.d5 Bxf3 7.Bxf3 Ne5 8.Bg2 e6, White has tried:

**A)** 9.f4?! Ng4 10.h3 (or similarly 10.e3 N8f6 11.h3 Nh6 12.dxe6 Qxd1+ 13.Kxd1 0-0-0+ 14.Kc2 fxe6 15.e4 Rd3, J.Timman-J. Hector, Helsingør 2014) 10...Bb4+ 11.Nc3 N4f6 12.dxe6 Qxd1+ 13.Kxd1 0-0-0+ 14.Kc2 fxe6 and White barely has enough compensation for the pawn, R. Akesson-J.Hammer, Stockholm 2015.;

**B)** 9.Bf4 Ng6 10.dxe6 Qxd1+ 11.Kxd1 0-0-0+ 12.Kc2 Nxf4 13.gxf4 fxe6 14.Nd2 Bd6 15.e3 e5 16.fxe5 Bxe5 17.Nxc4 Bf6 with an equal endgame, V.Neverov-B.Rzayev, Kolkata 2013.;

**C)** 9.Nc3 exd5 10.Qxd5 Qxd5 11.Nxd5 0-0-0 12.Bf4 Bd6 13.0-0 c6 14.Ne3 Ne7 is also equal, V. Korchnoi-A.Raetsky, Swiss Championship, Leukerbad 2011.;  
**D)** 9.Qd4 (probably best) 9...Nc6 10.Qxc4 0-0-0 11.Nc3 (or 11.e4 exd5 12.exd5 Nf6 13.Nc3 Ne5, D.Ledger-M.Pein, British Championship, Hove 1997)  
 11...exd5! 12.Bxd5 (Black should also be okay after 12.Qxd5 Qxd5 13.Bxd5 Nd4 14.Kf1 Ne6; or 12.Nxd5 Bb4+ 13.Kf1 Nf6 14.e4 Kb8) 12...Bb4 13.0-0 Bxc3 14.Bxc6 Qxc6 15.Qxc6 bxc6 16.bxc3 Nf6 17.Be3 a6 18.Bd4 Rhe8, C.Aravindh-A.Ipatov, Doha 2014, when Black has no particular problems in the endgame, even if White plays 19.Bxf6 gxf6.)

**5...0-0-0**



**6.c4!** The strongest move. By exerting pressure on the centre, White prevents Black from carrying out the sort of devastating kingside attack we saw in the previous game.

**6...dxc4** Black eliminates the pressure in the simplest way, while uncovering an

attack on the d4-pawn and planning to reinforce it with ...e7-e5.

[The more solid-looking 6...e6 can quickly run into trouble:

**A)** 7.Ne5!? Nxe5 8.dxe5 Kb8?! (too slow) (even worse is 8...dxc4?! 9.Qc2 Ne7?? 10.Qe4, winning a piece in O.Vastrukhin-A.Reprintsev, Moscow rapid 2018; and 8...d4 9.Qb3 c6 10.e3!, .Flumbort-O. Kurmann, Saint Vincent 2002, looks good for White too; so 8...Ne7!? should probably be tried ) 9.h3 Bh5 10.cxd5 exd5 11.Nc3 Ne7 12.Qb3 c6 13.Rd1 f6 14.Bf4 fxe5 15.Bxe5+ Ka8 16.Rac1 with a big advantage to White, who crashed through with Qe6 17.f4 Ng6 18.Nxd5! cxd5 19.Rxd5 Bd6 20.Qxb7+! Kxb7 21.Rxd6+ 1-0 M.Bosiocic-N.Fercec, Croatian League 2016.;

**B)** Instead, 7.Nc3 dxc4 8.Qa4 Kb8 9.Rd1 Bxf3 10.Bxf3 Nb4! is okay for Black, L.Spassov-T.Thiel, Badalona 1993;

**C)** as is 7.cxd5 exd5 8.Nc3 f6 9.Qa4 Bb4 ; (but not 9...Nge7? 10.b4 a6? 11.b5 Nb8 12.Qb3 and White has a ready-made attack, Z.Izoria-S.Shankland, Las Vegas 2008. )]

**7.Be3** Bok must have been caught by surprise in the opening; otherwise, how to explain this sub-optimal move?

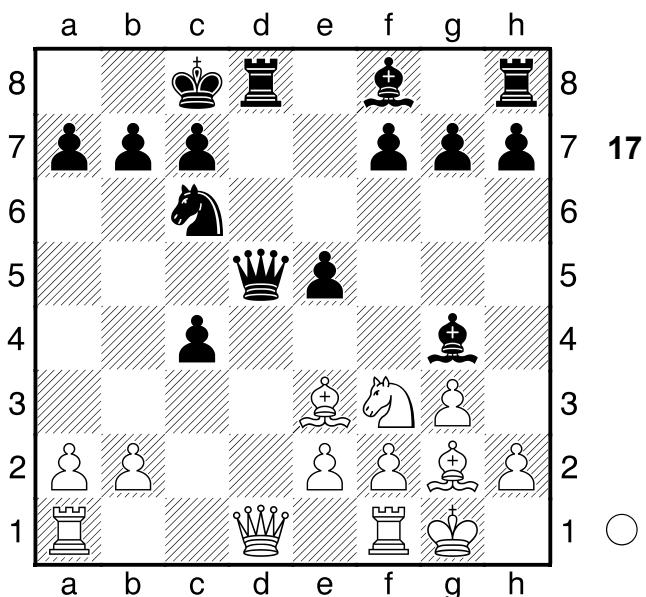
[Not 7.d5? either because of e6 . ]

[The strongest continuation is 7.Nbd2!, which we'll look at in the next game. ]

[Previously, White used to play 7.Qa4 Kb8 8.Qxc4 , but Black has no problems after Bxf3 9.Bxf3 (or 9.exf3 Nxd4 10.Nc3 Qe6 11.Qa4 Qc6 , P.Lerch-M.Lugovskoy, Pardubice 2017 ) 9...Nxd4 10.Qxf7 Nf6 11.Nc3 e5 12.Qc4 (or 12.Qxd7

Rxd7 13.Bg5 Bb4 14.Bxf6 gxf6 , V.Yandemirov-Z.Andriasian, St. Petersburg 2014 ) 12...Qe6 13.Qxe6 Nxe6 14.Be3 Bc5 15.Bxc5 Nxc5 16.Rfd1 a5 , when Black's activity balanced White's bishop and slightly better pawns in E.Risting-A.Tari, Drammen 2016. ]

**7...e5!** Of course. **8.d5 Nge7 9.Nc3 Nxd5 10.Nxd5 Qxd5**



### 11.Qc2!?

[If instead 11.Qa4 , then Bxf3 12.Bxf3 e4 blocks the long diagonal with tempo. ]

White has now sacrificed two pawns. He can trust to regain the pawn on c4, but where is the compensation for the other one? His slight lead in development hardly looks sufficient.

### 11...Bxf3!?

[Black gives up his bishop voluntarily so that he can retreat his queen in the centre (not yet 11...Qe6? due to 12.Ng5 ). ]

[Presumably he felt this was better than 11...Qb5 , when White might ask the question anyway with 12.h3!? (not 12.Rac1 f6 13.Qxc4 Qxc4 14.Rxc4 and White is a pawn down for

nothing ) 12...Bxf3 ( or 12...Be6 13.Ng5 ) 13.Bxf3 Nd4 ( or 13...f6 14.Rfd1 Bc5 15.Rxd8+ Nxd8 16.a4 ) 14.Bxd4 exd4 15.Rac1 , followed by Qxc4 with some drawing chances due to the opposite-coloured bishops. ]

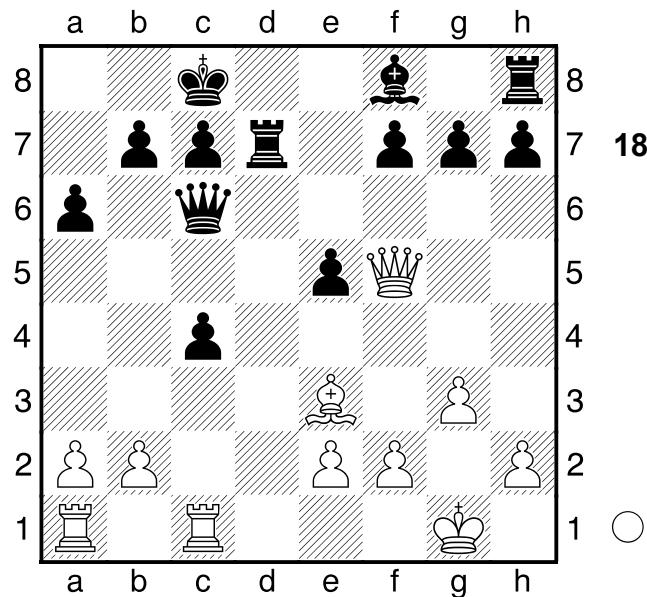
**12.Bxf3 Qe6 13.Rfc1?** As we'll see, there is a problem with placing this rook here.

[ 13.Bxc6 Qxc6 14.Qf5+ might be White's only chance to escape with minimum damage: Qe6 ( or 14...Rd7 15.Qxe5 Be7 16.Qxg7 Bf6 17.Qh6 ) 15.Qxe6+ fxe6 16.Rfc1 , followed by Rxc4, when Black only has an extra isolated doubled e-pawn. ]

**13...a6 14.Bxc6**

[ Not 14.Qxc4?? Rd1+ and wins. ]

**14...Qxc6 15.Qf5+ Rd7**



**16.Qxe5 Be7 17.Qxg7 Bf6 18.Qg4**

[ The point is that, unlike in the 13 Bxc6 line above, White can't play 18.Qh6 because Bxb2 forks the two rooks. ]

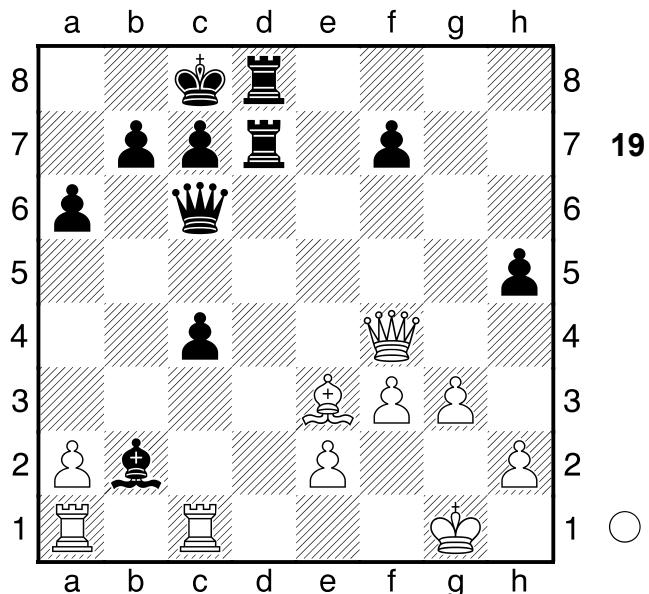
**18...h5 19.Qf4 Rhd8!**

[ Not 19...Bxb2? 20.Rxc4 Qg6 21.Rf1 and White has safely regained his pawns. ]

**20.f3 Closing the long diagonal.**

[White can't take on c4 just yet because 20.Rxc4?? Rd1+ mates; ] [and 20.Qxc4?? Rd1+ wins the queen; ] [while after 20.Rab1 Bxb2! the bishop is equally untouchable. ]

**20...Bxb2**



**21.Rxc4 Be5!** The correct move order.

[Not 21...Qe6? 22.Rb1 Be5 23.Qe4 and White is perfectly okay. ]

**22.Qh4**

[If 22.Rxc6 Bxf4 23.Rc3 then Be5 skewers the white rooks. ]

**22...Qe6 23.Rac1 Bxg3!**

The discovered attack on the e3-bishop wins material.

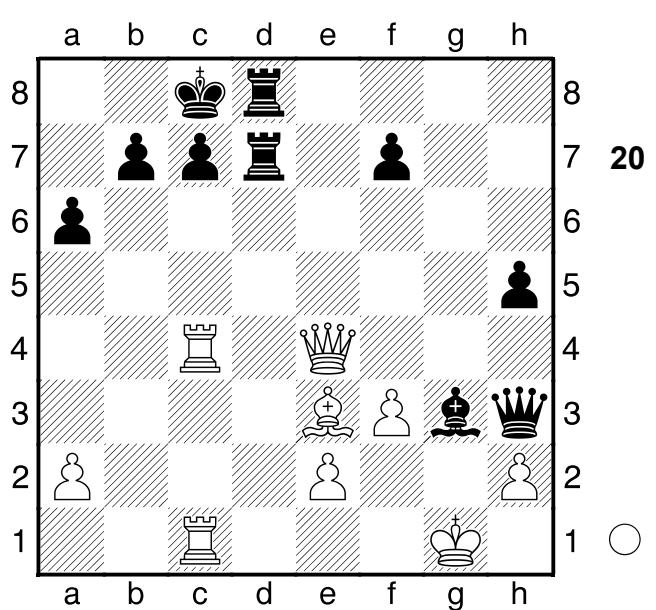
**24.Qe4?**

[White had to play 24.Qxg3 Qxe3+ 25.Qf2 , even if it only means he will suffer longer for the same result. ]

**24...Qh3**

[After 24...Qh3 25.hxg3 Rd1+ 26.Rxd1 Rxd1+ 27.Kf2 , Black has three possible mates to choose from. ]

(Diagram 20)



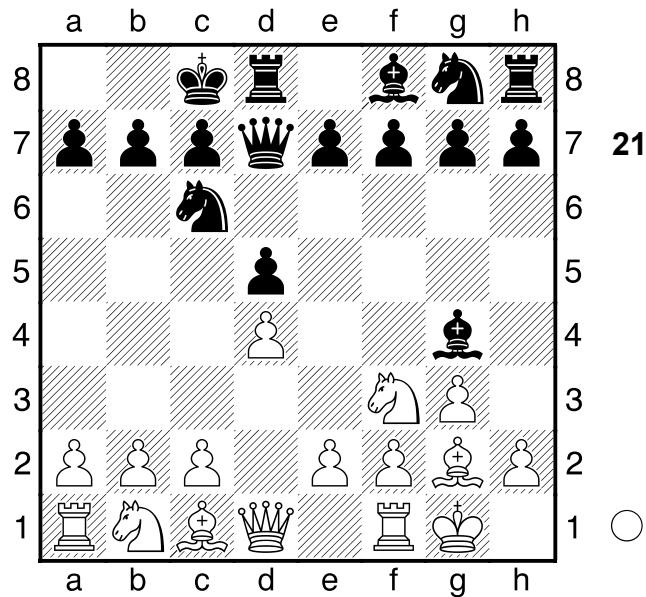
0-1

D02

□ Caruana,F  
■ Salem,ARS

61: World Blitz Championship, Dubai  
[Jimmy Liew]

1.Nf3!? d5 2.g3 Nc6 3.d4 Bg4 4.Bg2  
Qd7 5.0-0 0-0-0



**6.c4 dxc4 7.Nbd2!** A recent innovation, first played by GM Teimour Radjabov. The engines immediately give it as the best move.

QUESTION: How is this even remotely possible? Doesn't White just lose another pawn?

ANSWER: It reminds me of the style of chess in the 19th century. Players of this period emphasized quick development and tactics over material, at least before Steinitz demonstrated that most of their sacrifices were unsound. Here, on the other hand, White's sacrifice is quite correct and poses Black difficult problems.

**7...e5** Black declines the pawn and continues with his thematic break. This seems to be the right idea, especially in a blitz game;

[though he might play it more subtly with 7...f6! and:

**A) 8.Qa4** Kb8 9.Qb5 (or 9.Qxc4 Nxd4 , O.Vastrukhin-Z.Andriasan, Kazan 2014, when 10.Nxd4 Qxd4 11.Qb5 Qb6 is level ) 9...Be6!? (or just 9...e6 , intending 10.Nxc4?! Qd5! with advantage, A. Tahbaz-A.Raetsky, Tehran 2016 ) 10.Nxc4 Nxd4 11.Nxd4 Qxb5 12.Nxb5 Bxc4 13.a4 a6! (rather than 13...c6? 14.Be3 cxb5 15.axb5 a6 16.bxa6 bxa6 17.Rfc1 Bxe2 18.b4 with a very strong initiative for the piece, A.Malkov-A. Krutous, correspondence 2016 ) 14.Be3 axb5 15.axb5 Bxb5 16.Ba7+ Kc8 17.Bh3+ e6! 18.Bxe6+ Bd7 19.Bc5 Bxe6 20.Bxf8 Kb8 21.Bxg7 Ne7 22.Bxh8 Rxh8 and Black has the better chances.;

**B) 8.Nxc4** e5 9.Qa4 (after 9.Ne3 Bxf3 10.Bxf3 Qxd4 11.Bxc6 Qxd1 12.Bxb7+ Kxb7 13.Rxd1 Rxd1+ 14.Nxd1 Bc5 Black was fine in L. Pantsulaia-V.Baghdasaryan, Batumi 2016; or if 9.Be3 then Bxf3 10.Bxf3 exd4 gains a tempo on the bishop ) 9...e4 (rather than 9...exd4 10.b4! Bxb4 11.Rb1 , when White has a lot of open lines ) 10.d5 Qxd5 11.Ne3 Qe6 12.Nxg4 exf3 13.Bxf3 Rd4 14.Qb3 Qxb3 15.axb3 was T.Petenyi-A.Tari, European Cup, Antalya 2017, and now Nge7! 16.Be3 Rb4 looks roughly equal. ]

QUESTION: So what happens if Black takes the d-pawn?

ANSWER: He loses – at least in practice. In the seven games with 7...Nxd4?! 8.Nxd4 Qxd4 9.Qa4! so far, Black has scored just half a point:

**A)** 9...Nf6 10.e3 Qc5 11.b4! cxb3 12.Nxb3 Qb6 13.Bb2 Be2 (or 13...Bd7 14.Qf4 Bc6 15.Bxc6 Qxc6 16.Rfc1) 14.Rfc1 e6 15.Bxf6 gxf6 16.Nd4 Bd3 17.Rc3 Rxd4 18.exd4 and White was clearly better, no longer even anything down, R.Jenkins-S.Huzita, correspondence 2014.;

**B)** 9...Bd7 10.Qc2! (stronger than 10.Qb4, as in T.Radjabov-R. Rapport, European Cup, Rhodes 2013) 10...Bb5 11.Nf3 Qf6 12.Be3 Nh6 13.Rfd1 Rd6 14.Bxa7 Ng4 15.Bh3 h5 16.Bd4 Qg6 17.Qxg6 fxg6 18.Ne5 Kb8 19.Nf7 and White won in S.Tologontegin-E. Egorov, Pavlodar 2017.;

**C)** 9...e5 10.Nxc4 Be6 11.Be3! Qxc4 12.Bxb7+ Kxb7 13.Qxa7+ Kc8 14.Rac1 Qxc1 15.Rxc1 Kd7 (or 15...Bd6 16.Bc5 Bxc5 17.Qxc5 Rd7 18.Qf8+ etc) 16.Qxc7+ Ke8 17.Bb6 Rc8 18.Qxc8+ Bxc8 19.Rxc8+ Ke7 20.Bc5+ and White won again in J. Grötzbach-M.Lyell, Budapest 2017.;

**D)** 9...Bxe2 10.Re1 Bd3 has not been tried. Black is now three pawns up, but look at his kingside! Not a single piece developed. After 11.Nf3 Qb6 (losing the a7-pawn would be disastrous) 12.Be3 (continuing to develop with gain of time on the queen) Qa6 (Black has to accept the break-up of his queenside) 13.Qxa6 bxa6 14.Ne5 Bg6 15.Rac1, White will start regaining pawns and stands clearly better with his far superior development.]

**8.Qa4** Caruana is not interested in taking pawns either and continues to fight for the initiative, which counts for double in

a blitz game.

[Instead, 8.Nxc4

**A)** 8...f6 transposes to 7...f6 above; 9... (9...);  
**B)** whereas 8...Bxf3 9.exf3 Nge7?! (9...Qe6 10.Qa4 Nxd4 improves) 10.Qa4 exd4 11.b4 d3 12.Be3 (12.f4) 12...Nf5, K.Dragun-M. Bartel, Biel 2015, and now 13.Bxa7 is good for White, in view of Ncd4 14.Rfc1! Qxa4? 15.Nb6#.]

[At a normal time limit, 8.dxe5 may well be best; e.g. Bxf3 9.Bxf3 Nxe5 10.Bg2 Nf6 11.Qc2 Bc5 12.Ne4 (not 12.Nxc4? Bxf2+) 13.Rxf2 Qd1+ and Black keeps the extra pawn) 12...Nxe4 13.Qxe4 Nc6 14.Qxc4 and White regains the material with a slight edge due to his strong light-squared bishop.]

**8...a6** Securing the a7-pawn so that he can answer 9 dxe5 with 9...Nxe5.

[The alternative was 8...Kb8, when Black threatens a 9...Nxd4 trick as well, since 10 Qxd7 is not check.]

[Taking the d-pawn can still easily lead to trouble: for example, 8...exd4 9.Nxc4 Nf6? 10.Nfe5 Nxe5 11.Qxa7! Qb5 12.Nxe5 Qxe5 13.Qxb7+ Kd7 14.Bf4 and White has a decisive attack.]

**9.Nxc4 Bxf3?!** Perhaps feeling he had secured his position, Salem decides to grab the d-pawn after all.

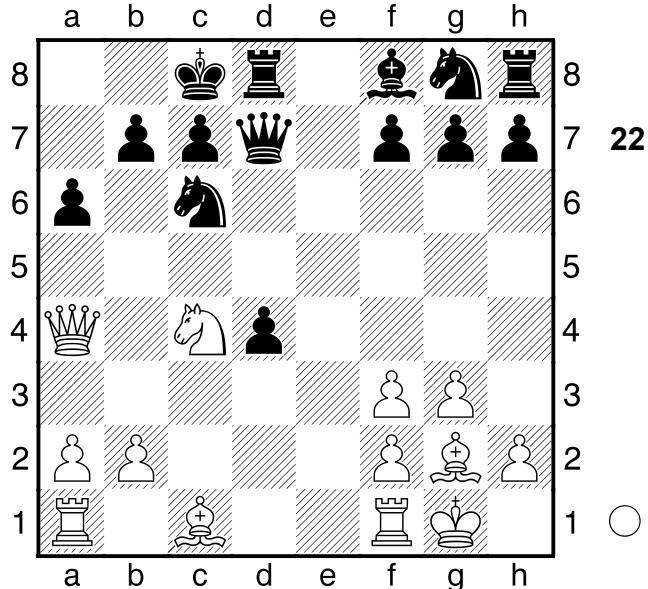
[The safer course is 9...Nxd4 10.Qxd7+ Bxd7 11.Nxd4 (or 11.Ncxe5 Nxf3+ 12.Bxf3 Be6) 11...exd4 12.Bf4 Be6 13.Rac1 Bxc4 14.Rxc4 Bd6 15.Rxd4 Ne7 16.Bxd6 Rxd6 17.Rxd6 cxd6 and Black should hold the ending – at least in normal play.]

**10.exf3**

[After 10.Bxf3?! Nxd4 11.Qxd7+ Rxd7 12.Nxe5 (or 12.Bg4 f5)]

12...Nxf3+ 13.exf3 Re7 Black has nothing to worry about. His queenside pawn majority even gives him a nominal advantage, albeit one he is unlikely to convert. ]

**10...exd4**



**11.f4** For the sacrificed pawn, White has an unopposed light-squared bishop and a dangerous initiative.

**11...Nf6 12.Bd2** Black would welcome a mass exchange on c6.

[After 12.Bxc6?! Qxc6 13.Qxc6 bxc6 14.Ne5 Rd5 15.Nxf7 Rg8 16.Ne5 Bd6 the material balance is restored, but Black has mobilized his forces successfully and still has a passed d-pawn. ]

**12...Nd5 13.Rac1 Kb8 14.Qb3**

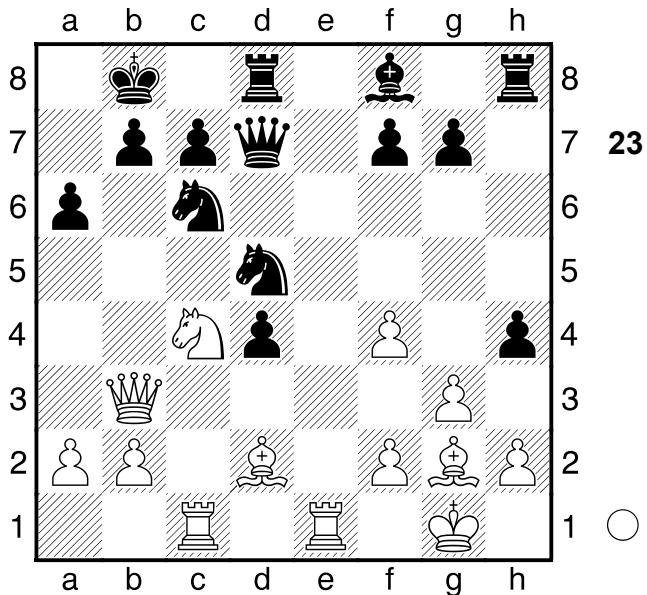
White has developed to the maximum and now casts around for attacking plans.

**14...h5** Both an offensive and defensive move, pushing the h-pawn at the white kingside and allowing his rook to come into the game via h6.

[Another scheme is 14...Be7, intending ...Bf6 and ...Rhe8, but White can disrupt this with 15.a4 Bf6 16.Na5! Nxa5 17.Bxa5 and Black

has to give up the exchange after c6, since White's earlier a2-a4 prevents ...Qb5; (and 17...b6 loses to 18.Rc5! .)]

**15.Rfe1 h4**



**16.Ne5**

[Going the other way again is stronger: 16.Na5! Nxa5 17.Bxa5 , when both Qb5 (and 17...b6 18.a4 h3 19.Bh1 Rh6 20.Re4 are good for White ) 18.Qxb5 axb5 19.Bxd5 Rxd5 20.Re8+ Ka7 21.Bxc7 .]

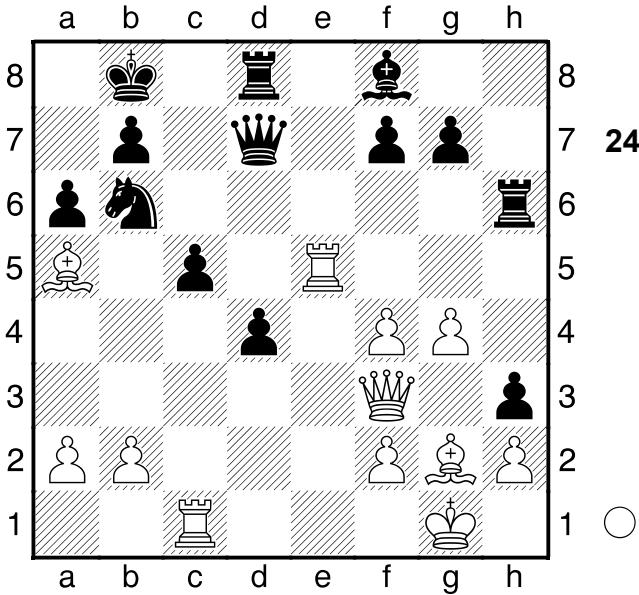
**16...Nxe5 17.Rxe5 Nb6 18.Ba5 Rh6!**

Putting an end to White's attacking ambitions for the moment, and he has to be a little careful not to end up in an inferior ending facing a strong passed d-pawn.

**19.Qf3 c5 20.g4 h3?**

[ 20...Ka7 looks more natural, protecting the b6-knight and freeing the h6-rook from such menial duties; ] [or else 20...c4 , since 21.Bxb6? Rxb6 22.Rxc4 d3 is not a good idea for White. ]

(Diagram 24)



[The engine shows that 27.Re8+ Ka7 28.Rxf8 d2 29.Bxd2 Rxd2 30.Rxf7 c3 31.Bg2 wins for White. For example, Nd5 (or 31...c2 32.Bxc6 Rd1+ 33.Kg2 Rxc1 34.Rxb7+ Ka8 35.Rxb6+ Ka7 36.Rb7+ Ka8 37.Rb4+ Ka7 38.Rc4 etc) 32.Rd7 Nxf4 33.Bxc6 Rxd7 34.Bxd7 Ne2+ 35.Kf1 Nxc1 36.Bf5 Nxa2 37.h4 and the h-pawn will promote. But who is going to see all that with less than a minute on the clock? ]

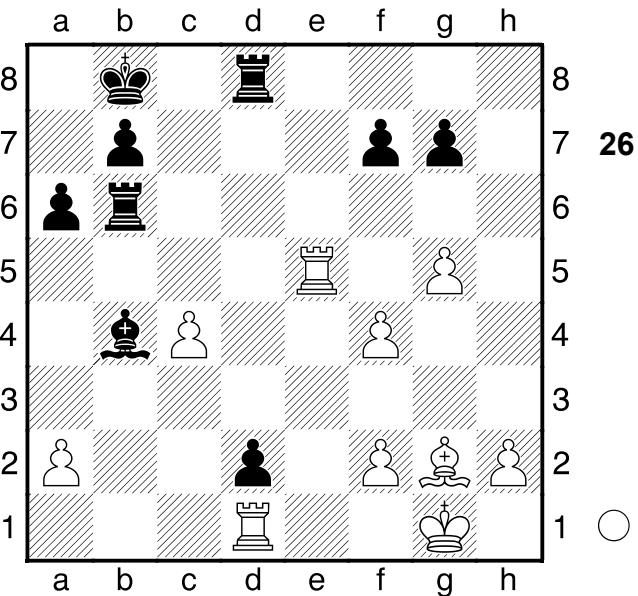
**27...d2?? 28.Rd1??**

[Both players are concentrating on White's end of the board and miss that 28.Re8+ mates.]

**28...Rxb6 29.bxc4?**

[Even here 29.Re8+ Ka7 30.bxc4 Rb1 31.Rxb1 d1Q+ 32.Rxd1 Rxd1+ 33.Kg2 should win for White, who is two pawns up; whereas after the text Black is suddenly okay again and has some chances with his d-pawn.]

**29...Rd8 30.Bg2 Bb4**



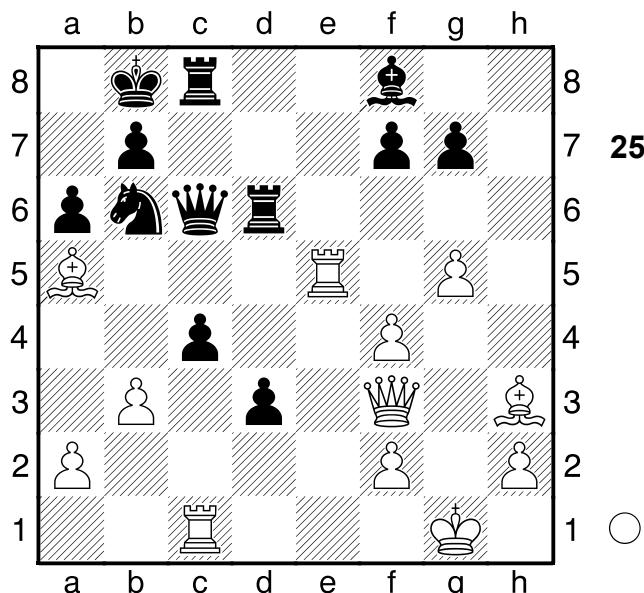
**31.Bd5 f6 32.Re2 fxg5 33.fxg5 Rh8 34.Kg2 Rh4 35.Kg3 Rd4**

It is not clear what Black hoped to achieve by luring the bishop from the long diagonal. **21.Bxh3 Rc8?** And this lines his own pieces up for a skewer;

[such that 21...Rc8 22.Bxb6 Rxb6 (or 22...Qb5 23.g5) 23.g5 now wins material. Okay, this was a blitz game so it is unfair to be too critical.]

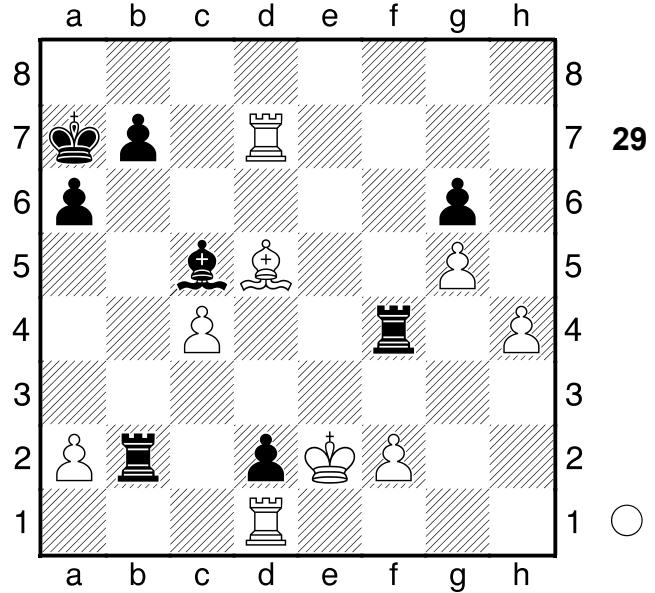
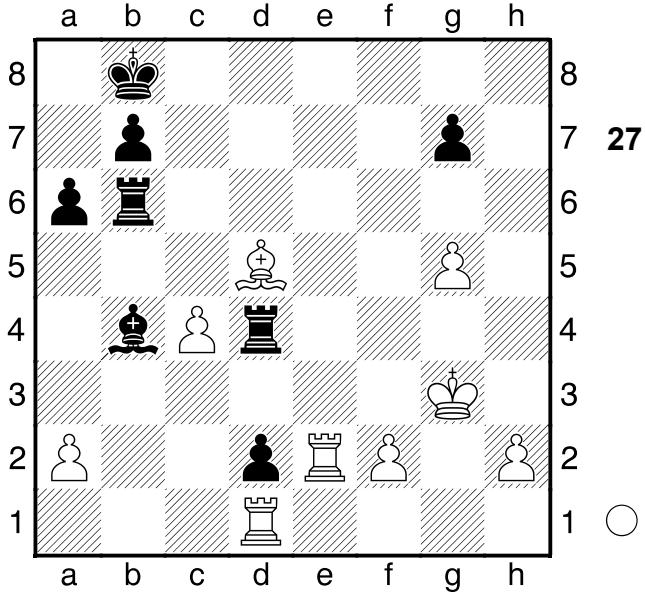
**22.Bg2?! d3? 23.g5 Rd6 24.b3? c4?**

**25.Bh3** At last. **25...Qc6**



**26.Qxc6 Rxcc6 27.Bxb6**

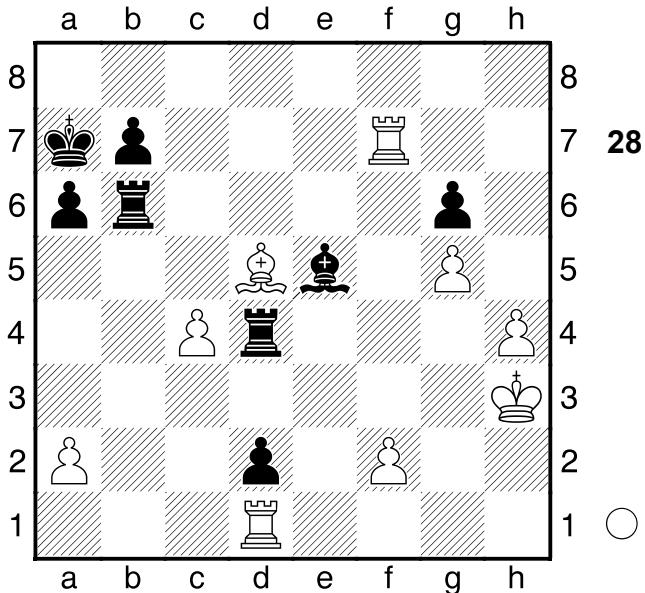
(Diagram 27)



**36.h4 Bd6+?!?** The bishop was better where it was. **37.Kh3 Bf4? 38.Re8+ Ka7 39.Re7 g6 40.Rf7**

[After 40.Re4! Rxe4 41.Bxe4 Re6 42.Bxg6! Rxg6 43.Kg4 Bc7 44.Rxd2, the kingside pawns will win.]

**40...Be5**



**41.Re7 Bf4 42.Kg2 Rb2 43.Kf3 Bd6 44.Rd7 Bc5 45.Ke2?** Dropping the h-pawn.

[ 45.h5 gxh5 46.g6 wins for White. ]

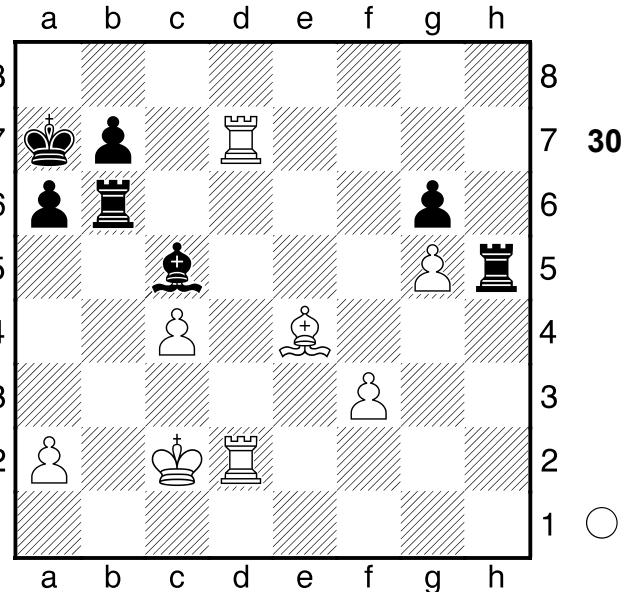
**45...Rf4?**

(Diagram 29)

**46.f3? Rxh4 47.Kd3 Rb6?** Dropping the d-pawn.

[ 47...Rh2 keeps the game level. ]

**48.Rxd2 Rf4 49.Be4 Rh4 50.Kc2 Rh5**

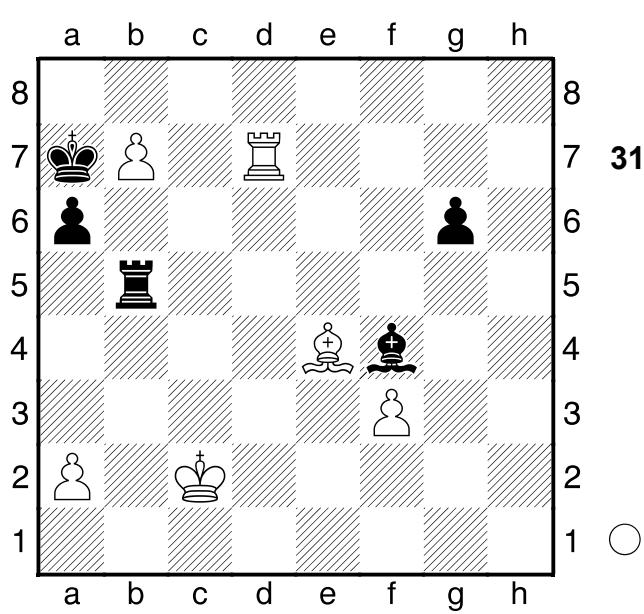


**51.R2d5 Be3 52.c5 Rb5 53.c6 Rxg5 54.Rxg5 Bxg5 55.cxb7?**

[Pushing on was stronger: 55.c7! Rc5+ 56.Kb3 , intending Bf4 (or 56...a5 57.Rd5! and wins ) 57.c8Q! Rxc8 58.Rxb7+ . ]

**55...Bf4**

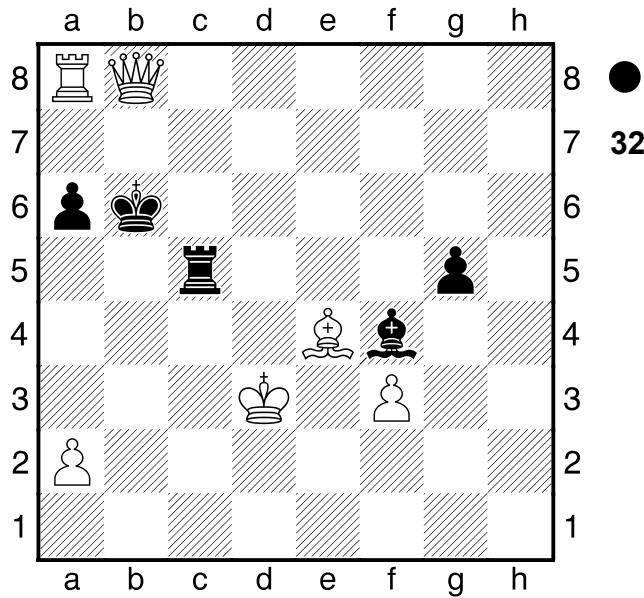
(Diagram 31)



**56.Rd8 Rc5+ 57.Kd3 g5?**

[He had to play 57...Bb8.]

**58.Ra8+ Kb6 59.b8Q+**



. Presumably Black's flag fell, though he is lost in any case.

**1-0**

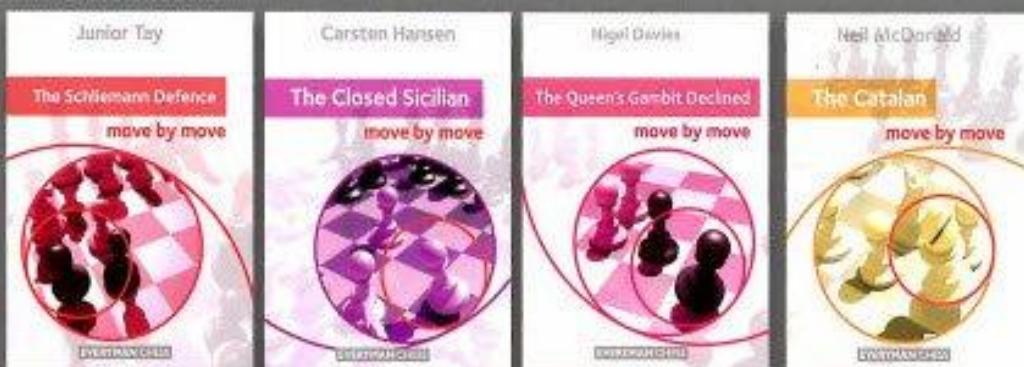
# The Chigorin Defence move by move

The Chigorin Defence ( $1\ d4\ d5\ 2\ c4\ Nc6$ ) is a dynamic and provocative response to White's  $1\ d4$ . Rather than set out a defensive stall with systems based on moves such as ...e6 and ...c6, Black prefers to initiate immediate piece play in the centre. The benefits of this strategy are that Black's queenside pieces, which are often difficult to develop in the Queen's Gambit, participate in the struggle at once. The queen's knight emerges immediately onto an active square and the path is left open for the c8-bishop to develop freely. Naturally there are also drawbacks as Black will not find it easy to establish a foothold in the centre in the early play.

The Chigorin is a perfect counterattacking weapon and will appeal to players who like to throw opponents onto their own resources at an early stage. Jimmy Liew identifies and analyses the precise moments when specific theoretical knowledge is required and also discusses plans and strategies in the quieter variations.

- Everything you need to know to play the Chigorin with confidence
- Emphasis on plans and strategies
- Written by an expert in the opening

#### other great chess titles



[www.everymancross.com](http://www.everymancross.com)

US \$29.95

**EVERYMAN CHESS**

ISBN 978-1-78194-425-7

A standard linear barcode representing the ISBN number 9781781944257.

52995

9 781781 944257